



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Caesar, Julius.

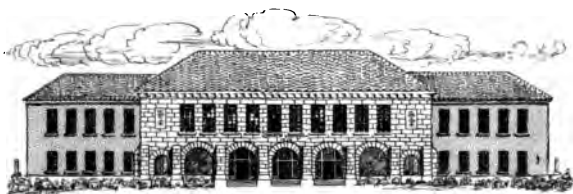
Caesar, Julius.
Caesar, : Gallic war, books I-II. /

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04926 9892

3 6105 04926 9892



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

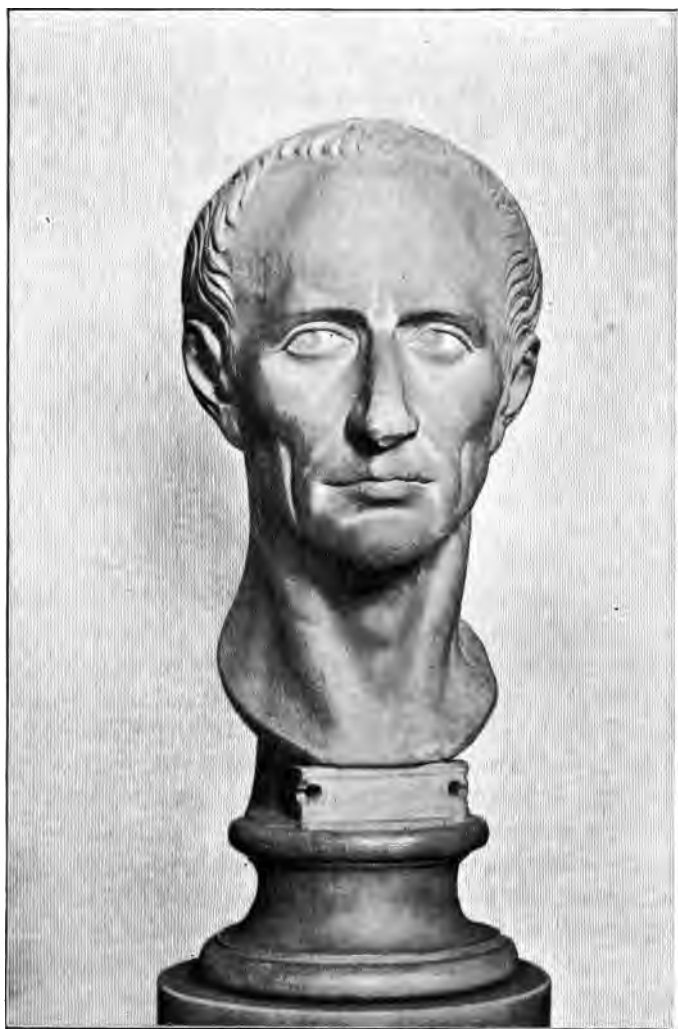
TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES







JULIUS CAESAR.
Bust in the British Museum.

CAESAR GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I-II

EDITED WITH NOTES
SUMMARY OF FORMS AND SYNTAX, PROSE
COMPOSITION, AND VOCABULARY BY

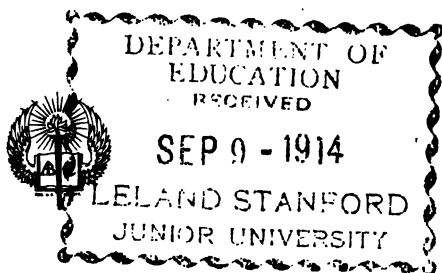
ERNST RIESS

AND

ARTHUR L. JANES

OF THE DEPARTMENT OF CLASSIC LANGUAGES
BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN

*Combined with
Janes's Sight Reading*



AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY
NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO

597632

C

COPYRIGHT, 1914, BY

E. RIESS AND A. L. JANES.

COPYRIGHT, 1914, IN GREAT BRITAIN.



RIESS AND JANES. CAESAR GALLIC WAR I-II.

E. P. I

PREFACE

THIS edition of Caesar has been prepared in view of the tendency of many teachers of Latin, in accordance with the recommendations of the New York State Education Department for second-year Latin, to limit the intensive study of Caesar to Books I and II of the *Gallic War*, thus leaving for sight reading a wider variation of material to be selected from the remainder of the *Gallic War*, from the *Civil War*, or from the *Lives* of Nepos. It provides the material for thorough study of these two books and furthermore, as a preparation for the requirements of the College Entrance Examination Board, it will be found serviceable when used in conjunction with any collection of sight reading material, although it is specially designed to be used with Janes's *Second Year Sight Reading*.

The text is that of Meusel, revised on the basis of the *Caesar Studien* by Klotz. To aid in the important part which reading aloud should hold in the classroom, all long vowels have been marked, and to insure the acquisition of a working vocabulary, all words required by the New York City Syllabus, which is based on the Lodge list, have been printed in full-faced type where they occur first. These words are also listed on pages 263 to 271 in order of first occurrence for purposes of drill and review.

The notes on the two books are equally full in order to enable teachers to begin the reading of the Commentaries with either book. Our aim has been to make difficult points clear to the pupil without either unduly facilitating the translation or befogging him by elaborate grammatical explanations. The editors have regarded their practical experience in the classroom as their safest guide.

The introduction, for which we beg to acknowledge

gratefully the help derived from Sihler's *Annals of Caesar*. is intended to be assigned to the pupil for recitation. should help him to understand the historical background of the work, to grow into an appreciation of Caesar as man and as a writer, and to form a clear idea of the Roman army as a splendidly organized machine of war. For the latter part Oehler's excellent monograph on the Roman army has been used as foundation.

The illustrations, while their artistic merit may serve well to attract the eye of the casual reader, have been selected with care to clear up, by objective representation, points not readily elucidated in the compass of a note.

The editors are convinced that second-year pupils are not mature enough to profit by thumbing a grammar. Therefore, an appendix has been added which provides in simple form all of the Caesarean syntax required, illustrated by examples taken from the text. In this, as well as in the making of the prose exercises, the statistics gathered by Dr. Lee Byrne and his collaborators have been of the greatest service. A short outline of accident has been included, to enable the teacher to give during the year the ever necessary review in forms.

One distinctly novel feature is to be noted. While the exercises for prose composition follow a systematic syntactical outline, their content covers a connected narrative of the events of the two campaigns. The editors believe that during the second year students should be required only to render into Latin sentences that are reasonably short. But they hope, by the arrangement just indicated, that these sentences will have been made more interesting in their sequence than would otherwise have been the case.

ERNST RIESS,
ARTHUR L. JANES.

CONTENTS

RIESS AND JANES'S *CAESAR*, BOOKS I-II

	PAGE
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS	7
MAPS AND PLANS	8
INTRODUCTION:	
I. Caesar's Life:	
A. To the Governorship of Gaul	9
B. The Conquest of Gaul	13
C. Caesar as Ruler of Rome	14
II. Caesar's Writings	17
III. Caesar the Man	18
IV. The Roman Army	20
V. The Gallic Civilization	40
TEXT OF <i>Gallic War</i> :	
Book I	43
Book II	81
NOTES:	
Book I	101
Book II	165
GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY:	
Inflections	199
Syntax	232
WORD LIST	263
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION	273
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	V I
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	V II

JANES'S *SECOND YEAR LATIN FOR SIGHT
READING*

SIGHT TRANSLATION

CAESAR: Selections from the Gallic War:

- Book III
- Book IV
- Book V
- Book VI
- Book VII

CAESAR: Selections from the Civil War:

- Book III

NEPOS: Life and Works

Selections from the Lives:

- I. Miltiades
- II. Themistocles
- III. Cimon
- IV. Epaminondas
- V. Hannibal
- VI. Cato

WORD FORMATION

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY V

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

IN RIESS AND JANES'S *CAESAR*, BOOKS I-II

Julius Caesar. Bust in the British Museum . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Roman Soldier. Photograph of a model in the Central Museum, Mainz, Germany	PAGE 20
Roman Shield. Reconstruction from a shield found in the River Tyne, near South Shields, England	22
Pilum	23
Gladius	23
Centurion	25
Roman Horseman	27
Musical Instruments	28
Standard Bearer	29
Eagle of the Legion	29
Testudo	31
Roman Camp. From plan of Novaesium in Germany . . .	33
Siege of a Town	35
Siege Engines. (1) <i>Ariēs</i> . (2) <i>Vinea</i> . (3) Sketch showing <i>agger, turris</i> , and <i>vinea</i>	37
Siege Artillery. (1) <i>Catapulta</i> . (2) <i>Scorpiō</i> . (3) <i>Ballista</i> .	38
Roman Ship	39
Gallic Warrior	41
Carrus et Iumenta	45
Roman Bridge	51
Matara et Tragula	59
Gallic Coin	61
Head of a German	69
Sagittarius	85
Funditor	85

IN JANES'S *SECOND YEAR LATIN FOR SIGHT READING*

Beginning of the Third Book of the <i>Gallic War</i> , from a manuscript of the tenth century	9
Centurion	13
Navis Longa	27
Silver Denarius, struck 38-36 B.C.	35

Obsidio . . . . .	.
Signa . . . . .	.
Testudo . . . . .	.
Reindeer and European Elk . . . . .	.
The Defenses on Caesar's Rampart before Alesia . . . . .	.
Outline of Caesar's Works before Alesia . . . . .	.
Conjectural Appearance of Caesar's Works before Alesia . . . . .	.
Levis Armaturae Miles . . . . .	.
Glans . . . . .	.
Pompey . . . . .	.
Bridge of Boats . . . . .	.
Return of the Greeks from Salamis . . . . .	.
Citharae . . . . .	.
Sacrificium . . . . .	.
Amphorae . . . . .	.
Caduceus . . . . .	.

MAPS AND PLANS

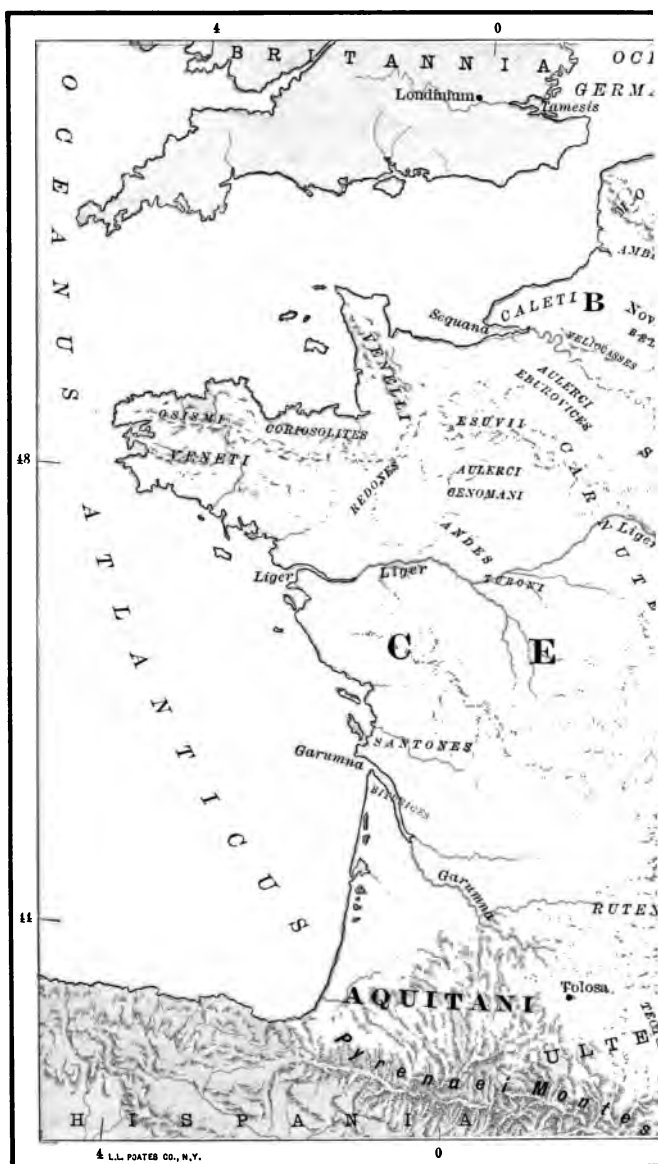
IN RIESS AND JANE'S *CAESAR*, BOOKS I-I

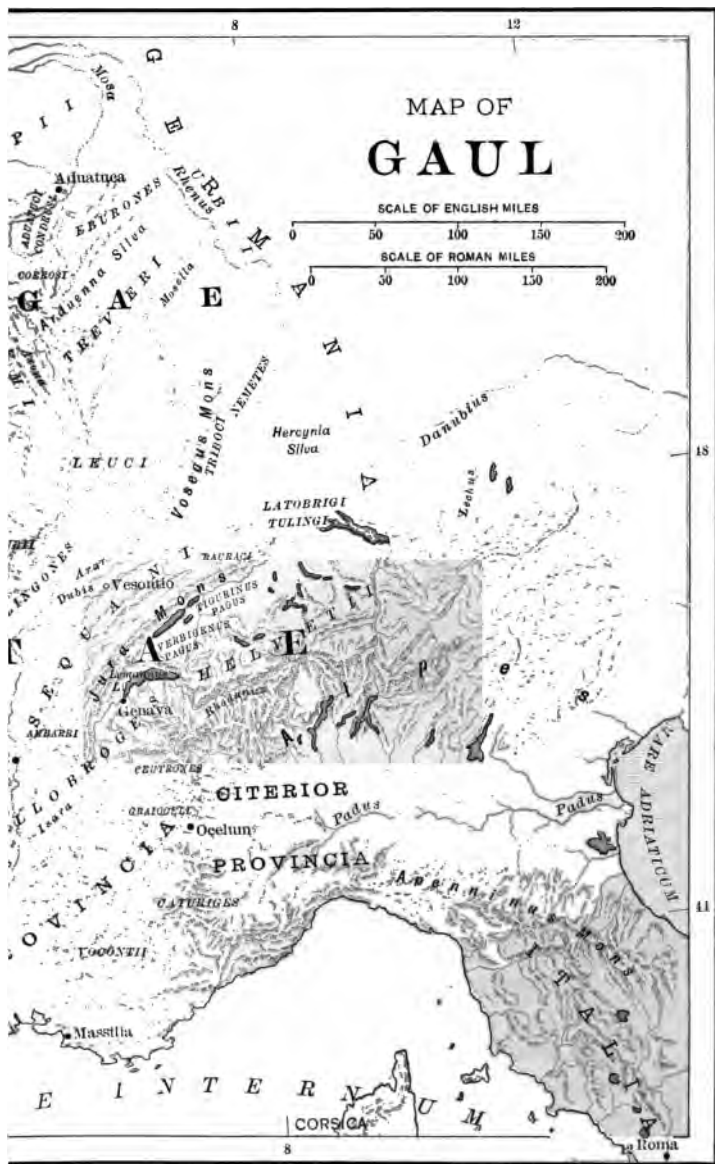
Gaul (double page) . . . . .	.
Campaign of B.C. 58	J
Fortifications along the Rhone . . . . .	.
Battle with the Helvetians . . . . .	.
Sketch of Vesontio . . . . .	.
Maneuvers of Ariovistus . . . . .	.
Campaign of B.C. 57 . . . . .	.
Battle on the Axona . . . . .	.
Battle with the Nervii . . . . .	.

IN JANE'S *SECOND YEAR LATIN FOR SIC* *READING*

Imperium Romanum (double page). Graecia and Cherson (inserts)	F1
The Siege of Alesia . . . . .	.
Macedonia and Thessaly . . . . .	.
Caesar's Siege of Pompey near Dyrrhachium . . . . .	.
The Piraeus . . . . .	.







INTRODUCTION

I. Caesar's Life.

A. *To the Governorship of Gaul*

1. Gaius Iulius Caesar was born at Rome on July 12, 100 B.C. His family belonged to the highest nobility of the city, tracing its origin back through Iulus, son of Aeneas, the founder of Lavinium, to the goddess Venus herself and incidentally, through this connection, to Romulus, the founder of Rome. In spite of this, however, the men of the family, for some generations before Gaius, had not held the highest office in the gift of the Roman nation, the consulship. Nor was that branch of the Julian house to which Gaius belonged closely allied with the ruling aristocracy. On the contrary, Caesar's aunt had married the great leader of the popular party, Marius, and this family tie was of marked consequence in shaping the political career of the young man.

2. He had hardly finished his early education, which had been completely under Greek influence, when—in 85 B.C.—his father died, just after the youth had been nominated by Marius to one of the highest priestly offices in Rome, the priesthood of Juppiter. In Roman fashion, he married very early, when barely seventeen years old. His bride was Cornelia, daughter of Cornelius Cinna, the successor of Marius. Thus his marriage bound the young man more closely still to the destinies of the popular party. Small wonder, then, that upon the restoration of the aristocratic power by Sulla he was one of the first to fall under the ban of the dictator. He was ordered

to divorce his young wife, but with a courage extreme rare among his contemporaries he refused to obey as was proscribed. Only through the earnest prayers of his friends was the dictator moved to pardon Caesar, although with deep insight into the young man's character, he said to have exclaimed, "In this one youth there are many Mariuses."

3. Caesar thought it wise to withdraw from the eyes of the ruler and, in order to gain some military experience entered the Roman army then fighting against King Mithradates in the East. There he so distinguished himself by personal bravery that he received the *corōna civic* a wreath given to those who, at the risk of their own lives had rescued a fellow soldier from death.

4. After the death of Sulla, Caesar returned to Rome and became a prominent member of the Roman bar, distinguishing himself as a relentless prosecutor of aristocrat evildoers. Probably to escape the enmity aroused by this attitude, he took refuge once more in the East, on this occasion in the island of Rhodes, where he studied eloquence under the Greek teachers, who at that time were the chief glory of that commonwealth. During his journey thither he fell into the hands of the pirates who thronged the waterways of the Mediterranean. The story goes that while he charmed these men by his wit and amiability, he did not hesitate to assert, in apparent jest, that as soon as he should be set free he would pursue them and would put them to death. This promise he kept. His studies at Rhodes were interrupted by the renewal of the Mithradatic War. Out of his own fortune he enlisted some troops and with them held the southwest of Asia Minor, Caria, and Lycia, against the powerful enemy.

5. In 73 B.C. he again returned to Rome and became

the successful candidate for the office of *pontifex*, a dignity in which he succeeded his mother's brother. In 68 he entered upon his political career, by filling the office of *quaestor*. After his wife's death, he, for a while, seemed to ally himself with the aristocrats, for he married Pompeia, Sulla's granddaughter. His quaestorship took him to Spain and he discharged its important financial duties with skill and devotion. Upon his return he supported Pompey, now his relative, for the command in the Mithradatic War, thus joining forces with the orator Cicero against the aristocrats. In 65 he held the office of *aedilis*, the duties of which consisted chiefly in supervising the grain supply and in winning the favor of the populace in the capital by lavish public spectacles. In 63 Caesar became the head of the pontifical College (*pontifex maximus*), and at the same time he was elected *praetor* for the year succeeding. He now declared himself openly the leader of the popular party. When, after the disclosure of the conspiracy of Catiline, the aristocrats had voted to inflict the extreme penalty on the conspirators, he had the courage to oppose these measures and proposed life imprisonment instead of the illegal execution of the defendants. After discharging the duties of the praetorship he went to Spain as governor. This province he managed with great skill, although not with exceeding honesty. On the contrary, he understood so well how to enrich himself at the expense of the provincials that upon his return he was sufficiently in funds to be able to pay off a debt of more than \$1,000,000, and still had left an ample fortune.

6. On his return to Rome, Caesar found himself confronted by a critical political situation. Pompey, a man a few years older than himself, had, by a peculiar chain of circumstances, achieved great fame as a military com-

with admirable energy Caesar raised first the militia, then a force of six legions, and succeeded in annihilating the greater part of the invaders and turning the rest back into Switzerland. The story of how, through this victory, he was led into a war with the Germans, how the Gauls of the north, fearing for their independence, rose up in arms only to be defeated, forms the content of the first two books of Caesar's Commentaries; the remainder tells of the complete subjugation of France, the repeated invasion by the Roman army of both Germany and Britain, and, finally, the last great, and almost successful, struggle of the Gauls for their freedom under their brave leader, Vercingetorix. When this man had finally been captured, Gallic independence was forever at an end, and Caesar could turn to more peaceful means of incorporating the conquered into the Roman Empire.

11. We can hardly overestimate the importance of the conquest of Gaul. For the first time in a century Rome ceased to face toward the east, and turned her aspirations toward the west, where she was destined to leave her abiding impress in the ultimate creation of the so-called Romance nations, Spain and France, whose languages still show the stamp of the centuries of Roman domination. Nay more, had not Rome, continuing in Caesar's footsteps, made the west her own, there would be to-day no Roman church and the world of western, that is, European and American, civilization would bear a totally different aspect.

C. Caesar as Ruler of Rome

12. Caesar was not destined to carry the pacification of Gaul to its completion. The alliance of the three triumvirs had been renewed at a conference at Lucca, in 56 B. C. Yet at the end of the five-year period for which it had been

concluded, Caesar and Pompey had become bitter enemies. The death of Crassus, who in 53 had fallen at Carrhae in Syria in a battle against the Parthians, had made it plain that the question must be decided whether Caesar or Pompey should become the sole ruler. The former, as yet, gave no indication of the wide range of his ambitions. He demanded merely permission to stand again for the consulship while still governor of Gaul—an unconstitutional proceeding, it is true, but the Roman constitution had by now often been set aside—and together with this the renewal of his governorship for another five years. When both demands had been refused, the senate in subservience to Pompey tried to weaken his forces,—they demanded that he detach some of his legions for a pretended war of vengeance against the Parthians,—and when all peace proposals on his part had been scornfully rejected, Caesar took the decisive step. He crossed the little stream Rubico, which formed the boundary between his province and Italy, and thus began the Civil War.

13. Pompey, pursued by Caesar's troops, fled, first to Brundisium in the southeast of Italy, and later to Greece; while Caesar, preferring to secure his rear before pursuing, returned to Rome, established there a provisional government of his own, and then set out to defeat Pompey's lieutenants in the latter's official province, Spain. After a difficult but successful campaign, he returned, crossed to Greece, and confronted his adversary, first at Dyrrhachium on the west coast, where he was unsuccessful, and a few months later on the plain of Pharsalus in Thessaly. There Pompey was so thoroughly defeated that he took ship for Egypt, hoping for a refuge with its boy king whom in times of distress he had befriended. But he was treacherously betrayed by Ptolemy, and when Caesar, in hasty pursuit,

color his narrative in such a manner that he appears to have been drawn into every one of his wars against his enemies and to have undertaken them only to defend and to guard the Roman state and its allies. Yet, even his temporary expeditions, torn as they were by conflicting emotions of love and hatred, bestowed unanimous admiration upon the charm of his narrative. The Commentaries, however, became popular in the way in which the great classical Roman literature intertwined themselves with the lives of the Romans. They were never used by the Roman schoolbook.

17. Space permits us merely to mention, in passing, that there are still extant other writings by Caesar, dealing with the Civil War (three books), the campaigns in Alexandria in Africa, and in Spain. The last three are Caesar's indirectly, in so far as they are based upon his notes. The real authors are to be sought among the officers of his army.

III. Caesar the Man.

18. No book can claim to be great, unless in reading it we clearly discern the character of the man who composed it. Judged by this standard, Caesar's Commentaries justly lay claim to greatness. His character, both in his public and private relations, is revealed in his writings. As a general, he was resourceful, energetic but cautious, persistent, brave, and always ready to learn both from his own mistakes and those of his subordinates or of the enemy. As a relentless fighter, he knew, true statesman as he was, to temper severity with clemency, when by its measure he might gain the love of those whom he had taught the superiority of the Roman arms. And yet, this man, who speaks of his mercy as well known, could punish resistance or treachery with a cruelty which seems a blot on his

character, but which must be credited to the necessity imposed upon a conqueror who is far from the base of national support. He knew and loved his soldiers, and by strict but just discipline, as well as by indulgence at the right moment, he had ensured a loyalty and devotion on their part, which more than once won the day for him when all seemed lost. With all his tireless energy and devotion to duty he possessed a keen sense of humor and a gift of making warm personal friends, not only among his Roman associates, but also among the Gauls whom he ruled and conquered. Nothing, perhaps, is more marvelous than that, after eight years of incessant warfare, and only one year after a rebellion which had threatened to bury the conqueror amid the ruins of his conquest, he could leave Gaul, without fear of a new revolt, never to set foot in it again. In fact, a generation after the conquest the country had become thoroughly Romanized, and within a century it was fitted to receive from the emperor Claudius full Roman citizenship.

19. As Caesar stands revealed in his writings, so he is shown in his portraits, of which several have survived to our own times. The high forehead — he had early become bald and later loved to hide this blemish under a laurel wreath — shows the deep and clear thinker, the bold eye reveals the keen glance which penetrated and read the souls of men. The thin but sensitive lips betray the orator and the wit, but also the man who appreciated the good things of life, while the spare but lithe frame befits the soldier of many campaigns.

20. Such in image and in word Caesar stands before us, the greatest Roman of the end of the republic. Much hated and much loved, he has been made the object of immoderate praise and immoderate abuse, both among an-

cients and moderns. But, if his admirers have exaggerated his good traits no less than his adversaries have over-
the faults of his nature, in one thing friend and foe

and that is praise of general, the statesman the writer. He stands as a solitary imposing figure at the portal leading from the republican to imperial type and model of ages.



ROMAN SOLDIER.

(Photograph of a model in the Central Museum, Mainz, Germany.)

IV. The Roman Army

21. Originally a militia of the citizens in times of war but otherwise engaged in the peaceful pursuits of agriculture and commerce, the Roman army had undergone great changes about two generations before Caesar's ascendancy. When, in the time of Marius, the citizens' militia had proved insufficient to the demands of more and prolonged warfare, his great military genius had turned the militia into a professional body, still nominally

cruited from among the citizens, but enlisted for a period of twenty years and thoroughly drilled in a rigid system of tactics.

22. The army consisted of **infantry** (*mīlitēs, peditēs*) and of **cavalry** (*equitēs*). The former was divided into soldiers of the legions (*legiōnārii*) and allies (*auxilia*).

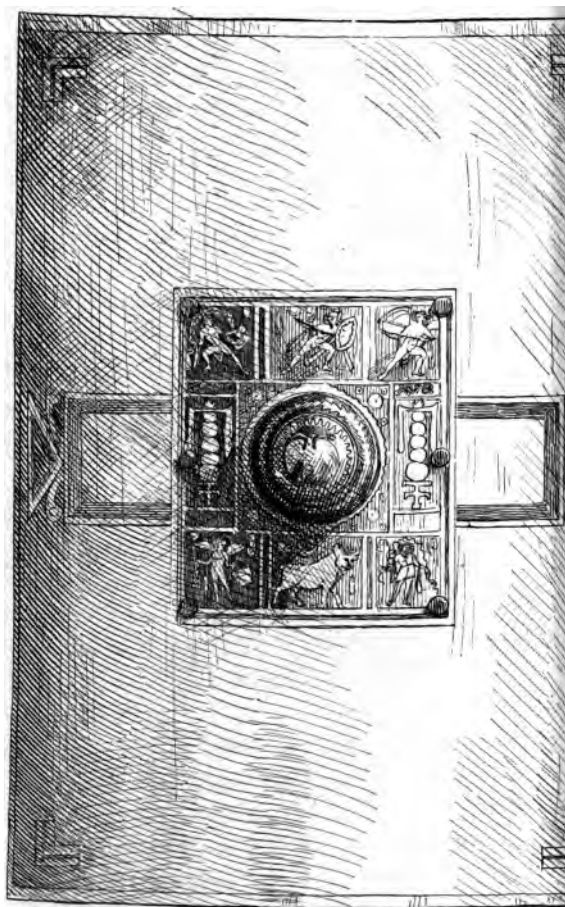
23. The **legiōnārius** was a citizen, who by the oath of allegiance (*sacrāmentum*) enlisted for twenty years. This gave him the right to carry arms and the claim to wages (*stīpendium*) and a pension (*praemia militāria*). Caesar raised the annual pay of the private from 120 to 225 *dēnārii* (\$50), of the subaltern from 250 to 450 *dēnārii* (\$100). This was paid three times a year, and after deducting certain moneys for supplies furnished, the remainder was — at least in imperial times — invested for the soldier's benefit. The total saved, together with gifts on the part of the general and the soldier's share in the booty, was paid to him when he was honorably discharged, and in addition he received a special reward, either in cash or in the form of a land grant.

24. The **unit of the army** was the *legion* — theoretically 6000 men strong, but in fact generally numbering about 4000, divided as follows :

1 *legiō* = 10 *cohortēs* = 30 *manipulī* = 60 *centuriae*.

After eight years of service a legion earned the honorary title of *legiō veterāna* ; until then it was known, first as a body of recruits (*tirōnēs*), and then as newly enrolled (*proximē cōscripta*). The legions were officially numbered throughout the whole army. The consuls commanded numbers I–IV. Caesar began with the seventh legion ; by enrollment he reached number XV, and at the last he also had *legiō I* under his command, *ten* legions all together.

25. The soldier was **dressed** in high boots (*caligae*), a



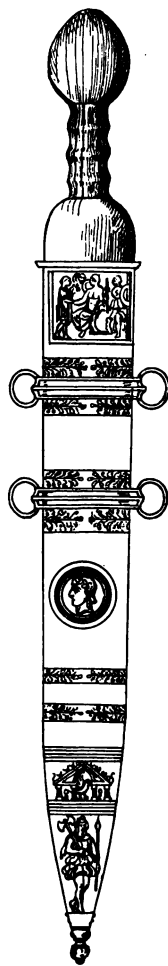
ROMAN SHIELD.

(Reconstruction from a shield found in the River Tyne,
near South Shields, England.)

thick shirtlike garment (*tūnica*), and a short cloak (*sagum*) fastened by a safety pin on the right shoulder. The tunic was belted to hold it close. In very cold weather he wore also a thick hooded cloak. His head was protected by a helmet (*galea*), ornamented with a crest (*crista*) of three feathers. On the march the helmet was carried over the right shoulder. He also had a leather cuirass (*lōrica*) and a shield (*scūtum*), four-cornered and oblong, curved like a half cylinder. This shield was made of two layers of wood covered with canvas or skin, and reënforced with metal strips. The center was further strengthened by a boss (*umbō*), from which metal strips radiated to the corners, forming the representation of a thunderbolt. Leather covers protected the shield on the march and saved the labor of polishing. They were taken off immediately before going into battle. On the march the shield was carried by means of a strap, commonly on the back.

26. The **weapons of attack** were two. The javelin (*pīlum*) was about six feet long, of which one third to one half was formed by the iron point, a thin rod of iron with

PILUM. a steel head, while the shaft itself



GLADIUS.

was of heavy wood. It could be fetched back, in case of a miss, by means of a leather strap fastened to its shaft. The shaft ended in a short pointed metal shoe, by which it could be rammed into the ground when the army camped. But the principal weapon was a short, straight sword (*gladius*), two-edged and pointed and used chiefly thrusting. Contrary to our custom, it was carried on the right side by means of a belt from the left shoulder to the right hip.

27. **On the march** the soldier was burdened not only with his arms, but also with a large amount of baggage (*sarcinae*), several posts for the fortifying of the camp, saws, spades, hatchets, a sickle for the cutting of forage, a cooking spit, a pot, and a cup. In addition to this he carried a war ration of three days' grain, and on long marches, when the supply train was left behind, he carried 20 days' biscuit. All together he was burdened (*impeditus*) with about 44 pounds' weight. To enable him to transport all this, he was equipped with a forked stick to which the poles, etc., were tied and which he carried over his shoulder. The whole burden, of course, was always laid aside (*expeditus*) before the army went into battle.

28. The great mass of **supplies**, also the tents and siege engines (*impedimenta*), were transported with their attendants on wagons and pack animals, and accompanied by a large number of general servants (*calōnēs*).

29. The army was also accompanied by **traders**, who bought up the booty and prisoners, and by **hucksters**. These, however, were not allowed inside the camp and had to stop outside the rear gate.

30. The **immediate command** of the soldiers was in the hands of the *centuriōnēs*, heads of the *centuriae*. These men had risen from the ranks and could not attain

higher position. The sixty centurions in each legion ranked according to the number of the cohorts, so that the six centurions of the first cohort — *primi pili* — out-ranked all others and were privileged to take part in the deliberations of the council of war. They were distinguished by their uniform and by carrying a cane, of which they made a liberal use in disciplining the soldiers.



31. Between the centurions and the privates there were several **petty officers**, among whom the standard bearers (*signiferi*) were the most important. They had to be men of great courage, since the standards, and especially that of the legion, the eagle, were looked upon as holy and their loss was an irreparable disgrace.

32. The **staff officers** began with the *tribūnī militum*, six to a legion and holding command in rotation, each for two months. In Caesar's army these men were appointed by him from among the young Romans in his suite, and were, therefore, not always distinguished for their military excellence. The great panic before the encounter with Ariovistus was started by these young men.

33. Directly under the commander in chief were the general officers, *lēgātī*, who were nominated by the Roman

senate. Caesar, in the battle with Ariovistus, for the first time introduced the custom of placing them in command of a legion. At that time he had only five *légati* therefore was compelled to place one legion under his master-general, the *quaestor*. The highest in rank among the *légati* had the title *prō praetore*, and commanded the army during the absence of the commander in chief.

34. All staff officers were distinguished by their **uniform** chiefly by a red tunic, and by a cuirass made of metal instead of leather.

35. The **commander in chief** (*dux*) wore the *paludamentum*, a cloak of purple color.

36. The **finances** of the army were in the hands of the paymaster-general, *quaestor*, who was elected by the people while the engineer corps of the army was directly under the supervision of the *praefectus fabrum*, who in Caesar's camp also acted as his confidential secretary.

37. The *auxilia*, who were recruited among non-citizens, furnished the light-armed troops and the main body of cavalry. The foot soldiers among them served chiefly as slingers and archers, or were equipped with their native arms. From their usual position at the right and left wings of the army in battle line they were also known as *ala*. Caesar's cavalry consisted largely of Gauls, and after the first year, when Caesar had learned to appreciate the skill, of hired Germans as well. They were commanded by native officers under a Roman staff commander, *praefectus equitum*, and were divided into troops (*turmae*) of about 80 men each.

38. The **bodyguard** of the commander was formed into the *cohors praetoria*, a body of picked men who received 50 per cent more pay than the ordinary privates.

39. The army also numbered in its ranks **musicians**, who

were employed to give the necessary signals. The instruments used were the *tuba*, a straight wind instrument, about three feet long, used chiefly for summons to attack or to retreat, a signal repeated for each detachment on the *cornū*, an almost circular instrument. The signal for relieving the watches was given on the *būcina*. Every even-



ROMAN HORSEMAN.

ing after supper the *classicum* or "taps" was sounded, to mark the beginning of night service.

40. The soldiers, however, placed their chief reliance for the commands to be given in the standards (*sīgna*). Each legion had a silver eagle (*aquila*) placed on a cross-piece on top of a pole. This eagle, carried by the *aquilifer*, was in charge of the *senior primus pilus* and was always kept in the quarters of the commander of the legion. The cohort had no standard, but each *manipulus* had one,



MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS.



STANDARD BEARER.

consisting of a pole topped by a crosspiece with ribbons and medals fastened to the pole. The auxiliaries, too, had their *signa*, sometimes known as *vexilla*, a piece of cloth fastened to a crosspiece on top of a pole. Such *vexilla* were also



EAGLE OF THE LEGION.

carried by any detached body of troops. In addition, there was a scarlet *vexillum*, displayed over the commander's tent (*vexillum prapōnere*) when the men were to form under arms. On the march, the standards were carried in the van, but in battle they were placed behind the last line. In camp, the colors were massed next to headquarters, near a little chapel.

41. The battle order was commonly a triple line (*aciēs triplex*) for each legion, 4, 3, 3 cohorts. In each cohort the maniples stood side by side and in each maniple the *centuriae* behind each other, thus:

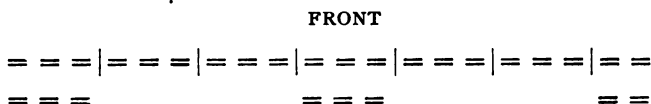
FRONT

```

== == ==      == == ==      == == ==      == == ==
      == == ==      == == ==      == == ==
== == ==      == == ==      == == ==      == == ==

```

the intervals between the cohorts being equal to the space filled by a cohort. After the first discharge, the second line moved up into the vacant spaces and a single line of seven cohorts was formed, thus :



while the third line remained in reserve.

FRONT

*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*
*	*	*	*

The lines seem to have had a depth of 4 men. The individual soldiers occupied about 3 feet each, while a space of 3 feet separated the ranks, as shown in the diagram.

42. The tactics were always offensive. When a possible position was taken on a gentle slope, in order to increase the momentum of charge. An address by the general (*ca. tatiō*) after the troops were drawn up (*ad instruere*) preceded the action. Then the countersign was passed along the ranks and the *tuba* gave signal to charge. First the soldiers threw their spears then they followed this up with a sword charge, which was repeated again and again, until one of the two armies gave way. As long as the men retreated in an orderly fashion, facing the enemy (*pedem referre*), the victory might still be regained, but to turn around (*terga vertere*) usually meant a total rout. In an uphill battle soldiers often formed a roof of shields (*testūdō*). The first line held their shields in front, while the others raised the shields over their heads so as to overlap each other. This formation was also used in storming a fortified position.



TESTUDO.

43. On the march the army was divided into a van (*agmen primum*), the main body (*agmen*), and a rear guard (*agmen novissimum*), while scouts and the cavalry preceded and followed and also screened the sides of the marching column.

44. A detachment of centurions and surveyors, under the command of a tribune, preceded the column at a considerable distance, in order to select and lay out the camp for the end of the day.

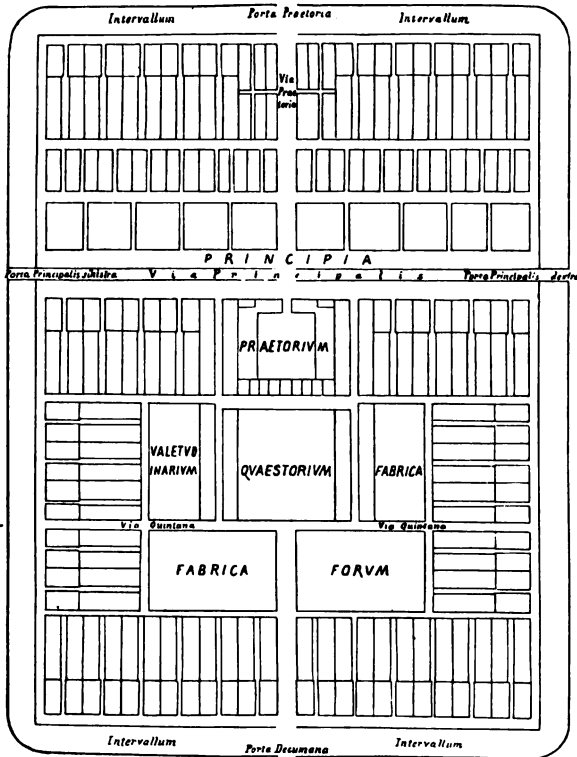
45. The **baggage train** of each legion commonly followed immediately in its rear, but when the army was the enemy, three fourths of the soldiers, *sub sarcinīs*, ceded, and one fourth followed, the train of the w army. In these circumstances, where the territory mitted it, the whole body marched in battle line.

46. The **length of the march** usually amounted to a 12 to 15 miles (*iter iūstum*), interrupted by halts for There were also rest days. When speed was param forced marches (*magna itinera*) of over 20 miles: *maxima itinera* of about 25 miles, were resorted to, at critical times even night marches were demande the soldiers.

47. When the army reached the spot selected, the for each body of troops as well as the lines of the ran and the places for the gates had already been marke flags and the soldiers could at once go to work, **but the camp** (*castra mūnīre*).

48. Whenever possible, the camp was built in the of a **rectangle** with rounded corners. The earth for b ing the rampart was secured by making a trench throwing the excavated earth to the inside. But ti for strengthening the rampart and sods to cover its had to be fetched from some distance. In the neig hood of the enemy, this was, of course, done unde protection of a guard and the soldiers kept their cuir on. The posts which each soldier carried were fast to the top of the rampart and formed a stockade, which strengthened by wooden turrets erected at regular i vals. The gates, of which there were four, one ir middle of each side, were protected by a fronting ran (*clāvicula*), which compelled all strangers to appi them with the unprotected (right) side facing the sol

A space of 200 feet in width was left unoccupied behind the rampart so as to give free communication all around. The front gate (*porta praetoria*) was connected with the



ROMAN CAMP.

(From plan of Novaesium in Germany.)

rear gate (*porta decumana*) by a road 50 feet wide (*cardo*, *via decumana*), which was broken at the center by the *praetorium* and *quaestorium*. As the camp was generally located on the slope of a hill, the road ascended from the

front to the rear, thus making a successful attack difficult. About midway, the *via decumāna* was intersected by another road, 100 feet wide (*via principālis*), connecting the two side gates (*porta principālis dextra, porta principālis sinistra*). On this street headquarters fronted. In the middle of the *via decumāna* was an altar, while immediately behind it was the general's tent (*praetorium*) to the right and left of which the *cohors praetoria* camp. To the right was the quaestor's tent, while in the rear were workshops and the guardhouse. Narrower streets divided the tents of the *centuriae* and the cohorts, so arranged that they stood back to back between the streets. In short, the camp very much resembled, imitated in the plan of a Roman city. The tents (*pellēs, tentabernācula*) were made of leather and housed each a group of ten men.

49. At all times the camp was well patrolled, in reliefs by day and in four watches by night, inspected by the tribunes, while on each side there were strong outposts (*stationēs*). When, in the morning, camp was broken (*castra movēre*), three signals were given: at the first the men packed their baggage and struck tents, at the second the carts and pack animals were loaded, at the third the march began.

50. In times of peace, or in winter quarters, the soldiers were subject to **incessant drill**, both in marching and in the use of their arms. Maneuvers formed a regular part of their practice, and three times a month they were exercised on a practice march of ten miles.

51. The **discipline** was severe and the **punishments** (lashes, degradation, dishonorable discharge, and execution) were frequent and swift. On the other hand, merit was rewarded by public commendation, money gifts, promotion.

increased pay and rations, and by military decorations. The latter (*īnsignia*) consisted of wreaths of various kinds, among which the most highly prized were an oak wreath (*corōna cīvica*), given for the rescue of a comrade in the face



SIEGE OF A TOWN.

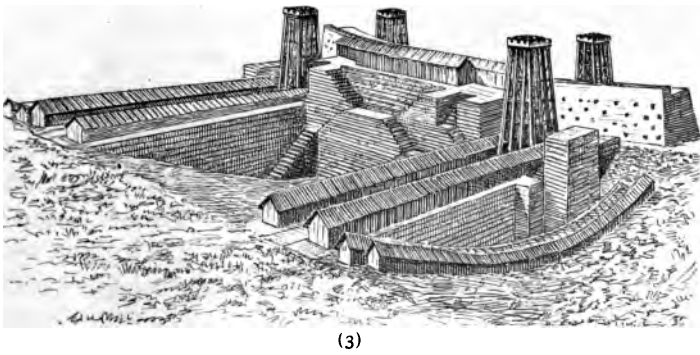
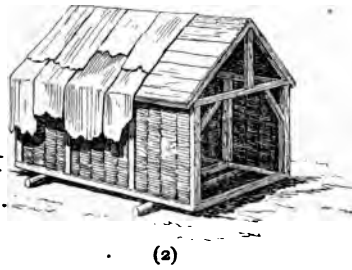
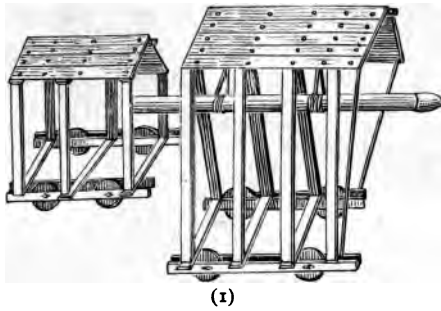
of an enemy, and a golden crown (*corōna mūrālis*) for the man who first scaled the wall of an enemy's fortress. In addition, the men received medals (*phalerae*) which they wore fastened to their cuirasses (see illustration on p. 25).

52. In contrast to the field operations, which were carried on with great rapidity, the capture of a fortified town, unless

it could be taken by surprise (*ex itinere oppugnāre*), slow and tedious process. First the ground was leveled to give easier access to the siege engines. This was done by huge movable shields (*plutei*). Then an *agger* or way was constructed of beams, stones, earth, etc. It commenced at a distance and gradually rose until it equaled in height that of the city wall. As it approached this, the soldiers worked under the protection of sheds of strong timbers on rollers, covered with skins soaked in water, so as to frustrate any attempt on the part of the beleaguered to set them on fire. When the *agger* had been extended across the moat, a movable tower (*ambulātōria*), several stories in height and furnished with artillery and drawbridges, was brought up, or, if the efforts of the defenders prevented this, the battering ram was brought into play. Such a ram consisted of a tree 60 to 100 feet long, with an iron ram's head in front, which was suspended from the ceiling of a *vinea* and swung against the walls by means of ropes. Until this ram had approached the walls, the townspeople might ask for terms of surrender, but after that the town, even if surrendered, was considered to have been taken by storm (*expugnāre*) and its inhabitants were killed or sold into slavery.

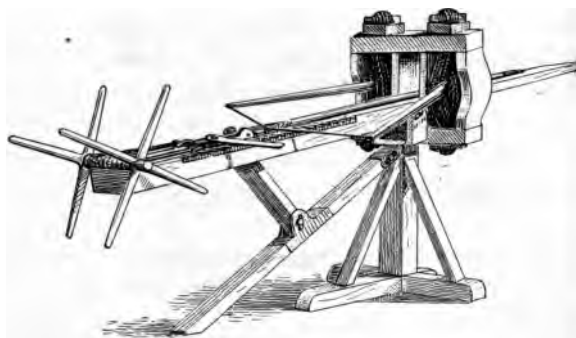
53. Where siege works were considered impossible on account of the difficulty of the ground, the still more tedious process of starving the town by a **blockade** (*obsessio*) was employed.

54. The **artillery** (*t tormenta*) were used by Caesar the first time in field operations, largely, however, for defensive purposes. They were of two kinds, according to whether they shot stones (*ballista*) or beams (*cata*), but were both constructed on the same principle.

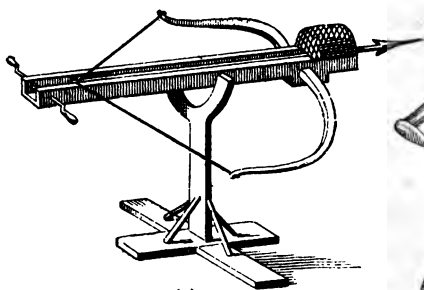


SIEGE ENGINES.

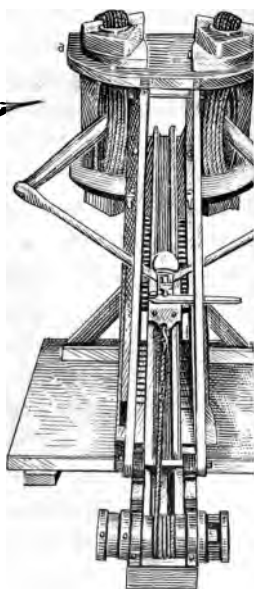
(1) *Ariës*. (2) *Vineæ*. (3) Sketch showing *agger*, *turris*, and *vineæ*.



(1)



(2)



(3)

SIEGE ARTILLERY.

(1) *Catapulta*. (2) *Scorpiö*. (3) *Ballista*.

were worked by means of twisted ropes (*torques*) which, when released, shot their missile with great force and as far as 300 feet. A lighter weapon, the *scorpiō*, could be handled by one man.

55. The **Roman navy** consisted of two kinds of vessels, the galleys (*nāvēs longae*) and the dispatch boats. The



ROMAN SHIP.

galleys were open, rather long and narrow, and were propelled by oars, assisted by the hoisting of a sail when the wind was favorable. The rowers were arranged in tiers or rows, one above the other. The steering was done by means of sweeps, huge paddles, one on each side of the stern. The chief strength of the galleys, which otherwise were very frail vessels, lay in their ram (*rōstrum*), a heavy piece of timber tipped with iron or bronze, at or under the water line. In an engagement the aim was

to cripple the hostile ship either by ramming it or by bringing one side of its oarage by driving one's vessel over it. Roman galleys often carried collapsible towers with artillery in them, or boarding bridges. By means of the latter the galley was fastened to the enemy's vessel, and the contest thus turned into one of military strength, in which the complement of regular soldiers carried by the galley generally proved superior to the sailors of the enemy. Scouting was done by dispatch boats (*nāvēs actuāres*). Merchant vessels (*nāvēs onerariae*) of all kinds were pressed to carry the troops and supplies where a landing on hostile soil was intended.

V. The Gallic Civilization.

56. The Gauls were by no means a nation of savages though far less advanced in civilization than their conquerors. They were an agricultural people, and generally live in open villages or in fortified towns. Their houses were for the most part circular, with thatch roofs. Politically they were divided into a large number of tribes, which were governed by their nobles. In some instances they lived under kings, and often the great landholders intrigued to attain royal dignity. There was little unity among the tribes which were jealous of one another's prosperity. At Caesar's time, however, matters had somewhat crystallized so that we may distinguish the three parts of which Gaul speaks, Celts, Aquitanians, and Belgians. Of these, the Aquitanians seem to have been least civilized; certainly they were of the least importance politically. The Belgians seem to have been bound together by a loose confederation but this did not prove itself strong enough when the invader came, and the tribes fell one by one into his hands. The Celts were the most progressive of the three divisions.

Through long contact with the Greek settlers of Massilia, they had even acquired the art of writing, using a modification of the Greek alphabet. There were among them two factions, one led by the *Aeduī*, the other by the *Arvernī*.



GALLIC WARRIOR.

Both of these factions desired the sole control, but as neither was strong enough, they leaned on foreign help, — the *Arvernī* on the Germans, the *Aeduī* on the Romans, — thus furnishing both foreign nations the longed-for opportunity to conquer the country.

57. All the Gauls, including the inhabitants of Britain,

who were related to the continental Gauls, had the common bond of religion, a rather obscure worship of several divinities, directed by a caste of learned priests, the Druids, and of a stern and forbidding nature. It was certainly disfigured by the custom of human sacrifices, which were made chiefly as burnt offerings.

58. **As soldiers**, the Gauls were brave and enthusiastic but they lacked the power of prolonged resistance. Their defeat commonly sufficed to bring about the surrender of the tribe. They fought in a rude sort of battle line, a square (*phalanx*), often strengthened by a bulwark of waggons or carts. Their camps generally were made in the form of a circle. They wore no protective armor, save a rude helmet made of the heads of wild animals, and shields of wicker. They employed several kinds of javelins (*manubria*), and a long bronze saber for hewing. The tribes of northwestern Gaul, especially the *Venetī* (Vendée), were good sailors, skilled in maneuvering their sailing vessels. These were built with special regard to the nature of the rough sea of the Bay of Biscay, and for a while offered a stout resistance to Roman attack.





C. IULII CAESARIS
RERUM GESTARUM
BELLI GALLICI

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

Gaul and its inhabitants.

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quarum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Cetae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximique sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proellis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētīis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem

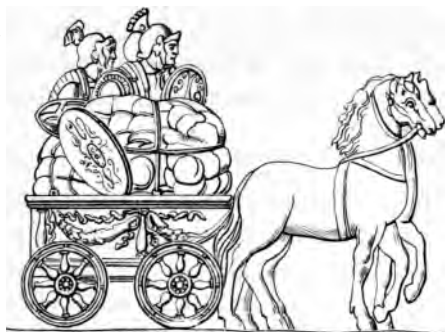
sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēn montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispār pertinet; spectat inter **occāsum** sōlis et septentrionē

The conspiracy of Orgetorix, the Helvetian; his death.

25 2. Apud Helvētiōs longē **nōbilissimus** fuit et dī mus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōnsuli
rēgnī cupiditāte **inductus** coniūratiōnem **nōbilitātis**
et civitāti **persuāsit** ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus c
exirent: Perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus **praestā**
30 **tōtius** Galliae **imperio** **potiri**. Id hōc **facilius** iīs per sit, quod **undique** loci **nātūrā** Helvētiī continentur:
ex parte flūmine Rhēnō. **lātissimō** atque **altissimō**,
agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit; **alterā** ex p
monte Iūrā **altissimō**, quī est inter Sēquanōs et H
35 tiōs; **tertiā** **lacū** Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī
vinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. His **rēbus** fi
ut et minus **lātē** **vagārentur** et minus facile **finit**
bellum **inferre** **possent**; quā ex parte **hominēs** **belli**
cupidi **magnō** dolore afficiēbantur. **Prō** **multitūdine** **au**
40 **hominum** et **prō** glōriā belli atque fortitudinis **angu**
sē finēs **habēre** arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem **n**
passuum CXXL, in **lātitudinem** CLXXX **patēbant**.

3. His **rēbus** **adducti** et **auctoritāte** Orgetorigis
mōti **cōstituērunt** ea quae ad **proficiscendum** pertinē
45 **comparāre**, iūmentōrum et **carrōrum** **quam** maximum
merum coēmere, sēmentēs **quam** maximās facere, u
itinere cōpia **frūmenti** suppeteret, cum proximis civi
bus **pācem** et **amicitiā** **cōfirmāre**. Ad eās rēs c
ciendās biennium sibi **satis** esse **dūxērunt**; in tert
50 **annum** **profectionem** lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs
ficiendās Orgetorix **dēligitur**. Is sibi **lēgatiōnem**
civitātēs **suscipit**. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, C

mantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populi Rōmānī



CARRUS ET IUMENTA.

55 **amicus** appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; **itemque** Dumnorigī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, quī eō tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī **acceptus** erat, ut **idem** cōnārētur persuādet, eiue **filiam** suam in māttrimōnium
60 **dat**. Perfacile factū esse illis **probat** cōnāta **perficere**, proptereā quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: **Nōn** esse dubium **quān** tōtīus Galliae plūrimū Helvētīi possent: sē suis cōpiīs suōque **exercitū** illis rēgna **conciliātūrum** cōnfirmat. Hāc **ōrātiōne** adducti inter sē
65 **fidem** et **iūs iūrandum** dant et rēgnō occupātō **per** trēs potentissimōs ac **firmissimōs** populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīri posse **spērānt**.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētīis per indicium **ēnūntiāta**. **Mōribus** suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere **coēgērunt**; **70** **damnātum** poenam **sequi oportēbat**, ut **ignī** cremārētur. **Diē** cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia **decem**, undique coēgit, et omnēs **clientēs** obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum

magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem **condūxit**; per
 75 **nē** causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās **ob** eam
incitāta armis iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, mult-
 nemque hominum ex agrīs **magistrātūs** cōgerent
 getorix mortuus est; **neque** abest **suspiciō**, ut He
 arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi **mortem** cōsciverit.

The Helvetians prepare to emigrate; their choice of routes.

80 5. **Post** eius mortem **nihilō** minus Helvētīi id
 cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis ex
Ubi iam sē ad eam rem **parātōs** esse arbitrātī sunt, **op**
 sua omnia, numerō ad **duodecim**, **vicōs** ad **quadringe**.
 reliqua **privāta aedificia incendunt**; frūmentum oī
 85 praeter quod sēcum **portātūrī** erant, combūrunt, ut
mun reditiōnis **spē sublātā**, parātiōrēs ad omnia **peri**
subeunda essent; trium **mēnsium** molita cibāria
quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauraci
 Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimis uti eōdem **ūsī cōns**
 90 oppidīs suis vicisque exustis, ūnā cum iis proficiscan
 Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in ag
 Nōricum **trānsierant** Nōrēiamque **oppugnābant**, **rece**
 ad sē **sociōs** sibi asciscunt.

6. Erant **omnīnō** itinera **duo** quibus itineribus de
 95 exire possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et diffi
 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, **vix** quā **sin**,
 carri dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendē
 ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent: alterum per
 vinciam nostram, multō facilius atque **expeditius**, p
 100 tereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum,
 nūper **pācātī** erant, Rhodanus **fluit**, isque **nōnnūllis** l
vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum
 proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex
 oppidō **pōns** ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus s

105 **vel** persuāsūrōs, quod **nōndum** bonō animō in populum
Rōmānum **vidērentur**, **existimābant**, vel **vī** coāctūrōs ut
per suōs finēs eōs **ire** **paterentur**. Omnibus rēbus ad
profectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt quā diē ad **ripam**
Rhodani omnēs **conveniant**. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal.
110 Aprīl., L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

Caesar hurries to Gaul; he parleys with the Helvetians.

7. Caesari cum id **nūntiātum** essent, eōs per prōvinciam
nostram iter facere cōnārī, **mātūrat** ab urbe proficiscī, et
quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam **ulteriōrem**
contendit et ad Genavam **pervenit**. Prōvinciae tōti quam
115 maximum potest **militum** numerum **imperat** (erat omnīnō
in Galliā ulteriōre **legiō** ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam
iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius **adventū** Helvētīi **certiōrēs**
facti sunt, **lēgātōs** ad eum **mittunt**, nōbilissimōs civitātis,
cuius **lēgatiōnis** Nammēius et Verucloetius **principem**
120 locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sibi esse in animō **sine**
ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod
aliud iter habērent **nūllum**; **rogāre** ut eius **voluntāte** id
sibi facere **liceat**. Caesar, quod **memoriā** **tenēbat** L.
Cassium cōsulem **occisum** exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis
125 **pulsum** et sub iugum missum, **concēdendum** nōn **putābat**;
neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā **facultāte** per prōvin-
ciam itineris faciundī, **temperātūrōs** ab **iniuriā** et maleficiō
existimābat. **Tamen**, ut **spatium** **intercēdere** posset, **dum**
militēs quōs imperāverat **convenirent**, **lēgātis** **respondit**
130 diem sē ad dēliberandum **sūmptūrum**; **sī** **quid** **vellent**,
ad Id. Aprīl. **reverterentur**.

Caesar fortifies the passes and repulses the enemy.

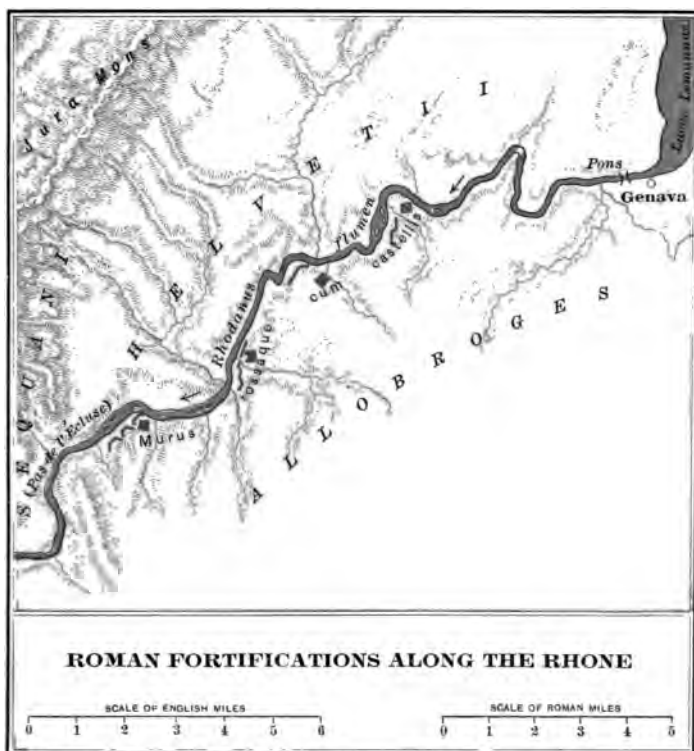
8. **Intereā** eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque
quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in

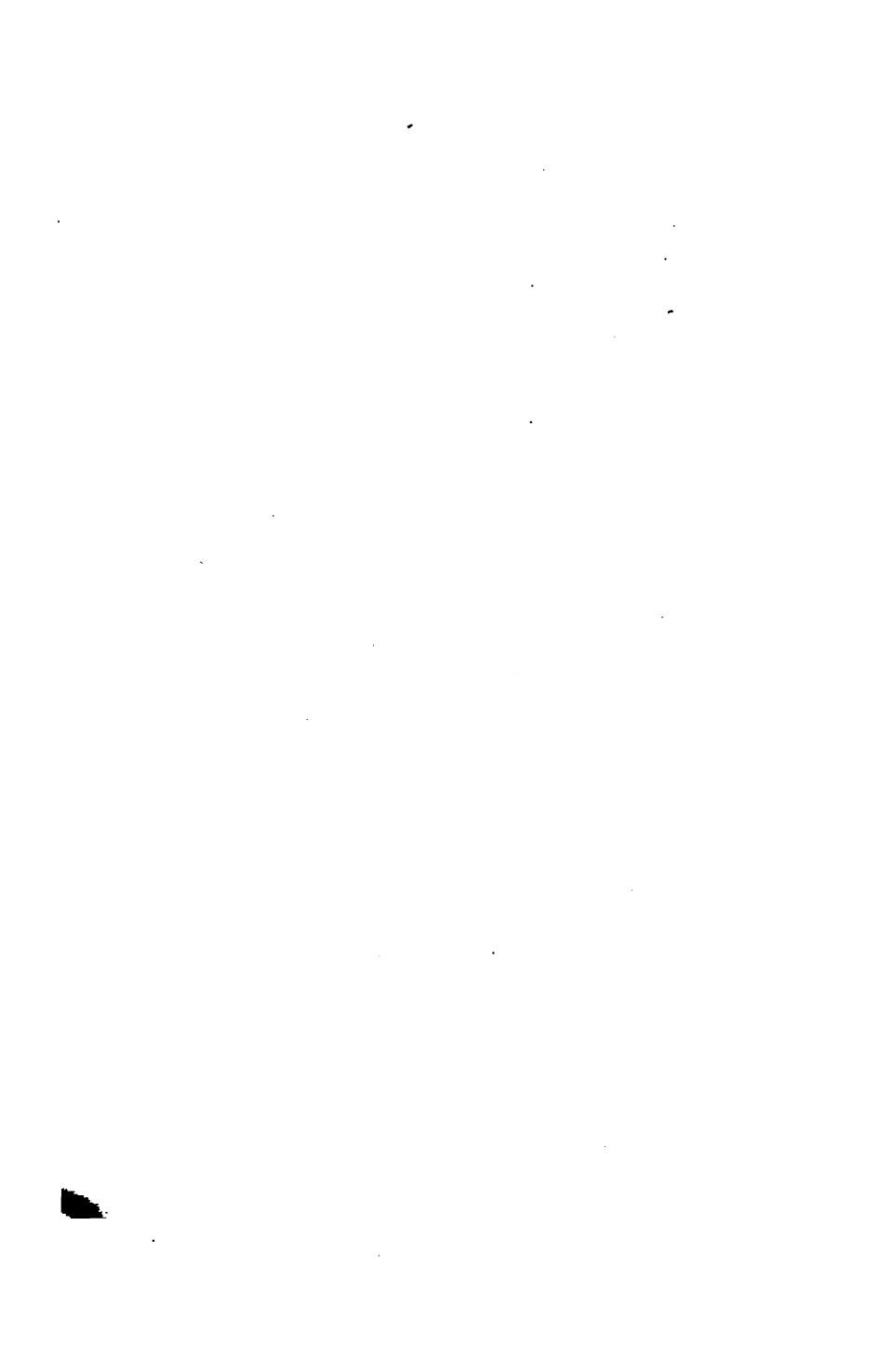
flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, qui
 13; Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuū
mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque per
 Eō opere perfectō **praesidia dispōnit**, castella comi
 quō facilius, si sē **invitō** trānsire cōnentur, proi
 possit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis
 140 et lēgāti ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre ēt ex
 populi Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dar
 si vim facere cōnentur, prohibētūrum **ostendit**. H
 eā spē **dēiecti**, **nāvibus iūctis ratibusque compli**
factis, alii vadis Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flū
 145 erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius **noctū** si perrui
 possent cōnāti, operis **mūnitiōne** et militum **concu**
tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū **dēstitērunt**.

The Helvetians negotiate with the Sequanians; Caesar levies an

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs **via**, quā Sē
 invitīs **propter angustias** ire nōn poterant. Hīs cui
 150 **sponte** persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumno
 Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātore ā Sēquanīs **im**
rent. Dumnorix **grātiā** et largitiōne apud Sēq
 plūrimum poterat et Helvētiis erat amicus, quod
 civitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxer
 155 cupiditatē rēgni adductus **novis** rēbus **studēbat** et
 plūrimās civitatēs suō **beneficiō** habere obstrictās vo
Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per
 suos Helvētiōs ire patiantur, **obsidēsque** uti inter
 dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohib
 160 Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant.

10. Caesari **renūntiātur** Helvētiis esse in anim
 agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum
 facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt,
 civitās est in prōvinciā. Id si fieret, **intellegēbat** n





165 cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs,
 populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locis patentibus maximēque
frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei mūni-
 tiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum **praeficit**; ipse
 in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque **ibi**
 170 legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs, quae **circum** Aquilēiam **hiemā-**
bant, ex **hibernis** **ēdūcit**, et quā proximum iter in ulteri-
 ōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat cum his **quīnque** legiōnibus
 ire contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturigēs,
 locis **superiōribus** occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre
 175 cōnantur. Complūribus his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō,
 quod est oppidum **citeriōris** prōvinciae extrēmum, in
 finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē **septimō**
 pervenit; **inde** in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in
 Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam
 180 trāns Rhodanum **primi**.

The Gauls appeal to Caesar for aid.

11. Helvētii iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum
 suās cōpiās **trādūxerant**, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervē-
 nerant eōrumque agrōs **populābantur**. Aeduī, cum sē
 suaque ab iis **dēfendere** nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem
 185 mittunt rogātum **auxilium**: **Ita** sē omni tempore dē
 populō Rōmānō **meritōs** esse ut **paene** in **cōspectū** exer-
 citūs nostrī agrī **vāstārī**, liberī in **servitūtem** abdūcī,
 oppida **expugnārī** nōn **dēbuerint**. Eōdem tempore Am-
 barri, **necessārii** et **cōsanguinei** Aeduōrum, Caesarem
 190 certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab
 oppidis vim **hostium** prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs qui
 trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant **fugā**
 sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et **dēmōnstrant** sibi **praeter**
 agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus
 195 Caesar nōn **expectandum** sibi **statuit** dum, omnibus

fortūnis sociōrum **cōsūptis**, in Santonōs Helvēt venirent.

*After part of the Helvetians have been annihilated, they try to
with Caesar; he defies them.*

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōr
Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, **incrēdibili** lēnitā
200 ut oculīs in **utram** partem fluat **iūdicārī** nōn possit
Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant. U
explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam
cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, **quārtan**
partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē
205 **vigiliā** cum legiōnibus tribus ē **castris** profectus ac
partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.
impeditōs et inopinantēs **aggressus** magnam p
eōrum **concidit**; reliquī sē fugae **mandārunt** atq
proximās **silvās** **abdidērunt**. Is **pāgus** appellā
210 Tigurīnus; **nam** omnis civitās Helvētia in **quattuor**
divisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset p
nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem **interfēce**
eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive **cāst**
cōsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae pars civitātis F
215 **insignem calamitātem** populō Rōmānō intuler
prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn
pūblicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās **ultus** est, quod
socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tig
eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.
- 220 13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrū
cōnsequī posset, pontem in Arari faciendum **cūrat**
ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi **repentinō** eius ad
commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx **aegerrimē** c
cerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse
225 **legerent**, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgā
Divicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō **dux** H

ōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit : Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem



ROMAN BRIDGE.

itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōn-
 230stituisset atque esse voluisset ; sin bellō persequi perse-
 vēraret, reminiscerētur et **veteris** incommodi populi
 Rōmāni et **pristinæ** virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod **imprō-**
visō ūnum pāgum **adortus** esset, cum ii qui flūmen trāns-
 issent suis auxilium **ferre** nōn possent, nē ob eam rem
 235aut suae magnopere virtūti tribueret aut ipsōs **dēspiceret** ;
 sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse ut magis
 virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut **insidiis** **niterentur**.
 Quārē nē **committeret** ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex

calamitatē populi Rōmānī et interneciōne exe
 240 **nōmen** caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus d
 tiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīi com
 rāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō **gravius** ferro
 minus meritō populi Rōmānī **accidissent**; quī sī al
 245 iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile ca
 sed eō **dēceptum**, quod neque commissum ā sē ir
 geret quārē **timēret**, neque sine causā timendum pu
 Quod sī veteris **contumēliae** obliviscī vellet, num
recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvi
 250 per vim **temptāssent**, quod Aeduōs, quod Amb
 quod Allobrogēs **vexāssent**, memoriam **dēpōnere** p
 Quod suā **victōriā tam** insolenter glōriārentur, qu
 tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse **admirārentur**, e
 pertinēre. **Cōnsuēsse enim** deōs immortālēs, quō gr
 255 hominēs ex **commūtātiōne** rērum **doleant**, quōs prō se
 eōrum ulcisci velint, hīs **secundiōrēs interdum** rēs e
 turniōrem impūnitatem concēdere. Cum ea ita
 tamen, sī obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, utī ea quae **polli**
tur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriis quās
 260 sociisq̄ue eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus sa
 ciant, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum. Divic
 spondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs
 uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eiu
 populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō
 265 **discessit**.

Caesar's cavalry defeated.

15. **Posterō diē** castra ex eō locō **movent**. Idem
 Caesar **equitātumque** omnem ad numerum qua
 milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque e
 sociis coāctum habēbat, **praemittit** quī videant qu
 270 partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissi

agmen **insecūti aliēnō** locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et **pauci** dē nostris **cadunt**. Quō proeliō sublāti Helvētiī, quod **quīngentis equitibus tantam** multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, **audācius** subsistere
 275 **nōnnumquam** et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs **laccessere coepērunt**. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapinīs, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs **circiter quīndecim** iter fēcērunt, uti inter novissimum hostium
 280 agmen et nostrum primum nōn **amplius quīnis** aut sēnis milibus passuum interesset.

Caesar suspects treachery on the part of the Aeduans.

16. **Interim** cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē polliciti **flāgitāre**. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est,
 285 **posita** est, nōn **modo** frūmenta in agris **mātūra** nōn erant, sed nē pābuli **quidem** satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Arari nāvibus subvexerat proptereā ūti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arari Helvētiī **āverterant**, ā quibus discēdere **nōlēbat**. Diem ex diē
 290 dūcere Aeduī; **cōferri, comportāri**, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diūtius dūci intellēxit et diem **instāre** quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret, **convocātis** eōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui **praeerat**,
 295 quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī **creātur** annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet **potestātem**, graviter eōs **accūsāt**, quod, cum neque **emi** neque ex agris sūmi possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam **propinquis** hostibus, ab iis nōn sublevētur; **praesertim** cum magnā ex parte
 300 eōrum **precibus** adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus **queritur**.

His suspicions confirmed; Dumnorix accused.

17. Tum dēum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris addu quod antea tacuerat **prōpōnit**: Esse nōnnūllōs quō auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum **valeat**, quī privi
 305 plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiosā at
 improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem **dēterrēre** nē frūmen
 cōferant quod dēbeant: Praestāre, si iam principā
 Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānō
 imperia **perferre**; neque **dubitāre** quīn, si Helvētiōs s
 310 **rāverint** Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduis **libe**
tem sint ēreptūri. Ab isdem nostra cōnsilia quaequ
 castris gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī. Hōs ā sē coēi
 nōn posse; quīn etiam, quod necessariam rem coā
 Caesarī ēnūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē **quantō** id cum
 315 culō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit t
 isse.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Divi
 frātrem, dēsīgnārī **sentiēbat**; sed, quod plūribus p
 sentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, **celeriter concilium di**
 320 **tit**, Liscum **retinet**. **Quaerit** ex sōlō ea quae in **conv**
 dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēc
 ab aliīs quaerit; **reperit** esse **vēra**: Ipsum esse Dur
 rigem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem pro
 liberālītatem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Com
 325 rēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Aeduōrum v
 gālīa parvō **pretiō redēmta** habēre, proptereā quod
 licente **contrā** licērī **audeat nēmō**. His rēbus et s
 rem **familiārem auxisse** et facultātēs ad largiendum r
 nās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs
 330 sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sē
 domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs **largiter** p
 atque huius potentiae causā **mātre**m in Biturigibus ho
 illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō **collocāsse**, ipsun

Helvētiis uxōrem habēre, **sorōrem** ex mātře et propinquās
 335 suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs collocāsse. **Favēre** et
cupere Helvētiis propter eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam
 suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū
 potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum
 locum grātiaē atque honōris sit **restitūtus**. Si quid
 340 accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī
 obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē
 rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre.
 Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium
equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, ini-
 345 tium fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus
 (nam equitātui quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī miserant
 Dumnorix praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitā-
 tum **perterritum**.

Caesar consults Diviciacus, Dumnorix's brother, and pardons the traitor.

19. Quibus rēbus **cōgnitis**, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs cer-
 350 tissimae rēs **accēderent**, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum
 Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs
 cūrāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitā-
 tis, sed etiam īscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā magis-
 trātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrā-
 355 bātur quārē in eum aut ipse **animadverteret** aut civitātem
 animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repug-
 nābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmā-
 num **studium**, summam in sē voluntātem, **ēgregiam** fidem,
īustitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat; nam nē eius suppli-
 360 ciō Diviciāci animum offenderet **verēbātur**. Itaque
priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī
 iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus **remōtis**, per C. Valeri-
 um Troucillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem
 suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum

365 eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praes
in conciliō dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit c
sēparatim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. **Petit** al
hortatur ut sine eius offēsiōne animī vel ipse dē
causā cōgnitā statuāt, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

370 20. Diviciācus multīs cum **lacrimīs** Caesarem c
plexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre m
eret: **Scire** sē illa esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō
quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse gr
plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minin
375 propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset; qu
opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad **minuendam** grātiā,
paene ad perniciem suā ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et an
frāternō et existimātiōne **vulgi** commovērī. Quod si c
eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum lo
380 amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum
suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum uti tōtius c
liae animi ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus **ve**
flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius **dextram** prēn
cōnsolātus rogat finem **ōrandi** faciat; tantī eius apu
385 grātiā esse ostendit uti et rei pūblīcae iniūriam et si
dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumn
gem ad sē vocat, frātre **adhibet**; quae in eō **reprehen**
ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur
pōnit; **monet** ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciō
390 vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre d
Dumnorigi cūstōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibus
loquatur, scire possit.

*An ambushade is planned, but frustrated by the cowardice of one of
officers.*

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus ho
sub monte **cōnsēdisse** milia passuum ab ipsius castris c

395 quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus
 quī cōgnōscerent misit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse.
 Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre,
 cum duābus legiōnibus et iis ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant
 summum iugum montis **ascendere** iubet; quid suī cōsiliī
 400 sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō
 hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante
 sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei **militāris peritissimus**
 habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et **postea** in M. Crassi
 fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

405 22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērē-
 tur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quin-
 gentis passibus abesset, neque, ut **postea** ex **captivis**
comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cōgnitus esset,
 Cōnsidius **equō admissō** ad eum accurrit, dicit montem
 410 quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī;
 id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cōgnōvisse.
 Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum **collem subducit, aciem**
instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare nē
 proelium committeret, **nisi** ipsius cōpiae prope hostium
 415 castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs
impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat
 proeliōque abstīnēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrā-
 tōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs
 castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium **tīmōre** perterritum quod
 420 nōn vidisset prō visō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō
 cōnsuērat **intervallō**, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum
 tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

Caesar turns to Bibracte; the Helvetians follow.

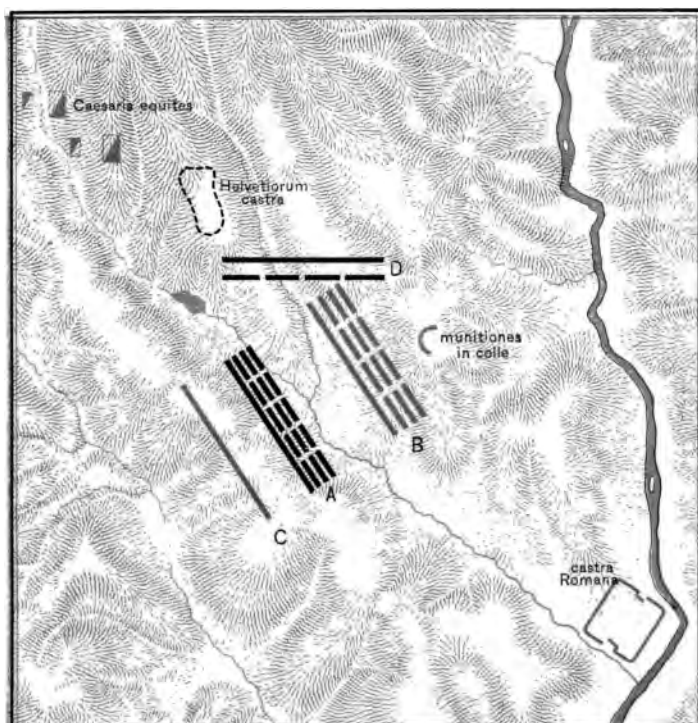
23. **Postridiē** eius diēi, quod omninō **biduum supererat**
 cum exercitui frūmentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā
 425 Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiō-

sissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII abera
frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque ita
Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs
fugitivōs L. Aemiliū, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, 1
430 bus nūntiātur. Helvētiū, seu quod timōre perire
Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis
pridiē superiōribus locis occupātis proelium nōn
mīsissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā **interclūdi** 1
cōfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere **con**
435 nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īsequi ac lacescere coepē

The Helvetians, defeated in a decisive battle, flee.

24. **Postquam** id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caes
proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī **susti**
hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle 1
triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānā
440 in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā cīte
proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ita
suprā sē tōtum montem hominibus **complēret**, **im**
menta sarcināsque in ūnum locum cōnferri et eum;
quī in superiōre aciē cōstiterant **mūniri** iussit. He
445 cum omnibus suis carris secūti impedimenta in ī
locum contulērunt; ipsi **cōnfertissimā** aciē, **rēlectō** n
equitātū, **phalange** factā sub prīmam nostram a
successērunt.

25. Caesar primum suō, **deinde** omnium ex cōnsj
450 remōtis equis, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem ī
tolleret, **cohortātus** suōs proelium commisit. Mili
locō superiōre **pilis** missis facile hostium phalā
perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā **gladiis** dēstrictis in eō
petum fēcērunt. Gallis magnō ad **pugnam** erat im
455 mentō quod, plūribus eōrum **scūtis** ūnō ictū pil
trānsfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, r



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS

- A. Position of Helvetians at the beginning of first engagement
- B. Position of Romans at the beginning of first engagement
- C. Position of Romans after the first engagement
- D. Position of Helvetians after renewing the battle

SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES
0 $\frac{1}{2}$ 1 $1\frac{1}{2}$

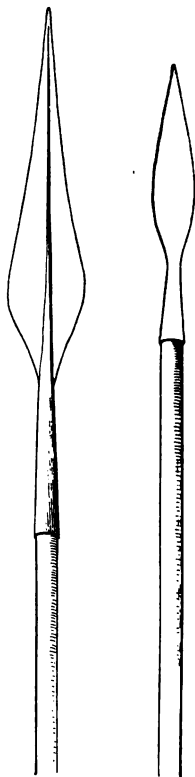
SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 $\frac{1}{2}$ 1 $1\frac{1}{2}$



ēvellere neque **sinistrā** impeditā satis **commodē** pugnāre poterant, multi ut diū iactātō **bracchiō** praeoptārent scūtum **manū** ēmittere et nūdō **corpore** pugnāre. **Tandem**
 460 **vulneribus dēfessi** et pedem **referre** et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt.

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōi et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium
 465 claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab **latere apertō** aggressi **circumvenire**, et id **cōspicātī** Helvētīi, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, **rūsus** instāre et
 470 proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa **signa** bipertitō intulērunt: prima et secunda aciēs, ut **victis** ac submōtis **resisteret**; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

475 26. Ita **ancipiti** proeliō diū atque **ācrit**er pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē con-
 480 tulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab **hōrā** septimā ad **vesperum** pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem
 485 etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod pro **vāllō** carrōs **obiēcerant** et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla **coniciēbant**, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās **subiciēbant** nos-



MATARĀ ET TRAGULĀ.

490 trōsque **vulnerābant**. Diū cum esset pugnātum pedimentis castrisque nostrī potiti sunt. Ibi Orggis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō p circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt eāque nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis it
 495 **intermissō** in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervenē cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepult occisōrum nostrī **triduum morāti** eōs sequi nōn p sent. Caesar ad Lingonēs **litterās nūntiōsque** mis eōs frumentō nēve aliā rē **iuvārent**; qui si iūvisser
 500 eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse triduō i missō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequi coepit.

The Helvetians surrender and are sent back to their country.

27. Helvētīi omnium rērum **inoplā** adductī lēgātē **dēditionē** ad eum misērunt. Quī cum eum in iti convēnissent sēque ad pedēs **prōiēcissent supplicite**
 505 locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūē Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs ad eōs perfūgissent **poposcit**. Dum ea conquirunt cōnferuntur, circiter hominum milia vi eius pāgī
 510 Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti nē a **trādītis** suppliciō afficerentur, sive spē **salūtis** ind quod in tantā multitudīne dēditiciōrum suam fugam occultāri aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimārent, p nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum **ēgressi** ad Rhēnum finē
 515 Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ier his utī conquirerent et **reducerent**, si sibi pūrgātī vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō ha reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armis, perfugis trāditi
 520 dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigē

finēs suōs, **unde** erant profecti, reverti iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus **āmissis** domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iis frūmenti cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incenderant resti-
 525 tuere iussit. Id eā maximē **ratiōne** fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant **vacāre**, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimi Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs peten-
 530 tibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt quōsque postea in **parem** iūris libertātisque **condiciōnem** atque ipsi erant recēperunt.

Size of the Helvetian forces.

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt lit-
 535 teris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in



GALLIC COIN.

tabulis **nōminātīm** ratiō cōnecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot **puerī**, senēs, **mulierēsque**. Summa erat **capitum**

Helvētiōrum milium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milium 1
 540 Latobrigōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXX
 hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad milia **nōnāgintā**
 Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eōru
 domum **rediērunt** cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperā
 repertus est numerus milium C et X.

*The Gauls appeal to Caesar for help against Ariovistus. How th
 had come to Gaul.*

545 30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē G
 lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātun
 vērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus
 vētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmānī ab hīs poenās
 repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex **ūsū** G
 550 quam populi Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō
 siliō **flōrentissimis** rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliqui
 utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potir
 locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, que
 omni Galliā **opportūnissimum** ac fructuosissimum
 555 cāssent, reliquāsque civitātēs stīpendiāriās hab
 Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem c
 indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret:
 habēre **quāsdam** rēs quās ex **commūnī** cōnsēnsū
 petere vellent. Eā rē **permissā** diem conciliō cōn
 560 ērunt et iūre iūrاندō nē quis ēnūtiāret, nisi q
 commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxēru

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs civitātun
 ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntqu
 sibi sēcrtō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō
 565 liceret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesa
 pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contender
labōrāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūtiārentur, quam
 quae vellent impetrārent, proptereā quod, si ēnūti

esset, summum in **cruciātum** sē ventūrōs vidērent. Lo-
 570 cūtus est prō hīs Diviciācus Aeduus: Galliae tōtius
 factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre
 Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē poten-
 tātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī
 ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde **arcesserentur**.
 575 Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; postea-
 quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs **feri**
 ac **barbari** adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in
 Galliā ad **centum** et vigintī milium numerum. Cum hīs
 Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs **semel** atque **iterum** armīs con-
 580 tendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem
 nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisisse.
 Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā
 virtūte et populi Rōmānī **hospitiō** atque amicitīā plūrimum
 ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs
 585 dare, nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrāndō civitātem ob-
 stringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium
 ā populō Rōmānō **implōrātūrōs** neque **recūsātūrōs quō-**
minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent.
 Ūnum sē esse ex omni civitāte Aeduōrum quī addūci
 590 nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret.
 Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte **profūgis** et Rōmam ad senā-
 tum vēnisse auxilium **postulātum**, quod sōlus neque iūre
 iūrāndō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed peius **victōribus**
 Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victis accidisse, proptereā quod
 595 Ariovistus, **rēx** Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsē-
 disset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus
 tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā
 Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs mēn-
 sibus ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnis-
 600 sent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse
 paucīs annīs utī omnēs Galli ē finibus pellerentur atque

omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim ferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, hanc **cōnsuētūdinem** victūs cum illā comparandam.

605 vistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō ⁊ quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, **supe** crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque ⁊ poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque **ēc** qua rēs nōn ad **nūtum** aut ad voluntātem eius fac

610 Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium posse eius imperia diūtius sustinēri. Nisi quid in C populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs ider faciendum quod Helvētīi fēcerint, ut domō ēm aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs,

615 fortūnamque, **quaecumque** accidat, **experiantur**. si ēnūtiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē or obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supꝑ sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exerci recentī victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dēi

620 posse nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum cātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā dēfendere.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā, omnēs q erant magnō flētū auxiliū ā Caesare petere coeꝑ

625 Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanō eārum rērum facere quās **cēteri** facerent, sed capite dēmissō **terram** intuēri. Eius rei quae caus mīrātus ex ipsis quaeiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondē in eādē trīstitiā taciti permanēre. Cum ab hīs s

630 quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō **vōcem** exprimere ⁊ idem Diviciācus Aeduus respondit: Hōc esse mise et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliqi quod sōlī nē in **occultō** quidem queri neque au implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovisti crūdēli

635 **velut si cōram** adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, qui **intrā** finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Caesar's reasons for interfering.

640 33. His rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbis cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram : Magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dimisit. Secundum ea multae
645 rēs eum hortābantur : quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in primis, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs
650 intellegēbat ; quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. **Paulātīm** autem Germānōs cōsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem venīre populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat ; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliā contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus divideret ; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē **occurrendum**
660 putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Ariovistus rejects Caesar's request for a conference. Caesar sends an ultimatum ; Ariovistus's haughty reply.

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium

utriusque colloquiō dēligeret: Velle sē dē rē pūb
 665 **summīs** utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēq
 Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsi ā Caesare opus
 sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit
 ad sē venīre oportēre. **Praetereā** sē neque sine e:
 in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar
 670 dēret, neque exercitum sine magnō **commeātū**
 mōlimentō in ūnum locum **contrahere** posse.
 autem **mīrum** vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam
 vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō
 esset.

675 **35.** His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis iterum a
 Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātis mittit: **Quonian**
 suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in
 lātū suō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus esse
 sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in cc
 680 um venire **invitātus gravārētur** neque dē comm
 dicendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec ess
 ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem
 num amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādi
 deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Aeduīs **redderet**.
 685 nisque permetteret ut quōs ipsi habērent voluntā
 reddere illis licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacessere
 his sociisque eōrum bellum inferret. Sī ita fēciss
 populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque ami
 cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sē, quonia
 690 **Messālā M. Pisōne** cōsulibus senātus cēnsuiss
 quicumque Galliam prōvinciā obtinēret, quod cor
 rei pūblīcae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque
 populi Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriā
neglētūrum.

695 **36.** Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse b
 quī vicissent iis quōs vicissent quem ad modum

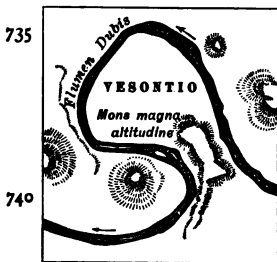
imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victis nōn ad alterius **praescriptum**, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse. Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet
 700 quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportere sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Aeduōs sibi, quoniam belli fortūnam temptāssent et armis **congressi** ac superātī essent, stipendiārīos esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectigālīa sibi
 705 **dēteriōra** faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque his neque eōrum sociis iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō **manērent** quod convēnisset **stipendium**que quotannis **penderent**; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar
 710 dēnūntiāret sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congredērētur: intellēctūrum quid invicti Germāni, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

Renewed complaints of the Gauls. Caesar starts against Ariovistus.

715 37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēveris veniēbant: Aeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam **trānsportāti** essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datis pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse;
 720 Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovistī
 725 sēsē **coniūnxisset**, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Caesar seizes Vesontio. His soldiers are panic-stricken.

38. Cum trīduī viam **processisset**, nūtiātum
Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occup
730 Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēqua
contendere triduique viam ā suis finibus prōcessis-
nē accideret magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar
mābat. **Namque** omnium rērum quae ad bellum



erant summa erat in eō
facultās, idemque nātūrā l
mūniēbātur ut magnam ad
dum bellum daret facultāter
tereā quod flūmen Dūbis, ut
circumductum, paene tōtun
dum **cingit**; reliquum sī
quod est nōn amplius pedu
centōrum, quā flūmen inte
mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut **rādicēs** eius
ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingant. Hunc
745 **circundatus** arcem **efficit** et cum oppidō coniungit.
Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itinēribus co-
occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūme
commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne
750 rum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, qui
magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incēdibili virtūt
exercitātiōne in armis esse praedicābant (saepe r
sēsē cum iis congressōs nē vultum quidem atque
oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō
755 omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter o
mentēs animōsque **perturbāret**. Hic primum ortu
tribūnis militum, praefectis, reliquisque qui ex url
citiae causā Caesarem secūti nōn magnum in rē

ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam
 760 sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat
 ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōnnūlli pudōre
 adducti, ut timōris suspiciōnem
 vitārent, **remanēbant**. Hi
 neque vultum **fingere** neque
 765 interdum lacrimās tenēre pote-
 rant; abditī in tabernāculis
 aut suum fātum querēbantur
 aut cum familiāribus suis com-
 mūne periculum miserābantur.
 770 Vulgō tōtis castris testāmenta
 obsignābantur. Hōrum vōci-
 bus ac timōre paulātim etiam
 ii qui magnum in castris ūsum
 habēbant, militēs **centuriō-**
 775 **nēsque** quique equitātui prae-
 erant, perturbābantur. Quī sē
 ex his minus **timidōs** exīstimārī
 volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī,
 sed angustias itineris et magni-
 780 tūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque
 Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē
 supportārī possēt, timēre dicēbant. Nōnnūlli etiam
 Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri
 iussisset, nōn fore dictō **audientēs** militēs neque propter
 785 timōrem signa lātūrōs.



HEAD OF A GERMAN.

He quells the mutiny. The soldiers apologize. He starts again.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō
 omniumque **ordinum** ad id cōnsilium adhibitis centuriō-
 nibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit : Primum, quod aut quam

in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaere
790 aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōsule
dissimē populi Rōmāni amīcitiam appetisse; cūr hur
temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret?
quidem persuādēri, cōgnitis suis postulātis atque aeq
condiciōnum **perspectā**, eum neque suam neque
795 Rōmāni grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre
āmentia **impulsus** bellum intulisset, quid tandem
rentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligent
spērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum
trōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C.
800 pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse
rātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in
servili tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disc
quam ā nobīs accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iū
posse quantum habēret in sē boni cōstantia, prop
805 quod, quōs aliquamdiū **inermēs** sine causā timui
hōs postea **armātōs** ac victōrēs superāssent. Dē
hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe nu
Helvētiī congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in ill
finibus, **plērumque** superārint, quī tamen parēs esse n
810 exercitui nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proeliū
fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, rep
posse, diūturnitate belli dēfatigātis Gallīs, Ariovi
cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac **palūdibus** tenuisset
sui potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantes iam dē pug
815 **dispersōs** subito adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō
virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōni contrā hominēs bar
atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum qu
spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum tim
in rei frūmentāriae **difficultātem** angustiasque itineri
820 cūrae **simulatiōnem** cōferrent facere arroganter,
aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre vidērentur aut

scribere auderent. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs **breui** tempore
825 iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque sīgna lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovēri; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam **dēfuisse** aut aliquō facinore compertō **avāritiam** esse convictam; suam innocentiam
830 perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam. Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium **an** timor
835 plūs valeret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā **decimā** legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitet, sibi que eam praetōriam **cohortem** futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et **indulserat** praecipuē et propter virtutem cōfidēbat maximē.

840 41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi illāta est, princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parā
845 tissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesari satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā belli suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse. Eōrum
850 satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallis eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut, milium **amplius quinquāgintā** circuitū, locis apertis exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus

855 certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milia pas
quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

Ariovistus offers to meet Caesar.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātū
eum mittit: Quod antea dē colloquiō postulāset, i
sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque i
860 periculō facere posse existimāret. Nōn respuit c
ciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī ar
bātur, cum id quod antea petentī dēnegāset **ultrō**
cērētur, magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis
populique Rōmānī in eum beneficiis, cōgnitis suis p
865 lātis, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō c
est ex eō diē quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī
citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāv
quem **peditem** ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: V
sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque
870 equitātū veniret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventū
Caesar, quod neque colloquium **interpositā** causā
volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātūi
mittere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omī
equīs Gallīs equitibus **dētractis**, eō **legiōnāriōs** m
875 legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōfidēbat, **impō**
ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus
esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē qu
ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit plūs quam polli
esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis
880 tōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad eq
rescribere.

The conference has no result; treachery of the Germans.

43. Plānitēs erat magna et in eā **tumulus** terr
satis grandis. Hic locus **aequum** ferē spatium ā ca

utriusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium
 885 vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvexerat pas-
 sibus ducentis ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equitēs
 Ariovisti parī intervallō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus ex
 equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad colloquium
 addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Cāesar initiō
 890 ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit,
 quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod
mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse
 et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōsuēsse tribuī **docēbat**;
 illum, cum neque **aditum** neque causam postulandi iūstam
 895 habēret, beneficiō ac liberalitāte suā ac senātūs ea **praemia**
 cōsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque
 iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercē-
 derent, quae senātūs **cōnsulta** quotiēns quamque honōri-
 fica in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae
 900 principātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam **nostram**
 amicitiam appetissent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōn-
 suētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihīl
 dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet
 esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populī Rōmānī **attulissent**,
 905 id iis ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem
 quae lēgātis in mandātis dederat: Nē aut Aeduīs aut
 eōrum sociīs bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; si nūllam
 partem Germānōrum domum **remittere** posset, **at** nē quōs
 amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

910 44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit,
 dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum
 sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs;
 nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propin-
 quōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs con-
 915 cessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium
 capere iūre belli quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōsuē-

rint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intuli
omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē oppugnandum vēniss
contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē
920 proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum exp
velint, sē iterum parātum esse **dēcertāre**; si pāce
velint, iniquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā
luntāte ad id tempus pependerit. Amicitiam p
Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn **dētrīm**
925 esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per popu
Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditiciū subtrahā
nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rō
amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem
mānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī
930 Galliae oppugnandae causā facere; eius rei tēstimōr
esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum
intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vē
quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc ten
exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fin
935 ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessi
veniret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, i
illam nostram. Ut ipsi concēdī nōn oportēret, i
nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse inīc
quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātr
940 senātū Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barba
neque tam imperitum esse rērum ut nōn sciret n
bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānis auxi
tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās A
sēcum et cum Sēquanis habuissent auxiliō populi Rō
945 ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sēsē **suspiciārī** simulātā Caesa
amicitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī **opprim**
causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum **dēd**
ex his **regiōnibus**, sēsē illum nōn prō amicō, sed prō h
habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē i

950 libus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum esse factū-
rum ; id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre,
quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam eius mortē
redimere posset. Quod si dēcessisset et liberā posses-
siōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō
955 remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ullō
eius labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam **sententiam** dicta sunt,
quārē negotiō dēsistere nōn posset : Neque suam neque
populi Rōmāni cōsuētūdinem patī ut optimē meritōs
960 sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse
Ariovistī quam populi Rōmāni. Bellō superātōs esse
Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus
populus Rōmānus **ignōvisset** neque in prōvinciam **redē-**
gisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod si antīquis-
965 simum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populi Rōmāni
iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium ; si iūdicium senātūs
observārī oportēret, liberā dēbēre esse Galliam, quam
bellō victā suis lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

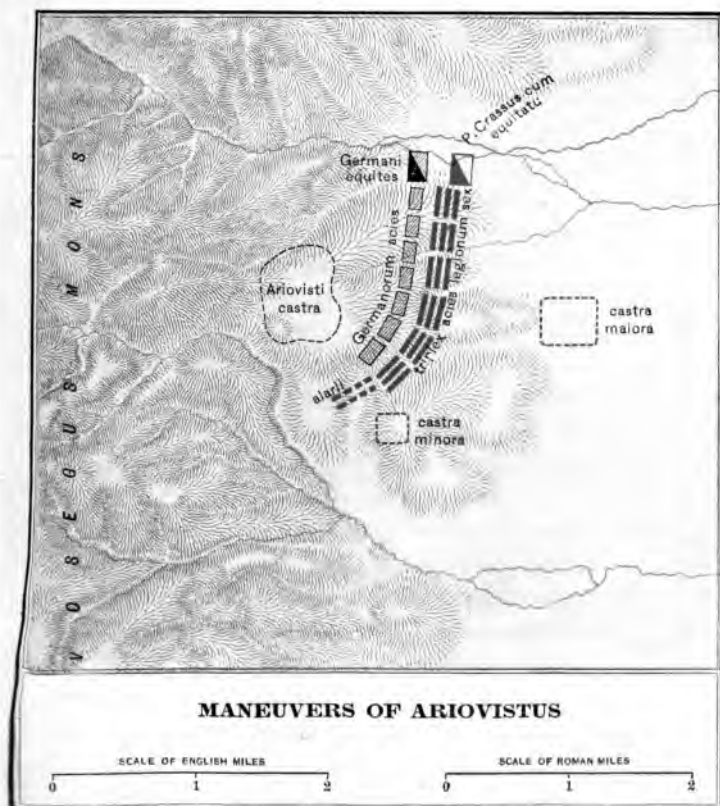
46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum
970 est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad
nostrōs adequitāre et **lapidēs** tēlaque in nostrōs conicere.
Caesar loquendi finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque
imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent.
Nam **etsi** sine ullō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equi-
975 tātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn
putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dicī posset eōs ab sē per fidem
in colloquiō circumventōs. Postēā quam in vulgus
mīlitum ēlātum est quā arrogantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus
ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset, impetumque
980 ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs colloquium
dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandi
maius exercitūi **iniecūm** est.

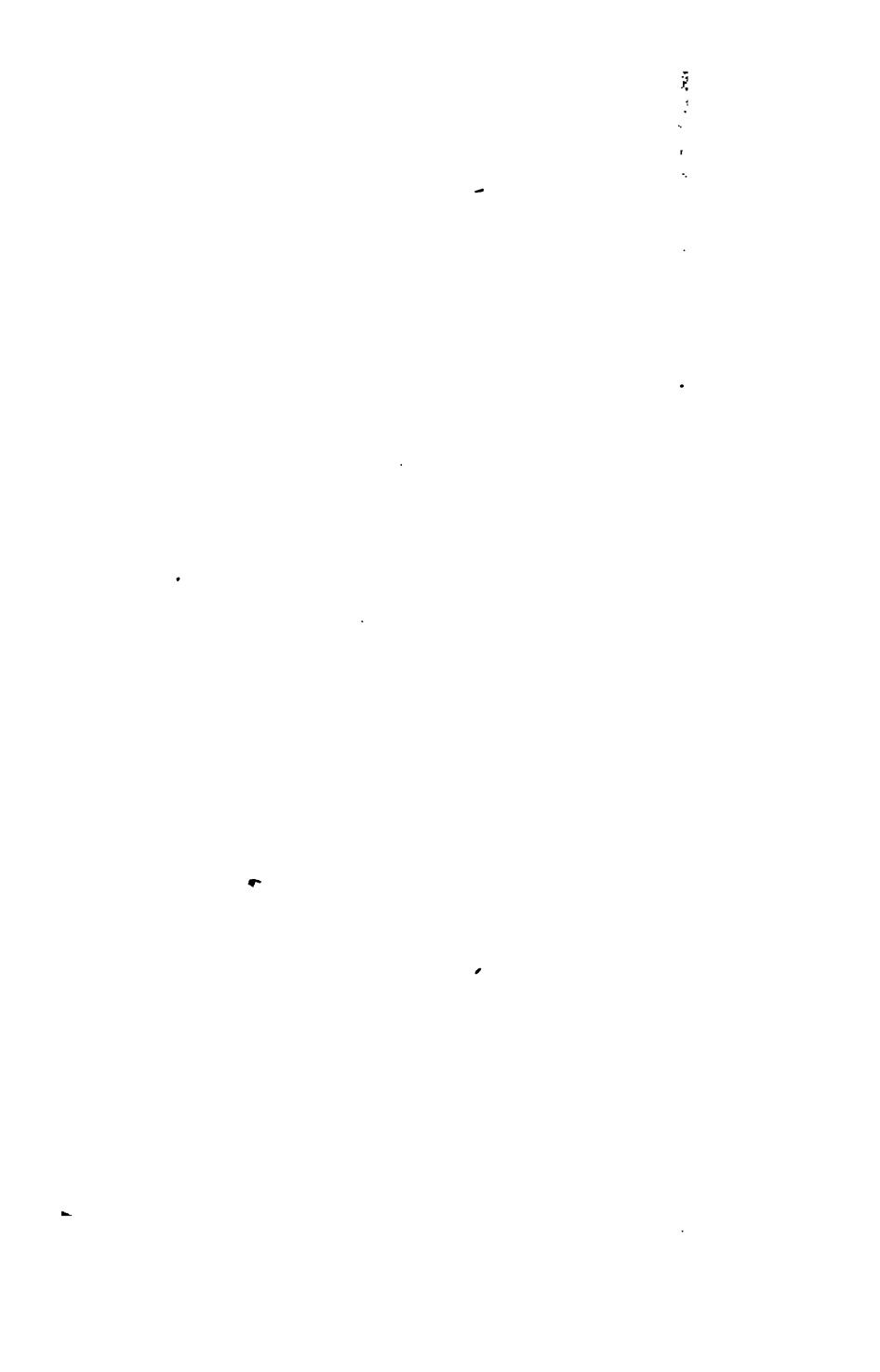
Ariovistus asks for a new meeting, but illtreats the envoys.

47. Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs n
 Velle sē dē iis rēbus quāe inter eōs agī coeptae n
 985 perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum coll
 diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suis lē
 aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa
 nōn est, et eō magis, quod pridīe eius diēi Germā
 tinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs conice
 990 Lēgātum sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūru
 hominibus feris obiectūrum existimābat. Comm
 simum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. V
 Cabūrī filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte **adulēscer**
 cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus er
 995 propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam
 multā iam Ariovistus **longinquā** cōsuētūdine ūtēl
 et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa nōn esset, ad
 mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium, qui hospitio Ariovisti ū
 tur. His mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cō
 1000 cerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in ci
 Ariovistus **cōspēxisset**, exercitū suō praesente
clāmāvit: Quid ad sē venirent? an speculandī ca
 Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in **catēnās** coniēcīt.

*Ariovistus threatens to cut off Caesar's base of supplies. Caesar
 counterstroke.*

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus pas
 1005 sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē
 diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et
 bus passuum duōbus **ultrā** eum castra fēcīt eō cōnsili
 frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanis et Aeduis
 portārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diē
 1010 **tinuōs** quīnque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās **prō**
 et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus pī





contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proeliō cotidiē contendit. **Genus** hoc erat pugnae quō
 1015 sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, **totidem** numerō peditēs **vēlōcissimī** ac fortissimī, quōs ex omni cōpiā singuli singulōs suae salutis causā dēlēgerant; cum his in proeliis **versābantur**, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat **dūrius**, **concurrēbant**; sī quī
 1020 graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, **circumsistēbant**; sī quō erat longius **prōdeundum** aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne **celeritās** ut iubis sublevāti equōrum **cursum adaequārent**.

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē
 1025 diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iis, castris **idōneum** locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus
 1030 ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitatū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus
 1035 perficere iussit. Mūnītis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

The Germans are forced to give battle.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castris utrisque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, **paulumque** ā maiōribus castris
 1040 **prōgressus** aciem instrūxit, hostibusque pugnandi potestātem fēcīt. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter meridiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dē-

mum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum quae
 minora oppugnaret misit. Acriter utrimque usque
 1045 vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias
 vistus multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus in
 reduxit. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar qua
 rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc repe
 causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset
 1050 matres familiae eorum **sortibus** et vaticinationibus
 rarent utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne
 ita dicere: Non esse fas Germanos superare, si
 novam lunam proelio contendissent.

51. Postridie eius diei Caesar praesidio utrisque castris
 1055 quod satis esse visum est reliquit; alarios omnes in
 spectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit,
 minus multitudinem militum legionariorum pro hoc
 numero valebat, ut ad **speciem** alariis ueretur
 triplici instructa acie usque ad castra hostium ac
 1060 Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias con
 eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribus inter
 Harudes, Marcomannos, Tribocos, Vangiones, Ner
 Sedusios, Suebos, omnemque aciem suam raedis et
 circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur.
 1065 mulieres imposuerunt, quae ad proelium proficisc
 milites **passis** manibus flentes implorabant ne se in
 tutem Romanis traderent.

The Germans are defeated; Ariovistus escapes.

52. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos
quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque vi
 1070 haberet; ipse a dextro **cornu**, quod eam partem in
 firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium com
 Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum feci
 itaque hostes repente celeriterque prouenerunt

spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectis
 1075 pīlis comminus gladiis pugnātum est. At Germāni,
 celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs
 gladiōrum **excēpērunt**. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostrī
 quī in phalangem īnsilirent et scūta manibus reuellerent
 et dēsUPER vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō
 1080 cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō
 cornū vehementer multītūdine suōrum nostram aciem
premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēs-
 cēns, quī equitātui praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam īi
 quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus
 1085 nostris **subsidiō** misit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs
terga vertērunt nec prius **fugere** dēstitērunt quam ad
 flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīn-
 que pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut viribus cōnfisī trānāre
 1090 contendērunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salūtem reppe-
 rērunt; in his fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātā ad
 rīpam **nactus** eā profūgīt; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī
 equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovisti
 uxōrēs, ūna Suēba **nātiōne**, quam domō sēcum dūxerat,
 1095 altera Nōrica, rēgis Voccionis soror, quam in Galliā dūx-
 erat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt
 duae filiae: hārum altera occisa, altera capta est. C.
 Valerius Proculus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā **trīnis** catēnis
vincus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū
 1100 īnsequentem **incidit**. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn
 minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod
 hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum fami-
 liārem et **hospitem**, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi
 restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā volup-
 1105 tātē et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is
 sē praesente dē sē **ter** sortibus cōnsultum dicēbat utrum

igni statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservi
sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M.
reperitus et ad eum reductus est.

*The other Germans abandon their invasion. The Romans go into
quarters. Caesar leaves for Italy.*

- 1110 54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī
rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant domum revertī coepērunt; quī
quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēn-
insecūti magnum ex iis numerum occidērunt. C
ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellis cōfectis, mē-
1115 paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna
quanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum
posuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs ag-
profectus est.



COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS

Caesar hears of plots on the part of the Belgians. He recruits reinforcements.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita uti suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, **crēbri** ad eum **rūmōrēs** afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā
5 populum Rōmānum **coniūrāre** obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum, quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōnnūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī
10 nōluerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novis imperiis studēbant, ab nōnnūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō
15 rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et **initā** aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium
20 lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse **inciperet**, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis quī finitimī Belgis erant uti ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī **cōstanter** omnēs nūntiāvērunt
25 manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quin ad eōs proficis-

cerētur. Rē frūmentāriā **prōvisā** castra movet diēb
circuiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi, a Belgian tribe, join Caesar.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium **op**
30 vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs su
eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs cīv
misērunt, quī dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem
potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sēs
reliquis Belgīs **cōnsēnsisse**, neque contrā populur
35 mānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs d
imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēte
rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs
Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cu
coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium fu
40 ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque
quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imp
ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant, dēt
potuerint quīn cum iis cōsentirent.

Who the Belgians are; the strength of their army.

4. Cum ab iis quaereret quae civitatēs quantae
45 armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reper
Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnu
antīquitus trāductōs propter loci fertilitātem ibi
sēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent **exp**
sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā,
50 Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs
ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri utī eārum
memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque sī
in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omī
habēre **explōrāta** Rēmī dicēbant, propterea quod p
55 quitātibus affinitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam qu

multitudinem in commūni Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōficere armāta mīlia centum; 60 pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviaciūm, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī cum 65 magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiāque summā tōtius belli omnium voluntāte **dēferri**; oppida habēre numerō XII; pollicērī mīlia armāta quinquāgintā; totidem Nervīōs, quī maximē feri inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque 70 absint; quindecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambīanōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs XIX mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, 75 quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Caesar camps at the river Axona.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus **liberāliterque** ōrātiōne **prōsecūtus** omnem senātum ad sē convenire pīncipumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūci iussit. Quae omnia ab his 80 **diligenter** ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviaciūm Aeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere rei pūblīcae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tempore cōnfligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās Aedui in finēs Bellovacōrum 85 intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His datīs mandātis eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venire

neque iam longē abesse ab iis quōs mīserat explorātī et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod e
 90 extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātī
 atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnū
 trōrum ripīs flūminis mūniēbat, et post eum quae
 tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab I
 reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum su
 95 tārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat.
 praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Tit
 Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. C
 in altitudinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēv
 pedum mūniri iubet.

*The Belgians assault Bibrax, a Remian town, but foiled by Roman
 forcements, they proceed toward Caesar.*

- 100 6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine I
 aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō ir
 Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē susten
 est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum **oppugnāt**
 haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudīne hominum
 105 moenibus undique in mūrū lapidēs **iacī** coeptī
 mūrusque dēfēnsōribus **nūdātus** est, **testūdine**
 propius succēdunt mūrūque subruunt. Quod
 facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs a
 conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī.
 110 finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, si
 nobilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō pra
 ūnus ex iis quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēn
 nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi **submit**
 sēsē diūtius sustinēre non posse.
 115 7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus ūsī
 nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagit
 et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; qu



SAGITTARIUS.



FUNDITOR.

adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpug-
 nandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundi
 120 oppidī discessit. Itaque **paulisper** apud oppidum morātī
 agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicis aedifi-
 ciisque quō adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris
 omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus
 duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque
 125 ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in
 lātitudinem patēbant.

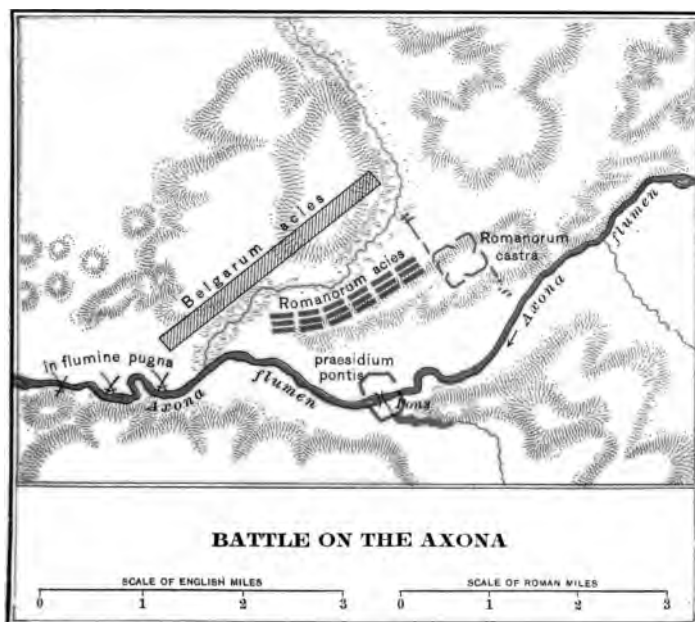
*An attempt to storm Caesar's camp is frustrated. The Belgians disperse,
 but suffer much during their retreat.*

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et
 propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre
 statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis
 130 virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābātur.
 Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris

ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque id
quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex
tiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat
135 tum loci aciēs instrūcta tenēre poterat, atque ex ut
parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in **fronte** lēniter
gātus paulātim ad plānitē redibat, ab utrōque
eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter pas
140 centa collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs,
tantum multitudīne poterant, ab lateribus pugr
suōs circumvenire possent. Hōc factō, duābus
nibus quās proximē cōscripserat in castris relictis
quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reliquās sex
145 ōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item
cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque ho
exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exs
bant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī
150 ut impeditōs aggredierentur parātī in armīs erant.
terim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendē
Ubi **neutrī** trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre eq
proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. E
prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendit
155 quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est.
vadis repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere c
sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeer
Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque intersc
rent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populāre
160 quī magnō nōbis ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant,
meātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equit
et **levis** armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriē
ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acrīter i



locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum iniquiōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenire, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Aeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum **appropinquāre** cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādēri ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum **strepitū** ac tumultū castris ēgressī nullō certō ordine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire **properāret**, fēcērunt ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemisit eīque Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus **subsequi** iussit. Hi novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecūti magnam multitudīnem eōrum fugientium concidērunt. Cum ab extrēmō agmine ad quōs ventum erat cōsiste-

rent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinē
priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque
 200 necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exauditō **clā**
 perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesi
 pōnēbant. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum mu
 dinem nostri interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spa
 sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in casti
 205 erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

The Suessiones and the Bellovaci surrender.

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē host
 terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum
 proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō it
 ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itiner
 210 pugnāre cōnātus, quod **vacuum** ab dēfēnsōribus
 audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitūd
 paucis dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit. Ci
 mūnītis **vineās** agere quaeque ad oppugnandum
 erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā
 215 siōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte con
 Celeriter vineis ad oppidum āctis, **aggere** iactō **turi**
 que cōstitūtis, magnitūdine operum, quae neque
 rant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōn
 rum permōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mi
 220 et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur, impetran

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis civitātis
 ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiis armisque omnib
 oppidō trāditis, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accipit e
 tumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque o
 225 in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque a
 oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum
 que abesset, omnēs maiōrēs **nātū** ex oppidō ēgressi r
 ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, si

eius fidem ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum
 230 Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum
 accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex
 mūrō passis manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis
 petiērunt.

14. Prō his Diviciācus (nam post **discessum** Belgārum
 235 dimissis Aeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat) facit verba:
 Bellovacōs omni tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitātis
 Aeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī dicerent
 Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indigni-
 tātēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et
 240 populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsiliī prin-
 cipēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitātem
 civitāti intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere
 nōn solum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō his Aeduōs ut suā
 clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod si
 245 fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās
 amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua
 bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērunt.

Surrender of the Ambiani. The character of the Nervii.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Aeduōrum causā
 sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservatūrum dixit, et,
 250 quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque
 hominum multitudīne praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs
 poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō col-
 lātis, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē
 suaque omnia sine **morā dēdidērunt**. Eōrum finēs Nervii
 255 attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum
 quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nullum esse aditum ad eōs
 mercātōribus; nihil pati **vinī** reliquārumque rērum ad
 lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rēbus relanguēs-
 cere animōs et remitti virtūtem existimārent; esse

260 hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre a
incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō
dissent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfiri
sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiō
pācis acceptūrōs.

265 16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inve
bat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn am
milia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Ner
cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre
cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suis (nar
270 utrisque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam ex
rentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Aduatucōrum cō
atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetāter
pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse
propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

*Caesar advances toward the Sabis river. The Nervii, at the ad
Belgian deserters, plan to ambush him there. Character of the coun*

275 17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis explōrātōrēs centuriōnē
praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cur
dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallis complūrēs Caesa
secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex
tivīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine itir
280 nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnē
atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs im
mentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque
quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēni
reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, h
285 sub sarcinīs adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque dire
futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audē
Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōsiliū quī rem dēferēb
quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil pos
(neque enim ad hoc tempus eī rei student, sed quic

290 possunt **pedestribus** valent cōpiis), quō facilius finitimō-
rum equitātum, si **praedandi** causā ad eōs vēnissent, im-
pedirent, teneris **arboribus** incisis atque inflexis, crēbris-
que in lātitudinem **rāmīs** ēnātis, et rubis sentibusque
interiectis, effēcerant ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnī-
295 mentum **praeberent** quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē
perspici quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis
nostri impedirētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōsiliū Nervii
existimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri castris
300 dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad
flūmen Sabim, quod suprà **nōmināvimus**, vergēbat. Ab
eō flūmine parī acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic
et **contrārius**, passūs circiter ducentōs ab infimō apertus,
ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus
305 perspici posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē
continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae
stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō
pedum circiter trium.

Caesar's precautions foil the ambushade. A pitched battle follows.

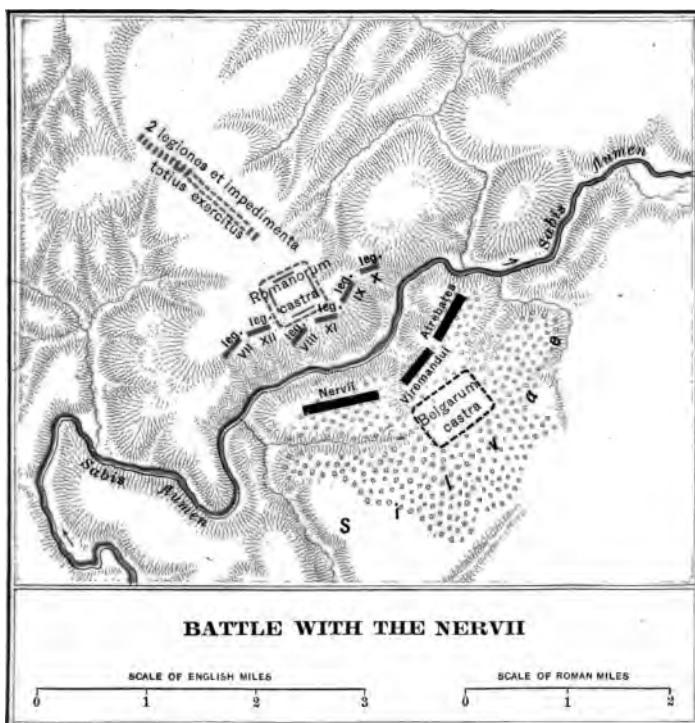
19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus
310 cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac
Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus
appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs
expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta
collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscrip̄tae
315 erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedi-
mentis erant. Equitēs nostri cum funditōribus sagit-
tariisque flūmen trānsgressi cum hostium equitātū
proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās
ad suos reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum
320 facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem

porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant **cēdentēs** insequi a
 rent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant o
 dimēnsō castra mūnire coepērunt. Ubi prima im
 325 penta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī **latē**
 visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī pr
 convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cōstitue
 atque ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus ci
 prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcēr
 His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incēdibili celeritātē
 330 flūmen **dēcucurrērunt**, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad si
 et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādē autē celerit
 adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in o
 occupātī erant contendērunt.

The greatness of the danger.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda : v
 335 lum prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne cum ad a
 concurrī oportēret, ab opere revocandī militēs, quī p
 longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcesse
 aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum **tubā**
 dum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brev
 340 et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus c
 rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum, q
 superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret
 minus commodē ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab
 docērī poterant ; et quod ab opere singulisque legiōn
 345 singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis ca
 vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritā
 hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant,
 per sē quae vidēbantur **administrābant**.

21. Caesar necessariis rēbus imperātis ad cohortar
 350 militēs quam partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et
 legiōnem decimam **dēvēnit**. Militēs nōn longiōre





tiōne cohortātus quam uti suae pristinæ virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs
 5 aberant quam quō tēlum **adigi** posset, proeliū committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad **dimicandum** animus ut nōn modo ad insignia **accommodanda**, sed
 10 etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda, tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma signa cōspēxit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pugnandī tempus dimitteret.

5 22. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut loci nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque **dēnsissimis**, ut ante dēmōstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedi-
 10 rētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fortunae quoque **ēventūs variī** sequēbantur.

The plight of the ninth and tenth legions relieved by Caesar.

23. Legiōnis **nōnae** et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā
 5 parte aciei cōstitērant, pīlis ēmissis cursū ac lassitudīne **exanimātōs** vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen **compulērunt**, et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī gladiis magnam partem eōrum impedītā interfēcērunt. Ipsi trānsire
 30 flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum iniquum prōgressi rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliū in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs,

ūndecima et **octāva**, prōfligātis Viromanduīs, quibus
 erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis
 385 proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sir
 parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecim
 nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, o
 Nervii cōfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō,
 summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendē
 390 quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumve
 pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostri levisque armāt
 peditēs, quī cum iīs unā fuerant, quōs primō hos
 impetū pulsōs dixerāmus, cum sēsē in castra recipe
 395 adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in pa
 fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā por
 summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse
 spēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum **respēxisse**
 hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, **praeci**
 400 fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum im
 mentis veniēbant clāmor **fremitusque** oriēbātur, al
 aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus om
 rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter G
 virtūtis opiniō est singulāris, quī auxilii causā ā civ
 405 missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudīne hos
 castra complērī, legiōnēs premi et paene circumve
 tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispe
 dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspē
 nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs p
 410 superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum h
 potitōs civitāti renūtiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad
 trum cornū profectus, ubi suōs **urgērī** signisque in ū
 locum collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs militēs
 415 ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quārtae coh

omnibus centuriōnibus occisis, signiferō interfectō, signō
 āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus
 aut vulnerātis aut occisis, in his prīcipilō P. Sextiō
 Baculō, fortissimō **virō**, multis gravibusque vulneribus
 420 cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse
tardiōrēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimis dēsertō locō proeliō
excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre
 locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et
 rem esse in angustō vidit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod
 425 submitti posset, scūtō ab novissimis militi dētractō, quod
 ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit
 centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātis reliquōs cohortā-
 tus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō
 facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā
 430 mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in
 cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus **operam**
 nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Caesar relieves the seventh legion.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxta cōn-
 stiterat, item urgēri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum
 435 monuit ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et con-
 versa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs
 aliī subsidium ferrent, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste
 circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre
 coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in
 440 novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proe-
 liō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus
 cōnspeciēbantur; et Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et
 ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur
 cōnspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit.
 445 Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs
 esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et

imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritē sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The battle turns in favor of the Romans. The Nervii surrender

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est f
 450 ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfecti **prōcubuis**
 scūtis innixi proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs pert
 tōs hostēs cōspicāti etiam inermēs armātis occurrer
 equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlē
 omnibus in locis pugnandī studiō sē legiōnāriis milit
 455 **praeferrent**. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē sa
 tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eē
 cecidissent, proximī iacentibus **insisterent** atque
 eōrum corporibus pugnārent; his dēiectis et coacer
 cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumultō tēla in nos
 460 conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn ni
 quam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēberet ausōs
 trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās r
 subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficill
 animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

465 28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciō
 gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū,
 ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac pal
 coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōi
 nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, om
 470 quī supererant cōsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misē
 sēque ei dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā civi
 calamitāte, ex sescentis ad trēs senātōrēs, ex homi
 milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent
 redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac
 475 plicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cō
 vāvīt suisque finibus atque oppidis ūtī iussit, et finit
 imperāvīt ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibē

Siege of Aduatuca.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus
 cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex
 480 itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque
 dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā
 mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū
 partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex
 parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius
 485 pedum ducentōrum relinquebātur; quem locum **duplici**
 altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī **ponderis saxa**
 et praeacūtās **trabēs** in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex
 Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnāti, quī, cum iter in prō-
 vinciam nostram atque Ītaliā facerent, iis impedimentis
 490 quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen
 Rhēnum dēpositīs, cūstōdiae ac praesidiō sex mīlia
 hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs
 annōs ā finitimīs exagitāti, cum aliās bellum inferrent,
 aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsensū eōrum omnium pāce
 495 factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex
 oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliīs cum
 nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum xii in circuitū
 xv mīlium crēbrisque castellis circummūnīti oppidō sēsē
 500 continēbant. Ubi vineīs āctīs aggere **exstrūctō** turrim
 procul cōstituī vidērunt, primum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque
 increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō
 Instituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus
 praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque
 505 omnibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum bre-
 vitās nostra contemptū est) tantī **oneris** turrim in mūrō
 sē posse collocāre cōfiderent?

Surrender of the town. The treachery of the inhabitants is severely punished.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vidēr
novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesa
510 dē pāce misērunt, quī, ad hunc modum locūtī : Nōn si
īstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvinā bellum gerere, quī
tae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmo
possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permit
dixērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī : sī forte prō suā
515 mentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsi ab aliīs audīrent, sta
set Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliā
Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae vi
invidēre ; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn
sent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūceret
520 **quamvis** fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō pati, quam ab
per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssē

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit : Sē magis cōsuētū
suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī p
quam mūrū ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent ; sed dēditi
525 nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armīs trāditis. Sē id q
in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātū
nē quam dēditiciis populi Rōmāni iniūriam inferr
Rē renūtiātā ad suōs, illi sē quae imperārentur fa
dixērunt. Armōrum magnā multitudīne dē mūrē
530 fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut p
summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinē acervī armō
adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut po
perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, p
patefactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

535 33. Sub vesp̄erum Caesar portās claudi militēsque
oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidāni ā milit
iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō, ut intellēctum
cōsiliō, quod dēditōne factā nostrōs praesidia dē

tūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant,
 540 partim cum iis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs,
 partim scūtīs ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis,
 quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, **pellibus**
 indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās
 mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur omnibus cōpiis repente
 545 ex oppidō **ēruptiōnem** fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar
 imperāverat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximis
 castellis eō concursus est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita
 ācriter est ut ā viris fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis,
 iniquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla
 550 iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs
 cōsisteret. Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor re-
 liqui in oppidum rēiecti sunt. Postridiē eius diēi refrāctis
 portis, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis
 militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidi ūniversam Cae-
 555 sar **vēndidit**. Ab iis quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad
 eum relātus est milium quinquāgintā trium.

Conquest of the tribes along the coast.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne
 septimā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Corioso-
 litēs, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt **maritimae**
 560 civitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs
 eās civitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmāni
 esse redāctās.

The army in winter quarters. Caesar goes to Italy.

35. His rēbus gestīs, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta huius
 belli ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab iis nātiōnibus
 565 quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātiōnēs ad Caesarem
 mitterentur quae sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta facturās
 pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā

Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte a
reverti iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turc
570 quaeque civitatēs propinquae iis locis erant ubi be
gesserat legiōnibus in hiberna dēductis in Ītaliā
fectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litteris Caesaris diē
quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id ten
accidit nūlli.

NOTES

References to the text are preceded by L. (line) or Ch. (Chapter); all others are to sections in the *Grammatical Summary*.

BOOK I

CHAPTER I. — DESCRIPTION OF GAUL

Page 43. LINE 1. Gallia: the free Gaul, exclusive of the two provinces (*Gallia Citerior*, *Gallia Ulterior*), and comprising parts of France as well as of Belgium, Holland, Germany, and Switzerland.

omnis: translate by an adjective phrase; *as a whole*.

dīvisa: participle used as an adjective; hence *est dīvisa* = a present tense.

trēs: numerals commonly precede their nouns. The position gives emphasis to the word.

quārum: genitive of the whole (55).

2. Belgae, etc.: the subject follows the predicate because the latter is emphasized. The verb must be (mentally) repeated with *Aquitāni* and (*it*) *qui*.

ipsōrum: instead of *suā*, so as to contrast it with *nostrā*.

3. linguā: ablative of means (85). Translation into idiomatic English?

Celtae, Gallī: predicate nominatives (49). All parts of Gaul were inhabited by men speaking Celtic, the ancestral language of the Irish, Gaelic, and Welsh languages. The word *Gallī*, too, is not Roman, but Celtic. It is the same word as the *Galatians* of the Bible. However, the tribes living in Gaul were not pure, but contained large admixtures of the original inhabitants in Aquitania, and of Germans in Belgium and Eastern Gaul.

linguā, etc.: ablatives of specification (95). Here *linguā* = *dialect*.

4. lēgibus: in translating insert *and*. In an enumeration the Romans either used no connectives at all or connected all the members of the series.

inter sē: *from one another*. *One another* is expressed in Latin by *inter* and the reflexive pronoun.

Gallōs: the inhabitants of Central Gaul, the most important neighbors of the Roman province of Gallia Ulterior.

6. *dividit*: the predicate is in the singular because the river as tributary, followed from source to mouth, forms one boundary line so are considered a unit. See map between pages 8 and 9.

Hōrum: for case cp. *quārum*, l. 1.

omnium: in direct agreement with *hōrum* = *of all these*.

propterea quod: literally, *for this reason that* = *because*. To a satisfactory and idiomatic English rendering the student should reach a perfect understanding of the Latin idea.

7. *quod*: to be understood again before *minimēque*, l. 8, and *et mique*, l. 10.

cultū atque hūmānitātē: the former refers to outward, the latter intellectual refinement.

prōvinciāe: *Gallia Ulterior*, which is Southern Gaul, the modern Provence. Greek and Roman influences had combined to give the Province a polish which was but imperfectly reflected among its neighbors.

8. *minimēque*: with *saepe*, literally *least often*. The Romans use *parum*, *minus*, *minimē*, with the sense of a negative. The phrase is *very seldom*.

mercātōrēs: Greek and Roman peddlers.

9. *ad . . . animōs*: this is not a purpose construction. *Perturbare* is regularly used with *ad*. Translate *to weaken the character*.

10. *Germānis*: dative with an adjective (70).

trāns Rhēnum: on which bank of the river?

incolunt: here intransitive. Above, l. 2, it is used as a transitive. The student should early train himself to notice the different constructions possible for the same word.

11. *quibuscum*: for the position of *cum* see 100, 2.

Quā dē causā: translate *and for this reason*. The Romans use *quā dē causā* to connect their sentences, if possible. Hence, a relative pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence instead of a demonstrative. When a preposition governs a noun with a modifier, the regular Latin order is: modifier, preposition, noun.

12. *quoque*: postpositive. This word cannot be placed at the beginning of a sentence or clause. Other words of this character are *autem* and *enim*.

Gallōs: direct object of *praecedunt*. Very many compounded verbs are used with an accusative instead of a dative (65, a).

virtūte: see note on second *linguā*, l. 3.

13. *proeliis*: see note on first *linguā*, l. 3.

14. *cum . . . prohibent, . . . gerunt*: this clause explains the preceding statement. Do not translate such constructions by *when*, but by phrases.

suīs: refers to *Helvētiis*, as does *ipsī*, while *eōs, eōrum* refer to the Germans.

15. *finibus*: ablative of separation (79).

Eōrum: refers to *hōrum omnium*, l. 6. Here begins a geographical digression. The main topic is resumed in Ch. 2.

ūna pars: refers to the country, not to the people. Translate *division*.

quam: object of *obtinēre*, of which *Gallōs* is the subject accusative. The words *quam . . . obtinēre* form the subject of *dictum est*.

17. *Ōceanō*: the Atlantic, the only ocean known to the ancients.

18. *ab Sēquanīs*: ablative of point of view (80); *on the side of*, etc. Latin emphasizes the *place from which*, while in English it appears more natural to lay stress on the *place where*.

19. *septentrionēs*: the seven stars of the Great Bear or Dipper; *north*. The singular is used below.

extrēmīs . . . finibus: counting from the Province.

21. *in . . . sōlem*: northeast.

Page 44. 23. *ad Hispāniam*: *near Spain, i.e.* the Bay of Biscay.

24. *inter*, etc.: northwest.

CHAPTERS 2-29.—THE HELVETIAN INVASION

25. *longē*: with superlatives measure is commonly expressed by an adverb, while the ablative is used with comparatives.

dītissimus = dīvitissimus: the order emphasizes the name (found on Gallic coins as *ORGETIRIX* = "king of the slayers").

26. *M. . . cōsulibus*: read *Mārcō*. Always use the full, unabridged form of Roman names. For the manner of naming a Roman see 175. The Romans dated their years by the names of the (two annual) chief magistrates, which were put in the ablative absolute (96), with or without *et* between the two names. *Cōsulibus* represents the noun part of the predicate, the present participle of *esse* being missing. *Marcus, etc., being consuls = in the consulate of . . .*, here = 61 B.C.

27. *rēgnī, nōbilitātis*: objective genitive and subjective genitive (54, 53). Test this by turning the phrases into sentences with active verbs, when the genitive will become either subject or object, thus:

Orgetorix cupiebat regnum, nobilitas coniuravit. In most Gallic the royal power had been abolished in favor of popular government but attempts at its restoration by the nobles were frequent.

nobilitatis: notice that the suffix *-tas* here has collective force word meaning *a body of nobles*. So *civitas*, immediately follow Translate *nobles, citizens*.

28. **ut . . . exirent**: a substantive clause of purpose, used as object of *persuasit* (145). Literally, *he made it pleasant to the body of citizens that they should . . .*; be careful about the idiomatic translation. The verb is plural because with the collective noun the verb thinks of the *civēs* composing the *civitas*.

cum . . . cōpiis: in military expressions accompaniment is commonly expressed by the ablative without a preposition. But it is questionable whether the word here has the military meaning.

29. **Perfacile**, etc.: infinitive of indirect discourse (164, b), because *persuasit* indicates that Orgetorix said something. The subject of indirect discourse is the infinitive *potiri*. Infinitives are of the neuter gender (114, a), hence *perfacile*. The *per-* serves to strengthen the meaning of the adjective; what degree might have been used instead? See 106, 2. In translating the sentence into English, supply *it* before *perfacile* as a merely grammatical subject.

esse: the present tense, because Orgetorix used this tense in speaking. But *praestarent* is in the imperfect because subordinate verbs, *i.e.* subjunctives in indirect discourse, follow the rule for sequence of tenses (158) after the verb of saying, *persuasit*. In English a similar change of tense takes place with each verb: 'I cannot come because I am ill; he says that he cannot come because he is ill *said* he *could* not come because he *was* ill.'

cum: causal, with subjunctive (132).

omnibus: dative with compounds (65).

30. **Galliae**: objective genitive.

imperio: ablative (of means) with certain deponents (86).

Id: direct object of *persuasit* (64, c).

hōc: ablative of degree of difference (89) or of cause (83) *facilius*.

facilius: adverb.

31. **ūnā ex parte**: *on one side*; supply *continentur*. For case note on l. 18. The Latin idiom is also the reason for the use of *dique*, literally, *from all sides*.

32. *lātissimō*: for degree see 106, 2.

quī: agrees with what?

33. *alterā*: here the same as *aliā* in l. 2. What is the usual difference between *alius* and *alter*?

34. *monte*: singular, but referring to the whole range. In l. 23 the plural was used. Account for the gender of *Iūra*. The highest elevation is about 5000 feet.

35. *tertiā*: supply *ex parte*.

quī . . . dividit: only the part of the Rhone from Geneva to Vienna formed the boundary line. The lower (southern) course, from Vienna to Arles, was within the province.

36. *fiēbat*: supply *it* as grammatical subject. Notice the tense, which shows that the change was taking place during these years (62-58 B.C.).

37. *ut . . . vagārentur*: substantive clause of result (148), subject of *fiēbat*. The Helvetians were not a nomadic tribe, as one might conclude, but were slowly yielding to the constant pressure of German tribes in the north and east.

38. *bellum inferre*: distinguish this from *bellum gerere*. The former always refers to an offensive war.

quā ex parte: and for this reason; ablative of source (81), with causal meaning.

hominēs: as men; appositive to the subject of *afficiēbantur*.

bellandī: gerund in the genitive after an adjective (58).

39. *Prō*: in proportion to, for.

autem: see note on *quoque*, l. 12.

40. *bellī*: objective genitive (54).

bellī atque fortitudinis: for bravery in war. Caesar likes to express one idea by two independent nouns (hendiadys, 171, 1).

41. *sē*: subject of *habēre*, of which *finēs* is the object.

in longitūdinem: accusative of limit of motion (75); and so in *latitudinem*, l. 42.

milla passuum: i.e. miles. *Mille passūs*, 1000 paces of five Roman feet each, is one Roman mile (about 4850 English feet). The plural is used as a neuter noun with the genitive of the whole.

42. *patēbant*: the indicative shows that these measurements are made by Caesar. As the total number of Helvetians was 263,000 (Ch. 29), a population of 16.6 (or, if we refer 263,000 to soldiers only, of 83) to the square mile does not appear overcrowded to

modern ideas. Modern Switzerland supports about 212 persons t square mile. But undoubtedly much less land was then under cultiv and industrial life with its attendant crowding was entirely unknow

43. CHAPTER 3. His *rēbus*: the facts mentioned before. Be ful about the translation of *rēs*, which rarely means *thing*. Its n ing must be taken from the matters to which it refers.

permōti: force of *per-*?

44. *ea*: object of *comparāre*, which is complementary (object) : itive (163, 2) to *cōstituērunt*; so also *coēmere*, *facere*, *cōnfir* lines 46 and 48.

ea . . . pertinērent: *the things required for* Latin senti may be simplified by turning dependent clauses, especially rel clauses, into phrases. The verb is in the subjunctive of implied inc discourse (159) because *cōstituērunt* is a verb of thinking.

45. *carrōrum*: a Gallic word (cp. our *car*), but early adopted b Romans.

quam, etc.: see 106, 2.

46. *sēmentēs . . . facere*: *to make sowings = to raise crops*.

ut . . . suppeteret: adverb clause of purpose (123).

48. *Ad . . . cōficiendās*: *to accomplish this end*; a gerundive struction of purpose (169, 3).

49. *sibi*: dative of reference (66).

dūxērunt: notice the meaning of this verb when followed by a finitive (of indirect discourse).

in tertium annum: translate *for*, etc.

50. *cōfirmant*: the narrative tense (properly past) is often cha to the present in order to give greater vividness (historical pre 116, a). So also in the following lines: *dēligitur*, *persuādet*, *dat*, *pr dant*, *spērant*. As the sense is past, a dependent subjunctive ma used either in principal or historical sequence (*occupāret*, l. 55).

52. *Casticō*: "fair-eye."

Catamantaloedis: "just."

Page 45. 54. *multōs annōs*: accusative of extent of time (74 *obtinuerat*: be careful about the correct translation of tenses, i use of which Latin is much more accurate than English. Cp. *obtin* l. 58.

populī Rōmānī: an example of double dependence. The pl modifies both *senātū* and *amicus*; with both it is possessive. In t lating, use a possessive adjective besides the noun: *friend of the Ro*

nation by its senate. This was an honorable title bestowed by the Senate upon foreigners, both persons and tribes, implying a loose alliance. Do not translate *populus* by *people*, but rather by *nation*, so as to keep clear the number of the verb.

55. *amicus*: predicate nominative (49).

ut . . . *occupāret*: see note on l. 28. Distinguish carefully *occupāre* = to seize from *obtinere* = to occupy, hold. It is always dangerous to translate a Latin word by its English derivative.

56. *ante* = *antē*: adverb.

habuerat: for mood see note on l. 42.

Dumnorigi: with *persuādet*, l. 52. *Dumnorig*, "king of the world."

The rivalry between these two brothers was destined to have far-reaching consequences in the events of the next five years.

57. *quī*: refers to *Dumnorig*.

eō tempore: ablative of time when (97).

principātum: not an official position.

58. *maximē*: with *acceptus* = superlative.

plēbī: dative with an adjective (*acceptus*). See 70.

59. *mātrimōnium*: accusative of limit of motion, because there is a change from the unmarried to the married state.

60. *Perfacile* . . . *esse*: infinitive of indirect discourse after *probat*. Its subject is *perficere*.

factū: ablative of supine after an adjective (170, b). As it has the same stem as *perfacile*, it need not be translated.

cōnāta: a perfect passive participle used as a noun.

61. *obtentūrus esset*: the periphrastic conjugation (43, 1) here denotes intention. Why is the verb in the subjunctive?

62. *Nōn* . . . *quīn*: the clause introduced by *quīn* (147) is the subject of the infinitive. Supply a grammatical subject, *it*.

plūrimum . . . *possent*: *multum possum* = I am powerful.

63. *sē, suīs, suō*: the repeated reflexives emphasize the importance attached to *Orgetorix*.

cōpilis: not *troops*.

64. *conciliātūrum*: supply *esse*. The auxiliary verb of compound infinitives is frequently omitted.

inter sē . . . *dant*: *give to each other* = exchange. See note on l. 4.

65. *fidem et iūs iūrandum*: hendiadys, *pledge and oath* = a sworn pledge. See note on l. 40.

rēgnō occupātō: ablative absolute, showing circumstance.

66. **tōtius Galliae**: double dependence; see note on l. 54. It isitive of the whole with *populōs*, and objective genitive with *ŕ* which is followed by the ablative or genitive (86, 1).

67. **posse**: this verb lacks the future infinitive, which should be with *spērāre* (157, 1).

68. CHAPTER 4. **Ea rēs**: see note on l. 43.

indiciū: abstract with collective force. See note on l. 27.

ēnūtiāta: what is the effect of separating this participle from auxiliary? Why is the prefix *ē-* used?

Mōribus: ablative of accordance (93).

69. **ex vinculis**: what preposition must be used in English? note on *ab Sēquanis*, l. 18.

causam dicere: *tell his case = plead.*

70. **damnātum**: object of *sequi*, of which *poenam* is the subject. The whole phrase is subject of *oportēbat*, and means, literally, (*it necessary for the punishment to follow the condemned man.* *Datum*, however, is equivalent to *sī damnātus erat*. Translate *upon his conviction, the established punishment would be. . .*

ut . . . cremārētur: explanatory (144) of *poenam*. What is literal, and what the idiomatic translation of *ignē cremārē*?

71. **Diē cōstitūtā**: ablative of time when. Notice the gender the singular *diēs* is usually feminine when denoting a fixed and appointed day.

causae dictiōis: *causae dictiō* forms one idea, *pleading*.

72. **familiam**: be careful about the translation of this word.

ad: with numerals *ad* means *about*.

73. **obaerātōs**: men who had entered a semi-servile condition payment for financial support. Distinguish between *et* and *-que*. latter is much the closer connective. Here two classes of people summoned by Orgetorix; his immediate dependents (*familia*), people under contract obligation to him. The latter are again divided into *clientēs* and *obaerātī*. There is a striking resemblance of these relations to the vassalage and serfdom of the Middle Ages.

Page 46. 74. **eōdem**: adverb.

condūxit: contrast with *habēbat*. The latter is imperfect of design; the former shows a simple past fact.

75. **nē . . . ēripuit**: *sē ēripuit = impedivit*; therefore the *nē* clause (147).

76. *armis*: ablative of means, with *exsequi*.

iūs: viz., to punish criminals.

cōnārētur, *cōgerent*: the subjunctive shows that this is circumstantial (129). Distinguish between *cum* = *when*, showing the time of an event (indicative), and *cum* = *when*, showing in what circumstances the action occurs (subjunctive).

multitūdinem: a levy of militia in times of disturbance.

78. *ut . . . arbitrantur*: *ut* with the indicative means (1) *as*, (2) *when*, *as soon as*, (3) *because*. What is its meaning with the subjunctive?

79. *quā . . . cōnsciverit*: *neque abest suspiciō* is almost equivalent to *nōn est dubium*. See note on l. 62.

ipse sibi: *he himself to himself*. Notice the difference between the intensive *ipse*, *himself*, and the reflexive. In English we may omit the *ipse*. What would be a good English translation for *mortem sibi cōnsciscere*?

80. CHAPTER 5. *nihilō*: *by nothing the less* = *nevertheless*; ablative of degree of difference.

id . . . cōstituerant: turn into a phrase, object of *facere*; *their purpose*, etc.

81. *cōnantur*: for the present tenses in this chapter see note on *cōnfirmant*, l. 50.

ut . . . exeant: substantive clause of purpose, appositive to *id quod*. Insert *namely*.

82. *Ubi*: expressions of place are often used with regard to time.

83. *numerō*: ablative of specification.

84. *reliqua*: *not the rest of*.

privāta aedificia: isolated houses outside of towns and villages; *farmhouses*.

85. *praeter quod*: supply *id*.

sēcum: see note on *quibuscum*, l. 11.

portātūri: see note on *obtentūrus esset*, l. 61.

combūrunt: distinguish between this word and *incendunt*, l. 84. Can the difference be illustrated by English derivatives?

domum . . . sublātā: an ablative absolute of circumstance. *Domum reditiōnis spē* forms one idea, *hope of returning home*. *Reditiōnis* is objective genitive with *spē*; *domum* is accusative of limit of motion (75. 1) with *reditiōnis*, a noun formed from a verb and retaining verbal force.

86. *sublātā*: from *tollō*.

ad . . . *subeunda*: see note on *ad* . . . *cōficiendās*, l. 48.

87. *essent*: purpose clause.

mēnsium: genitive of measure (57, *a*); translate by *for*. Allc about 1 bushel a man per month, the load to be transported weighed at least 16,000 tons, and must have required no fewer than that number of animals for transporting.

sibi: dative of reference.

88. *quemque*: this word, if possible, is always placed next reflexive.

domō: see 78, 1.

Rauracis, etc.: these tribes lived to the northeast, between Lake Constance. *Rauracī*, "masters"; *Tulingi* and *Latobri* "mountaineers."

89. *utī*: notice the short *u* and distinguish from *ūtī*, *to use*.

ūsī: translate as if *ut ūtantur*. Similarly, *exustīs* = *ut exurant*.

90. *oppidis* . . . *exustīs*: appositive to *cōsiliō*.

cum iis: we should expect *sēcum*.

91. *Bōiōsque*: "the terrors." It is the object of *asciscunt*. Boii lived north of the Rhine and were trying to escape the pressure of the Germans by moving eastward into Styria and Carinthia (*Noric*). The name survives in the word *Bohemia*.

92. *Nōrēiam*: the present Neumarkt in Styria.

oppugnābant: contrast this tense with *trānsierant* and use an appropriate translation.

receptōs ad sē: appositive to *Bōiōs*.

93. *sociōs*: predicate accusative with *asciscunt* (73, *c*).

sibi: dative with compound verbs (65). Literally, *attach to themselves*; freely, *receive as their*.

94. CHAPTER 6. *Erant*: *esse* meaning *exist* is placed at the beginning of the sentence.

itineribus: the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause belongs to the formal, especially the legal language. It shows the influence of Caesar's law studies upon his style. The case is ablative of means, regularly employed to denote the way by which one proceeds.

95. *possent*: characteristic relative clause (125, *a*); *roads of such kind that* . . . They might have crossed the Rhine to the north but made their way through Alsace, but that would have meant a confrontation with the Germans, whom they wanted to escape.

per Sēquanōs: the people, instead of their country; insert *the and of*.

96. **inter**, etc.: on the right bank through the Pas de L'Écluse, where the Rhone passes through a narrow defile. See map facing p. 48.

vix quā = *quā* (adverb) *vix*: *barely such that there . . .*

singuli: *one each* = *single file*. See 24.

97. **dūcerentur**: see note on *possent*, l. 95. Insert *could*.

98. **facile**: adverb.

perpauci: force of the prefix ?

possent: subjunctive of result.

per, etc.: on the left bank of the river.

99. **multō**: ablative of degree of difference.

100. **Allobrogum**: "settlers on foreign soil," *i.e.* in the Province.

101. **nūper**: 62 B.C.

locis: when *locus* is accompanied by a modifier, no preposition is used.

102. **trānsitur**: *is crossed (again and again)* = *can be crossed*.

103. **finibus**: with *proximum* (70).

104. **sēsē**: *i.e.* the Helvetians.

Page 47. 105. **bonō animō**: descriptive ablative (94, 1) with *esse* understood.

in populum: accusative of the person toward whom the feeling is directed.

106. **vidērentur**: subjunctive of indirect discourse with *existimābant*.

coactūrōs: the object (*eōs*) is not expressed.

ut . . . **paterentur**: object of both *persuāsūrōs* and *coactūrōs*. With latter the infinitive is more common.

107. **suōs**: *i.e.* *Allobrogum*.

eōs: *i.e.* *Helvētiōs*.

108. **diem dicunt**: a law phrase, *appoint a day*.

diē: for use of the word see note on *itineribus*, l. 94. For gender see note on l. 71.

109. **convenient**: relative clause of purpose (123, 4).

diēs: masculine, because it is a calendar date.

a.d.: for the Roman way of reckoning time see 173, 174. Owing the confusion of the Roman calendar at that time, the date cannot be fixed with certainty. It probably coincided with the spring equinox, favorite date for such assemblies.

110. **L. Pisōne**: see note on l. 26. Piso was Caesar's father-in-law. The year was 58 B.C., the time of the present narrative.

111. CHAPTER 7. *Caesarī*: indirect object of *nūntiātum* (circumstantial *cum* clause), placed before its clause (anticipate center attention on the hero.

id: explained by *ēds . . . cōnārī*, an appositive to *id*. In trans the infinitive construction insert *namely*.

112. *facere*: object (complementary) infinitive with *cōnārī*. *C* is infinitive of a progressive present.

mātūrat: this verb is never followed by the *place to which*.

ab urbe: which was the only *city* for a Roman? Caesar, as consul, had been near Rome, which a magistrate with military mand was forbidden to enter; therefore *ab*, not *ex*.

113. *quam maximis*: see 106, 2; the plural, because a long 1 is made every day.

itineribus: see note on first *linguā*, l. 3.

114. *ad Genavam*: for use of preposition see 75, 1, *a*.

pervenit: force of *per*-?

Prōvinciae: indirect object of *imperat*. The direct object is *num*. Translate *levies upon*.

116. *erat*: indicative, because it is a geographical note of Caes

117. *rescindi*: *iubeō* is followed by an infinitive in indirect course. When the person commanded is named, the infinitive active; otherwise it is passive.

Ubi: see note on l. 82.

certiōrēs factī: see Vocabulary, *certus*.

118. *lēgātōs*: appositive to *nōbilissimōs*.

119. *cuius lēgatiōnis*: *lēgatiōnis* is antecedent of *cuius*. It is positive to *nōbilissimōs*, but has been incorporated into the relative clause and put in the same case as the relative.

Nammēius: "son of Nammus."

Verucloetius: "far-famed."

principem: words like *prīnceps*, *dux*, *rēx*, are often used as adjectives.

120. *quī dicerent*: relative clause of purpose. The infinitive and *rogāre* depend, as indirect discourse, on this *dicerent*.

sibi: i.e. *Helvētiīs*, possessive dative (68); literally, *they had in* = *they intended*. That which is in their mind (*facere*) is the subject of *esse*.

122. *nūllum*: emphasized by its position. How does *Et* emphasize a negative?

rogāre: supply *sē*; used with *ut* . . . *liceat* as object clause of purpose. Notice the irregular sequence of *liceat*.

eius: i.e. *Caesaris*. The fullness of the expression, *it might be allowed to them to march with his consent*, is peculiar to the language of diplomacy. Translate freely, *that he would consent to their marching*.

123. *L. Cassium cōsulem*: 107 B.C.

124. *occisum, pulsum, missum, concēdendum*: supply *esse*.

125. *sub iugum*: as a sign of disgrace, a surrendered army was sometimes forced to march through a gate (*iugum*) made of a spear laid horizontally over two spears fastened in the ground and so low that the soldiers had to bow their heads to pass. Cp. *subjugate*.

concēdendum: with *esse* understood, infinitive of the second periphrastic (43). An example of the impersonal use of the passive, employed by the Romans when they wished to leave the doer of an action indefinite (115). Translate *he ought not to give his permission*.

126. *hominēs*: subject of *temperātūrōs*. Supply *sibi esse*.

animō: descriptive ablative.

datā facultāte: ablative absolute = a condition.

127. *itineris faciundī*: the genitive is objective with *facultāte*; *faciundī* = *faciendī*.

128. *dum*: with subjunctive it means *until*.

129. *quōs*: see note on *prōvinciae*, l. 114.

130. *diem*: here of indefinite time.

ad dēliberandum: gerund construction of purpose (169, 3).

quid: instead of *aliquid* (112, 2).

131. *Id.*: see 172, c, 3.

reverterentur: the subjunctive is used because an imperative, when reported, is changed to the third person of the subjunctive. Caesar said, *si quid vultis, revertimini*.

132. CHAPTER 8. *legiōne, militibus*: ablatives of means.

133. *quī* . . . *infuit*: we should say that the lake has its outlet in the river.

Page 48. 135. *mīlia*: accusative of extent of space (74).

136. *mūrum*: Caesar exaggerates. In reality he only fortified level places and increased the slope of the river bank.

fossamque: as there was a fixed ratio of about 3 : 2 between width of trench and height of rampart, only one measurement need be given.

perdūcit: because the work progresses as if one draws a line with the ruler.

137. **dispōnit**: note the force of *dis-*, *at intervals*.

castella: these were at some distance behind the rampart and for the reserves for the sentinels on it. From them the troops, when needed, were summoned by a signal.

commūnit: note the force of *com-*; see Vocabulary.

138. **quō**: regularly used with a comparative instead of *ut* to express purpose. The case is ablative of degree of difference.

sē invītō: ablative absolute; *he being unwilling = against his*.

cōnentur: subjunctive of (implied) indirect discourse, giving reason in Caesar's mind and representing an original future indication.

139. **diēs**: see note on l. 71.

vēnit: *ubi = when* is regularly used with the perfect indicative, regardless of the time of the narrative. In past time we must use the pluperfect.

140. **negat . . . posse**: *says that he cannot*. *Negāre regulā dīcere nōn*.

mōre: ablative of accordance (93).

mōre et exemplō: hendiadys, *established precedent* (171, 1).

141. **iter**: *permission to march*.

ūlli: usually an adjective; the pronoun is *quisquam*. Both are used in negative sentences.

142. **cōnentur**: subjunctive of indirect discourse instead of indicative. Notice the sequence and see note on *cōnfīrmant*, *prohibitūrum*: supply *sē esse*.

Helvētīi: subject of *dēstitērunt*, l. 147. *Alii*, l. 144, is appositive to *Helvētīi*. We should expect an *alii* also before *nāvibus* (*some others*) but it is omitted to show that the greater number used *in*.

143. **spē**: ablative of separation (79). Translate *thrown from = disappointed in*.

nāvibus . . . factis: not ablative absolute, but ablative of means. Boats were fastened together and covered with boards so as to serve as a flatboat ferry.

144. **quā**: adverb.

minima: predicate adjective.

145. **interdiū, noctū**: adverbs, instead of the ablative of the nouns *die* . . . *possent*: object clause (indirect question) after a verb trying, regularly introduced by *si* (151).

146. **mūnitiōne**: ablative of means. Notice the order: the rampart is the first obstacle; then, at the alarm given by the sentinels

soldiers come from the *castella* and, by a hail of missiles, drive the invaders back.

147. *cōnātū*: ablative of separation. Study carefully the arrangement of this sentence so as to understand how Latin develops a periodic structure. The principal fact, *Helvētīi dēstīlērunt*, opens and closes the sentence. The modifiers of this idea are given in the order in which they occur in time: the Helvetians are disappointed in their hope for a peaceable arrangement; many build ferries; others cross the shoals; this is done repeatedly, both by day and by night; they try to rush the fortifications; the alarm is given; the reserves rush up and hurl their weapons; the enemy are beaten back; finally, they give up.

148. CHAPTER 9. *Relinquēbātur*: the emphatic position of the verb may be kept in English by using the adverb *there*.

ūna: only.

Sēquanīs: ablative absolute. See note on l. 138.

149. *angustiās*: the Pas de L'Écluse. See note on l. 96.

cum . . . possent: a causal clause (132).

150. *Dumnorigem*: see note on l. 56.

151. *eō dēprecātōre*: ablative absolute, with *dēprecātōre* as predicate noun, denoting means; *through him as mediator*.

impetrārent: their wish.

152. *grātiā*: ablative of cause (83).

153. *Helvētīs*: see 70.

154. *filiā*: see l. 59.

in mātīmōnium dūxerat: see Vocabulary, *mātīmōnium*. For case note on l. 59.

155. *rēgnī*: objective genitive with *cupiditāte*.

novīs rēbus: dative of indirect object with *studēre*. See Vocabulary,

156. *habēre obstrictās*: *habēō* with perfect passive participle shows that the effect of the action lasts after its completion. Translate *habēō* keep.

157. *rem*: the mediation.

impetrat: the clause *ut . . . patiantur* is its object, while the clause *obsidēsque . . . dent* is the object of *perficit*.

158. *obsidēs*: object of *dent* but placed before the *-que* (anticipation).

159. *Sēquanī, Helvētīi*: supply *obsidēs dant*.

nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . trānseant: these clauses explain the

purpose of the exchange of hostages. Insert *pledging themselves* fore *nē*.

161. CHAPTER 10. *renūtiātur*: force of prefix?

Helvētiis, etc.: see note on l. 120.

per agrum: for this whole passage study the map of Gaul. Santones lived on the right bank of the Garonne, near its mouth. region is to-day called Saintonge.

163. *nōn longē*: really about 100 miles.

Tolōsātium: to-day Toulouse.

quae civitās: see note on *cuius lēgatiōnis*, l. 119.

164. *Id*: i.e. the Helvetian settlement.

sī fieret: subjunctive of indirect discourse, representing an original future indicative.

magnō, etc.: ablative of manner or attendant circumstance.

Page 49. 165. *prōvinciae*: objective genitive with *periculō*.

futūrum: supply *esse*; *ut . . . habēret* is the subject of this finite.

ut . . . habēret: *prōvincia* (understood from *prōvinciae*) is subject of the clause, *hominēs* its object, *finitimōs* predicate accusative.

166. *populī*: note the case and see note on *Helvētiis*, l. 1. *Inimicōs* is used as a noun.

locīs: dative with an adjective (70).

patentibus: not protected by natural boundaries.

maximēque frūmentāriis: adjectives in *-ārius* can be compared only by *magis* and *maximē*.

167. *mūnitiōnī*: indirect object of *praeficit*.

168. *Labiēnum*: the most trusted and most prominent of Caesar's assistants. Later on, during the Civil War, he became Caesar's bitter enemy.

lēgātum: a Roman governor was accompanied by one trusted assistant or more, appointed by the Senate on his recommendation. These assistants served at his pleasure, either with or without fixed command, and represented him in his absence. Distinguish the word from *lēgātus* = *envoy*.

169. *Italiā*: Hither Gaul, which by this time began to be reckoned as part of Italy.

contendit: cp. with *mātūrat*, l. 112.

170. *Aquilēiam*: on the northern coast of the Adriatic, defend Italy against attacks from the northeast.

172. *per Alpēs*: these roads were used only by traders. Armies commonly followed the west coast of Italy along the sea.

173. *Ibi*: i.e. *in Alpibus*.

Graioceli et Caturigēs: "the victors of Ocelum" and "the chiefs of battle"; thus the names reveal the warlike character of these tribes.

175. *Complūribus*, etc.: arrange thus: *hīs pulsīs* (ablative absolute) *complūribus proeliīs* (ablative of means).

ab *Ocelō*: see 78, 1, *a*.

176. *prōvinciae*: possessive genitive; translate by *in*.

182. CHAPTER 11. *trādūxerant, pervēnerant*: contrast the tense with *populābantur*, l. 183, and express the difference in the translation.

183. *Aedui*: for position see note on *Caesari*, l. 111.

cum . . . possent: see note on l. 149.

184. *suaque*: the neuter plural of the adjective is used as a noun; *their belongings*.

185. *rogātum*: accusative of the supine used after a verb of motion to express purpose (170, *a*). *Auxilium* is its object.

Ita sē, etc.: indirect discourse, depending on the idea of speaking implied in *rogātum*.

omni tempore: ablative of time when. *Tempus* here means *occasion, crisis*.

186. *meritōs esse*: *such had been their zeal for*.

ut . . . dēbuerint: result clause. Notice the sequence. In result clauses a perfect subjunctive is often substituted for an imperfect, to mark the result as final or decisive (122, *b*).

187. *vāstārī*: complementary to *dēbuerint*. Notice the tense. Since in English *ought, must* show no difference between past and present tense, past action must be expressed by the complementary infinitive: *he ought to come, he ought to have come*. In Latin these verbs have a complete conjugation and carry the burden of expressing the time. Hence the complementary infinitive is always in the present tense: *ventre dēbet, ventre dēbuit*.

188. *expugnārī*: distinguish between *pugnāre, oppugnāre, expugnāre*.

Ambarrī: "the settlers around the Arar."

189. *necessārī*, etc.: hendiadys, *near kinsmen*.

190. *dēpopulātis*: the perfect passive participle of deponents is often used with passive force.

nōn facile: adverb. Turn into a phrase with infinitive: *they trouble in keeping*.

ab: contrast the use of the preposition here with that of *itiner* l. 159.

192. **trāns**: on the north bank of the river. Caesar gives reasons, because he really had overstepped the limits of his assignn by leaving his province.

fugā: ablative of means, though it impresses us as manner. Translate by *in*.

193. **sibi**: possessive dative (68).

194. **solum**: notice the quantity of the *o* and distinguish from *sōlus*, -a, -um.

reliquī: genitive of the whole with *nihil* (55).

195. **sibi**: supply *esse*. For case see 67.

dum: with subjunctive, *until* (127, c).

Page 50. 196. **Santonōs**: what is the nominative? See *Sannum*, l. 162. In using foreign proper names the Romans sometimes varied the declension.

198. CHAPTER 12. **est**: force of the position of the verb?

Arar: "the slow river," later called Saucona, whence the modern Saône.

199. **lēnitāte**: ablative of description.

200. **fluat**: subjunctive of indirect question. This clause is subject of *iudicārī*, complementary infinitive to the subjunctive result, *possit*.

Id: object of *trānsibant*. Intransitives frequently become transitive by composition.

201. **ratibus**, etc.: see note on l. 143.

trānsibant: use progressive conjugation.

202. **explōrātōrēs**: regular troops used for reconnoitering, *chili* cavalry recruited from among the Gauls.

trēs partēs: three fourths.

partēs, flūmen: both objects of *trādūxisse*, of which *Helvetiōs* is subject. For case see 73, 2.

203. **quārtam . . . partem**: one fourth.

204. **Ararim**: cp. with *Arar*, l. 198, and *Arari*, l. 221. Also note on l. 196.

dē tertiā vigiliā: the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches.

205. *cum legiōnibus*: see note on l. 28.

207. *impeditōs*: translate by *while*.

208. *mandārun*t = *mandāvērunt*.

in . . . *abdidērunt*: *they (fled into and) hid in*, etc.

210. *Tigurinus*: on Lake Murten.

211. *Hic*, etc.: Caesar tries to justify his butchery by representing it as a providential revenge for the disgraceful defeat of the Romans in 107 B.C.

cum . . . *exisset*: *cum* clause of circumstance.

212. *memoriā*: ablative of time when.

213. *cāsū*: ablative of cause.

214. *quae pars*: the noun, really belonging with *ea* (l. 215) as antecedent of *quae*, is attracted into the relative clause and this precedes the demonstrative antecedent. This is a very effective arrangement.

216. *princeps* . . . *persolvit*: *paid first* = *was the first to pay*. Remember that *poena* = *penalty*, which the culprit pays and the person wronged takes, and you will have no trouble in understanding the various idioms connected with *poena*. See Vocabulary.

217. *eius*: i.e. *Caesaris*.

218. *socerī*: L. Calpurnius Piso, consul of this year (see l. 110). The man killed was the great-grandfather of Caesar's fourth wife, so that Caesar's grievance would appear to be very far-fetched. But it is interesting to note the survival of the feeling of blood vengeance; cp. the feuds in our southern mountain districts.

220. CHAPTER 13. *reliquās*, etc.: for position see note on *Caesarī*, l. 111.

221. *cōsequi*: distinguish from *sequi*, *persequi*.

pontem . . . *cūrat*: *he had a bridge built*. See 166, 2 b.

223. *commōti*: cp. with *permōti*, l. 43.

cum: causal, with *intellegerent* as predicate.

id quod: explained by the clause *ut* . . . *trānsirent*. Translate by a phrase.

diēbus: ablative of time within which (97).

224. *illum*: contrast with *ipsi*, l. 223. Latin has at its command a large number of demonstratives representing the third person, while English has only *he*, *she*, *it*. In translating substitute names.

inō: but the Roman army numbered only about 42,000 men compared with approximately 240,000 of the enemy.

225. *cuius lēgatiōis*: see note on l. 119.

226. *Divicō*: "devoted to the Lord."

bellō Cassiānō: see note on l. 123. The adjective (*-ānus* *longing to*) represents a clause: *cuius bellī Cassius dux fuerat*.

Page 51. 227. *ēgit*: *agere cum* = *plead*.

Sī pācem, etc.: the following lines are the first example of *contingent* indirect discourse and should be studied carefully in order to grasp principles of this frequent construction. The direct form of the story was as follows: *Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciam partem timent atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs Caesar cōstitū atque esse voluerit; sīn bellō nōs persequi perseverābīs, reminiscā veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiā. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum īī quī flūmen trānsierat suis auxilium ferre nōn poterant, nōlī ob eam rem aut tuae magnae virtūtī tribuere aut nōs dēspicere. Nōs ita ā patribus maiōribus nostris didicimus, ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut īnītiāmur. Quārē nōlī committere ut is locus ubi cōstitūerimur calamitātē populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs tuī nōmen calet aut memoriā prōdat*.

The clearest possible understanding of Latin indirect discourse is always reached by such a recasting of the report into its original form, especially as far as the proper reference of the pronouns is concerned.

populus Rōmānus, Helvētiīs, etc.: the use of the names instead of pronouns not only contributes to the clearness of the expression but also preserves the formal and legal character of the proposed contest.

229. *cōstitūisset*: from *con-* and *statuō* = *to set up, place*.

230. *persequi*: supply *Helvētiōs*.

231. *reminiscerētur*: for original imperative. This is an independent subjunctive.

incommodī: for case see 59. It is a mild word for *defeat*, in keeping with the peaceful character of the proposal. Later on, when D. wishes to impress Caesar with the risk he is running (l. 239) he uses the strong words *calamitātē, interneciōne*.

232. *Quod*: *as to the fact that*. See 150. a.

233. *cum*: temporal, with original indicative.

234. *nē . . . tribueret, dēspiceret*: for a prohibition (154). Translate *he should not*, etc.

235. *magnopere*: here = *multum, nimum*.

236. *ā patribus*: properly an ablative of agent, because *discō, I learn* = *doceor, I am taught*.

ut . . . *contenderent*: object clause of result with *didicisse*, explaining *ita*.

237. *dolō*: ablative of means with *nitor*; *to support one's self by = to rely on*.

238. ut . . . *caperet, prōderet* (l. 240): object clause of purpose with *committeret*.

cōstitissent: for future perfect indicative. Divico refers to the place of the coming battle, not that of the present conference.

Page 52. 240. *nōmen caperet*: because many places have been named after some event happening there. Cp. *Dead Man's Gulch*.

memoriam: supply *calamitātis*.

241. CHAPTER 14. *Hīs*: supply *rēbus*.

Eō sibi, etc.: The original form of this speech was as follows: *Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs, quās vōs lēgātī Helvētīī commemorāvistis, memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidērunt: quī sī alicuius iniūriāe sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus est, quod neque commissum ā sē intellēxit quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāvit. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci volō, num etiam recentium iniūriarū, quod mē invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāvistis, memoriā depōnere possum? Quod vestrā victoriā tam insolenter glōriāmini, quodque tam diū vōs impūnē iniūriās intulisse admirāmini, eōdem pertinent. Cōsuēvērunt enim dī immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniorem impūnitatem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, utī ea, quae pollicēmini, factūrōs intellegam, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociisq̄ue eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam.*

Eō: ablative of degree of difference or of cause. See note on *hōc*,

l. 30.

dubitātiōnis: genitive of the whole with *minus*. See note on *reliquit*,

l. 194.

242. *commemorāssent*: carefully distinguish from *reminiscī*.

243. *eō . . . quō*: see note on l. 241.

244. *meritō*: does *merit* here fit the sense? What word does?

quī: i.e. *populus Rōmānus*.

245. *iniūriāe*: genitive with an adjective (58).

sibi cōnsciūs: *knowing with one's self* = *conscious*.

fuisset: condition contrary to fact, using the subjunctive also direct discourse (140, a).

fuisse: its subject is *cavēre*. Translate *it would have been*.

246. **eō**: ablative of means.

dēceptum: supply *esse populum Rōmānum*.

quod: *that*. The clause explains *eō*.

commissum: supply *esse*. The indirect question *quārē timēret* i subject. Literally, (*it*) *why it should fear had not been done*; fr *it did not see in the past any reason for fear*.

247. **timendum**: supply *esse*. With *putāret* this is the sec predicate of *quod*. Literally, *it thought that to it fearing ought n be*; freely, *it thought it ought not to be needlessly afraid*.

248. **Quod si**: *but if*.

contumēliae: see 59. This refers to the defeat of Cassius, l. 21: which *victōriā*, l. 252, also refers.

vellet: supply *Caesar*.

249. **iniuriarum**: objective genitive with *memoriam*.

quod . . . vexassent: these clauses explain *iniuriarum*. For facts cp. Ch. 11.

250. **per vim** = *vi*.

251. **posse**: infinitive, because the question *num*, etc., is equiva to a negative statement.

252. **Quod**: *as to the fact that*. These *quod* clauses are the subj of *pertinere*.

victōriā: ablative of cause. To whom do *suā* and *sē* refer?

tam insolenter: modifies *glōriārentur*, but *tam diū* modifies *intul*.

253. **impūnē**: force of *im-*? Compare with English, and with *in-* in *intulisse*. How about *iniūria*?

254. **Cōnsuēsse**, etc.: translate in this order: *cōnsuēsse deōs mortālēs secundiōrēs rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem hīs concēd quōs . . . velint, quō . . . doleant*. *Cōnsuēsse* = *cōnsuēvisse*; perfect of inceptive verbs (in *-scō*) commonly has present *meani* *Concedere* (l. 257) is complementary infinitive to it.

quō: see note on l. 138.

255. **ex**: source, but with causal force; *for*, *over*.

commūtātiōne: force of *com-*?

quōs: its antecedent is *hīs*.

257. **Cum . . . sint**: concessive, as *tamen* shows (135).

258. *ut* . . . *intellegat*: purpose.

ea quae polliceantur factūrōs: simplify to *keep their promise*. *Eōs* must be supplied as subject of *factūrōs*.

259. *Aeduis*: indirect object of *satisfaciant*.

263. *ut* . . . *cōsuērint*: result clause. For tense see note on . . . *dēbuerint*, l. 186.

rei: objective genitive with *testem*.

268. CHAPTER 15. *quem* . . . *habēbat*: Caesar's whole cavalry was recruited from among the Gauls and, later on, from the Germans also. For the force of *cōactum habēbat* see note on l. 156.

269. *quī videant*: relative clause of purpose. For number see note on *ut* . . . *extrent*, l. 28.

quās . . . *faciant*: indirect question, object of *videant*.

270. *Quī*: see note on *quā dē causā*, l. 11. It refers to *equitātum*.

novissimum agmen: see Vocabulary, *agmen*. Distinguish *exercitus*, *agmen*, *aciēs*.

Page 53. 271. *aliēnō locō*: *belonging to another* = *intquō*; opposite of *suō*. For omission of preposition see note on l. 101.

272. *et*: *and indeed*.

pauci: the others ran away. See l. 344, et seq.

dē nostris: for the use of a preposition instead of the genitive see 55, a.

273. *proeliō*: ablative of cause.

sublāti: from *tollō*.

quod . . . *prōpulerant*: gives the reason for *sublāti*. The indicative shows that this reason is an assumption of Caesar's; if it were that of the Helvetians, the subjunctive would have been used.

275. *agmine proeliō*: ablatives of means. With the rear guard they excited our men by means of a skirmish. Translate *proeliō lacessere* by *challenge to a fight*.

276. *ā proeliō*: for use of preposition see 79, a.

277. *satis habēbat*: *satis* is the predicate accusative of *habēbat*, which has the infinitive *prohibere* for its direct object. *Thought keeping away sufficient* = *was satisfied to keep away*.

rapinis, etc.: ablatives of separation.

279. *hostium*: when a compound phrase is modified by a genitive or a prepositional phrase, the latter is commonly placed between the two parts of the compound phrase, similarly to the arrangement of prepositions discussed in the note on l. 11.

280. *primum*: supply *agmen*.

quinis: the distributive numeral, because the distance was kept day.

281. *milibus*: ablative of comparison (84). The accusative of tent might have been used (84, 2).

interesset: subjunctive of result.

282. CHAPTER 16. *Aeduōs frumentum*: some verbs of ask especially *rogō*, *flagitō*, are used with two accusatives (73, δ); but 1 of these verbs express the "person asked" by a prepositional phrase.

283. *essent*: subjunctive of indirect discourse implied in *flagit publicē*: not *publicly*.

flagitare: predicate of *Caesar*. An infinitive (historical) with subject nominative is sometimes used instead of the imperfect indicative (165).

frigora: not *cold climate*, which would be *frigus*, but *cold weather*, *cold season*. The clause *quod . . . posita est*, therefore, was written by Caesar, but is a geographical comment of some reader.

284. *sub septentriōnibus*: under this constellation, viz., in the north.

285. *posita*: see note on *divisa*, l. 1.

frumenta: *crops*, while *threshed grain* is denoted by the singular (l. 287).

286. *nē pābuli quidem*: the words emphasized by *nē quidem* regularly inclosed by them.

287. *flumine, nāvis*: ablatives of means, though we use expressions of place in translating; *up the river* (on account of the force *SUBvexerat*) in boats.

288. *minus*: see note on *minimē*, l. 8.

iter . . . āverterant: *had turned their route away from* = *had turned aside from*; namely, to the west, to reach the valley of the Liger (Loire).

289. *ā quibus*: *and from them*.

Diem, etc.: supply *Caesarem* as object of *dūcere*. *Diem* is accusative of extent of time. *Dūcere, dicere* are historical infinitives, while *cōferri, comportari, adesse* are infinitives of indirect discourse as *dicere*, with *frumentum* understood.

291. *diūtius*: *too long* (106, 1).

frumentum: object of *mātrī*, which is subject of *oporteret*.

292. *eōrum*: i.e. *Aeduōrum*.

294. *Diviciacō, Liscō*: ablatives, appositive to *principibus*.

quī: i.e. *Liscus*.

295. quem: supply *magistrātum*. Notice the difference in meaning; here *official*, above *office*.

vergebretum: "chief judge."

creatur: legal term for electing.

annuus: predicate nominative. Translate *for a year*.

296. in: *over*.

297. cum . . . possit: concessive clause.

298. possit: supply *frumentum*.

tempore, hostibus: ablatives absolute of circumstance; *at a time so critical, with the enemy so near*.

299. sublevetur: subjunctive of the indirect discourse implied in *accusat*.

cum . . . susceperit: causal *cum* clause referring to *multo gravius*.

magna ex parte: *largely*.

301. quod sit: object of *queritur*, in the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse.

queritur: distinguish from *quaerō*.

Page 54. 302. CHAPTER 17. Tum demum: notice the skill with which Caesar, by his detailed and circumstantial description of the desperate situation, leads up to the sudden revelation of treachery among his own allies. The vividness is still more emphasized by the use of the present *proponit* (l. 303) and the principal, instead of historical, sequence of tenses in the following report.

303. quod . . . tacuerat: object clause of *proponit*. *Quod* itself is object of *tacuerat*.

Esse: indirect discourse after the idea of saying in *proponit*. For position of *esse* see note on *erant*, l. 94.

304. plurimum valeat: *valeō = I am strong, have value, am worth*. Compare *plurimum posse*.

306. nē . . . conferant: translate *from collecting*. For construction after verbs of hindering see 147.

307. quod: relative.

Praestare: subject, *perferre* (l. 309). The words *praestare, ereptis* (l. 311) are quoted by Liscus from the *seditiosa oratio* of the rebels.

309. dubitare: supply *sē*.

quin: see 149.

Helvetiōs: the emphatic position shows that, in the opinion of the rebels, the Helvetians were the last bulwark of Gallic freedom.

superaverint: perfect subjunctive for future perfect indicative.

310. *ūnā*: adverb.

Aeduis: see 66, *b*.

311. *sint ēreptūri*: the periphrastic conjugation (122) bring more clearly the future time, which otherwise would be expressed present or imperfect subjunctive.

Ab isdem: here the speech of Liscus himself is resumed.

quaeque = *et ea quae*: a relative clause in indirect discourse, n. indirect question.

312. *ā sē*: i.e. *Liscō*. But *hōs* refers to *isdem*.

313. *quā etiam*: *nay, more*.

quod: *as to the fact that*.

necessāriam: *critical*.

coāctus: *only upon compulsion*. This participle contains the idea.

314. *id*: i.e. *quod enūntiārit*.

315. *fēcerit*: indirect question, object of *intellegere*.

potuerit: we might have had the pluperfect subjunctive after the perfect infinitive *tacuisse*, but the writer prefers to maintain the principal sequence of the chapter.

317. CHAPTER 18. *Dumnorigem*: see l. 150, et seq.

318. *plūribus*: ablative absolute with *praesentibus*, participle *praesum*. For force of comparative see 106, 1.

319. *iactāri*: *bandied about*.

concilium: distinguish from *cōnsilium*.

320. *ex sōlō*: *in private*. Supply *eō*.

322. *esse*: supply *ea*.

Ipsū: *the man referred to*.

323. *magnā*, etc.: study the word order to see how the Latin wraps a composite idea.

325. *portōria*: customs duties, upon entry, transit, export; *gālīa*, other taxes. There was no national customs union in (Cp. the early history of duties in the United States).

326. *pretiō*: ablative of price (88).

redēpta habēre: see note on l. 156. In antiquity, taxes collected by the so-called "farming" system. An individual or a company paid to the state a lump sum in advance for the taxes of a and then collected the taxes for his or its own benefit.

327. *licente*: *bidding* (at auction).

nēmō: notice the emphatic position.

328. *largiendum*: not necessarily bribes. Among the Gauls and Germans, the more lavish the gifts which he bestowed among his followers, the more highly a prince or great noble was esteemed by them.

A goodly treasure, therefore, was always a political asset.

330. *sūptū*: ablative of means. Translate by *at*.

neque = *et nōn*.

331. *domī*: see 99.

largiter: irregularly formed adverb from *largus* = *multum*.

332. *causā*: always placed after its modifying genitive. It looks forward to something not yet accomplished.

mātem: Dumnorix as head of his household held power over all the female members of his family.

Biturigibus: "kings of the world." For construction see note on *per Sēquanōs*, l. 95.

homīni: dative with the compound *collocāsse*. *Had placed with = had married her to*.

333. *illic*: modifies *nōbilissimō*.

ex Helvētiis = *Helvētiam*: she was the daughter of Orgetorix. See l. 59.

Page 55. 334. *sorōrem ex mātre*: *i.e.* they had the same mother but not the same father.

335. *nūptum*: for construction see note on *rogātum*, l. 185. The word can be used only of women.

civitātēs: contrast case with that of *in Biturigibus* (l. 332). There the stress was upon *homīni collocāsse*, here it is upon the place to which the woman was sent. These were political marriages such as we see to-day among European royalty.

collocāsse = *collocāvisse*.

Favēre: supply *eum* as subject.

336. *Helvētiis*: see 64.

affinitātem: distinguish this relationship by marriage from *propinquitās* and *necessariis*, blood relations.

disce: for meaning of tense see Vocabulary.

337. *suo nōmine*: ablative of cause. *Nōmen* is a business term, the name of the debtor which appears on top of the ledger page, hence = *account*; *for private reasons*.

adventū: ablative either of cause or of time when. It is not always possible to decide definitely which of two or more possible ideas the writer has in mind.

338. *eius*: i.e. *Dumnorigis*.

339. *Sī quid accidat*: the subjunctive represents an original future indicative.

quid: this older form of the indefinite pronoun is always used after *sī, nisi, nē, num.*

340. *in spem . . . venīre*: *came into hope = conceived hope*. Not quite equivalent to *spērāre*.

341. *imperīō*: ablative of time when. Translate by *under*.

342. *quam habeat*: *present*. The position marks the clause as equivalent to an adjective.

343. *Reperiēbat*: the imperfect (of repeated statement) shows that many of the chiefs said so.

quod: *as to the fact that*.

344. *paucis ante diēbus*: the adverb *ante* has comparative force and is used with an ablative of degree of difference. It is generally placed between adjective and noun.

345. *factum*: supply *esse* with *initium* as subject.

346. *auxiliō*: dative of service (69).

Caesari: dative of reference (69, a).

349. CHAPTER 19. *certissimae res*: explained by the appositive *quod* clauses which follow. These have the subjunctive instead of indicative because they are given as existing in Caesar's mind.

351. *dandōs cūrasset*: see note on l. 221.

352. *iniussū*: ablative of attendant circumstance (92). Together with *suō* and *civitatīs*, it corresponds to the ablative absolute *inscientibus ipsīs*.

suō: i.e. *Caesaris*: a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun.

354. *accūsārētur*: notice the change of tense. The other acts were of the past, but the charge had just been made and was still pending.

satis: here a noun, subject of *esse*, with *causae* as genitive of the whole (55).

355. *quārē . . . iubēret*: indirect question, appositive to *satis causae*.

animadverteret: distinguish *animadvertere in* from *animadvertere* with the accusative.

356. *animadvertere*: for voice see note on *rescindi*, l. 117.

rēbus: indirect object of *repugnābat*.

357. *quod . . . cōgnōverat*: the clause is appositive to *innum*.

358. *sē*; i.e. *Caesarem*.

359. *cōgnōverat*: for force of tense see note on *cōsuēsse*, l. 254.

nē . . . *offenderet*: for *nē* with verbs of fearing see 146.

361. *cōnārētur*: subjunctive, because this was Caesar's intention (128).

362. *cotidiānis*: those employed every day, *regular*. Caesar, of course, spoke no Celtic, and Diviciacus only imperfect Latin at best.

C. Valerium Troucillum: a Gaul to whom Roman citizenship had been given. He had, therefore, a Roman *praenōmen* and *nōmen gentile*, but a Gallic *cōgnōmen*. For Roman names see 175. The phrase *per*, etc., modifies *colloquitur*, l. 365.

364. *cui*: dative of indirect object, because *fidem habēbat* = *cōnfidēbat*.

omnium rērum: objective genitive with *fidem*. Translate the whole phrase: *in whom he placed the greatest trust in everything*.

Page 56. 365. *commonefacit*: stronger than *monet*. It has the indirect question *quae . . . sint* for its object.

ipsō: i.e. *Diviciācō*.

366. *sint dicta, dixerit*: subjunctives of indirect question (151).

367. *sē*: i.e. *Caesarem*.

368. *ut . . . iubeat*: object clauses of purpose after *petit, hortātur*.

eius: possessive genitive with *animī*.

animī: objective genitive with *offēnsiōne*.

ipse: i.e. *Caesar*; see l. 355.

370. CHAPTER 20. *Caesarem*: object of both *complexus* and *obsecrāre*.

371. *nē . . . statueret*: purpose clause after *obsecrāre*, representing a wish.

nē quid: since negative purpose clauses must be introduced by *nē*, the Romans always said *lest anything*, etc., instead of *that nothing*.

quid: see note on l. 339.

gravius: too (106, 1).

372. *Scīre*, etc.: indirect discourse after *obsecrāre*, which contains the idea of saying.

illa: the charges of Liscus and Caesar.

nec quemquam = *et nēminem*: *et* and a negative always combine into *nec* or *neque*.

eō: his knowledge, referring to *scīre*, which is neuter.

373. *dolōris*: with *plūs* (55).

ipse: i.e. *Diviciācus*. For the sake of clearness the names should, where necessary, be substituted for the pronouns.

338. *eius*: i.e. *Dumnorigis*.

339. *Sī quid accidat*: the subjunctive represents an original future indicative.

quid: this older form of the indefinite pronoun is always used after *sī, nisi, nē, num.*

340. *in spem . . . venīre*: *came into hope* = *conceived hope*. Not quite equivalent to *spērāre*.

341. *imperīō*: ablative of time when. Translate by *under*.

342. *quam habeat*: *present*. The position marks the clause as equivalent to an adjective.

343. *Reperiēbat*: the imperfect (of repeated statement) shows that many of the chiefs said so.

quod: *as to the fact that*.

344. *paucis ante diēbus*: the adverb *ante* has comparative force and is used with an ablative of degree of difference. It is generally placed between adjective and noun.

345. *factum*: supply *esse* with *initium* as subject.

346. *auxiliō*: dative of service (69).

Caesari: dative of reference (69, a).

349. CHAPTER 19. *certissimae res*: explained by the appositive *quod* clauses which follow. These have the subjunctive instead of indicative because they are given as existing in Caesar's mind.

351. *dandōs cūrasset*: see note on l. 221.

352. *iniussū*: ablative of attendant circumstance (92). Together with *suō* and *civitātis*, it corresponds to the ablative absolute *inscientibus ipsīs*.

suō: i.e. *Caesaris*: a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun.

354. *accūsārētur*: notice the change of tense. The other acts were of the past, but the charge had just been made and was still pending.

satis: here a noun, subject of *esse*, with *causae* as genitive of the whole (55).

355. *quārē . . . iubēret*: indirect question, appositive to *satis causae*.

animadverteret: distinguish *animadvertere in* from *animadvertere* with the accusative.

356. *animadvertere*: for voice see note on *rescindi*, l. 117.

rēbus: indirect object of *repugnābat*.

357. *quod . . . cōgnōverat*: the clause is appositive to *unum*.

358. *sē*; i.e. *Caesarem*.

359. *cōgnōverat*: for force of tense see note on *cōnsuēsse*, l. 254.

nē . . . *offenderet*: for *nē* with verbs of fearing see 146.

361. *cōnārētur*: subjunctive, because this was Caesar's intention (128).

362. *cotidiānis*: those employed every day, *regular*. Caesar, of course, spoke no Celtic, and Diviciacus only imperfect Latin at best.

C. Valerium Troucillum: a Gaul to whom Roman citizenship had been given. He had, therefore, a Roman *praenōmen* and *nōmen gentile*, but a Gallic *cōgnōmen*. For Roman names see 175. The phrase *per, etc.*, modifies *colloquitur*, l. 365.

364. *cui*: dative of indirect object, because *fidem habēbat* = *cōnfidēbat*.

omnium rērum: objective genitive with *fidem*. Translate the whole phrase: *in whom he placed the greatest trust in everything*.

Page 56. 365. *commonefacit*: stronger than *monet*. It has the indirect question *quae . . . sint* for its object.

ipsō: i.e. *Dīviciācō*.

366. *sint dicta, dixerit*: subjunctives of indirect question (151).

367. *sē*: i.e. *Caesarem*.

368. *ut* . . . *iubeat*: object clauses of purpose after *petit, hortātur*.

eius: possessive genitive with *animī*.

animī: objective genitive with *offēnsiōne*.

ipse: i.e. *Caesar*; see l. 355.

370. CHAPTER 20. *Caesarem*: object of both *complexus* and *obsecrāre*.

371. *nē* . . . *statueret*: purpose clause after *obsecrāre*, representing a wish.

nē quid: since negative purpose clauses must be introduced by *nē*, the Romans always said *lest anything*, etc., instead of *that nothing*.

quid: see note on l. 339.

gravius: too (106, 1).

372. *Scire*, etc.: indirect discourse after *obsecrāre*, which contains the idea of saying.

illa: the charges of Liscus and Caesar.

nec quemquam = *et nēmīnem*: *et* and a negative always combine into *nec* or *neque*.

eō: *his knowledge*, referring to *scire*, which is neuter.

373. *dolōris*: with *plūs* (55).

ipse: i.e. *Dīviciācus*. For the sake of clearness the names should, where necessary, be substituted for the pronouns.

374. *plūrimum*: with *posset*.

domi: i.e. *apud Aeduōs*.

ille: i.e. *Dumnorīx*.

375. *sē*: i.e. *Dīviciācus*. But *Dumnorīx* is subject of *crēvisset*.

376. *ad . . . grātiām*: gerundive construction of purpose (169, 3).

377. *suam*: with both *grātiām* and *perniciem*, referring to the speaker.

ūtērētur: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

Translate *quibus*, however, by *yet these*.

378. *frāternō* = *frātris*: objective genitive.

vulgī: subjective genitive. Gender of *vulgus*?

Quod sī: *now, if*.

379. *ā Caesare*: ablative of source, almost equivalent to an ablative of agent because *accidisset* = *factum esset*.

accidisset: representing original future perfect.

cum: circumstantial, *while*.

eum locum amicitiae: literally, *such a place of friendship* = *such high place in his friendship*.

381. *factum*: supply *esse*.

futūrum uti . . . āverterentur: this circumlocution is frequent in place of the future passive infinitive.

382. *cum*: is this preposition or conjunction? Look for the mood of the verb.

verbis: ablative of means, but translate as manner.

384. *cōnsolātus*: equivalent to a circumstantial *cum* clause.

faciat: subjunctive in indirect discourse, representing an original imperative. It might have been connected with *rogat* by *ut* and would then have been called an object clause of purpose.

tantī: see 57, *c*.

eius: i.e. *Dīviciāci*.

sē: i.e. *Caesarem*.

385. *uti . . . condōnet*: result clause. Literally, *that he presents as a gift to his prayers the wrong*; freely, *that he would overlook the wrong on account of . . .*

rei pūblīcae: objective genitive.

387. *reprehendat*, *intellegat*, *querātur*: indirect questions, objects of *ostendit*, *prōpōnit*, l. 388.

389. *ut . . . vitet*: object clause of purpose with *monet*.

390. *praeterita*: participle used as noun, *past*. For construction see note on l. 385.

391. *Dumnorigi*: dative of reference.

cūstōdēs pōnit: Caesar was not foolish enough to rely on Dumnorig's repentance. In the end, he put him to death for treason (V, 7).
agat, loquātur: indirect questions, objects of *scīre*.

392. *possit*: purpose.

393. CHAPTER 21. Caesar resumes the narrative broken off in Ch. 16. Recall the situation.

394. *sub*: be careful about translating this word.

mīlia: accusative of extent where one expects the ablative of measure.

Page 57. 395. *quālis . . . ascēsus*: indirect questions, objects of *cōgnōscerent*.

in circuitū: by a roundabout route. Caesar planned to attack the Helvetians from the rear and front at the same time.

396. *quī cōgnōscerent*: relative clause of purpose. Its (omitted) antecedent is the object of *mitsil*.

Renūntiātum est: with *facilem (ascēsum) esse* as subject.

397. *Dē tertiā vigiliā*: at what hour?

prō praetōre: *praetor* was the old title of the commanding general. A *lēgātus prō praetōre* was a deputy, with the rank of commander in case of the absence of the actual general.

398. *iis*: with *cum*, while *ducibus* is appositive to it.

cōgnōverant: here actual pluperfect of *cōgnōscō*; *had learned, had reconnoitered*.

399. *cōsiliī*: predicate possessive genitive (52, a).

400. *dē quārtā vigiliā*: how much later? As the Roman army marched about three miles an hour, the *circuitus* (l. 395) was about nine miles longer than the straight road.

402. *rei militāris*: genitive with an adjective (58).

403. *habēbātur*: see note on *dūxērunt*, l. 49.

L. *Sullae*: in the Mithradatic War, 88-84 B.C.

M. *Crassi*: in the Slave War, 73-71 B.C. *Considius* was thus an officer of very large experience and seemed the most reliable person to Caesar, who so far had had little experience as general on a large scale.

405. CHAPTER 22. *cum . . . tenērētur*: the subjunctive proves this clause to be circumstantial. How far does it extend?

summus mōns: see *summum iugum montis*, l. 399. For meaning see 105.

407. *passibus*: ablative of comparison (84).

neque . . . aut . . . aut: *and . . . neither . . . nor*. See note on *nec quemquam*, l. 372.

408. *comperit*: perfect.

409. *equō admissō*: ablative absolute denoting manner; *the horse being urged = at full gallop*.

accurrit, dīcit: historical presents. And so *subdūcit, instruit* in ll. 412, 413. Notice the lack of connectives (asyndeton) which strengthens the impression of hurry produced by the present tenses.

412. *collem*: the Romans, wherever possible, chose for a battlefield the slope of a hill. The position on higher ground increased the weight of the attack and facilitated the defense.

subdūcit: *sub* = *close to*.

aciem: for arrangement of a Roman battle line see Introduction, 41.

413. *ut . . . praeceptum*: the intransitive verb *praecipere* cannot form a personal passive (64, a).

nē . . . committeret: dependent on *praeceptum erat*, and representing a prohibition.

414. *ipsius*: i.e. *Caesaris*.

415. *visae essent*: indirect discourse, representing original future perfect indicative.

ut . . . fieret: explains the purpose of this plan.

416. *monte occupātō*: translate as if *montem occupāverat et*.

expectābat, abstinēbat: notice the tense of continued action. Use the progressive form in English.

417. *Multō . . . diē*: ablative absolute denoting time; *when the day was much = late in the day*.

419. *timōre perterritum*: *thoroughly (per) frightened by fear = panic-stricken*.

quod nōn vīdisset: relative clause, object of *renūntiāvisse*.

420. *vīsō = eō quod vīdisset*.

421. *intervāllō*: antecedent of *quō*. Attracted into the relative clause it is equivalent to *eō intervāllō* (ablative of measure) *quō cōnsueverat sequī*.

mīlia: see note on l. 394.

423. CHAPTER 23. *Postridiē*: though an adverb, this word retains enough of its original force (ablative of time) to be used with a genitive.

424. *cum . . . oportēret*: really *when*, but with subjunctive because it gives this as a thought of Caesar's. Translate *until*, etc.

mētiri: see note on l. 291.

425. **Bibracte**: "Beavertown," to-day Beuvray. Note the ablative **in** *et*, though an *i*-stem. For use of preposition see 78, *a*.

longē: see note on l. 25.

Page 58. 426. **mīlibus**: see note on l. 281.

rei frumentariae: dative of indirect object with *prōspiciendum* (*sibi esse*).

428. **Bibracte**: see 75, 1.

429. **decuriōnis**: the cavalry was divided into *decuriae*, corresponding **ing** to the *centuriae* of the infantry. The legion originally had a **ca**valry complement of ten per cent.

Gallōrum: see note on l. 267.

430. **Helvētīi**, etc.: this somewhat complicated sentence should be **care**fully studied as to its order of clauses. In translating, it should be **bro**ken up into a number of smaller, independent clauses, somewhat **like** this: *Helvētīi Rōmānōs . . . existimābant; eō magis . . . commīsissent; (aut) eō . . . cōnfidebant; commūtāvērunt cōnsilium atque iter convertērunt. (Sic) . . . coepērunt.*

timōre: see note on l. 419.

431. **existimārent, cōnfiderent** (l. 434): subjunctive, because the **reason** is not a fact, but a guess of Caesar's.

eō: ablative of degree of difference or of cause.

432. **superiōribus**, etc.: ablative absolute, concessive.

commīsissent: subjunctive, because this is assumed to be the belief **of** the Helvetians; so-called implied indirect discourse.

433. **rē frumentariā**: ablative of separation.

interclūdī posse: supply *Rōmānōs*.

434. **conversō**: *turned around completely*. Notice the force of *con-*.

435. **ā novissimō agmine**: ablative of point of view (80); *in the rear*.

438. CHAPTER 24. **mediō**: *half way up the hill*. See 105.

439. **triplicem**: see Introduction, 41.

veteranārum: this was Caesar's regular habit. The untried recruits **were** kept from panic by being employed in sappers' work. The four **legions** were VII-X, the others XI, XII.

442. **complēret**: result.

impedimenta sarcināsque: the baggage train and the burdens of the **indiv**idual soldiers. See Introduction, 27, 28.

443. **ab iis**: the two legions.

444. **cōstitērant**: from *cōsistō*.

446. **aciē**: ablative of manner.

448. *successerunt*: notice carefully the meaning of the compounds of *cedere*, which originally meant *go*.

449. CHAPTER 25. *suō* . . . *omnium*: see note on *iniussū*, l. 352. Supply *equō* with *suō*.

omnium: the staff officers.

450. *equis*: he wanted to show his soldiers that he and his officers were willing to share the common fate. This was Caesar's first pitched battle, and the confidence of his troops would largely depend on his behavior.

ut . . . *tolleret*: purpose.

451. *cohortātus*: the address of encouragement was regularly given before commencing battle.

ē locō: with *missis*. The elevation increased the effect of the throw.

453. *gladiis*: ablative of means.

454. *Gallis*: dative of reference, regularly with a dative of service (*impedimentō*). See 69, a.

ad pugnam: purpose.

455. *quod* . . . *poterant* (l. 458): substantive clause of cause, subject of *erat impedimentō*. The phrase *poterant pugnāre* finds its explanation in the circumstantial *cum* clause, *cum* . . . *inflexisset*, which in its turn is explained by the ablatives absolute.

plūribus = *complūribus*: the iron part of the *pīlum* was very long. See Introduction, 26.

456. *inflexisset*: only the point of the *pīlum* was steel, the shank being soft iron.

Page 59. 457. *sinistrā*: ablative absolute, causal.

458. *multi ut* = *ut multi*: result clause, *praepoſtarent*.

iactātō: *wrenched*, ablative absolute, circumstantial.

459. *manū*: ablative of separation.

nūdō: *unprotected*. Either ablative of manner, or ablative absolute denoting manner.

460. *pedem referre*: distinguish the expressions of defeat: *pedem referre* = *put back foot after foot, yield slowly, with face to the enemy*; *sē recipere* = *retreat in formation*; *terga vertere* = *turn one's back, flee*; *fugae sē mandāre* = *run wild, be in a disorderly rout*.

mōns: a hill to the west.

461. *spatiō*: ablative of measure.

462. *Captō*, etc.: ablatives absolute denoting circumstance. Notice

the distinction of tense: *captō*, the Helvetians had reached the hill; *succēdentibus*, the Romans were following up.

464. *milibus*: ablative of means.

465. *novissimis praesidiō*: see note on l. 454.

466. *ex itinere*: that is, without forming in battle line.

ab latere apertō: the unprotected right side.

467. *circumvenire*: with *coepērunt*, l. 470.

471. *conversa signa . . . intulērunt*: briefly for *signa convertērunt et signa intulērunt*. These are the military terms for *face about, charge*.

bipertitō: ablative of manner. They formed two fronts by making the rear line face about toward the Boii.

473. *ut . . . resisteret*: purpose.

victis ac submōtis: participles used as nouns, in dative of indirect object. They emphasize the bravery of the Helvetians who, even after defeat, attacked again.

474. *venientēs*: i.e. *Bōiōs*.

475. CHAPTER 26. *proeliō*: ablative absolute.

476. *pugnātum est*: an impersonal passive is used in Latin to express the doer of an action by an indefinite subject, like *one, you, people, they*. Translate by the active voice with such a subject.

478. *alteri . . . alteri*: for translation see 113. The words here refer to the two parts of the Helvetian army.

481. *proeliō*: ablative of time during which, where we would use an expression of extent. See below, l. 493.

482. *cum . . . sit*: concessive.

ab hōrā: both night and day were divided into twelve hours, from sunset to sunrise and from dawn to sunset. Thus the hours would vary in length according to the season. For convenience's sake, however, we reckon from 6 to 6. The seventh hour began at noon. Late in June, therefore, in the latitude of northern France, the battle lasted till about 9 P.M.

483. *āversum*: turned away, i.e. the back of an enemy.

484. *multam noctem*: see note on *multō diē*, l. 417.

487. *ē locō*: from the top of the carts.

488. *venientēs*: circumstantial, while coming up.

Coniciēbant: contrast this form and the following imperfects with *obīcerant*.

489. *raedās*: a Gallic word, "traveler." And so *matarās*, "thrower," a kind of tomahawk; *trāgulās*, "rope spear," a javelin with a thong

for recovery fastened to it. The phrase *inter . . . raedāsque* belongs to *nōnnūllī*.

subiciēbant: notice force of *sub-*, from below.

Page 60. 492. *ē filiis*: see 55, a.

captus est: agreeing with the nearer of the two subjects (114, 2).

493. **CXXX**: 368,000 people started (Ch. 29) and about 66,000 had perished in the battle of the Arar (Ch. 12). This would make the number lost about 175,000. It is likely, however, that many thousands, especially of the noncombatants, had succumbed to the hardships of the last two months.

tōtā nocte: ablative of time, where we should expect the accusative of extent (97, 1).

494. *partem*: accusative of extent. Evidently it refers only to the first night.

495. *Lingonum*: "fast horsemen." The name survives in *Langres*.

quārtō: that is, on the third day, since the Romans counted both the starting point and the day of arrival.

496. *propter*, etc.: the two prepositional phrases modify *morāti*.

498. *litterās nūntiōsque*: hendiadys, *messengers with written instructions*.

nē . . . iuvārent: an original prohibition (*nē iūveritis*), quoted from the letters.

499. *nēve*: a negative purpose clause is regularly continued with *nēve* instead of *et nē*.

iūviscent: subjunctive of indirect discourse for original future perfect indicative.

500. *locō*: the phrase is taken from the use of the *abacus*, on which the Romans did their calculating. It is still used by Chinamen and as a child's toy. *Consider them of the same line = treat them like*.

Helvētiōs: supply *habēret*.

intermissō: compare the meaning here with that of the same word in l. 495.

503. CHAPTER 27. *Quī cum = et cum hī*: in translating this sentence it is best to turn all parts of the compound *cum* clause (to *iussisset*) into independent sentences. Otherwise the sentence will appear top-heavy, the main clause being the one verb *pāruērunt*.

505. *eōs*: i.e. *Helvētiōs*.

quō = *in quō*.

506. *pāruērunt*: distinguish carefully from *parāre*.

507. *pervēnit*: for tense see 126.

508. *perfūgissent*: subjunctive, because quoted as part of Caesar's demand.

ea: neuter, because referring to nouns of different genders.

conquiruntur: for tense see 127, *a*.

509. *circiter*: with *mīlia sex*.

510. *perterriti*: so-called "construction according to sense," since *mīlia hominum = hominēs*.

nē . . . afficerentur: clause depending on *timōre perterriti* which is equivalent to *timentēs* (146).

511. *supplicio*, etc.: *supplicium* means *capital punishment*, and hence with *afficio* the meaning is *put to death*.

513. *existimārent*: subjunctive, because the reason is given as a guess of the author (130).

primā nocte: see 105.

516. CHAPTER 28. *Quod ubi = id autem ubi*.

quōrum: the antecedent, *hīs* (l. 517), should be translated before *quōrum*.

517. *utī . . . redūcerent*: object clause after *imperāvit*.

sibi: i.e. *Caesari*; dative of reference.

518. *vellent*: subjunctive for original future indicative.

reductōs: used as noun.

in . . . habuit = in . . . locō: see note on l. 500. It is a veiled allusion (euphemism) to the fact that he massacred them.

Page 61. 522. *frūgibus āmissis*: see l. 84, etc.

quō: ablative of means.

523. *tolerārent*; relative clauses with negative antecedents take the subjunctive (125, *a*).

cōpiam facerent: *make a supply = furnish*.

524. *ipsōs*: i.e. *Helvētiōs*, contrasted with *Allobrogibus*.

quōs: agrees with the nearer antecedent.

restituere: contrast this construction with the *ut* clause after *imperāvit*.

526. *nē . . . essent* (l. 529): a purpose clause, but probably caused by the idea of fear, understood.

529. *Galliae*: see 70.

Bōiōs: direct object of *concessit*. This verb also has the clause *ut . . . collocārent* (purpose) as object, and *petentibus Aeduīs* as indirect object. Translate, however, as if *Bōiōs* were the object of *collocārent*.

530. *erant cōgniti*: indicative, because it is Caesar's reason. The subject is *Bōiī*, understood.

533. *atque*: expressions of identity and equality are regularly connected by *atque*. Translate *as*.

534. CHAPTER 29. *tabulae*: the Romans wrote on wooden tablets covered with a thin layer of wax into which the letters were scratched with a metal pencil (*stilus*).

535. *Graecis*: the Greek alphabet, which they had taken over from Massilia.

relātae: supply *sunt*.

536. *ratio*: *account*.

537. *exisset . . . possent*: subjunctive, because this was part of the contents of the tablets.

538. *capitum*: cp. the use of *souls* in our language.

Page 62. 542. *fuērunt*: agreeing with *milia*, not with the subject *summa*.

544. C et X: 130,000 survived the battle (Ch. 26), so that besides the 6000 people of the Verbigenus canton, another 14,000 must have perished before they had finally settled again. The calm with which Caesar speaks of the terrible havoc among this brave people shows the innate cruelty of the man which, in spite of many contrary instances, broke out again and again during the Gallic War.

CHAPTERS 30-54. — THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

The danger to the Province from the Helvetian emigration was now past. But another and greater danger was looming up. Fifty years before Caesar's governorship two German tribes, the Cimbri and the Teutons, had suddenly emerged from the dense forests across the Rhine. In a few years they had traversed Gaul and part of Spain, had annihilated several Roman armies in Gaul, and were threatening Italy. Only the skill, energy, and daring of the great general Marius, Caesar's uncle by marriage, had destroyed, first the Cimbri at Aquae Sextiae in the Province, and then the Teutons at Vercellae in Italy. But the fear of a repetition of this bold attack was ever present in the Roman mind. A few years before Caesar's arrival in Gaul, a German leader, Ariovistus, had, by invitation of a Gallic tribe, crossed the Rhine to aid one of the ever-warring Gallic factions. Instead of returning to his native country, he had settled in Gaul, had forcibly taken one third of

the Arvernian soil, and was now preparing to settle another horde of his Germans on the second third. All this had happened in free Gaul, beyond the limits of Caesar's province. But wise statesmen could not close their eyes to the danger of Germans seizing a country uncomfortably near the Roman province. Caesar's victory over the Helvetians had enhanced his prestige among the Gauls. Their chiefs turned to the Roman commander for aid against the German raider. And Caesar, though Ariovistus was officially, through Caesar's own assistance, on terms of alliance with Rome, welcomed the opportunity to strike a blow, not only for reasons of foreign policy, but also in order to establish himself in the eyes of the Roman populace as the true and legitimate successor of his great uncle.

545. CHAPTER 30. *Galliae*: in the narrower sense of l. 3.

546. *grātulātum*: see 170, a.

547. *Intellegere*: indirect discourse, depending on the idea of saying in *grātulātum*.

prō: in return for.

Helvētiōrum, populi: subjective and objective genitive, respectively, with *iniūriis*.

548. *poenās . . . repetisset*: see note on l. 216 and Vocabulary.

549. *ex ūsū*: ablative of accordance, to the advantage.

550. *accidisse*: depends on *intellegere*, l. 547.

cōnsiliō: ablative of cause, explained by the appositive *ut* clause of purpose, *utī* (l. 552) . . . *habērent* (l. 555).

551. *flōrentissimis rēbus*: ablative absolute of circumstance with oncessive force; in spite of, etc.

553. *domiciliō*: dative of service.

cōpiā: supply *locōrum*.

ex omni Galliā: equivalent to a genitive of the whole.

554. *iūdicāssent*: distinguish from the use of the same tense in *reliquissent*. *iūdicāssent* represents an original future perfect indicative, *reliquissent* an original perfect indicative.

555. *stipendiāriās*: predicate accusative.

556. *utī . . . liceret*: purpose clause, object of *petiērunt*. For translation see note on l. 122. *Liceret* is modified by *sibi*.

558. *habēre*: indirect discourse, because *petiērunt* implies speaking.

cōnsensū: ablative of accordance, but translate after obtaining.

559. *conciliō*: see note on *domiciliō*, l. 553.

560. *nē quis ēnūntiāret*: object of *sānxērunt*, representing an original prohibition. Literally, *made holy by oath that nobody should*; freely, *bound each other by oath not to make known (their meeting)*.
quibus: supply *eī* as antecedent.

561. *mandātum esset*: see note on *ut . . . praeceptum*, l. 413.

562. CHAPTER 31. *idem* = *eīdem*.

563. *ante*: adverb. Supply *apud Caesarem*.

utī . . . licēret: see note on l. 556.

565. *Caesari*: see 66, *a*. Translate by a genitive.

566. *Nōn minus*, etc.: indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying contained in the suppliant attitude.

id: cognate accusative with *contendere* and *labōrāre* (72). Insert *for*.

567. *nē . . . ēnūntiārentur*, *utī . . . impetrārent*: purpose clauses, appositive to *id*.

ea quae dixissent: literally, *that which they should have said* (original future perfect); freely, *their words*.

ea quae vellent: literally, *that which they wanted*; freely, *their request*.

568. *ēnūntiātum esset*: for original future perfect. Supply *sē dixisse* as subject.

Page 63. 570. *Galliae*: in the narrow sense. The case is possessive; translate *in*.

571. *hārum*: partitive genitive with *alterius*, which is objective genitive with *prīncipātum*, the object of *tenēre*.

573. *contenderent*: the Romans used tenses of continuing action (present, imperfect) to denote that something begun in the past still continues. Translate by pluperfect, and *cum* by *after*.

factum esse utī . . . arcesserentur: a roundabout expression for *arcessitōs esse*. The *ut* clause is one of result. *Factum* is from *fiō*.

574. *mercēde*: ablative of means; translate by *for*.

575. *Hōrum*: i.e. *Germanōrum*.

577. *trāductōs*: supply *esse*.

578. *millium*: genitive of measure (57, *a*).

579. *clientēs*: free states, but under the suzerainty of the larger state.

semel atque iterum: not *twice*, but like our *once and again*, *repeatedly*.

580. *pulsōs*: participle, explaining *calamitātem*; by a defeat. With *Aeduōs*, etc., it forms the subject of *accēpisse* and *āmīsisse*.

582. *proeliis*: ablative of means with *frāctōs*, which is a participle showing the reason for *coāctōs esse*, l. 584.

frāctōs: modifying *eōs* understood, subject of *coāctōs esse* and antecedent of *quī*.

583. *virtūte*: ablative of means with *potuissent*, or of specification.

hospitiō: this was an official relation, corresponding to our treaties of amity. Translate *hospitiō* and *amīcitiā* together: *by close relations of friendship*.

584. *ante*: adverb.

obsidēs: appositive to *nōbilissimōs*. Translate by *as*.

586. *sēsē . . . essent* (l. 588): indirect discourse depending upon *iūre iūrāndō . . . obstringere* = *promise*.

587. *recūsātūrōs quōminus . . . essent*: after verbs of refusing, object clauses introduced by *quōminus* or *nē* are used. Translate by an infinitive: *to be*.

588. *illōrum*: i.e. *Sēquanōrum*.

589. *Ūnum*: with *esse*, of which *sē* is subject. Notice the emphatic position.

590. *potuerit*: irregular primary sequence instead of the pluperfect, caused by the present idea in these words.

ut . . . daret: purpose clause after *addūcī*, in secondary sequence after the perfect subjunctive *potuerit*.

591. *Rōmam*: see 75, 1.

592. *postulātum*: see 170, a.

sōlus: adjective used as a noun and referring to the subject of *inēritur*.

593. *peius*: adjective used as noun, *a worse fate*.

victōribus: noun used as an adjective.

598. *mēnsibus*: ablative of degree of difference with the (comparative) adverb *ante*.

600. *locus ac sēdēs*: hendiadys, *room for homesteads*.

Futūrum esse, etc.: for this circumlocution see note on l. 381.

601. *annis*: ablative of time within which.

Page 64. 602. *cōnferendum, comparandam* (l. 604): *was to be = would be*.

603. *Gallicum*: supply *agrum*. To bring out the proper meaning in English invert the sentence, and translate as if it were *Ger-*

mānōrum agrum cum Gallicō, and Germānōrum cōsuetūdinem cum hāc.

604. *victūs*: observe carefully the *-i*, and distinguish from *victus* (*vincō*).

605. *ut semel* = *ut primum*.

vicerit: notice the irregular sequence which is maintained to the end of the chapter.

606. *quod proelium*: for position see note on *lēgatiōnis*, l. 119.

Admagetobrigae: "Admagetos' Castle," of unknown location.

superbē et crudēliter imperāre: gave haughty and cruel orders. It is often advisable to turn a Latin verb into a whole phrase and translate its modifiers accordingly.

607. *obsidēs*: appositive with *liberōs*.

nōbilissimī cuiusque: see 112, 6.

608. *exempla . . . ēdere*: put forth examples and torments = practiced all kinds of torments.

609. *qua*: from *quis* or *quī*, indefinite. Notice quantity, and distinguish from *quā*.

ad: in correspondence with, according to.

610. *Hominem*: contemptuous, the fellow.

611. *quid*: with *auxiliū*, l. 612. Translate freely, unless some aid might be had from.

612. *Galliis*: see 67.

idem: explained by *ut . . . emigrent*, etc.

616. *sint*: for original *erunt*.

dubitāre: supply *sē*, i.e. *Diviciācum*, as subject.

617. *supplicium sūmat*: *supplicium sūmere dē*, take punishment from = inflict punishment upon. Compare *poenās repetere*.

618. *Caesarem*: subject of *posse* (ll. 620, 621).

auctōritāte, etc.: ablatives of means.

620. *nē . . . trādūcātur*: negative purpose clause after a verb of hindering.

Rhēnum: for case see 73, a, 2.

621. *ab . . . iniuriā*: see note on l. 190.

625. CHAPTER 32. *Animadvertit*: the position of the verb makes it emphatic.

ūnōs: adjective used as a noun and appositive to *Sēquanōs* alone.

626. *tristēs*: translate as if an adverb.

628. **respondere**: what shows that this is not an infinitive of indirect discourse? See note on *flāgitāre*, l. 283.

629. **saepius**: repeatedly.

630. **neque ūllam** = *et nūllam*.

631. **Hoc**: ablative of degree of difference or of cause, explained by the *quod* clause, l. 633.

633. **soli**: used as noun and appositive to the subject of *auderent* and *horrent*.

nē . . . **quidem**: see note on l. 286.

634. **absentis**: emphatic and with concessive force; *though absent*.

Page 65. 635. **adesset**: see 142.

636. **tamen**: *at least*.

Sēquanis: dative of agent with *perferendī*, l. 639.

quī . . . **essent** (l. 638): these relative clauses have causal force

(133). Translate *since they, since their*.

638. **essent perferendī**: with *propterea quod*, l. 635.

640. CHAPTER 33. **verbis**: (connected) words, *a speech*.

641. **sibi, cūrae**: datives of reference and service, respectively.

Translate the phrase: *he would look after this matter*.

642. **beneficiō suō**: the title *rēx atque amicus populi Rōmānī* had been given to Ariovistus during Caesar's consulship.

643. **factūrum**: future indicative in indirect discourse after *spem habere* = *spērāre* (157, 1).

645. **hortābantur**: here followed by an indirect question (*quārē putāret*) instead of the usual purpose clause. Translate *quārē*, etc., *to think*.

646. **in primis**: supply *rēbus*. This is an adverbial phrase; translate *chiefly*.

quod . . . vidēbat (l. 648), **intellegēbat** (l. 650): explains the words *multae rēs*.

frātrēs, etc.: another of those honorable titles bestowed by the Senate on foreign tribes as an outward mark of an alliance. For case see 76.

647. **numerō**: ablative of specification; omit in translation.

appellātōs: modifies *Aeduōs*.

648. **vidēbat**: notice the peculiar order which emphasizes *vidēbat*.

Translate *he saw with his own eyes*.

649. **eōrumque**: i.e. *Aeduōrum*.

650. **quod**: relative. Its antecedent is contained in the infinitives *enēri* and *esse*.

in tantō imperiō = *cum imperium tantum esset*: translate in view of the greatness of the empire.

turpissimum: adjective used as noun, a great disgrace. For degree see 106, 2.

652. **Germānōs cōnsuēscere . . . multitudinem venire** (l. 653): infinitives, subjects of *periculōsum (esse)*, the object of *vidēbat*. *Periculōsum* is singular because the two infinitives form one idea. Translate for the Germans, etc.

654. **sibi**: dative, indirect object of *temperātūrōs*, referring to *hominēs*. Translate would refrain, etc.

655. **quīn**: *sibi temperāre = abstinēre*, a verb of hindering. Negative verbs of hindering are followed by *quīn* (147).

cum . . . occupāvissent: a temporal clause originally indicative.

656. **Cimbri**, etc.: this occurred 107-101 B.C.

fēcissent: the subjunctive is due to indirect discourse. Translate as . . . had done. In translating the sentence *Paulātim . . . cōntenderent* (ll. 651-657), simplify by using the English verbal noun in -ing (gerund): *he thought that after seizing, as . . . had done, they would not refrain from emigrating*, etc.

658. **praesertim**: always stamps the *cum* as causal.

Rhodanus: emphatic position; only the Rhone.

659. **quibus rēbus**: indirect object with *occurrēdum*. The dative of agent (*sibi*) is omitted because Caesar wishes to make the thought indefinite. Translate and against these events protective measures must be taken.

mātūrrimē: notice the irregular form.

660. **sibi . . . sūmpserat**: *had taken for himself = acquired*.

661. **ut . . . vidērētur**: result clause. Any *so* or *such* expression before an *ut* clause points to a result.

ferendus nōn: unbearable.

662. CHAPTER 34. **placuit**: impersonal, with dative. The clause *ut . . . mitteret* is the subject. Translate as if *cōstituit*.

663. **quī . . . postulārent**: relative clause of purpose with *mitteret*. The clause *utī . . . dēligeret* in its turn is object of *postulārent*.

medium utriusque: between them.

Page 66. 664. **Velle**, etc.: indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying in *postulārent* and giving the reason for the demand.

rē publicā: not state but a public matter = matters of state.

665. *summis . . . rebus*: the greatest affairs of both = topics of the greatest importance to both.

666. *Si . . . fuisset*: condition contrary to fact in indirect discourse (157, 2). The original form was *si . . . mihi . . . esset, ego . . . vennissem*.

opus esset: an impersonal phrase, *there was need*. The person feeling the need is put in the dative, the thing needed is either the subject of the phrase or put in the ablative (87). Translate freely, *if he wanted anything of Caesar*.

667. *si quid ille se vellet*: *se* is direct object, *quid* is cognate accusative with *vellet* (72). The irregular present subjunctive is used to distinguish this condition (originally *vult*) from the contrary to fact condition *esset*. Translate *if he should want anything from him*.

670. *exercitum*: object of *contrahere*.

672. *mirum videri*: infinitive in indirect discourse with the question *quid . . . esset* as subject.

suā: emphatic position, *his own part of*.

673. *Caesari*: possessive dative with *esset* (68).

negotii: partitive genitive with *quid*.

675. CHAPTER 35. *responsis*: participle used as noun, ablative absolute with *relatis*.

676. *mandatis*: notice the change of relations indicated by this word. Caesar was now sending an ultimatum.

Quoniam . . . esse (l. 681): indirect discourse depending upon the idea of saying in *mandatis*. Study carefully the structure of this sentence before translating. Its skeleton is: *quoniam . . . referret, ut . . . putaret, haec esse*.

677. *suō populiue Rōmānī*: see note on *suō*, l. 352.

affectus: after being treated, referring to Ariovistus.

cum . . . appellātus esset: gives the reason for *beneficiō*. Translate by *having been called*.

678. *suō*: i.e. *Caesaris*. See Introduction to Ch. 30, et seq., p. 138.

hanc . . . grātiām: explained by the appositive clauses *ut . . . putaret* (result). Distinguish *grātiām referre* = to bring back thanks, show gratitude; *grātiām habere* = to have thanks, feel grateful; *grātiās agere* = to plead thanks, express gratitude (by words).

680. *invitātus*: after being asked. The infinitive *venire* depends on *gravārētur*.

commūni rē: matters of common interest.

681. **sibi**: dative of agent. In translating, make *sibi* the subject of an active expression.

haec esse: the clause *quae . . . postulāret* is subject of this infinitive. The *haec* is explained by *primum . . . inferret* (ll. 682-687).

quae . . . postulāret: simplify by turning into a noun.

682. **nē . . . trādūceret, redderet, permetteret, nēve . . . lacesseret, nēve . . . inferret** (l. 687): prohibitions and commands reported in indirect discourse.

683. **amplius**: *in the future*.

685. **voluntāte . . . licēret**: see note on l. 122.

686. **illis**: i.e. *Aeduis*.

nēve: continuing the *nē* of l. 682. See note on l. 499.

iniuriā: ablative of means, translate *wrongly*.

687. **fēcisset**: for the future perfect.

sibi, eō (l. 689): i.e. *Caesarī, Ariovistō*. Freely, *there would be . . . between him on the one hand and Ariovistus on the other hand*.

689. **impetrāret**: this represents the future indicative; supply *Caesar* as subject.

sē: subject of *neglectūrum*, l. 694.

M. Messālā: 61 B.C.

690. **cēnsumisset**: the regular word for a vote of the Senate.

691. **quicumque . . . obtinēret**: simplify, *any governor of*. . . *Obtinēret* represents a future indicative.

quod: *so far as*.

commodō: ablative, *with due regard for*. What is the case of *res publicae*?

693. **dēfenderet**: with *utī* (l. 690), representing imperative. Translate by *should*.

sē: repeats the *sē* from l. 689, on account of the length of the sentence.

695. CHAPTER 36. **Iūs esse**: infinitive predicate of the clause *ut . . . imperārent*; use *it* as grammatical subject.

696. **quī vicissent, quōs vicissent**: simplify, *the conquerors, the conquered*.

quem ad modum: *according to which manner*, i.e. *as* (relative).

Page 67. 697. **ad**: *according to*.

698. **alterius**: used here instead of *alius*.

699. **cōnsuēsse**: for force of tense see note on l. 254.

praescriberet: for present indicative.

700. *quem ad modum*: here interrogative (*how*), introducing an indirect question, object of *praescriberet*.

701. *sibi*: i.e. *Ariovistō*. Translate by a possessive.

702. *armis*: ablative of means, translate by *in*.

703. *Magnam*: emphatic position; *great was the wrong which*, etc.

704. *suō, sibi*: i.e. *Caesaris, Ariovistō*. The Latin dative of reference is often equivalent to the English possessive. The relative clause is causal.

705. *nōn*: emphatic position, *certainly not*.

706. *neque*: *nor, on the other hand*.

iniuriā: see note on l. 686.

707. *manērent*: for future indicative. Literally, *if they should remain in that which had been agreed upon* (*convēnit*, impersonal verb = *it is agreed*, cp. *conventional*); freely, *if they should keep the agreement*.

stipendiumque: the *-que* here adds an explanation to *quod convēnisset*.

Translate by *namely*.

708. *nōn fēcissent*: for future perfect indicative. The *nōn* belongs to the verb alone, which makes the meaning *omit*.

is: dative of reference.

frāternum: adjective used instead of a genitive. The whole phrase means literally, *the brotherly name of the Roman people will be far away in reference to them*; that is, *the name "brothers of the Roman nation" would not help them at all*.

709. *Quod*: *as to the fact that*.

sibi, sē (l. 710): i.e. *Ariovistō, Caesarem*.

711. *sēcum*: i.e. *cum Ariovistō, suā* referring to *nēmīnem*.

Cum: general time, *whenever*. The original form of the verb was future indicative.

712. *congrederētur*: for imperative.

intellēctūrum: supply *Caesarem* as subject. The infinitive has the indirect question *quid . . . possent* for its object.

713. *exercitātissimī*: force of superlative?

715. CHAPTER 37. *Haec*: with *mandāta*, but in emphatic position. For the force of *mandāta* see note on l. 676.

716. *et*: the coördinating conjunction is meant to bring home forcefully the coincidence in time with the preceding clause. Translate *as*.

Trēveris: in the valley of the Moselle, around the modern Trèves.

Aedui: supply *veniēbant*.

717. *questum*: supine of purpose with *veniēbant* (170, a).

717. *nūper*: see l. 598.

718. *essent, populārentur*: subjunctives of the indirect discourse implied in *questum*.

719. *Ariovistī*: possessive genitive with *pācem*, but translate by *from*.

720. *Trēverī autem*: supply *questum veniēbant*. Notice the two constructions possible with words of feeling; (a) a *quod* clause (l. 717); (b) indirect discourse (l. 720).

ripās: the easterly (right) bank. The plural, because several places on the bank are meant.

721. *cōnārentur*: progressive.

723. *sibi*: dative of agent with *mātūrandum (esse)*.

nē . . . posset: this purpose clause is influenced by the idea of fear suggested by *vehementer commōtus*. What was the reason for this feeling? See Introduction to this campaign, p. 138.

724. *sī . . . coniūnxisset*: for future perfect indicative.

725. *resistī*: supply *iīs*. The passive infinitive is impersonal. Translate *lest resistance would be impossible*.

rē frumentāriā: Caesar always gave the greatest consideration to the question of his supplies, because his greatest weakness would lie in their lack when he was in the country of the enemy and supported by allies who were unreliable.

726. *quam . . . potuit*: see 106, 2.

727. *Ariovistum*: Caesar was in the territory of the Lingones (Ch. 27) while the German king seems to have been at the confluence (*Coblenz*) of the Moselle and the Rhine, expecting the Suebian reënforcements. The direction of the Roman march, therefore, was almost due north.

Page 68. 728. CHAPTER 38. *tridui*: genitive of measure (57, a). *viam*: cognate accusative.

730. *Vesontionem*: "Bisontown," to-day Besançon, an important French fortress. Notice the gender.

quod: a pronoun subject followed by a predicate noun is made to agree with this noun rather than with its antecedent.

731. *Id*: the taking of Vesontio. The *nē* clause is subject of *prae-cavendum*.

733. *ūsui*: dative of service, translate *useful*.

735. *idemque*: supply *oppidum*.

nātūrā locī: for the following description compare the sketch.

736. *dūcendum*: for meaning cp. l. 291.

737. *facultātem*: distinguish its meaning from that of *facultās*, l. 735.

738. *Dūbis*: "Black River," to-day Doubs.

ut: *as if*.

740. *spatium*: carefully read the sentence to determine the case of this word.

741. *pedum*: genitive of measure. For the use of cases after *amplius* see 84, 2.

742. *intermittit*: literally, *the river leaves off*; freely, *where the river affords no protection*.

743. *rādicēs*: object of *contingant*, of which *rīpae* is subject.

744. *Hunc*: object of *efficit*, which has *arcem* as predicate accusative (73, c).

746. *nocturnis diurnisque*: adjectives instead of the adverbial expressions *by night and by day*.

748. CHAPTER 39. *Dum . . . morātur*: for tense and meaning see 127, a.

749. *ex*: source, but translate *in consequence of*.

750. *quī . . . praedicābant*: upon this the words *ingentī . . . esse* depend, while *saepe . . . potuisse* depend upon *dīcēbant* (l. 754).

751. *magnitūdine*: ablative of description, predicate with *esse*.

752. *saepe*, etc.: before attempting to translate the parenthesis, be sure to master the rest of the sentence.

753. *congressōs*: here of a peaceful meeting.

vultum: facial expression.

aciem: fierceness.

755. *nōn mediocriter*: *not a little = very much*. An example of *lites*, the stating of a thing by denying its opposite.

756. *Hic*: supply *timor*.

757. *tribūnis . . . reliquisque*: young Romans of good families used to accompany the general in the field, partly to acquire some knowledge of warfare, partly also for the sake of gaining money through lawful and unlawful methods, or simply for the sake of traveling. Caesar veils the truth of the situation by *amicitiae causā*, for the appointments were largely due to political influence.

758. *nōn magnum = minimum*.

Page 69. 759. *ūsum*: experience.

alius aliā: see 113.

quam . . . diceret: literally, *which he said to be necessary for himself*

for departing; freely, which, as he said, made it imperative for him to depart.

761. *ut . . . licēret*: see note on l. 122.

762. *ut . . . vitārent*: is this result or purpose?

763. *vultum fingere*: mold their face = control their features.

765. *tenēre* = *retinēre*.

770. *tōtis castris*: with *tōtus, ūnus, cūctus* the preposition is commonly omitted (98, 2).

771. *obsignābantur*: the seal was necessary to make the instrument valid in law. They made their wills, and thereby showed they were sure they would be slaughtered.

772. *vōcibus ac timōre*: hendiadys, expressions of fear.

776. *quique . . . praecerant*: the *praefecti equitum*, experienced soldiers, not to be confused with the *praefecti* of l. 757.

778. *Qui . . . ex his* = (*ī*) *ex his* (instead of partitive genitive) *quī*. *ī* (understood) is subject of *dīcēbant*, l. 783.

779. *nōn*: with *verērī*.

780. *angustiās, magnitudinem*: with *timēre*, l. 783.

782. *rem frūmentāriam*: by anticipation it has become the object of *timēre*. Translate as if subject of *posset*.

ut: with *timēre* (146).

784. *castra movērī ac signa ferri*: the two steps in continuing a march; strike tents and pack up, pull up the standards and carry them. Compare Introduction, 49.

fore: *futūros esse*.

dictō: dative with *audientēs* = *oboedientēs, obedient*.

785. *neque*: and . . . not.

786. CHAPTER 40. *cōnsiliō*: meaning in this passage?

787. *omniumque ōrdinum*: for the ranking of the centurions see Introduction, 30. The council of war regularly consisted of the *imperātor*, the *lēgātī* and *tribūnī*, and occasionally the *centuriōnēs primōrum ōrdinum*, i.e. the centurions of the first cohort of each legion. The extraordinary step here shows how serious Caesar judged the situation to be.

788. *quod . . . putārent*: the subjunctive is due to the idea of saying in *incūsāvīt*.

Page 70. 789. *sibi . . . cōgitandum*: supply *esse*. This is the object of *putārent*, having for its subject the indirect question *quam . . . dūcerentur*.

790. *cōnsule*: see Introduction to this campaign, p. 138.

791. *cūr . . . iūdicāret*: a question reported in indirect discourse is put in the subjunctive. Here the direct form also used the subjunctive.

792. *temerē*: with *discessūrum*.

officiō: *allegiance*.

Sibi . . . persuādērī: for construction see 64, *a*. Distinguish *persuādeō* = *persuade, make plausible*, with *ut* clause, from *persuādeō* = *convince*, with accusative and infinitive.

793. *cōgnitīs . . . perspectā*: ablatives absolute, equivalent to temporal clauses.

796. *intulisset*: for the future perfect.

verērentur: see note on l. 791.

797. *suā, ipsius*: i.e. *militum, Caesaris*.

798. *periculum*: formed from (*ex*)*perior*. The word originally meant *trial*.

patrum . . . memoriā: see Introduction to this campaign, p. 138; also note on l. 656.

799. *cum . . . vidēbātur*: the subjunctive should have been used. But the indicative emphasizes the *fact* and thus stimulates the soldiers to do as well.

Cimbris . . . pulsīs: ablative absolute.

801. *meritus*: supply *esse*.

vidēbātur: here used as actual passive of *videō*.

factum: supply *esse periculum*.

Nūper: 73-71 B.C. The ablative *tumultū* is one of time. The slaves in this rising were largely recruited from among the Germans captured by Marius.

802. *quōs*: *servīlī* is equivalent to *servōrum*, hence the plural form of the pronoun.

aliquid: *to a certain extent*.

803. *quam*: agreeing with the second antecedent alone.

iūdicārī: impersonal passive (115). The indirect question *quantum*, etc., is its subject.

804. *habēret*: the tense follows the regular sequence, but the meaning is general. Use present tense in translating.

sē: refers to *cōstantia*.

bonī: genitive of the whole with *quantum*.

805. *quōs*: refers to *hōs* (l. 806), which should be translated first.

805. *inermēs*: appositive to *quōs*, just as *armātōs ac victōrēs* is appositive to *hōs*.

807. *quibuscum*: the relative pronoun is to be repeated, in the accusative, before *nōn*, with *et* supplied.

809. *superārint, potuerint*: irregular sequence.

quī: i.e. *Helvētīi*.

810. *exercitui*: dative with an adjective (70).

proelium: of Admagetobriga, l. 606.

811. *quaerent*: for the future.

reperire: has for its object *Ariovistum* . . . *vīcisse*, ll. 812-816.

812. *diūturnitāte*: ablative of cause with *dēfatigātis*, which with *Gallis* forms an ablative absolute.

813. *cum* . . . *fēcisset*: simplify by translating *after keeping*, etc. *castris*, etc.: ablative of means, *within*, etc.

ac: explanatory; *namely*.

neque: *without*.

814. *sui*: objective genitive with *potestātem*; *a chance at him*.

dēspērāntēs: with *Gallōs*, understood, object of *adortum*. Translate *while despairing*.

815. *adortum*: translate by an independent verb.

rationē et cōsiliō: *trickery and stratagems*.

816. *rationī*: anticipated from *hāc (rationē)*, l. 817. Translate *for what trickery*.

817. *ipsum*: i.e. *Ariovistum*.

818. *Qui*: supply *eōs*. Literally, *those who placed their fear into the difficulty of the grain supply and into the narrowness of the road; freely, those who laid the blame for their fear upon a pretended lack of grain supplies and upon the narrowness of the road*.

820. *facere*: *acted*.

cum . . . *vidērentur*: see note on l. 14. Translate *in seeming*.

821. *dē* . . . *praescribere*: *to despair of the general's doing his duty or to dare to dictate his duty to him*.

Page 71. 822. *sibi esse cūrae*: see note on l. 641.

823. *iamque*: *and furthermore, by now*.

824. *frūmenta*: see Vocabulary.

825. *Quod*: *as to the fact that*.

826. *dīcantur*: translate *it was said that they*.

nihil: *not . . . at all*.

scire: supply *sē*.

827. *quibuscumque*: translate by a possessive, *whose army*.

828. *aut*: before this word supply *his* as dative with *dēfuisse* and *convictam* (reference). Translate: *those, whose army had been mutinous, had either been deserted by good luck for managing poorly or had been found guilty of avarice by having some misdeed found out*.

829. *suam*: i.e. *Caesaris*.

innocentiam: *uprightness*. Notice that the conclusion gives the facts in the opposite order from the premise; *innocentiam* corresponds to *avaritiam, felicitatem* to *fortunam*.

831. *quod . . . fuisset*: object of *repraesentātūrum*; *what he had intended to postpone*.

834. *utrum . . . an*: for this form of question see 151, 1. It is the object of *intelligere*.

pudor atque officium: (*sense of*) *shame and duty*.

835. *praeterea nēmō*: *nobody else*.

sequātur: for future indicative. Irregular sequence.

836. *solā*: *alone*.

nōn dubitet: absolute; *had no doubts*.

837. *praetōriam cohortem*: the body of troops encamped next to the tent of the general (*praetōrium*), hence his bodyguard.

840. CHAPTER 41. *mīrum in modum* = *mīrum ad modum*: cp. *quem ad modum*.

conversae: note the force of *con-*, *completely*.

842. *illāta est*: supply *militibus*. The singular is used because the nouns *alacritās* and *cupiditās* form one idea.

princepsque = *primaque*. For translation, see note on l. 216.

843. *grātiās ēgit*: see note on l. 678.

844. *fēcisset*: subjunctive, because it is a quotation.

846. *primōrum*: i.e. of the first cohorts. See note on l. 787.

847. *uti . . . satisfacerent*: purpose, instead of the original imperative.

Sē, etc.: indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying in *satisfacerent*. *Neque umquam* = *et numquam*.

848. *dubitāsse*: see note on l. 836.

summā belli: *conduct of the war*.

suum: predicate adjective with *esse*, having *iudicium* for its subject. And so *imperātōris*, predicate possessive genitive: *the judgment was not theirs, but the general's*.

850. *itinere*: only now when Caesar was certain of the loyalty of his army does he seem to have taken measures to ascertain a more

comfortable route. Compare this statement with his bold assertion in l. 823.

851. *ei*: because *fidem habēbat* = *cōfidēbat*.

ut . . . *dūceret*: purpose.

mīlium: genitive of measure.

852. *quīnquāgintā*: for omission of *quam* see 84, 2.

locis: ablative of way by which, without preposition.

854. *cum* . . . *intermitteret*: causal *cum* clause, to explain how he came so near the enemy in so short a time. Bring this out by inserting *already* before *septimō*.

Page 72. 858. CHAPTER 42. *Quod* . . . *existimāret*: indirect discourse, because *lēgātōs* . . . *mittit* implies speaking.

Quod: is this pronoun or conjunction? How do you decide? In translating, turn the clause into a noun phrase: *as to his former request for* . . .

per sē: as far as he (Ariovistus) was concerned.

862. *cum* . . . *pollicērētur*: causal clause.

petenti: equivalent to a clause.

863. *in spem veniēbat*: was coming into hope = was commencing to hope.

865. *fore uti*: this circumlocution makes up for the missing future participle of *dēsistere*.

866. *quīntus*: what other gender might have been used? Why?

saepe cum: for *cum saepe*. Latin likes to group words of similar meaning or etymology together; so here the two expressions of time.

ultrō: here of place. See Vocabulary.

867. *nē* . . . *addūceret*: representing original prohibition. For use of *quem* see 112, 2.

869. *uterque*: notice the number. The English must use the plural.

870. *venīret*: for original imperative.

aliā ratiōne: ablative of manner, on other terms.

871. *interpositā causā*: ablative of means, by a reason put in between = by some flimsy pretext.

872. *Gallōrum*: he had learned their unreliability in the Helvetian War. See l. 270 and l. 343.

873. *commodissimum esse*: object of *statuit*. The infinitive has for its subject the infinitive *impōnere*, l. 875. Insert it.

874. *equis*: ablative absolute with *dētractis*. But *equitibus* is dative of reference with the same participle.

eō = *in eōs*: *thereon*.

legiōnāriōs: *regular*. The legion contained other troops besides the infantry.

876. *sī . . . esset*: for the future.

quid opus factō: see note on l. 666. *Quid* is accusative of respect. Literally, *if there was need of a deed in any way*; freely, *if there should be need for (any) action*.

877. *nōn irridiculē*: an example of litotes. See 171, 3.

878. *ex militibus*: for use of preposition see 55, a.

879. *pollicitum*: supply *eum esse*.

880. *ad equum*: the joke is untranslatable. *Ad equum rescribere* is (1) to enroll among the horse, (2) to enroll (during the census) among the men entitled to serve on horseback, the knights. Bear in mind that the *equites* were the moneyed class in Rome.

882. CHAPTER 43. *erat*: *there was*.

tumulus terrēnus: an earth mound, without rocks.

883. *castris*: here with plural meaning.

Page 73. 885. *dēvexerat*: down into the plain.

passibus: ablative of means, as is *intervallō*, l. 887.

887. *ex equis*: because the voice comes from the direction of the beasts; *on horseback*. See note on *ex vinculis*, l. 69.

888. *ut . . . addūcerent*: object of *postulāvit*.

dēnōs: see 24.

889. *iniitiō*: ablative of means; translate by *in*.

891. *quod . . . missa*; these three clauses are appositive to *beneficia*.

892. *amplissimē*; *on a lavish scale*. Notice the adverb.

quam rem, etc.: referring to the *quod* clauses. The words *quam*

cōnsuēsse form the object of *docēbat*, l. 893.

893. *prō*: *in payment for*.

cōnsuēsse tribui: *was accustomed to be given* = *was usually given*.

894. *illum*: subject of *cōsecūtum*, l. 896.

cum: concessive.

aditum: *i.e.* to the senate. Compare our phrase *have the entrée*.

iustam: with both *aditum* and *causam*.

895. *suā*: *i.e.* *Caesaris*.

896. *Docēbat*: the indirect questions *quam . . . tenuissent* (l. 900) are the object of this verb.

896. *quam*: *how*.

897. *ipsis cum*: *between them and*. The whole passage reads, literally, *how old and how just reasons for relationship came between for them with the Aeduans*. Translate freely, *how old and how strong were the reasons for friendship between the Romans and the Aeduans*.

898. *quae, quotiēns, quamque*: it is impossible in English to embody more than one interrogative in a sentence. Translate: *what decrees had been passed, how often this had been done, how honorable they were*.

senātūs cōnsulta: legal term for resolutions of the Senate.

899. *ut*: interrogative.

902. *ut . . . vellet* (l. 903): result clause, explanatory of *hanc cōnsuetudinē*.

suī: genitive of *suum*, used as a noun; *their possessions*.

903. *grātiā*, etc.: ablatives of specification.

auctiōrēs: participle used as an adjective, therefore comparable.

904. *quod*: relative or conjunction? Why?

905. *id . . . ēripī*: object of *pāti*.

iis: dative of reference with *ēripī*.

posset: for mood see note on l. 791.

Postulāvit . . . eadem: *he made the same demands*.

906. *Nē*, etc.: cp. l. 682, et seq.

908. *posset*: for present indicative.

910. CHAPTER 44. *ad*: *with reference to*.

pauca, multa (l. 911): cognate accusatives (72). Translate by adverbs. The omission of a connective between the two sentences brings out the contrast all the more sharply. Insert *but* or *while*.

912. *et*: strengthening, *nay*.

913. *magnā . . . praemiis*: hendiadys; translate *hope of rewards*.

914. *sēdēs, obsidēs* (l. 915): objects of (*sē*) *habēre*, made emphatic by position.

916. *quod*: refers to *stipendium*; *such as*.

cōnsuērint: notice the irregular sequence here and in the following lines.

Page 74. 918. *ad . . . oppugnandum*: purpose.

920. *pulsās ac superātās*: hendiadys; translate *thoroughly routed*.

921. *parātum*: adjective.

922. *iniquum esse*: *recūsāre* is the subject. Insert *it*.

dē stipendiō: translate as if direct object of *recūsāre*.

suā: i.e. *Gallōrum*.

923. *pependerint*: from *pendō*.

924. *sibi ōrnamētō*: datives of reference and service, respectively

925. *petisse*: supply *eam*.

926. *remittātur, subtrahantur*: for the future.

927. *recūsātūrum*; *renounce, give up*. Compare the construction here with that in l. 922.

928. *Quod*: *as to the fact that*.

929. *sui mūniendī . . . causā*: see 168, 1. *Sui*, genitive of reflexive pronoun, for the original object (*sē*) of *mūniendī*; so *Galliae oppugnandae* for *Galliam oppugnandī* (169, 2).

930. *testimōnium esse*: the clause *quod . . . dēfenderit* is the subject of the infinitive.

931. *bellum*: object of both *intulerit* and *dēfenderit*; *had waged a war not offensive, but defensive*.

932. *prius*: adverb. The statement is true only if limited to the immediate past, for the Romans had warred on the Allobroges as early as 121 B.C.

935. *Quid sibi vellet*: indirect discourse for *quid tibi vts. Mihi volō* means *I wish for myself, I claim, I intend*. Notice the secondary (regular) sequence from here on.

suās: i.e. *Ariovistī*.

936. *hanc*: the part of Gaul where the armies now are.

937. *illam*: i.e. the Province.

Ut: *as*.

ipsi concēdi: see 64, a. *A nobis*, as expression of agency, is to be supplied.

938. *faceret*: for original present indicative.

939. *Quod*: *as to the fact that*.

941. *rērum*: see 58.

ut . . . sciret: result clause. Translate *as not to know*.

942. *bellō*: ablative of time; 62 B.C.

943. *ipsōs*: i.e. *Aeduōs*.

his: *these latter*.

944. *sēcum*: i.e. *cum Ariovistō*.

945. *Dēbere*: *he ought to, i.e. he must, he had reason to*.

simulātā . . . amicitīā: ablative absolute. Translate by independent clause: *C. was pretending friendship, but*. Notice the emphasis laid on *simulātā*.

946. *quem exercitum*: attracted antecedent, equivalent to *exercitum quem*.

sui opprimendi: see note on l. 929.

947. *Qui nisi = itaque nisi ille*.

dēcēdat, etc.: for future indicative.

948. *prō amicō, prō hoste*: compare *in hostium locō habēre*, l. 518.

949. *Quod si*: *now, if*, with perfect subjunctive representing future perfect.

nōbilibus, etc.: the office-holding or conservative party in Rome. They were afraid of Caesar as leader of the democracy. Undoubtedly there was a grain of truth in the assertion of Ariovistus, but the details are not known.

Page 75. 950. *grātum*: a pleasing thing, a favor.

951. *compertum habēre*: see note on l. 156. *Compertum habēre = scīre*.

952. *quōrum*: refers to *nōbilibus*.

953. *Quod si*: *but if*. *Dēcēssisset* represents the future perfect for which the perfect subjunctive had been used in l. 949. Notice how little attention Caesar pays to the so-called "sequence."

liberam: predicate adjective with *trādīdisset*; *undisturbed*.

954. *magnō*: by being separated from its noun (*praemiō*) the word becomes emphatic.

956. *eius*: subjective genitive with *labōre* and *periculō*; *on Caesar's part*.

957. CHAPTER 45. *in eam sententiam*: *to this purpose, in this tenor*.

958. *quārē . . . posset*: indirect question, explanatory of *sententiam*.

959. *ut . . . dēsereret*: object of *patt*.

961. *Ariovisti*, etc.: predicate possessive genitive.

Bellō, etc.: the proofs for the statement *Galliam*, etc.; 121 B.C.

962. *quibus*: antecedent *Arvernōs*; indirect object of *ignōvisset*. The relative clause is in contrast to the infinitive statement. Translate *but these*.

963. *neque . . . neque*: supply *eōs, eis*.

964. *si . . . oportēret*: for *oportet*.

antiquissimum quodque tempus: literally, *each oldest time*; freely, *the question of priority*.

966. *iūstissimum*: *thoroughly justified, not just*.

iūdicium: *sentiment*.

967. *quam . . . voluisset*: causal relative clause (133), *since they had wanted it* (Gaul).

968. *victam*: equivalent to a concessive clause.

suīs: i.e. *Galliae*.

969. CHAPTER 46. *geruntur*: why present?

970. *tumulum*: see 70, a.

973. *nē . . . rēicerent*: object of *imperāvit*. *Quod* is the adjective form of the indefinite, *quid* the substantive form.

974. *legiōnis*: either objective genitive with *periculō*, or subjective genitive with *proelium*. The latter is preferable.

975. *proelium fore*: object of *vidēbat*.

committendum . . . ut . . . posset: the *ut* clause is the subject of *committendum* (esse). Literally, *he thought that it must not be brought about that it could be said*; freely, *he thought he ought not to allow it to be said*.

976. *pulsis hostibus*: temporal ablative absolute.

per fidem: *through* (and beyond) *the pledge* = *through treachery*.

977. *vulgus*: note gender and declension.

978. *ēlātum est*: the indirect questions *quā . . . dirēmisset* (l. 981) are the subject.

quā arrogantia: with *usus*, *employing what arrogance* = *with what arrogance*.

979. *Galliā*: ablative of separation with *interdixisset*, of which *Rōmānis* is the indirect object.

980. *ut*: interrogative.

aeque rēs: supply *ut*.

Page 76. 983. CHAPTER 47. *Biduō*: ablative of degree of difference with the adverb *post*. The statement conflicts with *prīdiē*, l. 988, but a further engagement may have occurred in the meantime.

984. *Velle*, etc.: indirect discourse after the idea of speaking in *lēgātōs misit*.

coepit, etc.: when a passive infinitive is joined to *coepisse*, this verb is itself made passive. *Neque* = *but not*.

985. *uti . . . cōstitueret . . . mitteret*: subjunctive clause for original imperative.

986. *minus*: see note on *minimē*, l. 8.

vellet: original present indicative.

987. *causa*: supply *esse*.

988. *eō magis*: *all the more*.

989. *quīn*: negative verbs of hindering are followed by a *quīn* clause. Translate *from throwing*.

990. *Lēgātum*: object of *missūrum, obiectūrum*.

magnō, etc.: emphatic; insert *only*.

991. *Commodissimum*: *esse* understood, with *mittere* (l. 998) as subject. The infinitive has *Valerium* and *Mētium* (l. 998) for its objects.

992. *Procillum, Cabūrī*: for the names see note on l. 362. Notice that the Roman part of the name is borrowed from the man (governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.) who had bestowed the citizenship. This was the regular custom.

995. *quā multā*: *multā* is predicate adjective to *quā* (*linguā*). Translate by an adverb.

996. *cōnsuētūdine*: ablative of cause.

997. *in eō*: *in his case*.

esset: subjunctive, because this is Caesar's belief.

998. *hospitiō*, etc.: *enjoyed the hospitality of* = *was on terms of hospitality with*. For this official, not personal, relation see note on l. 583.

999. *quae diceret*: indirect question, object of *cōgnōscerent* and *referrent*. These *ut* clauses, in turn, are the object of *mandāvit*.

1002. *Quid*: *in regard to what* = *why*.

venirent: question reported in indirect discourse (155).

an: the second part of a double question is often used by itself, usually to express indignation; (*was it for some other purpose*) or *for*. The underlying idea is *surely only for*.

1003. *Cōnantēs*: object of *prohibuit*, and equivalent to a temporal clause.

1004. CHAPTER 48. *mīlibus*: ablative of measure.

1006. *trādūxit*: Caesar has often been blamed for not stopping this maneuver which was intended to, and did for a time, cut his line of communication. But Caesar had not yet tried out his soldiers after their panic and could not risk a decisive engagement. Then, too, the configuration of the territory does not seem to have been favorable for a flank attack, which was rare in ancient warfare. Study the map.

1008. *supportārētur*: subjunctive by attraction (160).

1011. *habuit*: see note on l. 156.

ut . . . deesset: purpose clause. The negative *nōn* instead of *nē* is used because *nōn deesset* forms one idea = *adesset*.

vellet; originally present indicative, but the subjunctive is used because the condition forms an integral part of Caesar's purpose (160). Caesar keenly felt the difficulty of his position, but found his match, it seems, in the cunning and generalship of Ariovistus.

Page 77. 1013. **diēbus**: ablative of time within which.

castris: see note on l. 813.

equestrī: for the lack of a connective and the necessary translation see note on l. 910.

1014. **hoc**: *the following*. It is the subject, while *genus* is predicate noun.

1016. **numerō**: ablative of specification.

1017. **cōpiā**: *supply, number*.

singulī: supply *equitēs*; *they had chosen, each his own companion*.

1018. **his**: refers to *peditēs* (l. 1016), and so do *eōs* (l. 1018) and (l. 1019).

versābantur: imperfect of habitual action (117, 1); insert *used to*.

1019. **sī quid erat dūrius**: *if anything was too hard = if there was ious trouble*.

quī: i.e. *eques*. Notice the adjective form of the indefinite pronoun.

1020. **graviōre**: see 106, 1.

1021. **sī . . . prōdeundum**: *if there was need of advancing*.

quō: indefinite adverb of place.

1022. **hōrum**: i.e. *peditum*.

1023. **equōrum**: with both *iubīs* and *cursum*, a case of double dependence. See note on l. 66.

1024. CHAPTER 49. **eum**: i.e. *Ariovistum*, subject of *tenēre*.

nē . . . prohibērētur: purpose clause with *dēlēgit* (l. 1027) and *vēnit* (1028).

1025. **quō in locō**: see note on l. 94.

1027. **castris**: dative with an adjective (70). This was a bold stroke, the execution of which Caesar took a grave risk, but the success of which turned the tables on his opponent.

1031. **Eō**: adverb; namely, to the site of the new camp.

expedita: agreeing in form with *mīlia*, in sense with *hominum*. They left their baggage behind, to be ready for fighting. Translate in right order.

1033. **mūnitiōne**: the work of fortifying, not the fortification.

Nihilō: ablative of degree of difference.

1038. CHAPTER 50. *institūtō*: ablative of accordance (93).
utrisque: this word, regularly singular, must be plural here, because *castra* has no singular.

1039. *paulum*: in its original force as accusative of extent.

Page 78. 1045. *pugnātum est*: see note on l. 476.

1046. *multis . . . vulneribus*: literally, *many wounds having been inflicted and received as well*; freely, *with great loss on both sides*.

1049. *quod . . . esset*: explains *hanc . . . causam*.

ut . . . dēclārarent: result clause, explaining *ea cōsuetūdō*.

1050. *sortibus*, etc.: lots were often employed to forecast the future. The Germans are said to have used marked twigs, scattered on a white cloth. The *vāticinātiōnēs* were prophecies uttered by persons believed to be inspired.

1051. *utrum . . . necne*: double indirect question, object of *dēclārarent*. Notice that double indirect questions must be introduced by *utrum* (151, 1).

ex ūsū: see note on l. 549. *Proelium committi* is the subject.

necne: the second part of a double question may be abridged (*or not*). Direct questions use *annōn*, indirect *necne* (151, 1).

eās ita dicere: indirect discourse, the answer of the captives. The *eās* refers to *mātrēs*, l. 1050.

1052. *Nōn esse*: indirect discourse after *dicere*.

esse fās: has *Germānōs superāre* for its subject.

1053. *contendissent*: for the future perfect. Thus a superstition decided the fate of a great war.

1055. CHAPTER 51. *quod . . . est*: object of *reliquit*.

ālārīōs: derived from *āla*, *wing*, probably so called because in the regular Roman battle line they were placed at the wings.

1056. *prō*: *in front of*.

1057. *minus . . . valēbat*: see note on *plūrimum valeat*, l. 304.

prō: *in proportion to*.

1062. *Harūdēs*, etc.: appositive to *copiās*. Before this Caesar had mentioned only two German tribes, the *Suēbī* and the *Harūdēs*. He now mentions five others, several of which can be identified: *Marcomannī* (the "borderers"), later in modern Bohemia, *Triboci* in the Alsace, *Vangionēs* in the Palatinate, *Nemetēs* in the same district, *Sedusiī* between the Neckar and the Main.

1064. *Eō*: i.e. *in raedās*.

1065. *proficiscentēs*: with *mīlitēs*.

1066. *passis*: from *pandō*.

sē: the women.

1068. CHAPTER 52. *singulis* . . . *singulōs*: *one over each*.

1069. *quaestōrem*: he had only one quaestor. See Introduction, 36.

testēs: predicate accusative.

suae quisque: a reflexive and *quisque* occurring in the same clause are regularly placed next to each other.

1070. *ā dextrō cornū*: ablative of point of view (80).

eam partem: that is, the left wing of the Germans. Compare l. 1079.

1072. *Ita*: with *ācritēr*. Similarly in l. 1073 *itaque* = *et ita*, with *repente* and *celeriter*.

signō datō: this was a trumpet blast.

Page 79. 1074. *pīla* . . . *coniciendī*: *pīla* is object of *coniciendī*.

What other construction would have been more usual?

Rēiectis: *thrown behind*, not *back*. Turn into a coördinate clause.

1076. *impetūs*: plural, since the sword charge consisted of a series of duels.

1077. *Reperti sunt*: emphatic position, to contrast with the threatening attitude of the Germans. Insert *yet*.

complūrēs nostrī: literally, *ours in numbers* = *a number of our men*.

1078. *insilirent, revellerent, vulnerarent*: so-called characteristic subjunctives. A relative clause after certain antecedents has the subjunctive (125). They jumped on the shield roof which protected the square from above.

1079. *Cum*: concessive.

ā sinistrō cornū: see note on l. 1070. This time the words refer to the Germans.

1082. *adulēscēns*: to distinguish him from his father, the Triumvir.

1083. *quod* . . . *erat*: gives the reason for *animadvertisset*. The cavalry was not employed during the battle. The quick decision of the young man saved the day for the Romans.

1084. *tertiam*: this had been kept in reserve.

1086. CHAPTER 53. *atque*: *and finally*.

omnēs: emphatic; not only the left wing but the whole army.

1087. *terga vertērunt*: see note on l. 460.

prius: join with *quam*.

1088. *quīnque*: the distance is doubtful. From the battlefield to the Rhine it would be about 15 miles. Perhaps Caesar mistook the Rhine, a tributary of the Rhine, for the great river.

1089. *viribus*: ablative. *Cōnfidō* takes the ablative of the thing and the dative of the person.

1094. *ūna*: one would expect *altera*, to correspond with *altera* in l. 1095.

1095. *Nōrica*: cp. l. 92.

dūxerat: supply *in mātīmōnium*. Contrast with the meaning of *dūxerat* in l. 1094.

1098. *cum* . . . *traherētur*: circumstantial; *while being dragged*.

trinis: nouns which have no singular regularly take distributives instead of cardinals.

1099. *equitātū*: see 85.

1100. *Quae* . . . *rēs*: a humane trait, showing one of Caesar's most lovable qualities, his warm regard for personal friends. The feeling, here, was doubtlessly enhanced by political considerations. He could ill afford to have it said that he had sacrificed the life of a noble Gaul when he had been unwilling to risk one of the Roman officers (l. 990).

1102. *hominem* . . . *restitūtum*: object of *vidēbat*, l. 1104.

honestissimum: not *honest*.

familiārem: emphasizes the personal relation, as *hospitem* emphasizes the official relation.

1104. *neque* . . . *quicquam* = *et nihil*.

1106. *cōsultum*: supply *esse*; impersonal passive.

utrum . . . *an*: double indirect question, subject of *cōsultum*.

Page 80. 1107. *igni*: see note on l. 70.

1110. CHAPTER 54. *quī* . . . *vēnerant*: cp. l. 720.

1112. *quī*: supply *īf* as antecedent.

Rhēnum: see 70, *a*.

1114. *maximis*: the wars were great, both on account of the large number of the enemy, and on account of their bravery. Also they were of great political importance, in so far as they secured Gaul and Italy for a long time to come against any attempts of invasion.

mātūrius: about September 25.

1115. *hiberna*: supply *castra*.

1117. *conventūs*: the governor was not only military commander, but also chief justice. He traveled circuit for this purpose.

BOOK II

CHAPTERS 1–35.—THE WAR AGAINST THE BELGIANS

Page 81. LINE 1. CHAPTER I. Cum esset: see 129, *a*.

citeriōre Galliā: between the Alps and the Apennines = northern Italy. This and Illyricum, on the east of the Adriatic, formed part of Caesar's province.

suprā: see Bk. I, l. 1117.

2. **dēmōnstrāvimus:** the editorial "we." Caesar never uses the first person singular in speaking of himself, but either the third singular, when he appears as commander, or the first plural, when he speaks as the author.

crēbrī: not *many*, but *repeated*.

afferēbantur: imperfect, to show repeated action.

3. **litterisquē:** ablative of means (85) with *certior fiēbat*. Notice that *litterae* means *a letter* and also *letters*.

Labiēni: the most trusted and most capable of his *légātī* or assistants, who had been left in command of the troops while in winter quarters in Transalpine Gaul.

certior fiēbat: the subject is *Caesar*, with which *certior* agrees.

omnēs, etc.: construction of indirect discourse (153) after the idea of telling in *certior fiēbat*.

Belgās: between the Seine and the North Sea. See Bk. I, l. 5.

4. **quam:** the real antecedent is *Belgās*; but when a pronoun subject is followed by a noun predicate, it agrees with the gender and number of this noun.

dixerāmus: see Bk. I, l. 1.

5. **coniūrāre:** the Belgians were a free nation and could not properly be said to conspire. But this is the Roman point of view, that Rome is the destined mistress of the world.

inter sē dare: *inter* with the reflexive pronoun is regularly used to express the idea of *one another*. *Give to one another = exchange*.

6. **Coniūrandī:** gerund (169, *a*) in objective genitive (54) construction, dependent on *causās*. Objective and subjective genitives may be tested by changing the governing noun into an active verb of which the genitive will become either subject or object.

hās: predicate of *esse*; *causās* is the subject.

6. **verērentur**: subjunctive, because dependent clauses in indirect discourse are always in this mood (156).

7. **nē . . . addūcerētur**: verbs of fearing are used with a subjunctive clause, introduced by *nē* affirmative and *ut* negative (146).

omni . . . Galliā: ablative absolute expressing circumstance. An ablative absolute should be translated by either a clause or a phrase, rarely by the English nominative absolute.

pācātā: a mild expression, veiling the fact of conquest.

Galliā: the central part of Transalpine Gaul, between the Rhone and the Seine. See Bk. I, l. 4.

eōs: the Belgians; *sē* would have been ambiguous.

noster: i.e. *Rōmānus*.

8. **nōnnūllis**: *not none = some* (litotes, 171, 3).

9. **partim quī . . . partim quī** (l. 11): the antecedent of these relatives (*ab iis*, to be supplied) is appositive to *Gallīs*.

ut . . . nōluerant: *ut* with the indicative means (1) *as*, (2) *when*, (3) *because*. This verb and those following are in the indicative because they are an explanation added by Caesar and not part of the letters.

Germānōs: subject of *versārī*, which is complementary (object) infinitive with *nōluerant*. The Germans, under Ariovistus, had gained control of a large part of free Gaul before Caesar's appearance. They had just been driven out by the Romans. See Bk. I, Ch. 30-53.

10. **atque**: introducing a stronger fact; *and even*.

11. **molestē ferēbant**: see Vocabulary under *ferō*.

12. **mōbilitāte**: ablative of cause (83) with *studēbant*, of which *novīs imperiīs* is the indirect object (64). *Were eager for new governments = desired a change of government*.

ab nōnnūllis: supply *sollicitārentur*.

13. **ā potentiōribus**: ablative of agent with *occupābantur*, l. 15.

atque iis: supply *ab*.

14. **condūcendōs**: *hire*. Not a purpose construction, but the gerundive instead of an original gerund with a direct object (168).

15. **rēgna**: plural because each man wanted his own little rule.

occupābantur: *seize*, not *occupy*. Avoid the translation of a Latin word by its English derivative, which generally has a different meaning.

quī: referring to *potentiōribus*; *and these*.

rem: namely, royal power. Always adapt the translation of *rēs* to the context.

imperio nostrō: ablative of attendant circumstance (92). Translate by *under*.

17. CHAPTER 2. **commōtus**: notice the force of *com-*, *completely*, *deeply*.

duās: he had already six (numbered VII–XII); these were XIII and XIV.

18. **initā aestāte**: ablative absolute expressing time when. Literally, *summer having been entered upon* = *early in the summer*.

19. **in . . . Galliam**: connect with *quī dēdūceret*, a relative clause of purpose (123, 4) with *Pedium* as antecedent.

20. **cum primum**: ordinarily used with the indicative. Here the circumstances that made Caesar wait are emphasized.

cōpia: subject of *esse*, the complementary infinitive with *inciperet*.

21. **Dat negōtium = imperat**: it is historical present (116, a), after which either a primary or a secondary sequence (122, Exc. a) may be employed.

Senonibus: “fighters.” This tribe lived between the upper Loire and the Seine. The name survives in that of the city of Sens.

22. **reliquisque**: see 105.

Belgīs: dative with an adjective (70).

utī . . . faciant: purpose clause in apposition with *negōtium*.

23. **gerantur**: subjunctive, because the clause forms an integral part of the *ut* clause (160).

sēque: i.e. *Caesarem*.

24. **certiōrem faciant**: see note on *certior fēbat*, l. 3.

cōstanter omnēs: not redundant. *Cōstanter* means that there were no contradictions in the reports, *omnēs* that all the tribes reported.

25. **manūs, exercitum**: each district raised its small contingent and these were concentrated into one army.

26. **dubitandum**: supply *esse*.

quīn: after a negative verb of doubting, a subjunctive clause introduced by *quīn* is used. It was not a question of hurry but one of doubt as to whether Caesar should take the illegal step of waging war outside of his province. When he had done this the preceding year, he could claim the attack of the Helvetians and the appeal of the Aeduians in his defense. No such reason existed in this case.

Page 82. 27. **mouet**: see note on *dat negōtium*, l. 21.

diēbusque: ablative of time within which (97).

29. CHAPTER 3. **Eō**: adverb. The clause *cum . . . vēnisset* is circumstantial.

dē imprōvisō: prepositional phrase expressing manner.

opiniōne: ablative of comparison (84). Translate *than was expected*.

30. **Rēmī**: the "leaders," around modern Rheims.

Galliae: dative with an adjective (70).

ex Belgis: *reckoning from*, etc., instead of a genitive of the whole with *proximī*.

31. **lĕgātōs**: appositive to *Iccium et Andebrogium* ("Greatland"); and so also *primōs*.

32. **quī dicerent**: relative clause of purpose. From here to the end of the chapter we have the first long example of indirect discourse in this book. The student will best understand this peculiar Roman expression if he tries to recast the report into its direct form. So here: *nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestatem populī Rōmānī permittimus*, neque cum reliquīs Belgīs cōsēnsimus neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus, parātique sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, Germānīque, quī cis Rhēnum incolunt, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt, tantusque est eōrum omnium furor, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque nostrōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem iĕgibus ūtuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum nōbiscum habent, dēterrēre potuerīmus, quā cum iīs cōsentiant.

sē: object of *permittere*. Another *sē*, which would be the subject of the infinitive, has been omitted to avoid repetition.

sē . . . permittere: legal term for surrendering.

35. **coniūrāsse** = *coniūrāvisse*.

parātōsque esse: not a perfect infinitive.

dare, iuvāre (l. 37): complementary infinitives with *parātōs esse*.

36. **imperāta**: participle used as noun.

oppidīs: ablative of means, but translate by *in*. See note on *castris*, Bk. I, l. 813.

38. **cis**: from the Gallic point of view, on the left bank.

incolant: irregular sequence, instead of imperfect. Caesar does not follow the law of sequence very consistently.

sēsē: object of *coniūnxisse*.

39. **tantumque**: predicate adjective.

40. **ut . . . potuerint** (l. 43): result clause with perfect subjunctive instead of imperfect.

nē . . . quidem: notice that this phrase surrounds the word or words emphasized.

Suessiōnēs: how will you decide the case of this word? The *Suessiōnēs* lived in the neighborhood of the modern Soissons.

frātrēs: appositive to *Suessiōnēs*.

41. iūre, lēgibus: differ like *constitution* and *laws*.

42. ipsīs: i.e. *Rēmts*.

43. quīn . . . cōsentirent: after negative verbs of hindering (*dēterrere*) a subjunctive *quīn* clause is used. Translate *from*, etc.

iis: i.e. *reliquis Belgīs*.

44. CHAPTER 4. ab iis: with *quaerere* the person asked is expressed with *ā* or *ē*.

quae . . . possent: object clause after *quaereret*. Indirect questions take the subjunctive.

45. quid . . . possent: *quid* is cognate accusative (72) with *possent*; *what they were able* = *how powerful they were*. Compare *multum posse*.

reperiēbat: imperfect, because he found it out piecemeal.

46. Plērōsque: see 105.

ortōs ā: remoter descent is expressed by a preposition.

Rhēnumque: accusative with the *trā-* in *trāductōs*.

47. propter, etc.: with *trāductōs*.

48. Gallōsque: object of *expulisse*.

ea loca: notice the irregular plural of *locus*.

49. sōlōsque: predicate adjective used as a noun, *the only ones*.

memoriā: see 97; between 107 and 101 B.C. Compare below.

omni, etc.: ablative absolute expressing circumstance.

50. Teutonōs, etc.: these had invaded Gaul and were making their way into Italy when Marius defeated them in 102 and 101. The "Teutonic terror" was proverbial in Rome, and Caesar skillfully uses it to show the strength of this new enemy.

51. ingredī: complementary infinitive with *prohibere* (147, a); *from invading*. The sequence of *prohibuerint* is irregular.

quā . . . utī: the *utī* clause is the subject of the infinitive. Literally, *from this thing that they . . . came about*; freely, *the result of this deed was that . . .*

rērum: objective genitive. Contrast with *patrum*, l. 49.

52. sibi: dative of reference (66). *Sibi sūmere*, *to take for one's self* = *to claim*.

53. *omnia* : object of *habēre*.

54. *habēre explorāta* : not *explorāvīsse*, because the result lasts into the time of the speaker.

propinquitātibus : ablative of means.

55. *coniuncti* : participle with causal force. Translate *on account of their connections by . . .*

quantam . . . pollicitus sit : indirect question, object of *cōgnōverint*.

quantam quisque : *quisque* commonly follows immediately upon an interrogative, reflexive, or relative pronoun.

Page 83. 56. *conciliō* : distinguish from *cōnsiliō*.

57. *Plūrimum . . . valēre* = *plūrimum posse*.

Bellovacōs : around modern Beauvais.

58. *virtūte* : ablative of specification (95).

59. *armāta* : for *armātōrum*, in agreement with *mīlia* ; and so *ēlēcta*.

61. *suōs* : i.e. *Rēmōrum*.

62. *finēs, agrōs* : objects of *possidēre*.

64. *Diviciācum* : distinguish from the Aeduan of the same name.

Galliae : genitive of the whole (55).

cum . . . tum : almost the same as *et . . . et*.

65. *partis* : objective genitive with *imperium*, while *regiōnum* is genitive of the whole with *partis*.

66. *obtinerit* : irregular sequence for *obtinuisset*.

rēgem : predicate noun, subject *Galbam* ("the fat man").

67. *summam . . . bellī* : *the sum of the war* = *the chief command*.

68. *voluntāte* : ablative of accordancē (93).

habēre : with *Suessiōnēs*, understood, as subject.

numerō : ablative of specification.

69. *totidem* : object of *pollicērī* understood.

70. *maximē ferī* : superlative of *ferus*, which is not compared by endings.

habeantur : *habeō* and *dūcō* with infinitive = *consider*. The tense here is irregular ; so also *absint*.

71. *Atrebātēs*, etc. : supply *pollicērī*. *Atrebātēs* = "owners, landholders" ; *Ambiānōs* = "rivermen," around Amiens.

75. *appellantur* : the indicative shows that this is a remark of Caesar's.

arbitrārī : *sē*, referring to the Remi, is to be understood as subject, while *pollicērī* must be understood as predicate of the other names.

ad : with numbers = *about*.

77. CHAPTER 5. *cohortātus*, *prōsecūtus*: in translating participial constructions, including ablatives absolute, it is often advisable to turn them into independent sentences. So here: *encouraged*, *addressed*.

liberāliter: translate as if an adjective modifying *ōrātiōne*.

78. *senātum*: with the force of its etymology (*senex*), *body of Elders*.

79. *obsidēs*: appositive to *liberōs*.

addūci: cp. this voice with that of *convenīre* (l. 78). *Iubeō* takes the active infinitive when the person commanded is mentioned, otherwise the passive.

Quae omnia: referring to the orders given. A relative at the beginning of a sentence is best translated by a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction.

80. *ad diem*: *to the day* = *punctually*.

Aeduum: added to distinguish this man from the Diviciacus mentioned in l. 64.

Diviciacum: object of both *cohortātus* and *docet*.

81. *quantopere* . . . *interessit*: indirect question, object of *docet*. Verbs of teaching take two objects, of the person and of the thing (73, b). With the impersonal verb *interest* the person concerned is in the genitive; the degree of interest is expressed by an ablative of degree of difference (89). *Quantopere* = *how much*.

82. *manūs* . . . *distinēri*: this infinitive phrase is the subject of *inter-*

83. *nē* . . . *sit*: adverb clause of purpose.

configendum sit: gerundive construction expressing necessity (43, 2). The dative of agent (67), *sibi*, is omitted because Caesar wishes to make the subject general.

84. Id: i.e. *manūs distinēri*; subject of *posse*. Notice the difference between the two objects of *docet*; indirect question (*quantopere*), infinitive (*posse*).

sī . . . *intrōdūxerint*, *coeperint*: subjunctive perfect, indirect discourse for future perfect indicative. Caesar tries to create a diversion to divide the forces of the enemy.

86. *Postquam* . . . *cōgnōvit*: the regular construction with this conjunction (126); translate by pluperfect.

87. *cōpiās*; subject of *venīre* which depends on *cōgnōvit*.

cōactās: equivalent to a clause, *after gathering*.

Page 84. 88. *ab* . . . *explōrātōribus*: with *cōgnōvit*.

89. *flūmen, exercitum* (l. 90): objects of *trādūcere* (73, 2). The Axona is to-day called Aisne.

90. *extrēmīs*: reckoning from the south.

trādūcere: complementary with *mātūrāvīt*, which is followed by an infinitive, never by an expression of place.

91. *ibi*: north of the Aisne.

et . . . et . . . et: translate only the last *et*. In an enumeration the Romans connected either all members or none.

92. *ripīs*: plural, because it was necessary to cross the river and then climb the steep bank opposite.

post . . . erant: *his lines of communication*. What literally?

93. *tūta*: predicate adjective (102).

commeātūs: subject of *possent*, but anticipated for effect.

ab Rēmīs: not agency.

94. *ut . . . possent*: result clause, object of *efficiēbat*.

95. *In*: *over*.

96. *alterā*: *i.e.* the left bank.

98. *in altitūdinem*: accusative of limit (75).

pedum: genitive of measure (57, a). As there was generally a fixed ratio of 3:2 between width and depth of a trench, only one dimension need be given.

100. CHAPTER 6. *nōmine*: ablative of specification (95).

Bibrax: "Beavertown," a name frequent in Gaul, showing that at that time the animal was often found in the country; to-day Mt. Beuvray near Rheims.

101. *mīlia*: accusative of extent of space (74). Notice that *mīlia* is a noun followed by a genitive (*thousands of paces*). In the singular it is an adjective, *mille passūs*. The *passus* was a double step of 5 feet. *Mille passūs* = 1 Roman mile, 4850 English feet.

ex itinere: literally, *from the march*, that is, without making camp or preparing for a siege.

impetū: ablative of manner (91).

102. *sustentātum est*: impersonal passive, used by the Romans to express an indefinite subject (115). Translate by *they*, *people*, *one*, or *you*, and an active verb.

103. *eadem atque*: adjective modifying *oppugnātiō*. Expressions of identity are followed by *atque*, and = *as*. Translate freely by a parenthetical expression: *and likewise*.

oppugnātiō: translate *manner of*, etc.

104. *Ubi*: with *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est*.

circumiectā multitudīne: ablative absolute.

105. *moenibus*: dative with *circumiectā*.

coepti sunt: with a passive infinitive *coepti* is itself put into the passive. Translate freely, *they have begun to throw*.

106. *dēfēnsōribus*: ablative of separation (79).

testūdine: see Introduction, 42.

107. *Quod*: namely, the actions mentioned. When a relative refers to an infinitive or a clause it is in the neuter.

108. *cum . . . conicerent*: causal clause. The verb is plural because a crowd consists of many men (114, 1).

109. *cōsistendī*: gerund in objective genitive after *potestās*.

nūllī: possessive dative (68). Notice the emphatic position.

110. *oppugnandī*: see note on *cōsistendī*, l. 109.

111. *nōbilitāte*: ablative of description (94). What other case might have been used? See 57.

112. *ex iis*: numerals are often used with a prepositional phrase instead of the genitive of the whole (55, a).

lēgātī: appositive to *quī*.

113. *submittātur, posse*: indirect discourse after the idea of telling in *nūntiōs mittit*.

115. CHAPTER 7. *isdem*: ablative with *usus* (86). It is antecedent of *quī*, and *ducibus* is an appositive to it.

116. *nūntiī*: appositive to *quī*.

Numidās, etc.: the mention of these unimportant parts of Caesar's army strikingly shows the hopelessness of the Gallic resistance against a Roman who had at his command the inexhaustible resources of the Roman world. From Africa, Greece, and Spain men had been drafted to serve in northern Europe.

Crētas: Greek form, instead of *Crētēs*.

117. *subsidiō oppidānis*: see 69, a.

Page 85. 118. *adventū*: ablative of cause (83).

Rēmīs: dative of reference (66) with *accessit*. In rendering the sentence, make it the subject, *studium* the object, and translate *accessit* by *gained*.

119. *hostibus*, etc.: see note on *Rēmīs*, and treat the sentence in the same way, translating *discessit* by *lost*.

potiundī: gerundive instead of gerund with an object (168), *potiundi oppidō*. Properly only transitive verbs can be so treated,

but the construction is extended to some verbs not followed by the accusative.

.120. **Itaque**, etc.: notice the way in which these statements are subordinated to one another by being expressed in participial phrases. Turn each one into an independent sentence.

122. **quō** = *ad quae*.

123. **cōpiis**: ablative of accompaniment. The preposition is omitted in certain military terms (90, 1).

ā milibus: a difficult expression. It seems that Caesar had intended to write: *castra milibus passuum* (ablative of degree of difference) *minus ā (nostris castris)*, but changed the expression in a manner similar to that by which *diē tertiō ante Kalendās* has become *ante diem tertium Kalendās*. Translate: *at a distance of less than two miles from*.

124. **quae castra**: *castra*, the antecedent of *quae*, has been attracted into the relative clause (111, 4).

fūmō, etc.: not a hendiadys (171, 1); by the smoke in daytime and by the glare of fire at night.

125. **milibus**: ablative either of degree (89) or of comparison (84). **in lātitudinem**: see note on *in altitudinem*, l. 98. Evidently the Gallic camp was very carelessly constructed, if compared with a Roman camp. Excavations have shown that Caesar's army here occupied a space 2129 by 2137 feet. It numbered about 60,000 men. The enemy, about 300,000 strong (ll. 70-76), should then have occupied a space about 12,000 feet square, that is, about two and one half miles.

127. CHAPTER 8. **primō**: *at first*. Distinguish from *primum* = *first*, *for the first time*.

128. **virtūtis**: objective genitive (54); *reputation for valor*.

proeliō: ablative of separation with *supersedere*, which is the object of *statuit*.

129. **quid . . . auderent**: indirect questions, objects of *periclitābatur*.

quid: see note on *plurimum possent*, Bk. I, l. 62.

hostis: collective singular.

131. **Ubi**, etc.: the "skeleton" of this sentence is formed thus: *Ubi . . . intellēxit, ab utrōque* (l. 137) . . . *obdūxit . . . collocāvit* (l. 140). This is interrupted by the description of the territory, *locō . . . redibat* (ll. 131-137).

locō: ablative absolute of circumstance with *opportūnō* and *idōneō* as predicate adjectives.

Page 86. 132. *ad*, etc.: with *opportūnō* and *idōneō*, which take either *ad* with the accusative or the dative of purpose.

nātūrā: ablative of cause. Translate by an adverb.

133. *quod*, etc.: explains *opportūnō*.

134. *ēditus*: participle used as an adjective, agreeing with *collis*.

tantum: supply *locī*; accusative of extent (74).

adversus: adjective modifying *collis*; turned (*toward the enemy*), *in front*.

quantum: object of *tenēre*. It corresponds to *tantum*. Translate by *as* and omit the genitive of the whole, *locī*.

135. *ex*, etc.: ablative of point of view.

136. *lateris dēiectūs*: *slopes of the side* = *steep sides*.

137. *redībat*: compare this with *ēditus*, l. 134. The point of view differs; above, looking from plain to top, here, looking from top to plain.

ab, etc.: see note on *ex*, l. 135.

138. *transversam*: at right angles to the camp. See Map.

obdūxit: fronting the army of the enemy; force of *ob-*?

passuum: genitive of measure (57, a).

139. *extrēmās*: see 105.

tormenta: artillery, that is, engines of war worked by twisted ropes (*torrē funēs*). See Introduction, 54.

140. *instrūxisset*: a subjunctive of implied indirect discourse, showing the reason in Caesar's mind. Otherwise a future perfect would have been used.

141. *poterant*: indicative, because it is a parenthetical clause.

pugnantēs: with *suōs*, circumstantial.

142. *duābus*, etc.: Caesar's regular policy. He fought with seasoned troops only.

143. *sī . . . esset*: subjunctive of implied indirect discourse, as being the thought in Caesar's mind; originally future.

144. *quō* = *aliquō*: after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num* forms with *ali-* are not used. For case see 87.

opus esset: impersonal, *there was need*. *Opus* in this phrase is indeclinable.

subsidiō: dative of purpose (69).

reliquās: not *rest of*.

146. *ēductās*: participle with force of a clause. Translate by independent verb.

147. CHAPTER 9. *Palūs*: this is formed by a little stream, the Miete.

erat: denotes existence.

148. *Hanc*: object of *trānsirent* in the *sī* clause, but placed before the conjunction for the sake of emphasis.

sī . . . *trānsirent*: after verbs of trying, waiting, etc., an indirect question introduced by *sī* is used; *to see if*, etc. The imperfect subjunctive represents an original future.

exspectābant: imperfect of continued action.

149. *autem*: postpositive. This word, like *enim* and *quoque*, is not found at the beginning of a sentence or clause.

sī . . . *fieret*: see note on *sī trānsirent*, l. 148. It depends on the adjective *parātī*, which has the force of *waiting*.

150. *ut* . . . *aggrederentur*: purpose clause depending on *parātī*.

impeditōs: participle, with force of a clause; *while in difficulties* (on account of picking their way through the bog).

151. *contendebātur*: impersonal passive. In translating make the words *proeliō equestri* the subject.

152. *faciunt*: historical present.

secundiōre: with *proeliō*, ablative absolute, with the (missing) present participle of *esse* understood.

153. *nostris*: dative of reference (66) with *secundiōre*.

155. *quod esse*: the infinitive is the subject of *dēmōnstrātum est*. *Quod* is made to introduce the relative clause of which *dēmōnstrātum est* is the predicate. Translate by turning the predicate into an *as* clause, making the infinitive the predicate of the relative, thus: *which, as has been pointed out, was*.

157. *cōnsiliō*: ablative of cause.

ut . . . *prohibērent* (l. 161): the *ut* clause of purpose with the four verbs *expugnārent*, *intercinderent*, *populārentur*, *prohibērent*, explains *cōnsiliō*.

sī possent: subjunctive of implied indirect discourse, as part of the plan of the Belgians; originally future. So *sī* . . . *potuissent*, l. 159, originally future perfect.

cui: dative with *praeerat*. This is indicative because it is an explanatory remark of Caesar's. So *quī* . . . *erant*, l. 160.

159. *minus*: *parum*, *minus*, *minimē*, often have the force of *nōn*.

160. *quī*: antecedent *agrōs*.

ūsui: dative of purpose, accompanied by a dative of reference, *nōbīs* (69, a).

commeātū: ablative of separation.

162. CHAPTER 10. *certior factus*: see note on l. 3.

163. *levis armātūrae*: descriptive genitive (57). Translate by an adjective modifying *Numidās*.

sagittariōsque: the *-que* marks the last two kinds of troops as forming one body, otherwise no connective would have been used in the enumeration.

164. *ponte*: ablative of means with *trādūcit*, to which the object *flūmen* should be supplied.

Page 87. 165. *pugnātum est*: impersonal passive (115). Translate *they*, with an active tense.

166. *aggressi*: circumstantial participle. Translate by an independent verb.

occidērunt: note the quantity of the *i* and distinguish from *occidere*. In composition *a* becomes *i*, but *ae* becomes *i*.

per: not *through*. The prepositional phrase modifies *trānsire*, complementary to *cōnantēs*. This refers to *reliquōs*, the object of *reppulērunt*. Translate *cōnantēs* by a circumstantial clause of which a pronoun referring to *reliquōs* should become the subject.

168. *reppulērunt*: notice the spelling and compare with the perfect of the simple verb *pellō*.

trānsierant: *had* (actually) *crossed*.

169. *equitātū*: ablative of means with *circumventōs*.

interfēcērunt: *nostrī*, l. 165, is the subject.

Hostēs, etc.: in translating this involved sentence it will be best to change the construction and to divide it into a number of small independent statements. Keep in mind that *hostēs* is subject of *cōstituērunt*, l. 173, and is to be understood as subject of the verbs *intellēxērunt* and *vīdērunt*, which belong to the clause beginning with *ubi*. This clause, however, extends to *coepit*.

170. *dē . . . trānsundō*: prepositional phrases depending on *spem*. An objective genitive (54) might have been used instead; translate accordingly.

spem: subject of *fefellisse*, which has *sē* for its object and is in indirect discourse after *intellēxērunt*.

171. *neque* = *et nōn*.

nostrōs: subject of *prōgredi*, dependent on *vīdērunt*.

172. **pugnandī**: genitive of the gerund with *causā*, expressing purpose (169, 1 *b*). Note that in this construction *causā* always follows the genitive.

ipsōs: object of *dēficere*, complementary to *coepit* with *rēs* as subject.

174. **optimum esse**: predicate adjective. *Revertī* and *convenīre* (l. 176) are the subjects, the whole being the object of *cōstituērunt* (l. 173).

domum: accusative of limit of motion (75, 1).

quemque: subject of *revertī*.

175. **quōrum**: antecedent *eōs*, l. 176.

intrōdūxissent: subjunctive of indirect discourse, representing a future perfect.

176. **ad . . . dēfendendōs**: gerundive of purpose, depending on *convenīre*.

ut . . . ūterentur (l. 178): these are purpose clauses, depending on the sense of the whole clause *cōstituērunt . . . convenīre*. Insert *with the intention*.

178. **cōpiis**: usually the plural of *cōpia* means *troops*. What does it mean here?

sententiam: *decision*.

179. **quod . . . cōgnōverant**: substantive clause, explaining *haec ratiō*.

180. **finibus**: dative with *appropinquāre*, which takes the dative the same as the adjective *propinquus*.

181. **Hīs**: dative, indirect object of *persuādēri*, the subject of *poterat*. Intransitive verbs cannot form a personal passive, but can be used only in the third singular with the original dative preserved (64, *a*). In translating make the dative the subject of a personal construction.

ut . . . ferrent: clause of purpose used as subject of *persuādēri*. In the active the verb is followed by an object clause, which becomes the subject clause of the passive.

182. **neque . . . auxilium ferrent**: *without aiding*. If the writer had wanted to say *and not*, he would have used *nēve*.

183. CHAPTER II. **vigiliā**: ablative of time when. The night was divided into four watches, from sunset to sunrise. At this season the sun set about 9 P.M.

184. **castris**: ablative of separation.

nūllō, etc.: probably ablative absolute expressing manner. *Nūllō = sine ūllō*.

185. *cum . . . properāret*: causal clause, modifying *fēcērunt*.

186. *ut . . . vidērētur*: object clause of result with *fēcērunt*.

cōnsimilis: force of *con-*? What degree of the adjective would have the same force?

187. *fugae*: see 70.

Caesar: subject of *perspēxerat* and *continuit*. Break up the sentence into small statements.

188. *per*: not *ab*, to show that they were acting under Caesar's orders.

veritus: the perfect participle of deponent verbs often has the force of a present.

quod . . . perspēxerat: causal, modifies *veritus*.

quā . . . discēderent: indirect question, object of *perspēxerat*.

189. *exercitum*: the Roman army proper, the legions. The cavalry consisted of Gallic auxiliaries. See Bk. I, l. 346.

190. *castris*: ablative of means; translate by *in*.

Primā lūce: ablative of time, modifies the ablative absolute expressing cause, *cōfirmatā rē*.

191. *quī . . . morārētur*: relative purpose clause.

novissimum agmen: see 105.

194. *subsequī*: notice the force of *sub-*, *closely*.

196. *fugientium*: circumstantial participle with *eōrum*; *while*, etc.

197. *Cum . . . sustinērent*: circumstantial clause, but almost equivalent to a concession. Translate by *while*.

ab extrēmō agmine: ablative of point of view (80).

ad quōs: *ii* must be inserted as antecedent.

ventum erat: impersonal passive, used here to avoid confusion about the subjects.

Page 88. 199. *priōrēs*: almost equivalent to *primum agmen*.

vidērentur, continērentur: subjunctive, because the reason is not real but only existing in their minds.

neque . . . neque: *and . . . neither . . . nor*.

200. *exauditō . . . ordinibus*: two ablatives absolute which modify each other. The first gives the reason for the second, which expresses the circumstances under which the *pōnēbant* takes place. Make the first a prepositional phrase, *upon hearing*, the second an independent verb.

201. *omnēs*: referring back to *priōrēs*.

sibi: dative of reference. Translate by a possessive adjective.

202. *tantam . . . quantum*: an involved thought. Literally, *they*

killed as great a number as the extent of the day was long; freely, . . . as daylight allowed.

204. sub, etc. : there is no connective (asyndeton). Insert *but*.

205. erat imperātum : supply *its*; the impersonal passive construction of intransitive verbs (64, a).

206. CHAPTER 12. Postridīe eius diēi : literally, *on the next day of this day* = *on the next day*.

priusquam . . . reciperent : subjunctive, because Caesar's intention is indicated. Translate *could recover*.

207. quī . . . erant. See ll. 40 and 61.

208. Rēmis : dative with an adjective (70).

magnō itinere : *a long march* (in one day) = *a forced march*.

209. Noviodūnum : "Newtown," to-day Soissons. It is appositive to *oppidum*.

ex itinere : see note on l. 101.

210. quod . . . audiēbat : causal clause, explaining *ex itinere*.

ab dēfēnsōribus : see 79, a.

212. paucis dēfendētibz : ablative absolute with concessive force. Translate by *although*.

expugnāre : observe the difference between this word and *oppugnāre*.

213. vineās : see Introduction, 52.

quaeque = *et (ea) quae*.

ad oppugnandum : a gerund. The regular dative of reference accompanying the dative of purpose *usui* would have been ambiguous.

214. ex fugā : grammatically dependent on *convēnit*, but in sense equivalent to *fugientium*. Translate accordingly.

216. aggere, turribz : see Introduction, 52.

217. magnitūdine, celeritāte (l. 218) : casual with *permōt*.

218. ante : adverb.

219. mittunt, impetrant (l. 220) : historical presents.

220. petentibus Rēmis : causal ablative absolute.

ut cōservārentur : object of both *petentibus* and *impetrant*. In translating supply a pronoun object with *impetrant*.

221. CHAPTER 13. obsidibus : appositive to *primis, filiis*.

primis = *principibus*.

222. Galbae : see l. 66. Thus the Belgian confederacy was deprived of its commander in chief.

223. in dēditiōnem . . . accipit : literally, *receives into surrender*; freely, *accepts the surrender of*.

224. *Bellovacōs*: see note on l. 57.

Quī cum = *hī autem cum*: a relative is often used at the beginning of a sentence instead of a demonstrative to connect it with the preceding sentence.

225. *Bratūspanantium*: for case see note on l. 209.

atque: repeat *cum*.

227. *nātū*: ablative of specification (95); *greater in respect to birth* = *elders*.

228. *sēsē*, etc.: indirect discourse after *vōce significāre* = *dicere*. Caesar, of course, did not understand their language, but judged from their tone of voice.

in eius fidem, etc.: *come into his protection and power* = *surrender unconditionally*.

Page 89. 231. *accessisset, pōneret*: note the difference in tense.

puerī: includes both boys and girls.

232. *passis manibus*: ablative absolute expressing manner. *Passis* is from *pandō*.

mōre: ablative of accordance (93), modifies *passis*.

235. CHAPTER 14. *facit verba* = *dicit*. The rest of the chapter in its original form ran somewhat as follows: *Bellovacī . . . fuērunt; impulsī . . . quī dicēbant . . . dēfēcērunt et . . . intulērunt. Quī . . . fuērunt, quod intellegēbant . . . profūgērunt. Petunt . . . Bellovacī . . . Aeduī, ut tuā . . . utāris. Quod sī fēcērīs, . . . amplificābis; . . . incidērunt, sustentāre cōsuēvimus*. Notice how very little really had to be changed to make the speech direct.

236. *in fidē . . . fuisse*: *had been in the protection and friendship* = *had been friends and allies*.

237. *impulsōs . . . intulisse* (l. 240): the words *impulsōs* (*Bellovacōs*) . . . *dēfēcisse et . . . intulisse* depend on *verba facit*; the words *Aeduōs . . . perferre* depend on *dicerent*. Notice the tense of *perferre* compared with that of *dēfēcisse*. The *prīncipēs* said *they are enduring*, Diviciacus said *they have revolted*.

240. *Quī*: supply the antecedent *eōs* as subject of *profūgisse*.

cōnsilii: objective genitive (54) with *prīncipēs*, which differs in meaning from *prīncipibus* in l. 237.

241. *quod intellegerent*: causal clause, referring to *profūgisse*.

quantam: indirect question, object of *intellegent*.

242. *Petere*: emphatic position. Translate *it was the prayer . . . of*.

Page 92. 321. *cēdentēs*: object of *insequi*. The participle is used as a noun. Translate by a relative clause.

322. *primae*: here has the force of an adverb.

323. *dimēnsō*: participle of *dimētiōr*, with passive force.

325. *quod tempus* = *id tempus quod*.

committendi proelii: gerundive construction in the objective genitive with *tempus*. Translate by *for*.

326. *convēnerat*: from the impersonal verb *convenit*, it is agreed upon.

ut: notice the mood of the predicates.

aciem ordinēque: hendiadys, *the ranks of their battle line*.

327. *ipsi*: omit in translating.

329. *His*: i.e. *equitibus*.

330. *ut . . . vidērentur*: result clause.

ad: *in front of*.

331. *vidērentur*: see note on l. 307.

332. *adversō colle*: ablative absolute, implying contrast; *even up—hill*.

in opere: supply *mūniendī*.

334. CHAPTER 20. The breathless haste made necessary by this surprise is well expressed by the short, jerky sentences, without any connectives. It is worth while to observe how in the description of this battle Caesar always manages to appear just at the critical moment. See beginning of Chs. 21, 25, 26.

Caesari: dative of agent, to be understood with all the gerundives which follow.

ūnō: *one (and the same)*.

vēxillum: a red flag hoisted over the general's quarters. See Introduction, 40.

335. *cum . . . oportēret*: circumstantial clause.

336. *concurri*: impersonal passive infinitive, subject of *oportēret*.

quī: its (omitted) antecedent *eī* is subject of *arcessendī*.

337. *aggeris*: that is, the material for the rampart.

338. *cohortandī*: which was regularly done before commencing battle. Note that the gerundive of deponent verbs is passive meaning.

signum: for attack.

340. *impediēbat*: singular, because the two nominatives form one idea. The time was short because the enemy rushed so rapidly.

difficultātibus: dative of reference with the dative of purpose *subsidiō* (69, a). Translate by *in*.

duae rēs: explained by one pair of nouns in apposition (*scientia*, etc.) and by an explanatory substantive clause (*quod . . . vetnerat*, l. 344 et seq.).

341. **quod . . . poterant** (l. 344): a causal clause, explaining *scientia atque ūsus*.

342. **proeliis**: ablative of means.

quid . . . oportēret: indirect question (151), object of *praescribere* and retained object of *docēri*.

343. **ipsi sibi**: see note on *ipsi*, l. 327.

344. **singulisque . . . lēgātōs**: *and from each individual legion its own commander*.

345. **lēgātōs: vetāre** takes a direct object. What is the usual construction with verbs of forbidding? See 147.

nisi mūnītis castris: *unless after . . .*

346. **Hi = lēgātī**.

347. **nihil**: *not at all*.

348. **per se**: *on their own responsibility*.

quae vidēbantur: supply *sibi*; *what seemed good to them*. The relative clause is the object of *administrābant*.

349. CHAPTER 21. **rēbus imperātis**: as *imperāre* takes the thing *ordered* as its direct object, the passive ablative absolute is a perfectly regular construction.

350. **quam partem** = *ad eam partem quam*.

351. **decimam**: on the left wing. Do you think it was mere accident that Caesar came first to his favorite regiment?

Page 93. 352. **quam**: *than (to say)*.

utī . . . sustinērent: these subjunctives represent a quotation (implied indirect discourse) of original commands and prohibitions.

353. **neu = nēve**: purpose clauses and prohibitions are regularly continued by *nēve* = *et nē* (while *neque* = *et nōn*). *Neu* and *-que* here correspond to the *neque . . . et* of a statement (*on the one hand not . . . but on the other hand*).

animō: either an expression of place, without preposition, or ablative of specification.

354. **quod . . . aberant**: giving the reason for *sīgnum dedit*.

nōn . . . posset: *no farther than whither a missile could be thrown = within range*.

355. **pōset**: relative clauses after negative antecedents are in the subjunctive.

356. **Atque**: *and indeed*, giving the proof for the statement that the enemy was close by.

alteram: the right wing.

357. **pugnantibus**: dative with *occurrit*; *he found them fighting*.

Temporis, hostium: the position marks these words as emphatic.

358. **parātus**: adjective.

359. **ut . . . dēfuerit** (l. 361): result clause. The tense is in irregular sequence, which is often found in result clauses when the result is stated as decisive or final.

insignia, etc.: the officers were distinguished by certain trappings, while they, as well as many soldiers, possessed medals given for bravery. These things were put on before the battle. The helmets were not worn on the march, but carried either over the arm or with the baggage (*sarcinae*) on a stick. The shields were ornamented with brass and were carried in leather covers to save unnecessary polishing. See Introduction, 25, 27, 51.

360. **scūtis**: dative of separation (66, b).

361. **Quam**: with *in partem*.

362. **cāsū**: ablative of cause; translate *by*, etc.

quaeque = et quae.

prima: translate with *cōspēxit* as if it were an adverb. The standards of the maniples are meant.

365. CHAPTER 22. **Instrūctō . . . poterant** (l. 372): break this sentence up into several parts. (1) *Instrūctō . . . postulābat*, (2) *cum diversae . . . impedirētur*, (3) *neque . . . poterant*. In the Latin context the relation of the clauses is as follows: (1) ablative absolute of time; (2) causal clause, giving the consequences arising from (1) and the reason for (3). In translating choose coördinating conjunctions in accordance with this hint.

dēiectus: a noun followed by the genitive *collis*.

366. **necessitās**: *needs of the moment*.

ratīō atque ōrdō: *theory and practice*.

367. **diversae**: *turned from each other*.

aliae aliā: *one here, one there* (113). *Aliae* is appositive to *legiōnēs*.

368. **saepibus . . . interiectis**: ablative absolute expressing means. In translating the participle turn it into a relative clause going with *ut* . . . *dēmōstrāvimus*. For the facts cp. Ch. 17.

370. *certa subsidia*: reserves in certain places.

quid . . . opus esset: indirect question, subject of *prōvidēti*.

quid: if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun, this may be made the subject of the phrase *opus est*.

372. *administrārī*: not carried out, but given.

373. *iniquitāte*: literally, unevenness; translate *diversity*.

fortūnae: genitive, with *eventūs*.

374. CHAPTER 23. *Legiōnis*: singular, because Caesar thinks at first only of that legion to which he comes first. His preference for the tenth legion is shown by the fact that in Ch. 21 he did not even mention the ninth.

militēs: subject of *compulērunt, interfēcērunt*.

375. *cursū . . . cōfectōs*: modifies *Atrebātēs*.

cursū ac lassitūdine: hendiadys (171, 1); weary from running.

376. *exanimātōs*: winded.

his: i.e. *Atrebātibus*.

377. *ea pars*: i.e. *exercitūs Rōmānī*.

378. *compulērunt*: notice the force of the prefix, completely.

cōnantēs: accusative.

379. *impeditam*: appositional. Translate by *while*.

transire: complementary infinitive, with *dubitāre* meaning *hesitate*.

380. *iniquum*: because now the Romans fought uphill.

381. *hostēs*: accusative.

382. *diversae*: as in l. 367, and hence *separately*.

Page 94. 383. *quibuscum*: *cum* is used as an enclitic with personal, reflexive, relative, and interrogative pronouns.

384. *ex locō superiōre*: the Romans were on the upper part of the river bank.

385. *proeliābantur*: progressive.

ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte: ablatives of point of view.

386. *nūdātis*: supply *dēfēnsōribus*, an ablative of separation.

Cum . . . cōstitisset: circumstantial (129). For number see note on l. 374.

387. *intervallō*: ablative of measure.

388. *cōfertissimō agmine*: ablative of manner.

Duce Boduognātō: ablative absolute; *Boduognatus* being leader, under *Boduognatus's leadership*.

389. *summam imperiī*: see note on *summam bellī*, l. 67.

390. *ab apertō latere*: see note on *ā fronte*, l. 385. The right side was shieldless.

391. *summum . . . locum*: the camp, as usual, was on the slope of the hill, hence the rear was higher than the front.

392. CHAPTER 24. *levisque armātūrae*: descriptive genitive; translate as an adjective.

393. *quī . . . fuerant*: see l. 316.

quōs: referring to *equitēs, peditēs*.

394. *pulsōs*: supply *esse*.

cum . . . recipere: circumstantial; *while retreating*.

395. *adversis*: *face to face*. The cavalry had run away and was now rallied near the camp, and met the enemy entering it.

396. *decumānā portā*: see the plan of a Roman camp, Introduction, 48.

ac summō iugō: the baggage train had only partly entered the camp

397. *victōrēs*: appositive to *nostrōs*.

398. *cum respēxissent*: circumstantial; *upon looking back . . . and seeing*.

400. *eōrum*: with *clāmōr*. Translate by *from*.

401. *oriēbātur*: singular, because *clāmōr fremitusque* forms one idea. The shouting of the men and the noise of the beasts and wagons blend into one confused uproar.

aliique, etc.: see note on l. 367.

402. *ferēbantur*: *were carried = rushed*.

403. *Trēveri*: in the valley of the Moselle. The name survives in the name of the city of Trèves. The word is here used as an adjective.

404. *virtūtis*: objective genitive, with *opīniō*; *reputation for bravery*.

auxilii causā: with *missi*.

405. *cum*: conjunction, with *vīdissent*. In itself it might be a preposition, but the subjunctive *vīdissent* (l. 408) demands a conjunction to introduce it. It is circumstantial; for translation see note on l. 394.

406. *circumventās tenēri*: the perfect participle with *habēre* and *tenēre* denotes that the action has been completed, but that its effect continues. Translate *held almost completely outflanked*.

407. *cālōnēs, etc.*: the lack of connectives is regular in enumeration where either all parts are connected or none. Here it is certainly meant to paint the excited confusion of the battlefield.

408. *dēspērātis*, etc.: *our circumstances having been despaired of* = *despairing of our success*. In the active, *dēspērāre* takes *dē*, but the ablative absolute is used as if it were a transitive verb.

409. *Rōmānōs*: indirect discourse after *renūntiāvērunt*.

410. *castris*: with *potītōs*.

412. CHAPTER 25. *Caesar*, etc.: this sentence, the longest found in *Caesar*, must be broken up as follows: (1) to *profectus*; (2) to *vidit*; (3) to *āmissō*, treating all ablatives absolute as independent sentences; (4) to *occis*; (5) to *posset*, as a parenthesis; (6) to *vitāre*; (7) to *vidit*, which should be omitted in translating; (8) to *posset*; (9) to *venat*; (10) to *processit*; (11) to *appellātis*; (12) to *cohortātus*; (13) to end of sentence. Keep in mind that beginning with *ubi* (l. 413) everything depends upon *vidit* (l. 415), which is repeated in l. 424 to refresh the reader's memory.

Caesar: subject of *processit* (l. 426), and *iussit* (l. 428). See note on l. 334.

414. *collātis*: *crowded*.

sibi ipsōs: see note on l. 327.

Page 95. 418. *primipilō*: see Introduction, 30.

419. *Baculō*: probably a nickname ("Mr. Cane") given to the man the soldiers because he used his sign of office too freely.
gravibusque: an adjective modifying the same noun as *multus* is connected with *multus* by *et* or *-que*. Omit the conjunction.

421. *ab novissimis*: ablative of point of view.

dēsertō locō: ablative absolute.

proeliō: ablative of separation.

422. *ā fronte*: ablative of point of view.

424. *in angustō*: *in a tight place*.

vidit: omit.

425. *ab novissimis*: see note on l. 421.

milliti: dative of separation (66, b).

428. *signa inferre*: by doing this the formation would be made open the soldiers would have elbowroom.

quō: see 123, 3.

429. *Cuius*: i.e. *Caesaris*.

430. *millitibus*: dative with *illātā*.

cum . . . cuperet: causal clause.

431. *in extrēmīs suis rēbus*: *in his own desperate circumstances* = *the greatest personal risk*.

433. CHAPTER 26. *Caesar*: see note on l. 334.

cum . . . *vidisset*: circumstantial; *upon noticing*.

434. *tribūnōs*: see Introduction, 32.

435. *ut* . . . *inferrent*: purpose clauses, representing an original command.

conversa signa . . . *inferrent*: *signa* is object of *inferrent*. By turning the standards, the front would naturally be changed; hence, *should wheel and attack*.

436. *aliis alii*: see note on l. 367.

437. *nē* . . . *circumvenirentur*: see 146.

āversi: *turned away = from the rear*. The legions were now standing back to back.

440. *proeliō nūntiātō*: ablative absolute expressing cause or time.

441. *cursū incitātō*: ablative absolute expressing manner.

442. *cōspiciēbantur*: the imperfect here denotes the beginning of the action.

Labiēnus: see l. 373, where the commander, however, was not mentioned.

443. *quae* . . . *gererentur*: indirect question, object of *cōspiciātus*.

445. *Quī*: referring in thought to the individual soldiers, and therefore in "construction according to sense" not agreeing with *legiōnem*.

quō . . . *esset*: *in what critical situation*.

quō . . . *versārētur* (l. 447): indirect questions, objects of *cōgnōvissent*.

Page 96. 447. *versārētur*: agreeing only with the last and most important subject. In this way the personal relation of the tenth legion to Caesar is emphasized.

nihil . . . *fēcērunt*: *made nothing (of) left for them in regard to speed = left nothing undone as far as speed went*.

450. CHAPTER 27. *ut* . . . *redintegrārent, occurrerent, praeferrent*: result.

etiam quī: supply *et*.

prōcubuissent: subjunctive by attraction (160).

451. *scūtis*: ablative with *innixi*.

452. *inermēs*: agreeing with *cālōnēs*.

453. *ut* . . . *dēlērent*: purpose clause referring to *praeferrent*.

454. *in*: the preposition is usually omitted in this phrase.

militibus: indirect object with *praeferrent*.

455. *in extrēmā spē salūtis*: at the end of their hope for safety = at the last ditch, without any hope.

456. *praestitērunt*: notice that this verb is here transitive, with *virtutem* as object. See Vocabulary.

ut . . . *pugnārent*: how do you decide whether this is purpose or result?

cum . . . *cecidissent*: circumstantial.

457. *iacentibus*: dative with *insisterent*.

458. *his*: i.e. *proximis*.

459. *quī superessent*: supply *eī*; subjunctive by attraction (160).

ut: adverb, *as*.

460. *conicerent, remitterent*: supply the *ut* from l. 456.

ut . . . *dēberet*: result clause depending on, and drawing the conclusion from, all the preceding facts.

nōn nēquīquam: with *ausōs esse*.

461. *virtūtis*: descriptive genitive.

iudicārī dēberet: infinitive of an impersonal passive; *one ought to judge*.

462. *trānsire, ascendere, subire*: complementary to *ausōs esse*.

463. *quae*: referring to the infinitives and therefore neuter. It is object of *redēgerat*, with *facilia* as predicate accusative (73, c).

ex: instead of.

466. CHAPTER 28. *redāctō*: agreeing with *nōmine*, but referring also to *gente*.

quōs . . . *dixerāmus*: when, as here, a relative clause contains a verb of saying on which the rest of the clause depends, the verb of saying should be made parenthetical, and the infinitive should be translated as a finite verb. For the facts, see l. 272.

468. *cum* . . . *arbitrārentur*: causal clause.

victōribus, victis: datives of reference. Literally, *nothing hindered for the victors, nothing safe for the conquered*; freely, *no barrier for the conquerors, no safety for the defeated*.

469. *impeditum, tūtum*: supply *esse*.

472. *ad trēs*, etc.: the statement was decidedly exaggerated. Five years later they again put 6,000 men in the field against the Romans.

473. *vix*: with *quīngentōs*.

474. *ut* . . . *vidērētur*: purpose. This clemency was probably not merely due to policy, but influenced by Caesar's sincere respect for the bravery of the Nervii. See ll. 460-464.

476. *finitimis*: indirect object of *imperāvit*, the direct object of which is the *ut* clause. Notice the difference in construction of the two verbs of commanding, *iubeō* and *imperō*.

Page 97. 478. CHAPTER 29. *suprā*: see l. 271.

cum . . . *venirent*: circumstantial; *while*.

479. *cōpiis*: ablative of accompaniment, without a preposition.

ex itinere: that is, immediately.

482. *cum* . . . *habēret*: concessive.

ex . . . *partibus*, *ex parte*: ablatives of point of view.

in circuitū: a prepositional phrase, used almost like an adjective; *all around*.

486. *tum*: *now*. In a narrative the words of time are used as if from the point of the speaker. When Caesar wrote, it was *then*.

487. *collocābant*: progressive.

Ipsi: i.e. *Aduatuci*.

488. *Cimbris*: ablative of origin (81, 1).

cum . . . *facerent*: circumstantial. Turn into a phrase, *on their march*. See Bk. I, l. 799.

489. *iis impedimentis*: ablative absolute with *dēpositis*, l. 491.

490. *agere ac portāre*: two verbs, one referring to cattle and slaves, the other to things. Translate by the one verb *transport*.

citrā: on the Gallic side.

491. *cūstōdiae*, *praesidiō*: datives of purpose.

492. *eōrum*: i.e. *Cimbrōrum*.

493. *cum* . . . *dēfenderent*: circumstantial clause, explaining *exagitātī*.

aliās . . . *aliās*: adverbs.

494. *illātum dēfenderent*: supply *bellum*. Literally, *warded off (a war) made on (them)*; freely, *waged now offensive, now defensive wars*.

496. CHAPTER 30. *Ac*: *and indeed*.

adventū: ablative of time.

497. *parvulisque proeliis*: *very small fights = skirmishes*.

498. *pædum*: must be understood both with *XII* and with *XV milium*, since the rampart certainly was not 15 miles long. It is not repeated after *milium*, because it would produce a disagreeable similarity of sound.

499. *circummūniti*: by Caesar.

oppidō: ablative of means. Translate by *in*.

501. *irridēre*, *increpitāre*: historical infinitives (165).

502. *ā tantō spatiō* = *tantō spatiō* (ablative of degree of difference)
ā (sē): see note on l. 123.

503. *instituerētur*: the subjunctive is used because this is part of their sneers.

Quibusnam, etc.: this is a question in indirect discourse, of which *cōfīderent*, l. 507, is the predicate (for *cōfīditis*). Do not confuse with an indirect question, which must be introduced by a verb.

504. *hominēs*: in apposition to the subject of *cōfīderent*.

tantulae: the ending *-ulus* makes diminutives (see *parvulus*, l. 497);
so little great = *so small*.

505. *prae*: in comparison with, on account of. In translating the parenthesis make *Gallis* the subject, turn *contemptū* into a verbal predicate, and make *brevitās* the object.

506. in *mūrō*: verbs of placing often have an ablative of place where, instead of an accusative of place to which. The Aduatuci probably never had seen a tower on wheels, and wondered how the Romans would lift it up and place it at the wall.

Page 98. 508. CHAPTER 31. *movēri et appropinquāre*: *turrim*
*mu*st be supplied as subject.

509. *speciēs*: from root *spec-*, see.

510. *quī*, etc.: the predicate is *dixerunt*, l. 514. This verb governs the words *sē . . . permittere* (l. 513), while *locūtī*, l. 510, governs the words *Nōn . . . possent* (ll. 510-513). In these, again, the words *Rōmānōs . . . gerere* depend on *existimāre*.

511. *quī . . . possent* (l. 513): relative clause with causal force (l. 513).

513. *sē . . . omnia*: object of *permittere*. A second *sē* as subject of *permittere* is omitted to avoid repetition. The phrase means *sur-*
*re*nder unconditionally.

514. *Ūnum*: object of the following infinitives, with subject *sē* understood.

prō: in accordance with.

suā: i.e. *Caesaris*. Translate *his usual*.

515. *statuisset*: subjunctive in indirect discourse, for the future perfect.

516. *nē . . . dēspoliāret*: explains *ūnum*.

se: i.e. *Aduatucōs*.

armis: ablative of separation.

517. *Sibi*: with *inimicōs*.

517. *virtūti*: see 64.

518. *possent*: for the future.

519. *Sibi*: dative of reference with *praestāre* (from the impersonal *praestat, it is better*). The infinitives *patī, interficī* are the subjects of *praestāre*.

dēdūcerentur: for the future or for present subjunctive.

520. *quamvis*: from the pronoun *quīvis*.

fortūnam: meaning?

ā: introducing an ablative of agent, because *patī = be treated*.

Translate *at the hands of*.

quam: adverb with a comparative, since *praestāre = melius esse*.

his: antecedent of *quōs*.

521. *per*: expressing manner.

522. CHAPTER 32. *cōsuētūdine . . . meritō*: ablatives of cause.

523. *eōrum*: with *meritō*.

524. *ariēs*: see Introduction, 52.

attigisset, dēdidissent: for the future perfect.

525. *nisi*: *except*.

527. *nē . . . inferrent*: object clause with *imperātūrum*.

528. *quae imperārentur*: object of *facere*. For the passive construction see note on l. 349. Instead of the present infinitive we should have expected the future.

531. *summam . . . altitudinem*: *the highest height = the top*.

534. *patefactis*: those compounds of *faciō* which are not made with prepositions retain the use of *fiō* as passive.

536. CHAPTER 33. *nē . . . acciperent*: purpose. Caesar's regard for the safety of the surrendered serves to show their treachery in the worst light.

quam: since a negative purpose clause must be introduced by *nē*, a compound negative used in it must be resolved into its parts; *nobody = that not anybody*, etc.

537. *ante*: adverb.

initō: ablative absolute with *cōsiliō*.

intellēctum est: impersonal passive. Supply *later*.

Page 99. 539. *dēnique*: *at least*.

540. *partim, partim*: see Vocabulary.

cum: the preposition expresses possession.

541. *scūtis, viminibus*: ablatives absolute, but equivalent in meaning to *cum armīs*.

542. *pellibus*: ablative of means.

543. *quā*: adverb of place.

546. *ignibus*: fire signals were often employed. Monuments show a torch stuck out from a fort.

547. *concursum, pugnatum*: impersonal.

548. *in extrēmā*, etc.: see note on l. 455.

ut . . . *pugnārī dēbuit*: do not allow the *ita* (l. 547) to mislead you into assuming a result clause. What makes this impossible?

549. *turribus*: none had been mentioned, but towers always, and at regular intervals, strengthened the *vallum*.

550. *iacerent*: subjunctive in a characteristic relative clause, after indefinite antecedent.

dēbuit: in translating make *virtis* the subject and turn *pugnārī* into the active. Remember that *ought* is a defective verb and that the time of *dēbuit* must be shown in the translation.

cum . . . *cōsisteret*: causal clause.

551. *ad hominum milibus*: the preposition is used adverbially. This use probably arose from an original *hominum milibus ad*. See note on *ā tantō spatiō*, l. 502.

553. *cum* . . . *dēfenderet*: causal clause.

nēmō: note the emphatic position. *Iam* with a negative may be translated *longer*.

554. *sectiōnem*: see Vocabulary.

555. *capitum* = *hominum*: cp. the use of *souls* in English.

556. *milium*: predicate genitive of measure.

557. CHAPTER 34. *ā P. Crassō*: ablative of agent with *certior factus*,

1. 560. For Crassus see note on *adulēscēns*, Bk. I, l. 1082.

558. *Venetōs*: "kinsmen." Also *Venellōs*, diminutive of *Venetī*; *Coriosolitēs*, "the watchers of the army"; *Esuviōs*, "sons of Esus," the Gallic war god; *Redonēs*, "charioteers." The names survive in the modern Vennes, Corseult, Rennes.

559. *quae*: agreeing with *civitatēs*, but referring to the names mentioned. A pronoun subject is regularly made to agree with its predicate noun.

561. *in diciōnem*: see Vocabulary.

563. CHAPTER 35. *pācātā*: what literally?

565. *incolerent*: subjunctive by attraction (160).

566. *quae* . . . *pollicērentur*: purpose clause.

ae: what is the gender? Why?

SINGULAR

D. animō	puerō	agrō	virō	rēgnō
Ac. animum	puerum	agrum	virum	rēgnum
V. anime	puer	ager	vir	rēgnum
Ab. animō	puerō	agrō	virō	rēgnō

PLURAL

N. animī	puerī	agrī	virī	rēgna
G. animōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	rēgnōrum
D. animīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	rēgnīs
Ac. animōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	rēgna
V. animī	puerī	agrī	virī	rēgna
Ab. animīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	rēgnīs

a. The locative sing. ends in -ī; as, *Corinthī, at Corinth*: the locative plu. in -īs; as, *Delphīs, at Delphi*.

b. Nouns in -ius may have the gen. sing. in -ī instead of -īi and the vocative ends in -ī instead of -ie. Nouns in -ium may have the gen. sing. in -ī. The accent remains as though the longer form were used; as, *imper'ī*.

c. Rule for Gender: Nouns in -um are *neuter*; others are *masculine*.

Exceptions: *Locus*, m., *place*, has its plu. *loca*, n., *places*. *Vulgus*, *crowd*, is generally *neuter*.

THIRD DECLENSION

3. The stem ends in a consonant or in -ī. The nominative ending is -s or nothing.

I. Consonant Stems

cōnsul, m.,	nōmen, n.,	genus, n.,	eques, m.,	caput, n.,
<i>consul</i>	<i>name</i>	<i>race</i>	<i>horseman</i>	<i>head</i>

SINGULAR

N. cōnsul	nōmen	genus	eques	caput
G. cōsulīs	nōminīs	generis	equitīs	capitis
D. cōsulī	nōminī	generī	equitī	capitī
Ac. cōsulem	nōmen	genus	equitem	caput
V. cōsul	nōmen	genus	eques	caput
Ab. cōsule	nōmine	genere	equite	capite

PLURAL

N. cōsulēs	nōmina	genera	equitēs	capita
G. cōsulum	nōminum	generum	equitum	capitum
D. cōsulibus	nōminibus	generibus	equitibus	capitibus
Ac. cōsulēs	nōmina	genera	equitēs	capita
V. cōsulēs	nōmina	genera	equitēs	capita
Ab. cōsulibus	nōminibus	generibus	equitibus	capitibus

II. -i and Mixed Stems

4. Here belong: 1. Nouns ending in -is or -ēs, having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.
2. Most nouns ending in -ns or -rs (for -nts, -rts).
3. Monosyllabics ending in -s or -x, when these letters follow a consonant.
4. Neuters ending in -e, -al, -ar.

hostis, m., f., <i>enemy</i>	cliēns, m., f., <i>dependent</i>	urbs, f., <i>city</i>	vectigal, n., <i>tax</i>
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------------

SINGULAR

N. hostis	cliēns	urbs	vectigal
G. hostis	clientis	urbis	vectigālis
D. hostī	clientī	urbī	vectigālī
Ac. hostem	clientem	urbem	vectigal
V. hostis	cliēns	urbs	vectigal
Ab. hoste	cliente	urbe	vectigālī

PLURAL

N. hostēs	clientēs	urbēs	vectigālia
G. hostium	clientium	urbium	vectigālium
D. hostibus	clientibus	urbibus	vectigālibus
Ac. hostēs or -is	clientēs or -is	urbēs or -is	vectigālia
V. hostēs	clientēs	urbēs	vectigālia
Ab. hostibus	clientibus	urbibus	vectigālibus

a. The locative sing. of third declension nouns ends in -ī or -e; as, *Carthagine*, at Carthage: the locative plu. in -ibus; as, *Trallibus*, at Tralles.

III. *Irregular Nouns*5. *vis, f., force*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. <i>vīs</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>
G. <i>vīs</i>	<i>vīrium</i>
D. <i>vī</i>	<i>vīribus</i>
Ac. <i>vim</i>	<i>vīrēs</i> or <i>-īs</i>
V. <i>vis</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>
Ab. <i>vī</i>	<i>vīribus</i>

senex, m., old man

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>senex</i>	<i>senēs</i>
<i>senis</i>	<i>senum</i>
<i>senī</i>	<i>senibus</i>
<i>senem</i>	<i>senēs</i>
<i>senex</i>	<i>senēs</i>
<i>sene</i>	<i>senibus</i>

6. Rule for Gender: 1. Nouns in *-ō* (except *-dō, -gō, -iō*), *-or, -ōs, -er, -es* are *masculine*.

2. Nouns in *-dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ya, -x*, and those in *-s* when following a consonant are *feminine*.

3. Nouns in *-a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, and -us* are *neuter*.

FOURTH DECLENSION

7. The stem ends in *-u*; the nominative ends in *-us* or *-ū*.

exercitus, m., army

SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. <i>exercitus</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>
G. <i>exercitūs</i>	<i>exercituum</i>
D. <i>exercitui</i>	<i>exercitibus</i>
Ac. <i>exercitum</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>
V. <i>exercitus</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>
Ab. <i>exercitū</i>	<i>exercitibus</i>

cornū, n., horn

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>cornūs</i>	<i>cornuum</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>

a. The dative and ablative plu. of a few nouns end in *-ubus*.

8. *Domus* has some forms of the second declension, as below:

domus, f., home

SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. <i>domus</i>	<i>domūs</i>
G. <i>domūs</i>	<i>domuum</i> or <i>domōrum</i>
D. <i>domui</i> or <i>domō</i>	<i>domibus</i>
Ac. <i>domum</i>	<i>domōs</i> or <i>domūs</i>
V. <i>domus</i>	<i>domūs</i>
Ab. <i>domō</i> or <i>domū</i>	<i>domibus</i>
Locative, <i>domi</i>	

a. Rule for Gender: Nouns ending in *-us* are *masculine*; those in *-ū*, *neuter*; but *domus*, *manus*, *īdūs* are *feminine*.

FIFTH DECLENSION

9. The stem ends in *-ē*; the nominative ends in *-ēs*.

<i>diēs</i> , m., <i>day</i>		<i>rēs</i> , f., <i>thing</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. <i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
G. <i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
D. <i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
Ac. <i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
V. <i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Ab. <i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

a. *Rēs* and *diēs* are the only nouns of this declension that are fully declined in the plural. *Spēs* and *aciēs* have only the nom. and acc. plu.

b. Rule for Gender: Nouns of the fifth declension are *feminine* except *diēs*, which is always *masculine* in the plural and generally so in the singular.

ADJECTIVES

10. FIRST-AND-SECOND DECLENSION

<i>lātus</i> , <i>wide</i>						
SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>lātus</i>	<i>lāta</i>	<i>lātum</i>	<i>lāti</i>	<i>lātae</i>	<i>lāta</i>
G.	<i>lāti</i>	<i>lātae</i>	<i>lāti</i>	<i>lātōrum</i>	<i>lātārum</i>	<i>lātōrum</i>
D.	<i>lātō</i>	<i>lātae</i>	<i>lātō</i>	<i>lātis</i>	<i>lātis</i>	<i>lātis</i>
Ac.	<i>lātum</i>	<i>lātam</i>	<i>lātum</i>	<i>lātōs</i>	<i>lātās</i>	<i>lāta</i>
V.	<i>lāte</i>	<i>lāta</i>	<i>lātum</i>	<i>lāti</i>	<i>lātae</i>	<i>lāta</i>
Ab.	<i>lātō</i>	<i>lātā</i>	<i>lātō</i>	<i>lātis</i>	<i>lātis</i>	<i>lātis</i>

miser, *wretched*

SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>miser</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserum</i>	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserārum</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>
G.	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserāe</i>	<i>miserī</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>	<i>miserārum</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>
D.	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserāe</i>	<i>miserō</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Ac. miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	miserā
V. miser	miserā	miserum	miserī	miserāe	miserā
Ab. miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

crēber, frequent

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. crēber	crēbra	crēbrum	crēbrī	crēbrae	crēbra
G. crēbrī	crēbrae	crēbrī	crēbrōrum	crēbrārum	crēbrōrum
D. crēbrō	crēbrae	crēbrō	crēbris	crēbris	crēbris
Ac. crēbrum	crēbram	crēbrum	crēbrōs	crēbrās	crēbra
V. crēber	crēbra	crēbrum	crēbrī	crēbrae	crēbra
Ab. crēbrō	crēbrā	crēbrō	crēbris	crēbris	crēbris

II. ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ius

Nine first-and-second declension adjectives have -ius (usually -ius in alter) in the genitive singular and -i in the dative, otherwise they are regular except that *alius* has -ud for -um in the neuter. These nine adjectives are: —

<i>alius, another</i>	<i>ūllus, any</i>	<i>uter, which (of two)</i>	<i>sōlus, only</i>
<i>alter, the other (of two)</i>	<i>nūllus, no</i>	<i>neuter, neither</i>	<i>tōtus, whole</i>
			<i>ūnus, one</i>

ūllus, any			alius, another		
SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. ūllus	ūlla	ūllum	alius	alia	aliud
G. ūllius	ūllius	ūllius	alius	alius	alius
D. ūllī	ūllī	ūllī	aliī	aliī	aliī
Ac. ūllum	ūllam	ūllum	alium	aliam	aliud
Ab. ūllō	ūllā	ūllō	aliō	aliā	aliō

The plural is like that of *lātus*.

12. THIRD DECLENSION

Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes as regards the number of different terminations in the nominative singular. Adjectives in the comparative degree and the word *vetus* have consonant stems, others have -i stems.

I. Consonant Stems

a. One Termination.

vetus, old

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
G. <i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>
D. <i>veterī</i>	<i>veterī</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>
Ac. <i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
V. <i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
Ab. <i>vetere</i>	<i>vetere</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>

b. Two Terminations.

fortior, braver

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>fortior</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
G. <i>fortiōris</i>	<i>fortiōris</i>	<i>fortiōrum</i>	<i>fortiōrum</i>
D. <i>fortiōrī</i>	<i>fortiōrī</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>
Ac. <i>fortiōrem</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
V. <i>fortior</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōrēs</i>	<i>fortiōra</i>
Ab. <i>fortiōre</i>	<i>fortiōre</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>	<i>fortiōribus</i>

1. Like *fortior* are declined all comparatives; but *plūs, more*, is irregular and defective.

plūs, more

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. —	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
G. —	<i>plūris</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	<i>plūrium</i>
D. —	—	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>
Ac. —	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs or -īs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
Ab. —	<i>plūre</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>

Complūrēs is declined like the plural of *plūs* except that it may have either *complūra* or *complūria* in the neuter.

II. -i Stems

13. a. One Termination.

potēns, powerful

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
G. potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
D. potenti	potenti	potentibus	potentibus
Ac. potentem	potēns	potentēs or -is	potentia
V. potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
Ab. potente or -i	potente or -i	potentibus	potentibus

1. Like *potēns* are declined all present participles and most adjectives of one termination.

b. Two Terminations.

nōbilis, well-known

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. nōbilis	nōbile	nōbilēs	nōbilīa
G. nōbilis	nōbilis	nōbilium	nōbilium
D. nōbili	nōbili	nōbilibus	nōbilibus
Ac. nōbilem	nōbile	nōbilēs or -is	nōbilīa
V. nōbilis	nōbile	nōbilēs	nōbilīa
Ab. nōbili	nōbili	nōbilibus	nōbilibus

1. Like *nōbilis* are declined all adjectives in -is, -e.

c. Three Terminations.

celer, swift

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. celer	celeris	celere	celerēs	celerēs	celerīa
G. celeris	celeris	celeris	celerium	celerium	celerium
D. celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
Ac. celerem	celerem	celere	celerēs or -is	celerēs or -is	celerīa
V. celer	celeris	celere	celerēs	celerēs	celerīa
Ab. celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus

acer, sharp

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
C.	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
D.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
Ac.	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i> or <i>-is</i>	<i>ācrēs</i> or <i>-is</i>	<i>ācria</i>
V.	<i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
Ab.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

1. Like *acer* are declined *equester, equestrian, pedester, pedestrian*, and names of months in *-ber*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

14. *a.* Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the base (the genitive singular minus the ending) *-ior* for the comparative and *-issimus* for the superlative; as, *nōbilis, nōbilio, nōbilissimus*.

b. Adjectives in *-er* form their comparatives regularly, but their superlatives by adding *-rimus* to the masculine nominative of the positive; as, *acer, ācrior, ācerrimus*.

c. Six adjectives in *-lis* form their comparatives regularly, but their superlatives by adding *-limus* to the base; as, *facilis, faciliior, facillimus*. The six adjectives are: *facilis, easy; similis, like; humilis, low; difficilis, difficult; dissimilis, unlike; gracilis, slender*.

Other adjectives in *-lis* are compared regularly.

15. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>bonus,</i>	<i>melior,</i>	<i>optimus, good, better, best.</i>
<i>malus,</i>	<i>peior,</i>	<i>pessimus, bad, worse, worst.</i>
<i>magnus,</i>	<i>maior,</i>	<i>maximus, great, greater, greatest.</i>
<i>parvus,</i>	<i>minor,</i>	<i>minimus, small, less, least.</i>
<i>multus,</i>	<i>plūs,</i>	<i>plūrimus, much, more, most.</i>

16. Of the following the positive forms are rare:

(<i>exterus</i>),	<i>exterior,</i>	<i>extrēmus</i> (or <i>extimus</i>), <i>outer, outmost.</i>
(<i>inferus</i>),	<i>inferior,</i>	<i>infimus</i> (or <i>imus</i>), <i>lower, lowest.</i>
(<i>posterus</i>),	<i>posterior,</i>	<i>postrēmus</i> (or <i>postumus</i>), <i>latter, last.</i>
(<i>superus</i>),	<i>superior,</i>	<i>suprēmus</i> (or <i>summus</i>), <i>higher, highest.</i>

17. Of the following the positive is lacking :

citerior,	citimus, <i>hither, hithermost:</i>
interior,	intimus, <i>inner, inmost.</i>
prior,	primus, <i>former, first.</i>
propior,	proximus, <i>nearer, next.</i>
ulterior,	ultimus, <i>farther, farthest.</i>

18. COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

Adjectives ending in *-us* following a vowel (and some others) form their comparatives by the use of *magis*, *more*, and their superlatives by the use of *maximē*, *most*; as, *frūmentārius*, *magis frūmentārius*, *maximē frūmentārius*.

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

19. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives as follows : —

1. *Positive*. *a*. Most adjectives of the first-and-second declension form a corresponding adverb by adding *-ē* to their bases, e.g.,

adjective, *lātus* ; *adverb*, *lātē*.

b. Most adjectives of the third declension having two or three endings in the nominative singular form a corresponding adverb by adding *-iter* to their bases, e.g.,

adjective, *fortis*, *-e* ; *adverb*, *fortiter*.

c. Most adjectives of the third declension having one ending in the nominative singular form a corresponding adverb by adding *-ter* to their bases ; a final *t* of the base is dropped, e.g.,

adjective, *potēns*, *potentis* ; *adverb*, *potenter*.

2. *Comparative*. The comparative of an adverb is always the neuter singular accusative of the corresponding adjective, e.g.,

adjective, *lātior* ; *adverb*, *lātius*.

3. *Superlative*. The superlative of an adverb is always the base of the superlative of the adjective + *ē*, e.g.,

adjective, *lātissimus* ; *adverb*, *lātissimē*.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

20. bene,	melius,	optimē, <i>well, better, best.</i>
male,	peius,	pessimē, <i>ill, worse, worst.</i>
diū,	diūtius,	diūtissimē, <i>long (of time), longer, longest.</i>
facile,	facilius,	facillimē, <i>easily, more easily, most easily.</i>
(magnopere),	magis,	maximē, <i>greatly, more, most.</i>
multum,	plūs,	plūrimum, <i>much, more, most.</i>
nūper,	—	nūperrimē, <i>recently, most recently.</i>
parum,	minus,	minimē, <i>too little, less, least.</i>
prope,	propius,	proximē, <i>near, nearer, next.</i>
saepe,	saepius,	saepissimē, <i>often, more often, most often.</i>

NUMERALS

21. Cardinals :—

I. ūnus, -a, -um	XXVIII. duodētrīgintā
II. duo, -ae, -o	XXIX. ūndētrīgintā
III. trēs, tria	XXX. trīgintā
IV. quattuor	XL. quadrāgintā
V. quinque	L. quinquāgintā
VI. sex	LX. sexāgintā
VII. septem	LXX. septuāgintā
VIII. octō	LXXX. octōgintā
IX. novem	XC. nōnāgintā
X. decem	C. centum
XI. ūndecim	CI. centum (et) ūnus
XII. duodecim	CC. ducentī, -ae, -a
XIII. tredecim	CCC. trecentī
XIV. quattuordecim	CCCC. quadringentī
XV. quīndecim	D. quīngentī
XVI. sēdecim	DC. sescentī
XVII. septendecim	DCC. septingentī
XVIII. duodēvigintī	DCCC. octingentī
XIX. ūndēvigintī	DCCCC. nōngentī
XX. vigintī	M. mīlle
XXI. ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	MM. duo mīlia

a. Numbers made up of two or more orders are expressed as follows :

1. When *tens* and *units* are combined, either the units and *et* precede

the tens, as, **ūnus et vīgintī**, *one and twenty*; or the tens precede the units without **et**, as, **vīgintī ūnus**, *twenty-one*.

2. In other combinations of two numbers, the larger precedes the smaller, with or without **et**, as, **centum (et) decem**, *one hundred and ten*.

3. In combinations of three or more numbers, the order is the same as in English, without **et**, as, **tria milia ducenti trīgintā quattuor**, *three thousand two hundred and thirty-four*.

DECLENSION OF **duo** AND **trēs**

22.	duo, two			trēs, three	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

a. For declension of **ūnus**, see § 11. The cardinals **quattuor** to **centum**, inclusive, are indeclinable; **ducentī** to **nōngentī** are declined like the plural of **lātus** (§ 10); **mille** is an indeclinable adjective in the singular, while in the plural it is a neuter noun declined like the neuter of **trēs**, and is generally spelled with one l.

23. *Ordinals*: meaning *first, second, etc.*

prīmus , -a, -um	octāvus	quīntus decimus
secundus or alter	nōnus	sextus decimus
tertius	decimus	septimus decimus
quārtus	ūndecimus	duodēvīcēsīmus
quīntus	duodecimus	ūndēvīcēsīmus
sextus	tertius decimus	vīcēsīmus
septīmus	quārtus decimus	vīcēsīmus prīmus

24. *Distributives*: meaning *one each, two each, etc.*

singulī , -ae, -a	quaternī	septēnī
bīnī	quīnī	octōnī
ternī or trīnī	sēnī	novēnī
		dēnī

25. *Adverbs*. —

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. semel , <i>once</i> | 3. ter , <i>three times</i> | 5. quīnquīēns , <i>five times</i> |
| 2. bis , <i>twice</i> | 4. quater , <i>four times</i> | 6. sexīēns , <i>six times</i> |

PRONOUNS

26.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

SINGULAR			
	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers. (Reflex.)
N.	ego	tū	—
G.	meī	tuī	suī
D.	mihi	tibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
V.	—	tū	—
Ab.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē

PLURAL			
	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers. (Reflex.)
N.	nōs	vōs	—
G.	{ nostrum nostrī	{ vestrum vestrī	suī
D.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Ac.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
V.	—	vōs	—
Ab.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

- a.* The pronoun of the third person is lacking; for it is used *is, ea, id* (or another demonstrative); or, when reflexive, *suī*.
b. The preposition *cum* with personal pronouns is used as an enclitic, *as, vōbiscum, with you*.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

1st Pers. <i>meus, -a, -um, my</i>	<i>noster, -tra, -trum, our</i>
2d Pers. <i>tuus, -a, -um, your (of one)</i>	<i>vester, -tra, -trum, your (of more than one)</i>
3d Pers. <i>suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (when referring to the subject)</i>	<i>suus, -a, -um, their (when referring to the subject)</i>

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

27.

hic, this

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
G.	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
D.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
Ac.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
Ab.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>

28. *is, this, that ; he, she, it*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
G. eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D. eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Ac. eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab. eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

29. *idem, the same*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. idem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem iīdem, iīdem	eaedem	eadem
G. eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D. eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
Ac. eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab. eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

30. *ille, that*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G. illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D. illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac. illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab. illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

31. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, self

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

32.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, who

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

33. a.

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

quis, who?

SINGULAR

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	quis	quid
G.	cuius	cuius
D.	cui	cui
Ac.	quem	quid
Ab.	quō	quō

The plural forms are like those of the relative pronoun.

b.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

The interrogative adjective, *quī* (*what?*), is declined like the relative pronoun.

34.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

aliquis, some one, any one

SINGULAR

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	aliquis, aliquī (<i>adj.</i>)	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod (<i>adj.</i>)
G.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
D.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod (<i>adj.</i>)
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

	Masc.	PLURAL Fem.	Neut.
N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

35.

quīdam, a certain

	SINGULAR	
N.	<i>quīdam, a certain one</i>	quaedam
G.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
D.	cuidam	cuidam
Ac.	quendam	quiddam, quoddam (<i>adj.</i>)
Ab.	quōdam	quōdam

	PLURAL	
N.	quīdam	quaedam
G.	quōrundam	quārundam
D.	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōsdam	quāsdam
Ab.	quibusdam	quibusdam

a. quisque and quisquam use the same case endings as does aliquis.

VERBS

36. All regular verbs have three stems: *present*, *perfect*, and *supin*. Upon these three stems are based all the forms of the verb, as follow

1. On the present stem: —

<i>Active</i>	{	present, imperfect, and future indicative
and		present and imperfect subjunctive
<i>passive</i>		both tenses of the imperative
		present infinitive
		<i>Active</i> : present participle, gerund
		<i>Passive</i> : gerundive

2. On the perfect stem: —

<i>Active</i>	{	perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicat
		perfect and pluperfect subjunctive
		perfect infinitive

3. On the supine stem : —

Active and passive : future infinitive

<i>Active</i>	{ future participle supine
	{ perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative perfect and pluperfect subjunctive perfect infinitive perfect participle
<i>Passive</i>	

37.

FIRST CONJUGATION

*spectō, look at*PRINCIPAL PARTS : *spectō spectāre spectāvī spectātum*

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present</i>			
<i>spectō</i>	<i>spectem</i>	<i>spector</i>	<i>specter</i>
<i>spectās</i>	<i>spectēs</i>	<i>spectāris, -re</i>	<i>spectēris, -re</i>
<i>spectat</i>	<i>spectet</i>	<i>spectātur</i>	<i>spectētur</i>
<i>spectāmus</i>	<i>spectēmus</i>	<i>spectāmur</i>	<i>spectēmur</i>
<i>spectātis</i>	<i>spectētis</i>	<i>spectāmini</i>	<i>spectēmini</i>
<i>spectant</i>	<i>spectent</i>	<i>spectantur</i>	<i>spectentur</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>			
<i>spectābam</i>	<i>spectārem</i>	<i>spectābar</i>	<i>spectārer</i>
<i>spectābās</i>	<i>spectārēs</i>	<i>spectābāris, -re</i>	<i>spectārēris, -re</i>
<i>spectābat</i>	<i>spectāret</i>	<i>spectābātur</i>	<i>spectārētur</i>
<i>spectābāmus</i>	<i>spectārēmus</i>	<i>spectābāmur</i>	<i>spectārēmur</i>
<i>spectābātis</i>	<i>spectārētis</i>	<i>spectābāmini</i>	<i>spectārēmini</i>
<i>spectābant</i>	<i>spectārent</i>	<i>spectābantur</i>	<i>spectārentur</i>
<i>Future</i>			
<i>spectābō</i>		<i>spectābor</i>	
<i>spectābis</i>		<i>spectāberis, -re</i>	
<i>spectābit</i>		<i>spectābitur</i>	
<i>spectābimus</i>		<i>spectābimur</i>	
<i>spectābitis</i>		<i>spectābimini</i>	
<i>spectābunt</i>		<i>spectābuntur</i>	

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Perfect</i>			
monui	monuerim	monitus sum	monitus sim
monuisti	monueris	monitus es	monitus sis
monuit	monuerit	monitus est	monitus sit
monuimus	monuerimus	moniti sumus	moniti simus
monuistis	monueritis	moniti estis	moniti sitis
monuerunt, -ēre	monuerint	moniti sunt	moniti sint

Pluperfect

monueram	monuissem	monitus eram	monitus essem
monuerās	monuissēs	monitus erās	monitus essēs
monuerat	monuisset	monitus erat	monitus esset
monuerāmus	monuissēmus	moniti erāmus	moniti essēmus
monuerātis	monuissētis	moniti erātis	moniti essētis
monuerant	monuissent	moniti erant	moniti essent

Future Perfect

monuerō	monitus erō
monueris	monitus eris
monuerit	monitus erit
monuerimus	moniti erimus
monueritis	moniti eritis
monuerint	moniti erunt

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	monē	monēte	monēre	monēmini
<i>Fut.</i>	monētō	monētōte	monētor	
	monētō	monentō	monētor	monentor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	monēre	monēri
<i>Perf.</i>	monuisse	monitus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	monitūrus esse	monitum iri

PARTICIPLE			
<i>Pres.</i>	monēns	<i>Perf.</i>	monitus
<i>Fut.</i>	monitūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	monendus
GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
<i>Gen.</i>	monendi	monendus, -a, -um	
<i>Dat.</i>	monendō	SUPINE	
<i>Acc.</i>	monendum	<i>Acc.</i>	monitum
<i>Abl.</i>	monendō	<i>Abl.</i>	monitū

39. THIRD CONJUGATION

regō, rule

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō regere rēxi rēctum

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present</i>			
regō	regam	regor	regar
regis	regās	regeris, -re	regāris, -re
regit	regat	regitur	regātur
regimus	regāmus	regimur	regāmur
regitis	regātis	regimini	regāmini
regunt	regant	reguntur	regantur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
regēbam	regerem	regēbar	regerer
regēbās	regerēs	regēbāris, -re	regerēris, -re
regēbat	regeret	regēbātur	regerētur
regēbāmus	regerēmus	regēbāmur	regerēmur
regēbātis	regerētis	regēbāmini	regerēmini
regēbant	regerent	regēbantur	regerentur
<i>Future</i>			
regam		regar	
regēs		regēris, -re	
reget		regētur	
regēmus		regēmur	
regētis		regēmini	
regent		regentur	

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Perfect</i>			
rēxī	rēxerim	rēctus sum	rēctus sim
rēxisti	rēxeris	rēctus es	rēctus sis
rēxit	rēxerit	rēctus est	rēctus sit
rēximus	rēxerimus	rēcti sumus	rēcti simus
rēxistis	rēxeritis	rēcti estis	rēcti sitis
rēxērunt, -ere	rēxerint	rēcti sunt	rēcti sint

<i>Pluperfect</i>			
rēxeram	rēxissem	rēctus eram	rēctus essem
rēxerās	rēxissēs	rēctus erās	rēctus essēs
rēxerat	rēxisset	rēctus erat	rēctus esset
rēxerāmus	rēxissēmus	rēcti erāmus	rēcti essēmus
rēxerātis	rēxissētis	rēcti erātis	rēcti essētis
rēxerant	rēxissent	rēcti erant	rēcti essent

<i>Future Perfect</i>		
rēxerō		rēctus erō
rēxeris		rēctus eris
rēxerit		rēctus erit
rēxerimus		rēcti erimus
rēxeritis		rēcti eritis
rēxerint		rēcti erunt

IMPERATIVE			
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i> rege	regite	regere	regimini
<i>Fut.</i> regitō	regitōte	regitor	
regitō	reguntō	regitor	reguntor

INFINITIVE		
<i>Pres.</i> regere		regi
<i>Perf.</i> rēxisse		rēctus esse
<i>Fut.</i> rēctūrus esse		rēctum iri

PARTICIPLE

Pres. regēns
Fut. rēctūrus

Perf. rēctus
Fut. regendus

GERUND

Gen. regendī
Dat. regendō
Acc. regendum
Abl. regendō

GERUNDIVE

regendus, -a, -um
SUPINE

Acc. rēctum
Abl. rēctū

40. THIRD CONJUGATION, IN -iō

capiō, take

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

capiō

capere

cēpi

captum

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

capiō

capiam

capior

capiar

capis

capiās

caperis, -re

capiāris, -re

capit

capiat

capitur

capiātur

capimus

capiāmus

capimur

capiāmur

capitis

capiātis

capimini

capiāmini

capiunt

capiant

capiuntur

capiantur

Imperfect

capiēbam

caperem

capiēbar

caperer

capiēbās

caperēs

capiēbāris, -re

caperēris, -re

capiēbat

caperet

capiēbātur

caperētur

capiēbāmus

caperēmus

capiēbāmur

caperēmur

capiēbātis

caperētis

capiēbāmini

caperēmini

capiēbant

caperent

capiēbantur

caperentur

Future

capiam

capiar

capiēs

capiēris, -re

capiet

capiētur

capiēmus

capiēmur

capiētis

capiēmini

capient

capientur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Perfect

cēpi	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
cēpisti	cēperis	captus es	captus sis
cēpit	cēperit	captus est	captus sit
cēpimus	cēperimus	capti sumus	capti simus
cēpistis	cēperitis	capti estis	capti sitis
cēpērunt, -ēre	cēperint	capti sunt	capti sint

Pluperfect

cēperam	cēpissem	captus eram	captus essem
cēperās	cēpissēs	captus erās	captus essēs
cēperat	cēpisset	captus erat	captus esset
cēperāmus	cēpissēmus	capti erāmus	capti essēmus
cēperātis	cēpissētis	capti erātis	capti essētis
cēperant	cēpissent	capti erant	capti essent

Future Perfect

cēperō	captus erō
cēperis	captus eris
cēperit	captus erit
cēperimus	capti erimus
cēperitis	capti eritis
cēperint	capti erunt

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i> cape	capite	capere	capimini
<i>Fut.</i> capitō	capitōte	capitor	
capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> capere	capī
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse	captus esse
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse	captum iri

PARTICIPLE

Pres. capiēns
Fut. captūrus

Perf. captus
Fut. capiendus

GERUND

Gen. capiendī
Dat. capiendō
Acc. capiendum
Abl. capiendō

GERUNDIVE

capiendus, -a, -um

SUPINE

Acc. captum
Abl. captū

41.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

audiō, hear

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *audiō*

audire

audivi

audītum

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

<i>audiō</i>	<i>audiam</i>	<i>audior</i>	<i>audiar</i>
<i>audis</i>	<i>audiās</i>	<i>audiris, -re</i>	<i>audiāris, -re</i>
<i>audit</i>	<i>audiat</i>	<i>audītur</i>	<i>audiātur</i>
<i>audimus</i>	<i>audiāmus</i>	<i>audimur</i>	<i>audiāmur</i>
<i>auditis</i>	<i>audiātis</i>	<i>audimini</i>	<i>audiāmini</i>
<i>audiunt</i>	<i>audiant</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>	<i>audiantur</i>

Imperfect

<i>audiēbam</i>	<i>audirem</i>	<i>audiēbar</i>	<i>audīrer</i>
<i>audiēbās</i>	<i>audirēs</i>	<i>audiēbāris, -re</i>	<i>audirēris, -re</i>
<i>audiēbat</i>	<i>audiret</i>	<i>audiēbātur</i>	<i>audirētur</i>
<i>audiēbāmus</i>	<i>audirēmus</i>	<i>audiēbāmur</i>	<i>audirēmur</i>
<i>audiēbātis</i>	<i>audirētis</i>	<i>audiēbāmini</i>	<i>audirēmini</i>
<i>audiēbant</i>	<i>audirent</i>	<i>audiēbantur</i>	<i>audirentur</i>

Future

<i>audiam</i>	<i>audiar</i>
<i>audies</i>	<i>audieris, -re</i>
<i>audiet</i>	<i>audietur</i>
<i>audiemus</i>	<i>audiemur</i>
<i>audietis</i>	<i>audiemini</i>
<i>audient</i>	<i>audientur</i>

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Perfect</i>			
audīvi	audīverim	audītus sum	audītus sim
audīvisti	audiveris	audītus es	audītus sis
audīvit	audiverit	audītus est	audītus sit
audīvimus	audīverimus	audīti sumus	audīti simus
audīvistis	audiveritis	audīti estis	audīti sitis
audīverunt, -ēre	audiverint	audīti sunt	audīti sint
<i>Pluperfect</i>			
audīveram	audīvissem	audītus eram	audītus essem
audīverās	audīvisseis	audītus erās	audītus esses
audīverat	audīvisset	audītus erat	audītus esset
audīverāmus	audīvisseimus	audīti erāmus	audīti esseimus
audīverātis	audīvissetis	audīti erātis	audīti essetis
audīverant	audīvisSENT	audīti erant	audīti essent
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
audīverō		audītus erō	
audīveris		audītus eris	
audīverit		audītus erit	
audīverimus		audīti erimus	
audīveritis		audīti eritis	
audīverint		audīti erunt	
IMPERATIVE			
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i> audī	audīte	audīre	audīmini
<i>Fut.</i> audītō	audītōte	audītor	
audītō	audiuntō	audītor	audiuntor
INFINITIVE			
<i>Pres.</i> audire		audīri	
<i>Perf.</i> audīvisse		audītus esse	
<i>Fut.</i> audītūrus esse		audītum iri	
PARTICIPLE			
<i>Pres.</i> audiēns		<i>Perf.</i> audītus	
<i>Fut.</i> audītūrus		<i>Fut.</i> audiendus	

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
<i>Gen.</i>	audiendī		audiendus, -a, -um
<i>Dat.</i>	audiendō		SUPINE
<i>Acc.</i>	audiendum	<i>Acc.</i>	audītum
<i>Abl.</i>	audiendō	<i>Abl.</i>	audītū

42.

A. DEPONENT VERBS

Deponent Verbs are those which are passive in form but active in meaning. But deponents (1) have some active forms, namely, future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund and supine; and (2) always have a passive meaning in the future passive participle and sometimes in the perfect participle.

CONJUGATION OF DEPONENTS

PRINCIPAL PARTS	Conj. I	cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, <i>try</i>
	II	vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>fear</i>
	III	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>
	IV	potior, potirī, potitus sum, <i>get possession of</i>

INDICATIVE

	I	II	III	IV
<i>Pres.</i>	cōnor	vereor	sequor	potior
	cōnāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	potiris, -re
	cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
	cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	cōnāmini	verēmini	sequimini	potimini
	cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
<i>Imperf.</i>	cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
<i>Plup.</i>	cōnābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
<i>Pres. perf.</i>	cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potitus sum
<i>Plup. perf.</i>	cōnātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potitus eram
<i>Plup. perf.</i>	cōnātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potitus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōner	verear	sequar	potiar
<i>Imperf.</i>	cōnārer	verērer	sequerer	potirer
<i>Pres. perf.</i>	cōnātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potitus sim
<i>Plup. perf.</i>	cōnātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potitus essem

IMPERATIVE				
	I	II	III	IV
<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāre	verēre	sequere	potire
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātor	verētor	sequitor	potitor
INFINITIVE				
<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāri	verēri	sequi	potiri
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potitus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potitūrus esse
PARTICIPLE				
<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	potitus
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	cōnandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
GERUND				
cōnandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.	
GERUNDIVE				
cōnandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus	
SUPINE				
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnātum	veritum	secūtum	potitum
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnātū	veritū	secūtū	potitū

B. SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

A few verbs are deponent only in those forms that are based on the perfect stem.

They are : —

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*
fidō, fidere, fīsus sum, *trust*

43. THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

1. The First Periphrastic Conjugation is formed from the future active participle and the verb *sum* ; as, *spectātūrus sum*, *I am going to look at*.

2. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation is formed from the future passive participle and the verb **sum**; as, **spectandus sum**, *I am to be looked at, must be looked at.*

FIRST PERIPHRASTIC

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	spectātūrus sum
<i>Imperf.</i>	spectātūrus eram
<i>Fut.</i>	spectātūrus erō
<i>Perf.</i>	spectātūrus fui
<i>Pluperf.</i>	spectātūrus fueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	spectātūrus fuerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	spectātūrus sim
<i>Imperf.</i>	spectātūrus essem
<i>Perf.</i>	spectātūrus fuerim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	spectātūrus fuisset

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	spectātūrus esse
<i>Perf.</i>	spectātūrus fuisse

SECOND PERIPHRASTIC

INDICATIVE

spectandus sum
spectandus eram
spectandus erō
spectandus fui
spectandus fueram
spectandus fuerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

spectandus sim
spectandus essem
spectandus fuerim
spectandus fuisset

INFINITIVE

spectandus esse
spectandus fuisse

44.

IRREGULAR VERBS

CONJUGATION OF **sum**, **possum**, **eō**, **fiō**

PRINCIPAL PARTS	{	sum, esse, fui, <i>be</i>
		possum, posse, potui, <i>be able</i>
		eō, ire, ii, itum, <i>go</i>
		fiō, fieri, factus sum, <i>be made, happen</i> (pass. of <i>faciō</i>).

a. **possum** is a compound of **pot-** and **sum**. **fiō** is the passive of **faciō**. Note that *i* is long before all vowels except *e* in *-er-*.

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	sum	possum	eō	fiō
	es	potes	īs	fīs
	est	potest	it	fit
	sumus	possumus	īmus	[fīmus]
	estis	potestis	ītis	[fītis]
	sunt	possunt	eunt	fiunt

INDICATIVE

<i>Imperf.</i>	eram	poteram	ībam	fiēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	erō	poterō	ībō	fiam
<i>Perf.</i>	fui	potui	ii (iui)	factus sum
<i>Pluperf.</i>	fueram	potueram	ieram	factus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	fuerō	potuerō	ierō	factus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	sim	possim	eam	fiam
<i>Imperf.</i>	essem	possem	irem	fierem
<i>Perf.</i>	fuerim	potuerim	ierim	factus sim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	fuissem	potuissem	iissem (issem)	factus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	es	i	fi
<i>Fut.</i>	estō	itō	

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	esse	posse	ire	fieri
<i>Perf.</i>	fuisse	potuisse	iisse (isse)	factus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	futūrus esse		itūrus esse	factum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. Act.</i>		potēns	iēns (<i>Gen.</i> euntis)	
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	futūrus		itūrus	
<i>Perf. Pass.</i>				factus
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>				faciendus

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	eundi
-------------	-------

GERUNDIVE

eundum	faciendus, -a, -um
--------	--------------------

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	itum
<i>Abl.</i>	itū

45. CONJUGATION OF *volō, nōlō, mālō*

PRINCIPAL PARTS	{	<i>volō, velle, volui, be willing</i>
		<i>nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling</i>
		<i>mālō, mälle, mālui, prefer</i>

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>volō</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>mālō</i>
	<i>vīs</i>	<i>nōn vīs</i>	<i>māvīs</i>
	<i>vult</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>māvult</i>
	<i>volumus</i>	<i>nolumus</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
	<i>vultis</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>
	<i>volunt</i>	<i>nolunt</i>	<i>mālunt</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>volēbam</i>	<i>nolēbam</i>	<i>mālēbam</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>volam</i>	<i>nōlam</i>	<i>mālam</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>volui</i>	<i>nōlui</i>	<i>mālui</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>volueram</i>	<i>nolueram</i>	<i>mālueram</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>voluerō</i>	<i>noluerō</i>	<i>māluerō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>velim</i>	<i>nolim</i>	<i>mālim</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>vellem</i>	<i>nollem</i>	<i>mālem</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>voluerim</i>	<i>noluerim</i>	<i>māluerim</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>voluissē</i>	<i>noluissem</i>	<i>māluissem</i>

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>nōlī</i>	<i>nōlite</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>nōlitō</i>	<i>nōlitōte</i>
	<i>nōlitō</i>	<i>nōluntō</i>

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>velle</i>	<i>nōlle</i>	<i>mälle</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>voluisse</i>	<i>noluisse</i>	<i>māluisse</i>

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>volēns</i>	<i>nolēns</i>
--------------	---------------	---------------

46. CONJUGATION OF *ferō, bear*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō ferre tulī lātum*

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferō</i>	<i>feram</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferar</i>
	<i>fers</i>	<i>ferās</i>	<i>ferris, -re</i>	<i>ferāris, -re</i>
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferat</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>ferātur</i>
	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>ferāmus</i>	<i>ferimur</i>	<i>ferāmur</i>
	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferātis</i>	<i>feriminī</i>	<i>ferāminī</i>
	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>ferant</i>	<i>feruntur</i>	<i>ferantur</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferrem</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>	<i>ferrer</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>feram</i>		<i>ferar</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>tulī</i>	<i>tulerim</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>tuleram</i>	<i>tulisse</i>	<i>lātus eram</i>	<i>lātus essem</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>tulerō</i>		<i>lātus erō</i>	

IMPERATIVE				
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fer</i>	<i>ferite</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>feriminī</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fertō</i>	<i>fertōte</i>	<i>fertor</i>	
	<i>fertō</i>	<i>feruntō</i>	<i>fertor</i>	<i>feruntor</i>

INFINITIVE				
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferre</i>		<i>ferī</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>tulisse</i>		<i>lātus esse</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>lāturus esse</i>		<i>lātum iri</i>	

PARTICIPLE				
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferēns</i>		<i>Perf.</i>	<i>lātus</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>lāturus</i>		<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ferendus</i>

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ferendī</i>		<i>ferendus</i>

SUPINE
Acc. *lātum*
Abl. *lātū*

47. DEFECTIVE VERBS

CONJUGATION OF *memini, ōdī, coepi*

PRINCIPAL PARTS	{	<i>memini, meminisse, —, I remember</i>
		<i>ōdī, ōdisse, —, I hate</i>
		<i>coepi, coepisse, —, I have begun</i>

a. Note that **meminī** and **ōdī** are present in meaning. Their pluperfects and future perfects are imperfect and future in meaning.

b. For the present, imperfect, and future meanings of **coepl**, forms of **incipiō** are used.

c. With a passive infinitive, **coeptus sum** is used in place of **coepl**.

INDICATIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminī	ōdī	coepl
<i>Pluperf.</i>	memineram	ōderam	coeperam
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	meminerō	ōderō	coeperō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminerim	ōderim	coeperim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	meminissem	ōdissem	coepissem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Sing.</i>	mementō
<i>Plur.</i>	mementōte

INFINITIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminisse	ōdisse	coepisse
<i>Fut.</i>		ōsūrus esse	coeptūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Perf.</i>	ōsus	coeptus
<i>Fut.</i>	ōsūrus	coeptūrus

48.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **oportet**, **oportēre**, **oportuit**, *it is right, it is proper*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INFINITIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	oportet	oporteat	oportēre
<i>Imperf.</i>	oportēbat	oportēret	
<i>Fut.</i>	oportēbit		
<i>Perf.</i>	oportuit	oportuerit	oportuisse
<i>Pluperf.</i>	oportuerat	oportuisset	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	oportuerit		

SYNTAX

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS

49. RULE. An appositive or a predicate noun agrees in case with the word it modifies; as, *persuādet Casticō Sēquanō, he persuades Casticus the Sequanian* (I, 52); *quī Celtae appellantur, who are called Celts* (I, 2).

CASES

NOMINATIVE

Nominative as Subject

50. RULE. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case; as, *Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, Gaul as a whole is divided in three parts* (I, 1).

GENITIVE

Genitive with Nouns

51. GENERAL RULE. A noun modifying another noun and not meaning the same thing may be put in the genitive case.

Possessive Genitive

52. RULE. The genitive may be used to denote that to which something belongs; as, *finibus Belgārum, by the territory of the Belgians* (I, 17); *huius potentiae causā, for the sake of this power* (I, 332).

a. This genitive may be used predicatively; as, *iūdicium est imperātōris, the decision is the general's* (I, 849).

Subjective Genitive

53. RULE. The subjective genitive denotes the person or thing that does something or has a feeling; as, *occāsus sōlis, the setting of the sun* (I, 24).

Objective Genitive

54. RULE. The objective genitive denotes the object of an action or feeling; as, *rēgnī cupiditās, the desire (of) for royal power* (I, 27).

Genitive of the Whole

55. RULE. The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is mentioned. This genitive may depend on any noun, pronoun, adjective, or adverb which suggests part of the whole; as, *hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae*, *the Belgians are the bravest of all these* (I, 6); *eōrum ūna pars*, *one part of these* (I, 15); *satis causae*, *sufficient (of) reason* (I, 354).

a. Instead of this genitive, *dē* or *ex* with the ablative is generally used with cardinal numerals and with *quīdam*, and may be used with *paucī* and with superlative adjectives; as, *ūnus ē filiis captus est*, *one of his sons was captured* (I, 492); *paucī dē nostris*, *a few of our men* (I, 272); *proximī ex Belgis*, *the nearest of the Belgians* (II, 30).

Genitive of Material

56. RULE. The genitive may express the material of which a thing consists; as, *multitudinem hominum*, *a large number of men* (I, 76).

Descriptive Genitive

57. RULE. The genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing; as, *trium mēsium molita cibāria*, *meal for three months* (I, 87); *hominēs magnae virtūtis*, *men of great bravery* (II, 260).

a. When the adjective of this construction is a numeral, the genitive is called a genitive of measure.

b. This genitive may be used predicatively; as, *flūminis erat altitūdō pedum trium*, *the river's depth was three feet* (II, 307).

c. With *sum* and verbs of rating, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive; as, *tantī eius grātiā esse ostendit*, *he showed that his good will was of such (value)* (I, 384).

Genitive with Adjectives

58. RULE. The genitive may be used with some adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, skill, fullness and their opposites; as, *bellandī cupidus*, *fond of warring* (I, 38).

Genitive with Verbs

59. RULE. The genitive may be used with verbs of remembering, forgetting, and reminding; as, *reminiscerētur veteris incommodī*, *he should bear in mind the old disaster* (I, 231).

60. RULE. The impersonal verb *interest* governs a genitive case; as, *rei publicae interest, it concerns the state* (II, 81).

61. RULE. The impersonal verbs *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet* and *taedet* take the accusative of the person affected and the genitive of the cause of the feeling; as, *quorum eōs paenitet, of which (it repents them) they repent* (IV, 5, 3).

62. RULE. The genitive may be used with *potior* (but see § 86); as, *tōtius Galliae potiri, to obtain control of all Gaul* (I, 30).

DATIVE

Dative of Indirect Object

63. RULE. The indirect object denotes the person or thing that is indirectly affected by the action of the verb.

a. Many transitive verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object; as, *eī filiam dat, he gives him his daughter* (I, 59).

Dative with Special Verbs

64. Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin and therefore must take an indirect object instead of a direct object, as shown by the following:—

RULE. The dative is used with many verbs meaning *benefit* or *injure*, *command* or *obey*, *please* or *displease*, *serve* or *resist*, *trust* or *distrust*; also *believe*, *envy*, *favor*, *pardon*, *persuade*, *spare*, *threaten* and the like; as, *civitātī persuāsīt, he persuaded the state* (I, 28).

a. The above verbs, when used passively, must be impersonal; as, *mihi persuādētur, (it is persuaded to me) I am persuaded* (I, 792).

b. The dative is also used with phrases that have a meaning equivalent to the above; as, *nōn erunt dictō audientēs militēs, the soldiers will not (be listening to) heed the command* (I, 784).

c. Some of the (generally intransitive) verbs may take a direct object along with the indirect; as, *id iīs persuāsīt, he persuaded (this to them) them of this* (I, 30).

d. Note that *dēlectō, delight, iubeō, command, iuvō, please, vetō, forbid*, are transitive and therefore are exceptions to the rule; as, *eōs frūmentō iuvant, they help them with grain* (I, 499).

Dative with Compound Verbs

65. Some verbs when compounded with certain prepositions take on a meaning which requires a dative. When one of these prepositions is compounded with a transitive verb, there may be both a dative and an accusative.

RULE. The dative of the indirect object is used with some verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, and sometimes with *circum*; as, *omnibus praestant, they surpass all* (I, 29); *finitimis bellum inferre possunt, they are able to make war on the neighbors* (I, 37).

a. But note that *aggredior*, *conveniō*, *incendō*, *interclūdō*, *interficiō*, *oppugnō* and many others do not govern the dative; as, *qui cum eum convēnissent, and when they had met him* (I, 503).

Dative of Reference

66. RULE. The dative may denote the person with reference to whom a statement is true; as, *molita cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent, they order each one to carry meal for himself* (I, 87).

a. This dative is sometimes equivalent in meaning to a possessive genitive; as, *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt, they threw themselves at Caesar's feet* (I, 565).

b. This dative, when used with verbs of *taking away*, is best translated with *from* and may be called a *dative of separation*; as, *Aeduīs libertātem ēripient, they will take away liberty from the Aeduans* (I, 310).

Dative of Agent

67. RULE. The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation to denote the person who has the thing to do; as, *nōn exspectandum (esse) sibi statuit, he decided that (it must not be waited by him) he must not wait* (I, 195).

Dative of Possessor

68. RULE. The dative is used with forms of *sum* to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject; as, *dēmōnstrant sibi nihil esse, they prove that (nothing is to them) they have nothing* (I, 193).

a. This construction emphasizes the thing possessed, while the genitive of possession (§ 52) emphasizes the person possessing.

Dative of Purpose (or Service)

69. RULE. The dative may be used to express the purpose for which an action is done or which a thing serves; as, *locum domiciliō dēligunt, they choose a place for an abode* (I, 553).

a. This dative is often used with a dative of reference (§ 66) denoting the person affected; as, *quem auxiliō Caesarī Aedui miserant, whom the Aeduians had sent as an aid to Caesar* (I, 346).

b. This dative, when used with forms of *sum*, is best translated as a predicate noun or with the word *as*; as, *Galliā impedimentō erat, it was a hindrance to the Gauls* (I, 454).

Dative with Adjectives

70. RULE. The dative may be used with adjectives meaning *near*; also *fit, friendly, pleasing, similar*, and the like, with their opposites; as, *proximī sunt Germāniā, they are nearest to the Germans* (I, 10).

a. *Propior* and *proximus*, and the adverbs *propius* and *proximē*, may govern the accusative like prepositions; as, *proximi Rhēnum, nearest the Rhine* (I, 1112).

ACCUSATIVE**Accusative of Direct Object**

71. RULE. The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative case; as, *quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, of which the Belgians inhabit one* (I, 1).

Cognate Accusative

72. RULE. Some verbs may take an accusative of a noun or pronoun of related meaning; as, *cum tridui viam prōcessisset, when he had advanced a three days' march* (I, 728).

Two Accusatives with Verbs

73. a. Two Accusatives with Compound Verbs.

RULE. 1. Some intransitive verbs, when compounded with *circum* and *trāns*, become transitive and take an accusative of the direct object; as, *ea pars nōdum flūmen trānsierat, this section had not yet crossed the river* (I, 205).

RULE. 2. Some transitive verbs, when so compounded, may take two accusatives, one the object of the verb and one the object of the

preposition; as, *trēs partēs cōpiārum id flūmen trādūxērunt*, *they have led three fourths of the forces across this river* (I, 202).

b. Two Accusatives, one of the Person, one of the Thing.

RULE. Verbs of *asking, demanding, and teaching* may take two accusatives, one of the person, one of the thing; as, *Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre*, *he kept demanding grain of the Aeduans* (I, 282).

1. Verbs of *asking and demanding* frequently express the person by the ablative with a preposition (so always *petō* and *quaerō*); as, *quaerit ex sōlō ea*, *he asks these questions from him alone* (I, 320).

c. Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing.

RULE. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like* may take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing; as, *eum vergobretum appellat Aedui*, *the Aeduans call this man "vergobret"* (I, 295).

1. In the passive, the direct object becomes the subject and the predicate accusative becomes a predicate nominative; as, *is vergobretus appellātur ab Aeduīs*, *this man is called "vergobret" by the Aeduans*.

Accusative of Extent

74. RULE. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative without a preposition; as, *rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat*, *he had held the royal power many years* (I, 53).

1. Adverbs are sometimes used to denote extent in amount; as, *plūrimum possunt*, *they are the most powerful* (I, 62); *minimum potest*, *he has very little power* (I, 374).

Accusative of Limit of Motion or Place to Which

75. RULE. Limit of motion is expressed by the accusative with *ad*, *in*, or *sub*; as, *ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam cōēgit*, *he brought to the trial all his retinue* (I, 71).

1. But names of towns and the word *domus* omit the preposition; as, *Rōmam vēnit*, *he came to Rome* (I, 591).

a. *Ad* is sometimes used with names of towns with the meaning of *towards* or *near*; as, *ad Genavam pervenit*, *he arrives near Geneva* (I, 114).

Subject Accusative

76. RULE. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative case; as, *quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est*, *which it has been said the Gauls occupy* (I, 15).

VOCATIVE

Nominative of Address

77. RULE. The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative case; as, *dēsilitē, commilitōnēs, jump down, comrades* (IV, 25, 6).

ABLATIVE

Ablative of Place from Which

78. RULE. Place from which is expressed by the ablative, usually with *ab, dē, or ex*; as, *ut dē finibus suis exirent, that they go out from their territory* (I, 28).

1. But names of towns and the word *domus* omit the preposition; as, *domō exire possunt, they are able to go out from home* (I, 94).

a. *Ab* is sometimes used with names of towns with the meaning of *from near, from the vicinity of*; as, *ab Ocelō pervenit, he comes from near Ocelum* (I, 175).

Ablative of Separation

79. RULE. Separation may be expressed by the ablative with or without *ab, dē, or ex*.

a. This construction is used with both verbs and adjectives of *depriving, excluding, freeing, lacking, and the like*; as, *Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna dīvidit, the Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians* (I, 4); *cum suis finibus eōs prohibent, when they keep them away from their own territory* (I, 14); *id oppidum vacuum ab dēfensōribus esse audiēbat, he heard that this town was stripped of defenders* (II, 209).

Ablative of Point of View

80. RULE. The ablative with *ab* or *ex* may be used to denote the position from which something is done or is true; as, *continentur unā ex parte, they are hemmed in on one side* (I, 31).

Ablative of Source or Origin

81. RULE. Source or origin is expressed by the ablative with or without *ab, dē, or ex*; as, *quaerit ex sōlō ea, he asks these questions from him alone* (I, 320).

1. Here also may be found the ablatives that denote *parentage* and *material*; as, *ortī ā Germānīs*, *sprung from the Germans* (II, 46); *nāvēs factae ex rōbre*, *ships made out of oak* (III, 13, 3).

Ablative of Agent

82. RULE. Agency with a passive verb is usually expressed by the ablative with *ab*; as, *ā senātū amicus appellātus erat*, *he had been called friend by the senate* (I, 54).

For the dative of agent see § 67.

Ablative of Cause

83. RULE. Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition; as, *grātiā plūrimum poterat*, *he was very powerful because of his popularity* (I, 152).

1. Cause is frequently expressed by *ob* or *propter* with the accusative; as, *ob eam rem incitāta*, *stirred up on account of this matter* (I, 75).

Ablative of Comparison

84. RULE. The ablative without a preposition may be used after comparatives in place of *quam* with the nominative or accusative; as, *nōn amplius quīnis milibus passuum*, *not more than five miles* (I, 280).

1. When *quam* is used the two nouns compared are in the same case; as, *nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam imperātor meritus est*, *the army deserved no less praise than the general* (I, 800).

2. *Plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are often used for *plūs quam*, *minus quam*, etc; as, *flūmen nōn amplius milia passuum X abest*, *the river is not more than ten miles distant* (II, 266).

Ablative of Means

85. RULE. Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *ūna pars continētūr flūmine*, *one section is bounded by a river* (I, 17).

1. Here also may be found such expressions as: *proeliis contendere*, *to contend in battles* (I, 13); *insidiis nīti*, *to rely on ambushes* (I, 237); *frūmentum flūmine nāvibus subvehere*, *to bring grain up (by) the river in (by) ships* (I, 287); *castris sē tenēre*, *to keep in camp* (I, 813).

Ablative with Deponent Verbs

86. RULE. The ablative is used with *ūtōr*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor* and their compounds; as, *imperio potiri*, *to get control of the government* (I, 30); *eodem ūsi cōsiliō*, *adopting the same plan* (I, 89).

1. But *potior* may be used with the genitive. See § 62.

Ablative with *opus* and *usus*

87. RULE. *Opus est* and *usus est*, meaning *there is need*, may take the ablative; as, *sī quō subsidio opus esset*, *if there should be need of any help* (II, 143).

Ablative of Price

88. RULE. With verbs of *buying* and *selling*, price is denoted by the ablative without a preposition; as, *parvō pretiō redēpta*, *bought at a low price* (I, 326).

Ablative of Degree of Difference

89. RULE. The ablative without a preposition is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the degree of difference; as, *multō facilius*, (*easier by much*) *much easier* (I, 99); *paucis ante diēbus*, (*before by a few days*) *a few days before* (I, 344).

Ablative of Accompaniment

90. RULE. Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with *cum*; as, *cum proximis civitatibus pacem cōfirmāre*, *to establish peace with the nearest states* (I, 47).

1. In military language, the *cum* may be omitted if the noun is modified by a word that is not a numeral; as, *Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis*, *Caesar followed with all his troops* (II, 309).

Ablative of Manner

91. RULE. Manner is expressed by the ablative with *cum* or a modifier, rarely with both; as, *in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit*, *he hurried into Italy with forced marches* (I, 169).

1. The preposition and modifier are regularly omitted with *iniuriā* and *iniussū*; as, *iniussū suō*, *without his order* (I, 352).

2. *Sine* is sometimes used; as, *sine maleficio iter facere*, *to make the trip without mischief* (I, 120).

Ablative of Attendant Circumstance

92. RULE. The ablative without a preposition is used to express the attendant circumstances of an act or condition; as, *imperio populi Rōmāni*, *under the control of the Roman people* (I, 341).

Ablative of Accordance

93. RULE. The ablative without a preposition is used to express that in accordance with which a thing is done; as, *mōribus suis*, *in accordance with their customs* (I, 68).

Ablative of Description

94. RULE. The ablative with a modifier may be used to describe a person or thing; as, *hominēs inimicō animō*, *men of unfriendly disposition* (I, 126).

1. This construction may be used predicatively; as, *nōndum bonō animō vidēbantur*, *they did not yet seem of friendly disposition* (I, 105).

Compare the Descriptive Genitive, § 57.

Ablative of Specification

95. RULE. The ablative without a preposition may be used to denote that in respect to which a statement is true; as, *linguā differunt*, *they differ in language* (I, 3).

Ablative Absolute

96. RULE. A noun and a participle may be used in the ablative independently as a substitute for a clause; as, *rēgnō occupātō*, *after the royal power had been seized* (I, 65).

1. Instead of a participle, a second noun or an adjective may be used. Here the lacking present participle of *sum* is to be supplied and the second noun or the adjective is in a predicate relation; as, *Messālā et Pisōne cōsulibus*, *when Messala and Piso were consuls* (I, 26).

Ablative of Time When or Within Which

97. RULE. The ablative without a preposition is used to express time when or within which; as, *eō tempore*, *at that time* (I, 57); *patrum nostrōrum memoriā*, *within the memory of our fathers* (I, 211).

1. The ablative is used rarely to denote duration of time; as, *eā*

tōtā nocte continenter iērunť, they advanced continuously during that entire night (I, 493).

Ablative of Place in Which

98. RULE. Place in which is expressed by the ablative with **in** or **sub**; as, *in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt, they carry on war in their territory* (I, 14).

1. But names of towns and the word **domus** omit the preposition and use the locative if there is one; as, *domī, at home* (I, 331).

2. No preposition is used with ablatives of **locus** and **pars**, when modified by an adjective; or with any noun when modified by **tōtus**; as, *Rhodanus nōnnūllis locis trānsitur, the Rhone is crossed in several places* (I, 101); *tōtis castris, throughout the entire camp* (I, 770).

LOCATIVE

99. The locative case is confined to names of towns and the word **domus**. In the singular of the first and second declensions, the form is identical with the genitive, elsewhere with the ablative. The locative of **domus** is **domī**. Examples: *Rōmae, at Rome; Athēnis, at Athens; Corinthī, at Corinth; Delphīs, at Delphi; Carthāgine, at Carthage; Trallibus, at Tralles*.

PREPOSITIONS

With the Ablative

100. The following prepositions govern the ablative only; **ā, ab, cum, dē, ē, ex, prae, prō, sine**.

1. Before a word beginning with **h** or a vowel, **ab** and **ex** are used; elsewhere **ā** and **ē** are generally found.

2. **Cum** is always used as an enclitic with personal and reflexive pronouns and generally with the relative and interrogative.

With the Accusative and Ablative

101. *a.* The prepositions **in** and **sub** govern either the accusative or the ablative. With the accusative they denote *place to which*, with the ablative *place in which*.

With the Accusative

b. All other prepositions take the accusative only.

ADJECTIVES

102. An adjective is called predicate when it is connected with its noun by a form of **sum** or verb of similar meaning; as, **Gallia est divisa**, *Gaul is divided* (I, 1); an adjective is called attributive when there is no such connecting verb; as, **partēs trēs**, *three parts* (I, 1).

Agreement of Adjectives

103. RULE. Adjectives, participles, and adjective pronouns agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case; for examples see above.

1. When an attributive adjective modifies nouns of different gender or number, it generally agrees with the nearest; as, **vir et cōsiliū magnī et virtūtis**, *a man both of great wisdom and of great courage* (III, 5, 2).

Adjectives used as Nouns

104. Adjectives are frequently used as nouns. The meaning is shown by the context or by some word easily understood; as, **mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis**, *they send the best known (men) of the state* (I, 118); **nostrōs lacessere coepērunt**, *they began to harass our (soldiers)* (I, 275).

Adjectives used as Denoting a Part

105. Some adjectives, mostly superlatives, are used to denote a part. Such are: **extrēmus**, **īfimus** (īmus), **medius**, **prīmus**, **reliquus**, **summus**; as, **summus mōns**, *the highest part of the mountain* (I, 405); **in colle mediō**, *halfway up the hill* (I, 438).

Meanings of Comparatives and Superlatives

106. Besides the usual English forms,

1. Comparatives may mean *too*, *quite*, *rather*; as, **cupidius insecūti**, *having followed too eagerly* (I, 270).

2. Superlatives may mean *very* or, when **quam** is used, the superlative idea is made as strong as possible; as, **flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō**, *by the very wide river Rhine* (I, 32); **quam maximum numerum**, *the greatest number possible* (I, 45).

4. *Quidam*, *certain*, is the most definite of the indefinites; as, *habent quāsdam rēs*, *they have certain matters* (I, 558).

5. *Quisquam*, *any one*, and the adjective *ūllus*, *any*, occur generally in sentences which are negative or which imply a negative; as, *nec quisquam plūs quam ego dolōris capit*, *nor does any one suffer more pain than I* (I, 372).

6. *Quisque*, *each one*, is sometimes used idiomatically with a superlative; as, *nōbilissimī cuiusque liberī*, *the children of (each most famous man) all the most famous men* (I, 607).

Pronominal Adjectives

113. *Alius*, *another*, and *alter*, *the other (of two)* are frequently used as correlatives; as, *alius aliā causā illātā*, *one offering one excuse and another another* (I, 759); *legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resistēbant*, *some legions in one direction, others in another were resisting the enemy* (II, 367); *alterī . . . alterī*, *the one body of men . . . the other* (I, 478).

VERBS

Agreement of Verb with Subject

114. RULE. A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

1. A verb may agree with the sense of the subject instead of with the form; as, *ut (civitās) exirent*, *that the state (citizens) go forth* (I, 28).

2. A compound subject generally takes a plural verb but may take a singular verb if the subjects are considered as one; as, *Gallōs ā Belgis Matrōna et Sēquana dividit*, *the Marne and Seine (making one boundary) separates the Gauls from the Belgians* (I, 4); or the verb may agree with the nearer; as, *filiā atque ūnus ē filiis captus est*, *his daughter and one of his sons was captured* (I, 492).

3. In the compound tenses of a verb, the participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case; as, *pater eius amicus appellātus erat*, *his father had been called friend* (I, 53).

a. A clause or phrase is neuter; as, *eam partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est*, *(that the Gauls occupy this part has been said) it has been said that the Gauls occupy this part* (I, 15).

Verbs used Impersonally

115. Verbs may be used impersonally with or without a clause or phrase as subject; as, *pugnātum est, they fought* (I, 476); see also § 64, *a*.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

Present Tense

116. The present tense is used

1. Of a general truth; as, *omnēs hominēs libertāti student, all men are anxious for liberty* (III, 10, 3);

2. Of an action still going on in the present; as, *dīvidit, he divides* (simple present), *he is dividing* (progressive present), *he does divide* (emphatic present).

a. The historical present is much used in Latin to enliven the narrative, and may be translated as a past; as, *in eō itinere persuādet Casticō, on this trip he persuaded Casticus* (I, 52).

Imperfect Tense

117. The imperfect tense may denote an action

1. As habitual in the past; as, *pugnābant, they used to fight, or they would fight*;

2. As done or going on in the past; as, *pugnābant, they fought* (simple past), *they were fighting* (progressive past), *they did fight* (emphatic past).

Future Tense

118. The future tense corresponds to the English future but the active periphrastic (§ 166, 2, *a*) is often used to describe an action that is future to some form of *sum*; as, *quod portātūri erant, what they were going to carry* (I, 85).

Perfect Tense

119. The perfect tense has two uses:—

1. Equivalent to the English past; as, *nōbiliſſimus fuit Orgetorix, Orgetorix was the best known* (I, 25);

2. Equivalent to the English present perfect; as, *suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, we have shown above* (II, 1).

a. A few verbs have perfects that are generally translated as pres-

ents; as, *nōvī*, *cōgnōvī* (literally, *I have found out*), *I know*; and *cōnsuēvī* (literally, *I have become accustomed*), *I am accustomed*. These verbs have corresponding changes in the pluperfect and future perfect.

b. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of *meminī*, *I remember*, and *ōdī*, *I hate*, have the meanings of the present, imperfect, and future, respectively.

Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses

120. The pluperfect and the future perfect tenses correspond to the past perfect and the future perfect of English.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

121. The present and imperfect subjunctive represent incomplete action, and the perfect and pluperfect represent complete action.

1. In independent clauses, subjunctive tenses have special uses.

2. Tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses represent time which is not absolute but which is *relative* to the tense of the main verb. For the purposes of this relation, indicative and subjunctive tenses are divided into two classes, as follows:—

a. Primary Tenses: *Indicative*, present, future, perfect (English present perfect), future perfect; *Subjunctive*, present, perfect.

b. Secondary Tenses: *Indicative*, imperfect, perfect (English past), pluperfect; *Subjunctive*, imperfect, pluperfect.

Sequence of Tenses

122. RULE. In dependent subjunctive clauses, primaries follow primaries and secondaries follow secondaries; as,—

Primaries:

1. <i>rogō</i>	}	{	<i>quid faciās.*</i>
2. <i>rogābō</i>			
3. <i>rogāvī</i>			
4. <i>rogāverō</i>			

1. <i>I ask</i>	}	{	<i>what you are doing or what you will do.*</i>
2. <i>I shall ask</i>			
3. <i>I have asked</i>			
4. <i>I shall have asked</i>			

what you did or have done.

Secondaries :

5. rogābam	}	{	quid facerēs.*
6. rogāvī			
7. rogāveram			
5. I asked or was asking	}	{	what you were doing or would do.
6. I asked			
7. I had asked			

Exceptions :

- The historical present may be considered either primary or secondary.
- The perfect subjunctive is sometimes considered secondary. This is especially true in result clauses.
- For clearness or vividness, Latin often changes the sequence.

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

Purpose

123. RULE. Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive introduced by *ut*, *nē*, *quō*, or a relative.

1. *Ut* (*utī*) is commonly the introductory word for affirmative purpose ; as, *sēmentēs fēcērunt ut cōpia frūmenti suppeteret*, they so arranged that there might be on hand a supply of food (I, 46).

2. *Nē* is the regular introductory word for negative purpose ; as, *omnem aciem suam circumdederunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerent*, they surrounded their entire line so that there might not be left any hope of flight (I, 1063).

3. *Quō* is used as the introductory word if there is a comparative purpose clause ; as, *castella commūnit quō facilius prohibēre posset*, he built redoubts that he might be able the more easily to keep (the enemy) back (I, 137).

4. A relative pronoun is used as the introductory word if there is a convenient antecedent in the main clause ; as, *diem dicunt, quā (ut eā diē) omnēs conveniant*, they name a day on which (day) all are to assemble (I, 108).

* Futurity in the subjunctive is often expressed by the active periphrastic conjugation (§ 43, 1). Thus *quid factūrus sis* may be used above to express what you will do. *quid factūrus es* to express what you would do.

Result

124. RULE. Result is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by *ut* or *ut nōn*; as, *mōns impendēbat, ut perpauci prohibēre possent, a mountain overhung so that very few were able to keep (them) back* (I, 97).

Characteristic

125. RULE. A relative subjunctive clause may be used to characterize an antecedent which is otherwise undefined.

a. Such clauses are common after expressions that denote existence or non-existence; as, *erant duo itinera quibus itineribus exire possent, there were two roads by which (roads) they could go forth* (I, 94).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES**Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, etc.**

126. RULE. Temporal clauses with *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul ac*, *cum primum* are used with the indicative, generally the perfect; as, *postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar subdūxit, after he had noticed this, Caesar led up his troops* (I, 436).

Temporal Clauses with *dum*, *donec*, and *quoad*

127. a. RULE. Temporal clauses introduced by *dum* (*at a certain point of time, while*) take the present indicative; as, *dum ea conquiruntur, ēgressi sunt, while these were being sought for, they started out* (I, 508).

b. RULE. Temporal clauses introduced by *dum*, *donec*, or *quoad* (*as long as*) take the indicative of any tense; as, *quoad potuit, restitit, he resisted as long as he could* (IV, 12, 5).

c. RULE. Temporal clauses introduced by *dum*, *donec*, or *quoad* (*until*) take the indicative when the subordinate verb denotes an act that is unforeseen; otherwise the subjunctive is used; as, *expectavit dum milites convēnerunt, he waited until the soldiers collected; ut spatium intercēdere posset dum milites convenirent, that a space of time might intervene until the soldiers should collect* (I, 128).

Temporal Clauses with *priusquam* and *antequam*

128. RULE. Temporal clauses with *priusquam* or *antequam* take the indicative when the subordinate verb denotes an act that is unfore-

seen; otherwise the subjunctive is used; as, *nec prius fugere dēstiterunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt*, and they did not cease to flee before they came to the river Rhine (I, 1087); *priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum vocārī iubet*, before he should try (to do) anything, he ordered Diviciacus to be summoned (I, 361).

Temporal Clauses with *cum*

129. RULE. Temporal clauses introduced by *cum* take the indicative if simply the *time* or the *date* of the action is denoted and take the subjunctive if the *circumstances* are denoted.

a. The subjunctive is generally used with the imperfect and pluperfect tenses and the indicative with the other tenses; as, *contendunt cum suis finibus eōs prohibent*, they fight when they keep them out of their territory (I, 13); *cum civitās iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est*, when the state was trying to assert its rights, Orgetorix died (I, 75).

CAUSAL CLAUSES

Causal Clauses with *quod*

130. RULE. Causal clauses introduced by *quod* take the indicative unless the reason is quoted; as, *fortissimi sunt Belgae propterea quod longissimē absunt*, the bravest are the Belgians because they are the farthest away (I, 6); *inducti sunt quod suam fugam occultārī posse estimarent*, they were influenced because (according to some) they ought their flight could be hidden (I, 511).

Causal Clauses with *quia* or *quoniam*

131. RULE. Causal clauses with *quia* or *quoniam* take the indicative; as, *quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse dētur*, since we have arrived at this point, it seems not out of place (I, 11, 1).

Causal Clauses with *cum*

132. RULE. Causal clauses introduced by *cum* take the subjunctive; as, *his cum persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt*, since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors (I, 149).

Note that: *a.* Nothing is implied as to the truth or the falsity of the above. These are sometimes called *simple conditions*;

b. In 3 above the English present is used where the Latin requires the future or the future perfect. This is sometimes called a *future more vivid condition*.

138. RULE. Indicative conditions use tenses according to sense.

Subjunctive Conditions

139. 1. *Present*: *si pugnāret, superāret, if he were fighting, he would be conquering.*

2. *Past*: *si pugnāvisset, superāvisset, if he had fought, he would have conquered.*

3. *Future*: *si pugnet, superet, if he should fight, he would conquer.*

Note that: *a.* In 1 and 2 above the conditions and conclusions are *contrary to fact* and that the imperfect denotes present time and the *pluperfect* denotes past time;

b. In 3, the condition and conclusion are doubtfully *stated* and that the present tense denotes future time. This is sometimes called a *future less vivid condition*.

140. *a.* RULE. Contrary to fact conditions use the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses to denote present time and the pluperfect subjunctive to denote past time;

1. With verbs or expressions meaning *could* or *ought*, a past tense of the indicative may be used in the conclusion.

b. RULE. Subjunctive conditions use the present tense in both clauses to denote future time.

Mixed Conditions

141. In Latin, as in English, the condition may be of one form and the conclusion of another; as, *si hoc fecit, bene est, if he has done this, it is well.*

Conditional Clauses of Comparison

142. RULE. Conditional clauses of comparison introduced by *ac si, ut si, quasi, quam si, tamquam si, velut si*, take the subjunctive, applying the rule for sequence; as, *absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si cōram adsit, horrent, they shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus absent, as if he were present in person* (I, 634).

RELATIVE CLAUSES

143. RULE. Relative clauses regularly have their verbs in the indicative, but they may become subjunctive if they in turn depend on another subjunctive ; as, *utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant, that they should find out the things that were being done among them* (II, 22).

a. But for subjunctive relative clauses see : § 123, 4, purpose ; § 125, characteristic ; § 133, causal ; § 135, concessive.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

144. Substantive clauses are those which are used like nouns, as the subjects or objects of verbs, as appositives, etc.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose

145. RULE. Verbs that mean *ask, command, decide, demand, permit, persuade, urge*, take object clauses with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive ; as, *civitātī persuāsīt ut exīrent, he persuaded the state (citizens) to go forth* (I, 28).

a. But *iubeō, order, cupiō, desire, vetō, forbid*, take the infinitive with subject accusative.

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Fearing

146. RULE. Verbs of fearing take object clauses with *nē* (affirmative) or *ut* (negative) and the subjunctive ; as, *nē eius supplicio Diviciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur, he feared lest by punishing him he would hurt the feelings of Diviciacus* (I, 359) ; *rem frumentāriam, ut supportārī posset, sē timēre dicēbant, they said they were afraid that the grain could not be brought up* (I, 781).

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Hindering, etc.

147. RULE. Verbs of *hindering, preventing, refusing*, take object clauses with *nē, quōminus* or *quīn* (after negatives) and the subjunctive ; as, *nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit, he saved himself from pleading his case* (I, 75).

a. But *prohibeō* takes the infinitive.

Substantive Clauses of Result

148. RULE. Substantive clauses of result may be used as object clauses with verbs of *accomplishing*, as subjects of certain impersonal verbs, or as appositives of nouns or pronouns; they take *ut* or *ut nōn* and the subjunctive; as, *quae rēs commeātūs ut ad eum supportārī possent efficiēbat*, and this maneuver brought it to pass that supplies could be brought to him (II, 91); *his rēbus fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur*, because of these things it happened that they wandered less widely (I, 36); *iūs est bellī ut quī vicērunt iīs quōs vicērunt imperent*, it is the law of war that those who have conquered control those whom they have conquered (I, 695).

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Doubting

149. RULE. Substantive clauses with *quīn* are used with negative expressions of doubt or uncertainty; as, *nōn est dubium quīn Helvētīi plūrimū possint*, there is no doubt that the Helvetians are the most powerful (I, 62).

a. When *dubitō* means *hesitate* it takes a complementary infinitive.

Substantive Clauses with *quod*

150. RULE. Substantive clauses with *quod* take the indicative.

a. *Quod* here may be translated *that, the fact that, as to the fact, so far as*; as, *quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendī causā faciō*, as to the fact that I am bringing a vast number of Germans over into Gaul, I am doing this for the purpose of strengthening myself (I, 928).

Indirect Questions

151. RULE. Substantive clauses introduced by a question word (sometimes by *sī*, *whether*) are indirect questions and take a subjunctive verb; as, *in utram partem (flūmen) fluat, iūdicārī nōn potest*, it cannot be decided in which direction (the river) flows (I, 200); *sī perrumpere possent cōnātī*, after trying (to see) whether they could break through (I, 145).

1. Double indirect questions are introduced by *utrum* or *-ne* in the first part and by *an* in the second. *Necne* means *or not*.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

152. Direct discourse quotes the exact words spoken or thought.

In English, indirect discourse changes the original words to conform to the verb upon which it depends; as, (Direct) *He said, "I am going"*; (Indirect) *He said that he was going*.

Moods in Indirect Discourse

In Latin, the changes in moods are made according to the following rules: —

153. RULE. All declarative main verbs become infinitives with subjects accusative in indirect discourse; as, (Direct) *Allobrogibus persuādēbimus, we shall persuade the Allobroges*; (Indirect) *Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs (esse) existimābant, they thought they would persuade the Allobroges (I, 104).*

154. RULE. All imperative main verbs become subjunctive in indirect discourse. The negative is *nē*; as, (Direct) *nōlī committere, don't allow*; (Indirect) (*dīxit*) *nē committeret, (he said) he should not allow (I, 238).*

155. RULE. All real interrogative main verbs become subjunctive in indirect discourse; as, (Direct) *quid verēmīnī? why are you afraid?* (Indirect) (*quaesivit*) *quid verērentur, (he asked) why they were afraid (I, 796).*

1. A statement put into question form for emphasis is called a *rhetorical question* and employs an infinitive (see § 153); as, (Direct) *num memoriā dēpōnere possum, I cannot forget, can I?* (Indirect) (*quaesivit*) *num (sē) memoriā dēpōnere posse? (he asked) could he forget? (I, 251).*

156. RULE. All subordinate clauses in indirect discourse have their verbs in the subjunctive; as, (Direct) *sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt Helvētīī, if the Roman people make peace with the Helvetians, the Helvetians will go into that section*; (Indirect) (*dīxit*) *sī . . . faceret, Helvētiōs . . . itūrōs esse, (he said) if the Roman people made, etc., the Helvetians would go, etc. (I, 227).*

1. Subordinate clauses which are not considered as a part of the quotation are in the indicative; as, *id, quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerimē cōnfecerant, illum unō diē fecisse intellēxerunt, they realized that he, in one day, had done that which they had done with the greatest difficulty in twenty days (I, 223).*

Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse

157. RULE. The time indicated by the infinitive is present, past, or future *relatively* to the verb on which it depends; as, (Direct) *angustōs finēs habēmus, we have narrow limits*; (Indirect) *angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, they thought they had narrow limits* (I, 40).

1. Verbs of *hoping* and *promising* take a future indirect discourse infinitive. *Posse* often has a future meaning; as, *tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant, they hope they will be able to get control of all Gaul* (I, 66).

2. Contrary to fact conditions in indirect discourse form the conclusion in the active by the use of a future participle with *fuisse*, and in the passive by using *futūrum fuisse* with *ut* and the imperfect subjunctive; as, *respondit sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse, he replied that if he himself needed anything from Caesar, he would have come to him* (I, 666); *dixit, sī Caesar vēnisset, futūrum fuisse ut vinceretur, he said that if Caesar had come, (it would have happened that he would be conquered) he would have been conquered*.

3. Verbs or expressions that mean *ability* or *obligation* may have a perfect infinitive in the conclusion; as, *respondit nōn fuisse difficile, he replied that it would not have been difficult* (I, 245).

Tenses of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse

158. The regular rule of sequence applies to the use of tenses in the subjunctives of indirect discourse, but the subordinate verb is secondary if either the main verb of *saying* or *thinking* or the infinitive is a past tense. However, a primary tense may be used after a secondary for the sake of vividness; as, *respondit, cum ea ita sint, sēsē pācem esse factūrum, he replied that, although these things were so, he would make peace* (I, 257).

1. The rule for sequence of tenses does not hold in the conditional part of contrary to fact conditions in indirect discourse. The imperfect or pluperfect does not become primary even though it depends on a primary; as, *dicit (or dixit), sī Caesar vēnisset, sē eum visūrum fuisse, he says (or said) that, if Caesar had come, he would have seen him*.

Subjunctive in Implied Indirect Discourse

159. RULE. The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to suggest that it is a quotation; as, **Caesar frumentum quod essent polliciti flāgitāre**, *Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he claimed) they had promised* (I, 282).

Subjunctive by Attraction

160. RULE. A verb subordinate to a subjunctive clause (or infinitive) and forming an essential part of that clause is often attracted from the indicative to the subjunctive; as, **utī commeātū quī supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet**, *that he might cut Caesar off from the supplies which were being brought up* (I, 1007).

Imperative Mood

161. Commands in the second person are expressed by the imperative; as, **dēsillite**, *jump down* (IV, 25, 3).

a. A negative command (prohibition) is expressed most commonly by the use of **nōlī** (plu. **nōlite**) with the present infinitive; as, **nōlī nōs dēspicere**, *don't despise us*.

Infinitive

162. The infinitive with or without a subject accusative may be used as the subject or the object of a verb.

The Infinitive without a Subject Accusative

163. 1. As Subject of a Verb.

The infinitive without a subject accusative may be used as subject of forms of **sum** and of impersonal verbs; as, **perfacile est imperiō potiri**, *it is very easy to get control* (I, 29); **ut id sibi facere liceat**, *that it may be allowed (to) them to do this* (I, 122).

2. As Object of a Verb (Complementary Infinitive).

The infinitive without a subject accusative may be used as the object of a verb to complete the meaning of that verb. Such verbs are: **audeō**, **coepī**, **cōnor**, **cōstituō**, **cōnsuēscō**, **cupiō**, **dēbeō**, **dēsistō**, **dubitō**, **incipiō** and **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**; as, **cōstituērunt ea comparāre**, *they decided to prepare the things* (I, 44).

a. The complementary infinitive is common with **possum**.

The Infinitive with Subject Accusative**164. 1. As Subject of a Verb.**

The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the subject of forms of *sum* and of impersonal verbs; as, *poenam sequi oportēbat*, (*punishment to follow was right*) *punishment must follow* (I, 70).

2. As Object of a Verb.

a. The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the object of verbs meaning *allow, command, forbid*, etc. Such verbs are: *cōgō, iubeō, patior, vetō*; as, *Orgetorigem causam dicere cōēgērunt*, *they compelled Orgetorix to plead his case* (I, 69).

b. This construction is used most commonly with verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing*, etc., and as such is known as *indirect discourse*. See §§ 152 ff.

The Infinitive with Subject Nominative (Historical Infinitive)

165. The infinitive when used as a substitute for the imperfect indicative in a main clause takes a subject nominative; as, *cotidīe Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre*, *Caesar kept demanding the grain every day* (I, 282).

Participles

166. RULE. The time indicated by the participle is present, past or future *relatively* to the verb on which it depends and, according to the context, may denote *cause, manner, concession, time, or circumstance*, like a clause; as, *haec flēns petiit*, *he asked these things (while he was) weeping* (I, 382); *is rēgni cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem fecit*, (*because he had been*) *influenced by a desire for royal power, he formed a conspiracy* (I, 26).

1. The present participle is not common in Latin. A clause with *dum* or *cum* is generally used instead; as, *dum morātur, subitō timor exercitum occupāvit*, *while he was delaying, suddenly fear seized the army* (I, 748, 754).

2. a. The future active participle is used with forms of *sum* to describe an action that is future to that form; as, *quod portātūrī erant*, *what they were going to carry* (I, 85). This combined form is known as the First Periphrastic Conjugation.

b. The future passive participle is used

(1) With *cūrō* and a few other verbs to denote *purpose*; as, *pontem faciendum cūrat*, *he had a bridge built* (I, 221);

(2) As a predicate adjective; as, *nōn ferendus, unendurable* (I, 661);

(3) With forms of *sum*, and then denotes *obligation* or *necessity*; as, *Caesar concēdendum (esse) nōn putābat*, *Caesar thought that permission ought not to be granted* (I, 123). This combined form is known as the Second Periphrastic Conjugation;

(4) For gerundive constructions, see § 168 and § 169.

3. The perfect participle agreeing with a direct object of *habēō* emphasizes the lasting effect of the action of the participle; as, *portōria redēempta habet*, *he kept the import duties (which had been) bought up* (I, 325).

a. The perfect participle of a deponent verb sometimes has a passive meaning; as, *dēpopulātis agris*, *now that their fields had been laid waste* (I, 190).

Gerund

167. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal noun in *-ing*; as, *bellandī cupidus*, *fond of warring* (I, 38). It is never found in the nominative, and in the accusative only after prepositions.

Gerundive

168. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and is, almost without exception, used where English would employ a verbal noun with a direct object. In Latin the noun is placed in the case the gerund would have had and the gerundive is made to agree; as, *ad animōs effēminandōs*, *to weaken the character* (I, 9), instead of *ad animōs effēminandum*; *cupiditās bellī gerendī*, *fondness for waging war* (I, 841), instead of *cupiditās bellum gerendī*; *dē expugnandō oppidō spem*, *hope of taking the town* (II, 170), instead of *dē expugnandō oppidum spem*.

1. With *meī*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, the gerundive with a like ending is used without regard to gender or number; as, *nōn sui colligendi hostibus facultātem relinquunt*, *they do not leave the enemy a chance for collecting themselves* (III, 6, 1).

Uses of Gerund and Gerundive

169. 1. The genitive is used

a. With nouns and adjectives; as, *bellandī cupidus*, *fond of warring* (I, 38); *facultās itineris faciundī*, *the chance of making the march* (I, 126).

b. With *causā* and *grātiā* to denote *purpose*; as, *sui muniendī*

causā, for the sake of strengthening himself (I, 929); *speculandi causā, for the sake of spying* (I, 1002).

2. The dative is seldom used.

3. The accusative is used with *ad* to express *purpose*; as, *diem ad dēlīberandum sūmam, I shall take time for deliberating* (I, 130); *ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur, Orgetorix was chosen to complete these matters* (I, 50).

4. The ablative is used with prepositions and to denote *means* or *cause*; as, *in quaerendō reperiēbat, upon inquiring, he found out* (I, 343); *lapidibus subministrandis, by furnishing stones* (III, 25, 1).

Supine

170. *a.* The accusative supine is used with verbs that express or imply *motion* to denote *purpose*; as, *lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, they send ambassadors to ask for aid* (I, 184).

b. The ablative supine is used with adjectives to denote *specificaffion*; as, *perfacile factū est, it is very easy to do* (I, 60).

Grammatical and Rhetorical Figures

171. 1. *Hendiadys* consists of the use of two nouns with a conjunction instead of a single modified noun; as, *omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, he displays all sorts of cruelties* (I, 608).

2. *Asyndeton* consists of the omission of coördinate conjunctions; as, *L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus, when Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius were consuls* (I, 110).

3. *Litotes* consists of the use of two negatives to make an emphatic affirmative; as, *nōn irridiculē, with much wit* (I, 877).

METHOD OF EXPRESSING DATES

172. *a.* The Romans designated the year by the names of the consuls for that year; as, *Messālā et Pisōne cōsulibus, in the year when Messala and Piso were consuls (i.e. 61 B.C.)* (I, 26).

b. Months were designated by the use of adjectives, as follows: *Iānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Māius, Iūnius, Quīnctīlis (Iūlius), Sextīlis (Augustus), September, Octōber, November, December.*

c. Days of the month were reckoned backward from three points in the month, as follows:—

1. *Kalendae*, which fell upon the *first* of the month;

2. *Nōnae*, which fell upon the *fifth* (except in March, May, July, and October, when they fell on the *seventh*) ;

3. *Īdūs*, which fell on the *thirteenth* (except in March, May, July, and October, when they fell on the *fifteenth*).

173. In reckoning days of the month, the Romans counted both ends of the series ; for instance, they would have said that Wednesday was the fourth day before Saturday and the third of January was known as the third day before the Nones (which fell on the fifth). Hence the following : —

Kalendīs Iānuāriis or *Kal. Iān.* = on Jan. 1.

diē quārtō ante Nōnās Iānuāriās, or, more commonly, *ante diem quārtum Nōnās Iānuāriās*, which was generally written in abbreviated form ; as, a. d. IV. Nōn. Iān. = on Jan. 2.

pridiē Nōnās Iānuāriās or *pridiē Nōn. Iān.* = on Jan. 4.

diē tertiō ante Kalendās Februāriās or a. d. III. Kal. Feb. = on Jan. 30.

pridiē Kalendās Februāriās or *pridiē Kal. Feb.* = on Jan. 31.

174. Formulae for translating Roman dates into English : —

1. Falling after the Ides. For example : —

a. d. IV. Kal. Feb. The English date = 31 (days in Jan.) + 1 (for the Feb. Calends) + 1 (for counting both ends) — 4 (the given number) = Jan. 29.

In general add two to the number of days in the earlier month and subtract the given number.

2. Falling after the Calends or Nones. For example : —

a. d. VII. Id. Apr. The English date = 13 (Ides of Apr.) + 1 (for counting both ends) — 7 (the given number) = Apr. 7.

In general add one to the date on which the Nones or Ides fall and subtract the given number.

ROMAN NAMES

175. A Roman generally had three names : —

praenōmen, first or given name ;

nōmen, name of the gens to which he belonged ;

cōgnōmen, name of the family to which he belonged.

Thus the name *Gāius Iūlius Caesar* denotes *Gaius* of the *Julian* gens or house and of the family of *Caesar*.

a. A foreigner on becoming a Roman citizen took the *praenōmen* and *nōmen* of his Roman patron and added his own name as a *cōgnōmen* ; as, *C. Valerius Cabūrus* (I, 992).

WORD LIST

The following list is based on Lodge's Vocabulary of High School Latin. The words in *italics* appear in Caesar ten or more times — those in Roman type appear five to nine times.

PRELIMINARY

gracilis
nōngenti
quaterni
quīnquiēs
septendecim
sextus
tredecim
undecim

appellō

hic

īstituō

inter

sui

differō

ab

flūmen

et

fortis

propterea

quod

atque

prōvincia

longus

absum

parvus

-que

ad

is

mercātor

saepe

animus

pertineō

prope

trāns

cum (prep.)

contineō

bellum

gerō

dē

causa

quoque

reliquus

virtūs

ferē

cotidiānus

proelium

contendō

cum (conj.)

aut

suus

finis

prohibeō

obtineō

dīcō

initium

capīō

ōceanus

attingō

etiam

vergō

BELLUM GALLICUM

Book I

I. *sum*

omnis
dīvidō
in
pars
trēs
quī
ūnus
incolō
alius
tertius
ipse
lingua
noster

septentriō	<i>finitimus</i>	<i>ducō</i>
<i>orior</i>	<i>inferō</i>	<i>annus</i>
<i>inferus</i>	<i>possum</i>	<i>profectiō</i>
<i>spectō</i>	<i>homō</i>	<i>deligō</i>
<i>sōl</i>	<i>bellō</i>	<i>legātiō</i>
<i>mōns</i>	<i>cupidus</i>	<i>suscipiō</i>
<i>occāsus</i>	<i>magnus</i>	<i>filius</i>
2. <i>apud</i>	<i>prō</i>	<i>pater</i>
<i>nōbilis</i>	<i>multitūdō</i>	<i>multus</i>
<i>rēgnum</i>	<i>autem</i>	<i>senātus</i>
<i>inducō</i>	<i>angustus</i>	<i>populus</i>
<i>nōbilitās</i>	<i>habēō</i>	<i>amicus</i>
<i>faciō</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>occupō</i>
<i>cīvitās</i>	<i>passus</i>	<i>ante</i>
<i>persuādeō</i>	<i>ducenti</i>	<i>item</i>
<i>ut</i>	<i>quādragintā</i>	<i>frāter</i>
<i>cōpia</i>	<i>lātitudō</i>	<i>tempus</i>
<i>exeō</i>	<i>octōgintā</i>	<i>accipiō</i>
<i>praestō</i>	<i>pateō</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>tōtus</i>	3. <i>adducō</i>	<i>cōnor</i>
<i>imperium</i>	<i>auctōritās</i>	<i>filia</i>
<i>potior</i>	<i>permoveō</i>	<i>dō</i>
<i>facilis</i>	<i>cōstituō</i>	<i>ille</i>
<i>undique</i>	<i>proficiscor</i>	<i>probō</i>
<i>locus</i>	<i>comparō</i>	<i>perficiō</i>
<i>nātūra</i>	<i>carrus</i>	<i>nōn</i>
<i>ex</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quīn</i>
<i>lātus</i>	<i>numerus</i>	<i>exercitus</i>
<i>altus</i>	<i>iter</i>	<i>conciliō</i>
<i>ager</i>	<i>frūmentum</i>	<i>orātiō</i>
<i>alter</i>	<i>pāx</i>	<i>fides</i>
<i>lacus</i>	<i>amicitia</i>	<i>iūs</i>
<i>rēs</i>	<i>cōfirmō</i>	<i>iūrō</i>
<i>fiō</i>	<i>cōnficiō</i>	<i>per</i>
<i>vagor</i>	<i>satis</i>	<i>firmus</i>

- | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>spērō</i> | <i>periculum</i> | <i>pervenio</i> |
| 4. <i>enūntiō</i> | <i>subeō</i> | <i>miles</i> |
| <i>mōs</i> | <i>mēnsis</i> | <i>imperō</i> |
| <i>cōgō</i> | <i>quisque</i> | <i>legiō</i> |
| <i>sequor</i> | <i>iubeō</i> | <i>adventus</i> |
| <i>oportet</i> | <i>ūtor</i> | <i>cernō (certus)</i> |
| <i>ignis</i> | <i>cōnsilium</i> | <i>lēgō (lēgatus)</i> |
| <i>dies</i> | <i>trānseō</i> | <i>mittō</i> |
| <i>decem</i> | <i>oppugnō</i> | <i>princeps</i> |
| <i>cliēs</i> | <i>recipiō</i> | <i>sine</i> |
| <i>condūcō</i> | <i>socius</i> | <i>ūllus</i> |
| <i>nē</i> | 6. <i>omninō</i> | <i>maleficium</i> |
| <i>ob</i> | <i>duo</i> | <i>nūllus</i> |
| <i>incitō</i> | <i>vix</i> | <i>rogō</i> |
| <i>arma</i> | <i>singulī</i> | <i>voluntās</i> |
| <i>magistrātus</i> | <i>expediō</i> | <i>licet</i> |
| <i>neque</i> | <i>pācō</i> | <i>memoria</i> |
| <i>suspiciō</i> | <i>fluō</i> | <i>teneō</i> |
| <i>mors</i> | <i>nōnnūllus</i> | <i>occidō</i> |
| 5. <i>post</i> | <i>vadum</i> | <i>pellō</i> |
| <i>nihil</i> | <i>pōns</i> | <i>sub</i> |
| <i>ubi</i> | <i>vel</i> | <i>iugum</i> |
| <i>iam</i> | <i>nōndum</i> | <i>concēdō</i> |
| <i>parō</i> | <i>bonus</i> | <i>puō</i> |
| <i>oppidum</i> | <i>videō</i> | <i>facultās</i> |
| <i>duodecim</i> | <i>existimō</i> | <i>temperō</i> |
| <i>vīcus</i> | <i>vīs</i> | <i>iniūria</i> |
| <i>quadringenti</i> | <i>eō</i> | <i>tamen</i> |
| <i>prīvō</i> | <i>patior</i> | <i>spatium</i> |
| <i>aedificium</i> | <i>rīpa</i> | <i>intercedō</i> |
| <i>incendō</i> | <i>conveniō</i> | <i>dum</i> |
| <i>portō</i> | <i>quintus</i> | <i>respondeō</i> |
| <i>domus</i> | 7. <i>nūntiō</i> | <i>sūmō</i> |
| <i>spēs</i> | <i>mātūrō</i> | <i>sī</i> |
| <i>tollō</i> | <i>ulterior</i> | <i>quis</i> |

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 39. <i>magnitudo</i> | legiōnārius | totidem |
| <i>exercitatio</i> | <i>imponō</i> | vēlōx |
| <i>perturbō</i> | 43. <i>tumulus</i> | <i>versor</i> |
| <i>tribūnus</i> | <i>aequus</i> | <i>dūrus</i> |
| <i>remaneō</i> | <i>mūnus</i> | concurrō |
| <i>figō</i> | <i>doceō</i> | circumsistō |
| <i>centuriō</i> | <i>aditus</i> | prōdeō |
| timidus | <i>praemium</i> | <i>celeritās</i> |
| audiō | <i>cōsulō</i> | <i>cursus</i> |
| 40. <i>orāō</i> | <i>afferō</i> | adaequō |
| <i>cūr</i> | <i>remittō</i> | 49. <i>idōneus</i> |
| temerē | <i>at.</i> | 50. <i>paulum (paulō)</i> |
| <i>officium</i> | 44. <i>dēcertō</i> | <i>prōgredior</i> |
| <i>perspicio</i> | <i>dētrimentum</i> | <i>sors</i> |
| <i>impello</i> | suspicio | 51. <i>speciēs</i> |
| <i>ego</i> | <i>opprimō</i> | <i>pandō</i> |
| inermis | <i>dēducō</i> | 52. <i>quaestor</i> |
| <i>armō</i> | <i>regiō</i> | <i>cornū</i> |
| <i>pterusque</i> | <i>labor</i> | <i>excipio</i> |
| <i>palus</i> | 45. <i>sententia</i> | <i>premō</i> |
| <i>dispergō</i> | <i>dēserō</i> | <i>subsidiū</i> |
| difficultās | <i>dignōscō</i> | 53. <i>tergum</i> |
| simulatio | redigō | <i>vertō</i> |
| <i>brevis</i> | 46. <i>lapis</i> | <i>fugio</i> |
| <i>dēsum</i> | <i>etsi</i> | <i>nanciscor</i> |
| avāritia | iniciō | <i>nātiō</i> |
| <i>an</i> | 47. <i>adulēscēns</i> | <i>trīni</i> |
| <i>decimus</i> | longinquus | vinciō |
| <i>cohors</i> | <i>cōspiciō</i> | <i>trahō</i> |
| indulgeō | conclāmō | incidō |
| 41. <i>quīnquāgintā</i> | catēna | hospes |
| 42. <i>ultrō</i> | 48. <i>ultrā</i> | <i>ter</i> |
| pedes | <i>continūus</i> | <i>statim</i> |
| interpōnō | prōducō | necō |
| dētrahō | <i>genus</i> | reservō |

incolumis
54. *aestās*

Book II

1. *crēber*
rūmor
coniūrō
2. *ineō*
incipiō
cōnstō
prōvideō
3. *opiniō*
cōsentiō
4. *expellō*
explorō
dēferō
5. *liberālis*
prōsequor
diligō
6. oppugnātiō
iaciō
nūdō
testūdō
submittō
7. paulisper
adeō
8. *frōns*
9. neuter
10. *levis*
dēficiō
appropinquō
11. strepitus

properō
subsequor
prior
clāmor
12. *vacuus*
vineā
agger
turris
13. *nāscor*
14. discessus
15. *mora*
dēdō
vīnum
17. adiuvō
pedester
praedor
arbor
rāmus
praebeō
18. nōminō
contrārius
statiō
19. *cēdō*
lateō
dēcurreō
20. tuba
administrō
21. dēveniō
adigō
dīmicō
accommodō

22. *dēnsus*
ēventus
varius
23. nōnus
exanimō
compellō (3)
octāvus
24. *respicio*
praeceptus
fremitus
25. urgeō
vir
tardus
excēdō
opera
27. *prōcumbō*
praeferō
īnsistō
29. *rūpēs*
duplex
pondus
saxum
trabs
30. exstruō
onus
31. quivis
32. cēlō
33. pellis
ēruptiō
vēndō
34. *maritimus*

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

The references are to sections in the *Grammatical Summary*. Words to be omitted in Latin are in parentheses, words which are explanatory are in brackets.

The editors recommend that the Exercises in Latin Prose Composition be used largely as oral rather than as written lessons. The sentences are purposely made short and are intended simply as a basis of drill in forms and syntax. Oral drill brings about this result much more effectively than written work. It is suggested that the sentences be read by the instructor and the Latin given by the pupil with book closed. To promote independence and facility, slight changes may be made in tenses of verbs, number of nouns, etc.

LESSON I

Predicate Noun and Appositive: 49.

Agreement of Verb: 114 with 1 and 2.

Tenses of Incomplete Action: 116, 117, 118.

Exercise

1. This province is a part of Gaul. 2. Gaul has not many rivers. 3. One river is the Seine; another, the Marne. 4. The Seine is a river of Gaul. 5. Two rivers, the Rhone and the Rhine, separate one side [*pars*]. 6. These were long and deep rivers. 7. The Belgians inhabit this part of Gaul. 8. The Gauls, a tribe of Gaul, keep out the Helvetians. 9. The Helvetians were a brave tribe. 10. The Gauls and Helvetians were brave tribes. 11. The languages and customs differed. 12. The territory of the Helvetians, a brave tribe, had many mountains. 13. Orgetorix was a chieftain of the Helvetians. 14. The Helvetians will start out and will wage many wars. 15. The citizens of this territory will go forth.

16. A large number of men will seize a part of Gaul, a fertile land. 17. Wars will be often waged. 18. (There) will be many battles. 19. Many nobles will be taken (as) hostages. 20. Orgetorix and the Helvetians will occupy this territory.

LESSON II

Predicate and Attributive Adjectives: 102, 103.

Agreement of Adjectives: 103, 114, 3 and *a*.

General Rule for the Genitive: 51.

Tenses of Complete Action: 119, 120.

Exercise

1. The influence of Orgetorix was great. 2. The people prepared many carts and troops. 3. Peace and friendship had already been established. 4. (It) had been decided to undertake the journey. 5. The roads were not easy. 6. (There) were wide lakes and rivers. 7. To prepare all the grain and carts was not easy. 8. But the neighboring nations and tribes were friendly. 9. Casticus, a Sequanian, and (his) father had been called friends of the Roman people. 10. And the Roman senate and people had called the Aeduans friends. 11. Dumnorix, the Aeduan, was the brother of Diviciacus. 12. Both Casticus and Diviciacus have been chosen leaders of armies. 13. (It) had been decided to accept both Aeduan and Sequanian troops. 14. Orgetorix and (his) friends will be made leaders of these troops. 15. The Helvetians found out Orgetorix's plan. 16. This plan was decided (upon). 17. All the clients and friends of Orgetorix were brought together. 18. (It) was easy to save him. 19. The magistrates collected large armies and troops. 20. All these things are known.

LESSON III

Agreement of the Relative Pronoun: 111.

Demonstrative Pronouns: 110.

Indirect Object: 63.

Exercise

1. The speech which Orgetorix had delivered influenced the Helvetians. 2. He announced to them that which had been decided (upon). 3. Those to whom arms have been given will go forth. 4. They will leave the villages and buildings which have been set-on-fire. 5. The Boii, who had many towns, and the Rauraci too, will go forth. 6. The former were neighbors; the latter (were) allies. 7. (There) are two rivers which they will cross. 8. One is wide and deep; the other has several fords. 9. The former is called the Rhine; the latter the Rhone. 10. Four hundred towns and villages will be left. 11. The former were large and well-known. 12. Grain was given to all those who will start out. 13. All these (men) to whom grain has been given will start out. 14. They choose Geneva, which is a well-known town of the Helvetians. 15. They had already prepared carts and grain which had been purchased. 16. They will cross the bridges and fords which you have seen. 17. Orgetorix, who has been chosen leader, will win the royal-power. 18. The Helvetians, whose army has been collected, will choose the easier road. 19. These Helvetians, who are a brave tribe, will seize many towns and villages of Gaul. 20. The width of that territory which is called Gaul is great.

LESSON IV

Reflexive Pronoun and Adjective: 108.

Intensive Pronoun: 109.

Possessive Adjectives.

Possessive Genitive: 52.

Note that

a. The reflexive possessive **suus** must be used when the English possessives *his, her, its, their*, refer to the subject of the verb. Remember that **suus** is an adjective and hence must agree with the noun it modifies and *not* with the noun to which it refers; as, **mātrēm suam vīdit**, *he saw his mother*.

b. The genitive of **is** is regularly used when the English possessive does not refer to the subject; as, **mātrēm eius vīdit**, *he saw his (i.e., another's) mother*.

Exercise

1. The Helvetians themselves will make a journey through our province. 2. This (fact) was announced to Caesar himself, who had already sent his army. 3. Caesar himself started out. 4. His arrival was announced to all the Helvetians' chieftains. 5. The Boii had been made allies of the Helvetians. 6. The Helvetians sent their best-known (men) (as) ambassadors. 7. We shall make our journey through your province without injury. 8. (There) is no other road left. 9. Caesar sent away the ambassadors who had said these (things) to him. 10. Meanwhile his soldiers constructed a long wall and ditch. 11. They also built redoubts which kept out the Helvetians' troops. 12. Dumnorix had great influence among the Sequanians and he was a friend of the Helvetians. 13. Orgetorix, the Helvetian, had given him his daughter. 14. (It) was decided to go through the Sequanians' territory. 15. Caesar replied to the ambassador who had reported this plan to him. 16. You will try the road through the Sequanians. 17. But I shall keep your troops

away. 18. The Aeduans themselves have asked (for) aid which I shall give to them. 19. My army will defeat your army. 20. The Helvetians' ambassador announced Caesar's reply to his (friends).

LESSON V

Extent of Time and Space: 74.

Time When and Within Which: 97.

Exercise

1. Within two days, three cantons of the Helvetians crossed the river. 2. At that time, the other men were left behind. 3. Caesar pursued these for many miles and killed them. 4. These men, within the memory of our fathers, had killed Cassius the consul. 5. The Helvetians at this time sent another embassy, of which Divico was chief. 6. For several years Divico had been a leader of the Helvetians. 7. You have done in one day that which we have completed in twenty days. 8. The Romans themselves have not defeated our brave troops. 9. Within a short time, we shall defeat the Romans. 10. To Divico Caesar pointed out the many wrongs of the Helvetians. 11. For many months you harassed the Aeduans, our friends. 12. And within a few days you have attempted a journey through our province. 13. Caesar demanded (as) hostages many sons and daughters of the leaders. 14. But the Helvetians did not give the hostages that Caesar demanded. 15. Both the Romans and the Helvetians moved camp on the next day. 16. Scouts were sent ahead in the third watch. 17. The Romans pursued the enemy for ten miles and sustained a great loss. 18. Then both armies marched fifteen days. 19. Neither

Caesar nor the Helvetians' chieftain was conquered.

20. Within a brief space of time, they will fight again.

LESSON VI

Place to Which: 75.

Place from Which: 78.

Place in Which: 98, 99.

Exercise

1. The Aeduans did not give Caesar the grain which they had promised. 2. The grain was not yet ripe in the fields. 3. The boats, in which was Caesar's supply, were on the River Saône. 4. The Helvetians had turned away from the river. 5. Caesar did not depart from them. 6. The Aeduans had not helped Caesar at this critical time. 7. Liscus, who had been summoned to Caesar, replied. 8. In our territory, (there) are some powerful leaders. 9. They will not bring the grain to the Romans. 10. These things were said to Caesar in his camp. 11. Dumnorix, who at this time was at Geneva, had been powerful for many years. 12. He was the brother of Diviciacus, whom Caesar summoned from home. 13. Caesar pointed out those (things) which had been said in the council of the Gauls. 14. You have not brought the grain from Geneva nor from the other parts of the territory. 15. My soldiers will go to the Aeduans and to-the-vicinity-of Geneva. 16. In those places they will see a great supply of grain. 17. Other soldiers will be sent to my army from-near Rome. 18. For I have many friends at home who will come to Gaul. 19. The (men) who are now here, I shall send home. 20. Your brother has returned to Geneva, but I shall not punish him.

LESSON VII

Direct Questions.

Indirect Questions: 151.

Sequence of Tenses: 121, 122.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Questions are divided into

A. Direct.

B. Indirect.

A. Direct questions may be subdivided into

(1) Those answerable by *yes* or *no*.

(2) Those not answerable by *yes* or *no*.

1. Those answerable by *yes* or *no* use

a. The enclitic **-ne** attached to the emphatic word (placed first) when the answer is not hinted in the question; as, **venietne Caesar?** *will Caesar come?*

b. The introductory word **nōnne** when the answer *yes* is hinted; as, **nōnne Caesar veniet?** *will not Caesar come?*

c. The introductory word **num** when the answer *no* is hinted; as, **num Caesar veniet?** *Caesar will not come, will he?*

2. Those not answerable by *yes* or *no* use an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb; as, **quis veniet?** *who will come?* **quī homō veniet?** *what man will come?* **ubi homō veniet?** *when will the man come?*

B. Indirect questions are direct questions quoted indirectly and used as substantive clauses with a verb that expresses an interrogative idea, and may be subdivided into

(1) Those which, in the direct form, are answerable by *yes* or *no*.

These are introduced by **num** or **-ne**; as, **rogat num veniat,** *he asks whether he is coming.*

(2) Those which, in the direct form, are *not* answerable by *yes* or *no*.

Direct questions introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb use, upon becoming indirect, the same introductory word; as, **rogat quis veniat,** *he asks who is coming.*

Exercise

1. What did Caesar do on the next day?
2. He found out whether he could ascend the mountain.
3. Did he

send Considius from the camp to the mountain? 4. Considius did not find the enemy on the mountain, did he? 5. Didn't Considius see the Roman army at daybreak? 6. Caesar asked whom he had seen. 7. Considius did not find out whether the enemy was there. 8. But late in the day Caesar learned who was there. 9. On the next day, he started out for Bibracte. 10. You know, don't you, whether he made forced marches? 11. Did he remain there many days? 12. The Helvetians tried to find out where Caesar would find a supply of grain. 13. He will ask whether the neighbors will give him grain. 14. Will he not leave his baggage in that town? 15. Have the Aeduians always been called friends of Caesar? 16. Don't you know how large a number of soldiers the Aeduians have sent to Caesar? 17. He asked whether they would also fortify his camp. 18. They will find out how powerful Caesar is. 19. Then they will show how they will help him. 20. Will not Caesar draw up a battle line within a few days?

LESSON VIII

Purpose Clauses with *ut* and *nē*: 123 with 1 and 2.
alius and *alter*: 113.

Exercise

1. Caesar had demanded the help of the Aeduians.
 2. Their forces had crossed to the other bank of the river that they might help him. 3. They chose a prominent man that he might be leader of their troops. 4. Caesar had come into the Helvetians' territory to conquer them. 5. He had brought some (men) from Rome, others from the Roman province. 6. This had been done so that the

Helvetians might not cross the Rhone into our province. 7. The territory of the Helvetians was on one side [pars] of the mountains, our province was on the other. 8. Some neighbors of the Helvetians were their friends, others (were their) enemies. 9. Caesar had pitched his camp near [ad] Bibracte so that he might have sufficient [of] grain. 10. A line of battle was drawn up so that Caesar might withstand the enemies' charge. 11. The battle was (a) fierce (one) and many Helvetians were captured. 12. Some were slain, others were made slaves. 13. The rest are sent home that they may rebuild the towns and villages which have been set-on-fire. 14. The men and women who returned home were few, were they not? 15. They will rebuild their towns so that they may keep out the Germans. 16. Caesar had fought fiercely so that the Helvetians might not try again to cross the Rhone. 17. He had not come to seize their lands. 18. One army conquered, the other suffered defeat. 19. This battle was considered the fiercest of the entire war. 20. Caesar sent a message to Rome to announce the victory to the senate.

LESSON IX

Ablative of Separation: 79 with *a*.

Ablative of Source (Origin): 81 with *i*.

Ablative of Agent: 82.

Verbs of Fearing: 146.

Exercise

1. The Helvetians had been conquered by Caesar.
2. Ambassadors from many states came to Caesar to ask (for) peace.
3. He asks why the Helvetians have left their homes.
4. They had done this that they might have

other states as neighbors. 5. The Gauls alone will not keep them out of their territory. 6. Will not help be given to them by the Roman people? 7. Ariovistus, who was sprung from the Germans, had come into the Gauls' territory. 8. In a short time, he will drive out all the Gauls from their fields. 9. Will you not send this man away from Gaul? 10. Caesar wonders what the cause of these things is. 11. These injuries arose from Ariovistus's haughty character. 12. The Sequanians feared that Ariovistus would not depart from their towns. 13. Caesar sent ambassadors to Ariovistus that he might cease from his wrongdoing. 14. The Aeduans, often called brothers by the Romans, had been deprived of their fields. 15. Even the children were taken from their homes (as) hostages. 16. Caesar fears that the Germans may cross the Alps into Italy. 17. The Sequanians feared that Ariovistus might not abstain from battle. 18. Don't you know when [at what time] we shall be free of Ariovistus? 19. We fear that we may suffer his rule many years. 20. Only the Rhone separates our province from the Sequanians.

LESSON X

Ablative of Comparison: 84.

Ablative of Degree of Difference: 89.

Idiomatic Uses of Comparatives and Superlatives: 105, 106.

Exercise

1. Ariovistus had more soldiers than Caesar. 2. But Caesar's soldiers were much better [more] prepared. 3. Caesar asked Ariovistus whether he would overlook the kind deeds of the Romans. 4. Then Ariovistus replied very haughtily. 5. He had been in Gaul more years than

Caesar. 6. His army was braver than Caesar's. 7. The barbarians had a very great amount of grain. 8. Caesar was many miles further from his (own) supply. 9. And so he prepared his army as quickly as possible. 10. He hastened to Vesontio, a rather large town. 11. Vesontio was a larger town than Bibracte. 12. At Vesontio (there) were stronger fortifications than at other places. 13. A wall that was many feet higher had been placed around the town. 14. In the middle of the town (there) was quite a high hill. 15. A redoubt, as strong as possible, had been built on the top of this hill. 16. Caesar feared that Ariovistus might arrive there first [prior]. 17. And so he hastened that he might seize the arms that were there. 18. At this time Ariovistus was more than ten miles away. 19. He had marched very rapidly, but Caesar had gone more rapidly. 20. Caesar came to this town a little earlier than Ariovistus.

LESSON XI

Ablative of Cause: 83.

Ablative of Means: 85.

Result Clauses with *ut* and *ut nōn*: 124.

Exercise

1. On account of the grain supply, Caesar's army delayed for a few days near Vesontio. 2. The Romans learned from the replies of the traders how brave the Germans were. 3. For this reason, so great a fear seized the army that the minds of all were disturbed. 4. This fear first arose from the tribunes who had followed Caesar out of friendship. 5. Some, however, were influenced by (a sense of) duty. 6. The former are afraid that the enemy may put them to death. 7. The latter will stay in the

camp that there may be no [not be any] suspicion of cowardice. 8. Because of their cowardice many, throughout the entire camp, were panic-stricken. 9. They feared that the grain might not be brought. 10. This had been received from neighboring tribes. 11. In the farthestmost (parts of the) camp, some were grieving on account of their danger. 12. Others were so panic-stricken that they did not restrain their tears. 13. Were not the centurions much less cowardly than the tribunes? 14. By means of a speech, Caesar strengthened their courage. 15. We shall go out from this town which is surrounded by a river. 16. With our carts we shall carry as large a supply of grain as possible. 17. We conquered this same tribe many years before, so that it is not proper to fear them now. 18. They defeated the Gauls more by strategy than by bravery. 19. But our armies will never be captured by this means. 20. I shall break camp at once, so that I may find out what legions will follow.

LESSON XII

Ablative with Deponent Verbs: 86.

Infinitive as Subject: 162, 163, 1, 164, 1.

Infinitive as Object: 162, 163, 2 and *a*, 164, 2 and *a*, *b*.

Exercise

1. The soldiers of the tenth legion desired to follow Caesar. 2. (It) was not necessary (for) Caesar to order them to march. 3. They were accustomed to undergo dangers. 4. On this account they were willing to start out at once. 5. They were not afraid that (there) was a scarcity of food. 6. And they were prepared to go by whichever road (it) had been decided to send them. 7. And so he ordered

Diviciacus to find out what road was the best. 8. They employed Diviciacus as guide and marched for seven days. 9. Ariovistus's troops at this time were not more than twenty miles away. 10. Caesar had come nearer so that Ariovistus desired to hold a conference. 11. (It) was decided by Caesar to do that which Ariovistus proposed. 12. Ariovistus was unwilling to bring to the conference any foot-soldiers. 13. And so Caesar did not hesitate to use his regular soldiers. 14. (It) seemed to him to be suitable to place them on horses. 15. For he did not dare to intrust his safety to the cavalry of the Gauls. 16. That he might be able to do this, he ordered many horses to be procured. 17. Therefore his soldiers secured all the Gallic horses, so that he had a very strong guard. 18. Thus he had the best possible guard. 19. For Ariovistus was prepared to employ treachery. 20. Because of these things, was it not proper (for) Caesar to use all his prudence?

LESSON XIII

Ablative of Accompaniment: 90.

Ablative of Manner: 91.

Ablative of Attendant Circumstance: 92.

Infinitive in Indirect Discourse: 153, 157.

Exercise

1. With these horsemen, Caesar said he would go to the conference. 2. (It) was reported that the conference was (attended) with great danger. 3. Ariovistus was ready to attack Caesar with great violence. 4. For this reason, Caesar had brought with him the tenth legion, which was well-known for its bravery. 5. All except a few men were further than two hundred paces away. 6. Ariovistus says that he is unwilling to come under any other plan.

7. Caesar will not dare to come without the tenth legion. 8. This legion at all times fought with the greatest bravery. 9. Because of Caesar's influence, Ariovistus had been called king by the Romans. 10. Caesar showed how the Aeduans had secured the control of Gaul. 11. He also said that they had held this power many years. 12. He said that the Romans would at all times help their allies. 13. Don't you think that we shall defend them with our greatest strength? 14. You will attack them with great danger. 15. A larger number of Germans will never cross the Rhine with our consent. 16. Ariovistus replied that these fields had been given him by the Gauls themselves. 17. I say that I have not accepted tribute from them wrongfully. 18. Do you realize that all their troops were defeated by my soldiers with great loss? 19. This (fact) shows why they have with great willingness paid me tribute. 20. With my army, I came into Gaul many years earlier than the Roman people.

LESSON XIV

Ablative (and Genitive) of Description: 94 with 1; 57 with *a, b, c*.

Ablative of Specification: 95.

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse: 156.

Exercise

1. Ariovistus was (a man) of great influence. 2. He had sent men of unfriendly disposition into Gaul. 3. He had tried with much [great] eagerness to drive Caesar out of Gaul. 4. At home we had very fertile fields and several months' supply of grain. 5. But rewards were offered to me by the Gauls of their (own) free-will. 6. I have learned that all the places in Gaul that are especially

fertile are held by the Romans. 7. I have tried to get possession of these fertile fields. 8. But the Gauls have not hesitated to wage war with my troops. 9. However, we have shown that we surpass in bravery the men who hold this locality. 10. The friendship of the Roman people ought to help me. 11. With this hope, I have come to talk with Caesar. 12. I realize that a large number of Germans have crossed the river. 13. You see that they are (men) of very great size of bodies and of extraordinary bravery. 14. They are men like in character but unlike in customs. 15. They are men of like character but of unlike customs. 16. You said that the Aeduans, to whom you had given rewards, had been called your brothers. 17. But I know that, in the war which you waged with the Allobroges, the Romans did not enjoy the Aeduans' aid. 18. I suspect that you keep this army, which you have in Gaul, that you may crush me. 19. I swear that I shall call you my enemy and not my friend. 20. I am informed that (there) are many Romans whose gratitude I am able to purchase by your death.

LESSON XV

Participles: 166.

Ablative Absolute: 96 with 1.

Exercise

(Each of the first twelve sentences contains an ablative absolute.)

1. After this speech was delivered by Ariovistus, Caesar replied. 2. While I was consul, the Aeduans sought our friendship. 3. Now that the fields of the Aeduans have been ravaged, I shall not desert them. 4. Having defeated the Aeduans, you will get possession of their largest towns.

5. With Gaul conquered, I fear you may try to overrun the Roman province. 6. After you have been sent home, I shall allow the Aeduans to enjoy their own laws. 7. When these words had been spoken, (it) was announced that Ariovistus's cavalry was approaching. 8. The conference dismissed, Caesar withdrew to the tenth legion. 9. Because these things had been done, a much greater eagerness arose. 10. If an attack is made by Ariovistus, we shall fight with all our courage. 11. But with the tenth legion helping, we can fight without great danger. 12. However, I fear that an attack may be made on our other friends. 13. A few days afterwards, Ariovistus desired ambassadors to be sent to him. 14. He said (there) were many things which he wished to discuss with Caesar. 15. These matters were of much importance [pertained very much] both to Caesar and to himself. 16. (It) was decided to send Valerius, who was a young (man) of extraordinary wisdom. 17. Caesar knew that this (man) was able to use the Gallic language. 18. Valerius, having advanced to Ariovistus, was asked why he had come. 19. But Ariovistus stopped him as he tried to reply. 20. Thrown into chains, he was made a prisoner.

LESSON XVI

Dative with Intransitive Verbs: 64 with *a, c, d*.

Dative with Compound Verbs: 65.

Exercise

1. Will Ariovistus harm this ambassador? 2. Caesar will not pardon Ariovistus, will he? 3. Ariovistus will not be pardoned by Caesar. 4. Did not Valerius resist those who made him prisoner? 5. Those men were resisted by

Valerius. 6. Ariovistus desired power more than booty. 7. And so he made war upon the Aeduans, whom Caesar had favored. 8. Caesar encouraged the tenth legion, which he had trusted. 9. Caesar trusted the tenth legion, which he had encouraged. 10. The tenth legion was greatly trusted and indulged by Caesar. 11. With this legion, he will be able to meet the attack of those who wish to harm him. 12. He knows that those whom he has favored will help him. 13. In a short time, he will be in command of the auxiliaries which the Aeduans will [have] sent to him. 14. Ariovistus broke camp and withdrew several miles. 15. Caesar's army crossed the river and, for five successive days, he displayed his men to Ariovistus. 16. But Ariovistus did not wish to fight with an army of so extraordinary bravery. 17. However, within these few days, a part of his troops fought in cavalry battles with the Gallic horsemen. 18. He was afraid that he was not able to resist the army over which Caesar had been placed in command. 19. He thought he would not meet the enemy but would stay in the camp which he had built. 20. This plan having been decided upon, he kept his men there for several days.

LESSON XVII

Dative of Possessor: 68.

Dative of Purpose: 69.

Dative with Adjectives: 70.

Exercise

1. The Germans were very unlike the Romans in the method of battle which they employed.
2. For the sake of his own safety, each cavalryman chose a foot-soldier.
3. Because of his training, the latter was able to equal the

speed of the former. 4. For another camp, Caesar found a place which was next to the enemy. 5. In all matters this place was suitable for a camp. 6. He ordered one line to fortify the camp with a twelve foot wall. 7. He drew up two battle lines as a protection to the others. 8. An attack having been made on the third line, Caesar sent the others as a reinforcement to them. 9. Thus this part of the army was [for] a help and not a hindrance to the other. 10. With this smaller camp fortified, Caesar withdrew to the larger camp. 11. Caesar had two redoubts. [Translate in two ways.] 12. Each camp had a wall and a ditch. [Translate in two ways.] 13. Caesar thought that the smaller camp would be a (source of) loss to the enemy. 14. Caesar asked why Ariovistus had not fought-a-decisive-battle. 15. He asked the same (question) of several Germans who were friendly to him. 16. He found out that the lots did not favor a battle. 17. For many years, we have considered the lots as a (source of) safety to us. 18. We have consulted them often, so that we may not be harmed by our enemies. 19. This custom has been of [for] great use to us. 20. The Romans also have customs like this. [Translate in two ways.]

LESSON XVIII

Gerund and Gerundive: 166, 2, *b*, 167, 168, 169.

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation: 43, 2.

Dative of Agent: 67.

Exercise

1. Soldiers had to be left by Caesar as a guard for each camp. 2. He then advanced toward the enemies' camp for the purpose of fighting. 3. He had a smaller number

of soldiers than the enemy. 4. For this reason, the auxiliaries had to be drawn up by Caesar. 5. To [ad] strengthen their courage, the Germans drew up their line so that kinsmen stood together. 6. Carts were placed around the entire line, so that no [not any] hope of fleeing might be left. 7. On the carts [in with the abl.] they placed women to [ad] encourage the men. 8. Caesar went away to the right wing for the sake of encouraging his army. 9. (The battle) was fought so fiercely that opportunity for [of] withdrawing was not given. 10. The Germans received the attack by making a phalanx. 11. More men had to be summoned by the commander to the right wing. 12. The third line had to be sent by Crassus as a reinforcement to our men. 13. Finally by advancing rapidly our men routed the enemy. 14. They fled fifteen miles to the river Rhine. 15. Some threw themselves into the river to save themselves. 16. Others finding boats escaped in [by] them. 17. No opportunity for [of] collecting themselves ought to be given to the enemy. 18. The Roman cavalry overtaking the rest slew (them) all. 19. Caesar himself, in pursuing the enemy, happened upon [in] Valerius. 20. Great was Caesar's (good) fortune in seeing Valerius.

LESSON XIX

Genitive of the Whole: 55 entire.

Exercise

1. We have learned that the Belgians are a third part of Gaul. 2. They were one of the well-known tribes. 3. Certain (ones) of them formed a conspiracy against the Romans. 4. Caesar asked what the causes of the conspiring were. 5. The Belgians feared that in-the-first-

place all (of) the Gauls would be conquered. 6. After this is done [abl. abs.], the Roman army will harass us by laying waste our fields. 7. We have sufficient [of] bravery so that we can keep them out. 8. But we ought to have more soldiers. 9. Many of our prominent men desire a revolution more than peace. 10. They have larger resources for hiring men than the others. 11. Caesar was informed that those who were making the conspiracy were of great influence. 12. Aroused by these rumors, he decided that more grain must be purchased. 13. A few of his soldiers were sent by Caesar to [ad] purchase grain. 14. Caesar knew that the Belgians were the bravest of all the Gauls. 15. For this reason, the largest possible number of soldiers had to be collected. 16. Therefore he ordered one of his lieutenants to lead two legions into Gaul. 17. He also ordered the Senones, who lived nearest the Belgians, to find out whether a conspiracy had been formed. 18. They reported that a very large number of men were being collected. 19. Then Caesar did not hesitate to start out with all the troops that he was able to collect. 20. He arrived at the Belgians' territory within a very short time.

LESSON XX

Subjective Genitive: 53.

Objective Genitive: 54.

Genitive with Adjectives: 58.

Exercise

1. Because of the memory of Caesar's victories, the Remi sent ambassadors to him. 2. (In) the beginning of their speech, they said the Remi would give all (of) their (things) to Caesar. 3. We do not dare to fight with the

leader of so great an army. 4. We are not skilled in war and we desire peace. 5. With your consent, we shall allow your army to come into our towns. 6. We are desirous of helping you with supplies. 7. Our eagerness for [of] peace was so great that we did not conspire with the other Belgians. 8. Will the wrongdoings of the other tribes be a (source of) loss to us? 9. Caesar found out that a large number of the Belgians had sprung from the Germans. 10. Because of the scarcity of supplies, they had crossed the Rhine. 11. Upon the arrival of the Belgians, the Gauls had been driven out. 12. Within the memory of their fathers, they had been able to keep off the attacks of the Cimbri. 13. The flight of the Cimbri had given them much influence. 14. The Remi knew how great a number of men each tribe had promised in the council of the Belgians. 15. They said that the Bellovaci were desirous of the control of the entire war. 16. But they were not more skilled in fighting than the Suessiones, who lived next to them. 17. A few years before Diviciacus had been king, but at this time they had made Galba king. 18. This man had much wisdom. [Translate in two ways.] 19. He was more influenced by eagerness for [of] power than by hope of peace. 20. He had promised many thousand men as an aid to his neighbors.

LESSON XXI

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 145 with *a*.

Relative Clauses of Purpose: 123 with 3 and 4.

Exercise

1. Caesar urged the Remi to [that they should] bring as hostages the children of prominent men. 2. He decided

that he would not allow larger forces of the enemy to be collected. 3. He ordered the Aeduians to [that they should] advance to the territory of the Bellovaci. 4. This was done that they might the more easily lay waste their territory. 5. He learned that all the Belgians' forces, which they had collected, were coming toward him. 6. He sent scouts to [who were to] find out how far they had advanced. 7. Then his army crossed the river so that supplies could be brought to him without danger. 8. He left Titurius on the other side [pars] to [who was to] keep the enemy from the bridge. 9. The Belgians began to attack a town of the Remi, Bibrax by name. 10. They stripped the walls of men so that they might come nearer. 11. So many stones were thrown that no one could remain on the wall. 12. In-the-early-part-of [primus] the night Iccius, one of the Remi, sent messengers to Caesar. 13. These messengers were sent to say that he could not hold out much longer. 14. He begged that soldiers should be sent as a reënforcement to him. 15. At midnight Caesar ordered [imperō] the Numidians to start out. 16. Upon their arrival, the eagerness of the Remi was increased. 17. For the same reason, no hope of storming the town was left to the Belgians. 18. And so, after delaying for a few days near Bibrax, they came toward Caesar with all their troops. 19. They pitched camp (after) having advanced six miles. 20. The Belgians' camp was much larger than Caesar's.

LESSON XXII

Various Ways of Expressing Purpose :

With *ut*, *nē*, *quōd*, or a Relative Pronoun: 123 entire.

With Substantive Clause: 145 with *a*.

With Supine: 170 *a*.

Exercise

1. (There) were more soldiers in the enemies' camp than in Caesar's. 2. And so Caesar warned his men that they should not fight with the enemy. 3. But by daily cavalry battles, he tried to find out how brave the enemy was. 4. He found out that they were no [by nothing] braver than our men. 5. He ordered [*iubeō*] his soldiers to make a ditch from each side of the hill which was in-front-of the camp. 6. Then he ordered them to put up redoubts at-the-ends-of the ditches. 7. This was done for the sake of fortifying the camp. 8. He left the two legions which he had last enrolled in the camp, so that they could be led out as a reënforcement. 9. The other six legions, which he greatly trusted, he ordered to be stationed in-front-of the camp. 10. The enemy also advanced to fight. [Use supine.] 11. Each army delayed to find out what the other would do. 12. Each hesitated to fight for so long a time that Caesar led his men back into camp. 13. The enemy then tried to cross the river to storm a redoubt. 14. Caesar sent the Numidians to prevent them. [Translate in three ways.] 15. Then he led out the entire army to drive them back. [Translate in three ways.] 16. (The battle) in the river was so fiercely fought that a very large number of the enemy was slain. 17. Our men crossed the river to pursue the others. [Translate in three ways.] 18. The enemy, having called together a council, decided that they

would return home. 19. They decided upon this so that they might fight-it-out at home and use their (own) supplies. 20. Their leader could not persuade them to delay longer.

LESSON XXIII

Substantive Clauses of Result : 148.

Clauses of Characteristic : 125 with *a*.

Exercise

1. This plan having been decided upon, the enemy started out of the camp with much noise. 2. (It) was brought to pass by this noise that the departure was very similar to a flight. 3. (It) happened that Caesar, fearing treachery, had not allowed his men to follow. 4. He did not understand why the enemy had gone away so quickly. 5. He therefore sent scouts ahead to find out. [Translate in three ways.] 6. These scouts reported that the enemy, who had started out a little (while) before, had hidden in the woods. 7. The result was, because of this news, that Caesar sent all (of) his cavalry ahead. 8. He ordered [imperō] Labienus to follow closely with three legions. 9. Thus it was brought to pass that many were killed in flight. 10. At that time it was decided that those who had hidden should start out for home. 11. (There) are some who think that these men were very cowardly. 12. But there was no food in this place which they could give to their men. 13. And (there) was also the additional fact that they could not hold out longer without food. 14. (There) were few who were not desirous of returning home. 15. Meanwhile the arrival of the Roman army brought it to pass that the rest did not dare to delay longer. 16. The Suessiones were now almost the only (ones) who

had not surrendered themselves to Caesar. 17. And so (it) happened that Caesar at once hastened to them by forced marches. 18. But at first he was not able to storm their town, although there were few defending it [abl. abs.]. 19. Finally, however, they said they would surrender the arms which Caesar desired. 20. Then they obtained their request that they should not be killed.

LESSON XXIV

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Hindering, etc. : 147.

Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Doubting: 149 with *a*.

Exercise

1. Caesar did not refuse to [but that he would] receive them into surrender. 2. Nor did he hesitate to lead his army against the Bellovaci. 3. Caesar did not doubt that they would surrender themselves at once. 4. Nothing will hinder the Bellovaci from coming [but that they will come] into his power. 5. Suspicion was not lacking that they had heard (of) Caesar's victories. 6. These rumors prevent them from making [so that they will not make] an attack on Caesar. 7. Many prominent men say that the Aeduans have been made slaves by Caesar. 8. Because of their influence, the Bellovaci had revolted from the Aeduans. 9. These men can not be restrained from saying [but that they will say] these things. 10. Caesar, after receiving their surrender [abl. abs.], demanded [imperō] of them six hundred hostages. 11. Caesar then advanced to the territory of the Nervii, concerning whom he asked many (questions.) 12. He found out that their customs prevented them from being [so that they should not be] cowardly. 13. They said that

they would not refuse to fight with Caesar. 14. We shall try to prevent you from harming [so that you will not harm] our homes and children. 15. We shall prevent those who are unfriendly to us from coming [so that they shall not come] into our territory. 16. Caesar thought that he must make war [passive] upon the Nervii. 17. And so he sent scouts to choose a place for a camp. [Translate in three ways.] 18. Several of the Gauls who had been with Caesar pointed out to the Nervii how they could capture one of Caesar's legions. 19. They did not doubt that Caesar's legions could be captured one at a time. 20. The Nervii did not hesitate to try this plan.

LESSON XXV

Temporal Clauses:

With **postquam**, etc.: 126.

With **dum**, etc.: 127, *a*, *c*.

With **cum**: 129 with *a*.

Exercise

1. As soon as Caesar had found this out, he arranged his line of march otherwise. 2. For when he approached the enemy, he used-to-lead his army unencumbered. 3. He did not doubt that the enemy would attack him. 4. But after his men were drawn up for [**ad**] fighting, the enemy hesitated to make an attack. 5. At this time, when six legions were marching light-armed, two other legions served [were] as a protection to the baggage. 6. After our men had crossed the river, they engaged in battle with the enemies' cavalry. 7. After a fierce battle had been fought, the cavalry withdrew to the woods. 8. And our men waited until they should advance again.

9. Until they have been driven from the woods, no attack will be made upon them. 10. When the scouts had chosen a place suitable for a camp, the six legions began to fortify it. 11. As soon as our baggage was seen by the enemy, they advanced with all their troops. 12. When our cavalry had been routed, they, with great violence, made an attack against the six legions. 13. All these things were done while the six legions were pitching camp. 14. On account of the enemies' speed, everything had to be done by Caesar in the shortest possible time. 15. The enemy advanced so quickly that our men did not wait until Caesar sent his orders. 16. Caesar ordered [*iubeō*] the lieutenants to remain with [*apud*] their legions until the camp had been fortified. 17. Caesar came while the battle raged fiercely [it was being fiercely fought]. 18. After Caesar came, he urged the soldiers that they should bravely withstand the enemies' attack. 19. He knew that he could trust an army of so great bravery. 20. When he went away in another direction to [*ad*] encourage them, he found them already fighting.

LESSON XXVI

Causal Clauses :

With *quod* : 130.With *cum* : 132.

Exercise

1. Because the time was very short, each soldier fought near [*ad*] the standards he saw first. 2. The time was so short that our men were hindered from seeking [so that they should not seek] their own standards. 3. Since the

legions were fighting in various places, they could not carry out [*facere*] Caesar's commands at the same time.

4. Because of the many trees, (it) resulted that all of the legions could not be seen by one man. 5. When the

Atrebates had been exhausted by wounds, they were driven into the river. 6. While they were trying to cross the

river, our men killed a large number of them. 7. Because our men had advanced into an unfavorable place, the

enemy tried again to resist them. 8. But after they had begun again to fight, they were routed. 9. (It) happened

also that two other legions had routed the Viromandui.

10. When they had been driven from the higher place, they fought on the very bank of the river. 11. The enemy

could not be prevented from stripping [but that they should strip] our ramparts of soldiers. 12. The Nervii advanced

to attack the camp. [Translate in three ways.] 13. Since the ramparts had been stripped of soldiers, certain (ones)

of the Nervii advanced. 14. They did not doubt that

they could gain possession of the camp. 15. Because those who were on the top of the hill saw that our men

were victors, they hurried from the camp for the sake of plundering. 16. But when they saw the enemy in our

camp, they fled headlong. 17. On account of the noise of those who were coming with the baggage, it resulted that

many fled. 18. The Treveri, who were especially skilled in war, fled because they found out that our camp was

filled with the enemy. 19. They did not wish to wait until they should be killed. 20. Because the Romans were

fleeing in all directions, they thought that we had been conquered.

LESSON XXVII

Concessive Clauses :

With *etsi* : 134.With *cum* : 135.**Exercise**

1. When Caesar had come to the right wing, he found that his soldiers were hard pressed. 2. He warned them that they should not fight with their ranks so compact. 3. Although they were fighting very bravely, they were being conquered. 4. (There) were some who were not able to stand. 5. But although they were exhausted with wounds, they were resisting the enemy. 6. Caesar himself advanced to the front [first] rank because (there) was no aid that could be sent. 7. He thought that the enemies' attack could be stopped, though matters seemed to be at a crisis. 8. Because time was short, he snatched a shield; he himself had come there without a shield. 9. When he had arrived at the front rank, he ordered [*imperō*] the centurions to fight with open ranks. 10. This was done that they might the more easily use their swords. 11. Though the Romans had been hard pressed, Caesar's arrival gave them hope of victory. 12. No one doubted that they had soldiers enough. 13. But their method of fighting had prevented them from conquering [so that they should not conquer]. 14. The result was that the enemies' attack was stopped. 15. Although the enemy had ceased from the attack on one side, Caesar found out that the seventh legion was being hard pressed. 16. He warned the tribunes that they should gradually bring their forces together. 17. When this is [will have been] done, you will no longer fear that you will be surrounded by the enemy. 18. Al-

though the enemy is very brave, they have not more bravery than the Romans. 19. When Labienus had gained possession of the enemies' camp, he sent the tenth legion as a reënforcement to our men. 20. As soon as they found out that our men were in danger, they hurried with the greatest possible speed.

LESSON XXVIII

Conditions: 136, 137, 138, 139, 140.

Exercise

1. If we have encouraged you by our words, we have helped you. 2. And if we are able to help you, we are grateful. 3. If you [shall] desire more aid, we shall send reënforcement to you. 4. If we should receive reënforcement, we should begin again to fight. 5. If we had more aid now, we should be willing to fight. 6. If aid had been sent to us earlier, we should not have fled. 7. But we shall not be cowardly, even if we [shall] fight alone. 8. If the enemy were not so brave, we should now be victors. 9. When the front rank of the enemy fell, other soldiers fought from their bodies. 10. They are (men) of so great bravery that they can not be easily conquered. 11. (It) resulted from this battle that almost all (of) the Nervii were killed. 12. If they should try to fight again, (there) would be few who would be able to bear arms. 13. Because they were thoroughly frightened, those who survived sent ambassadors to Caesar. 14. Though they had long been enemies of the Roman people, Caesar received them into surrender. 15. He will allow them to occupy their own towns, if they [shall] desire. 16. If their neighbors should try to harm them, he would stop them. 17. Unless Caesar

had been an extraordinary commander, the Romans would have been conquered. 18. Would not Caesar be considered extraordinary, if he were a general now? 19. Did his army at any time conquer a braver enemy than the Nervii? 20. Would the Nervii have conquered the Romans if they had had more [of] training?

LESSON XXIX

Conditions in Indirect Discourse: 153, 156, 157, 158.

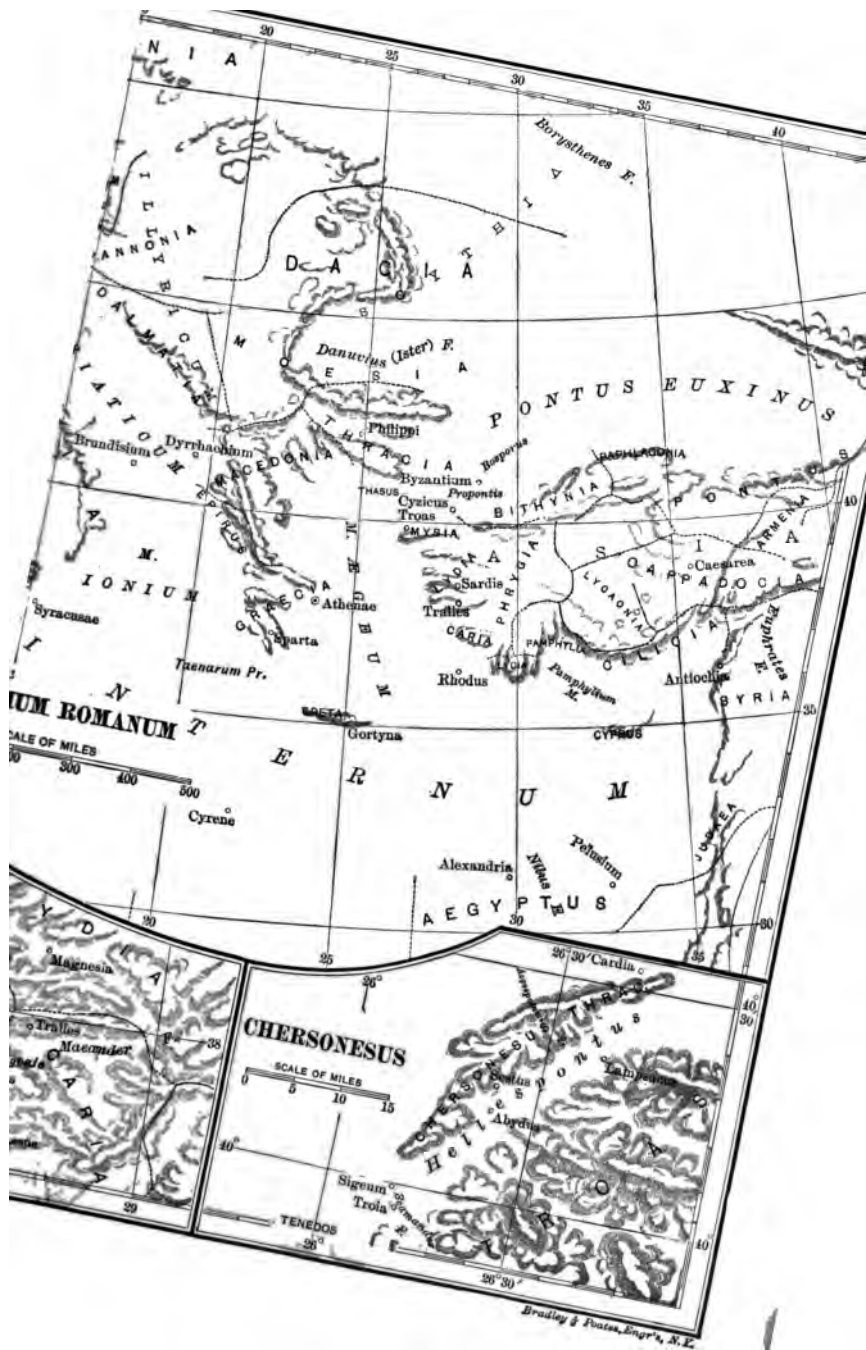
Exercise

1. (a) If Caesar fights, he conquers. (b) Write (a) depending on **dicō**. (c) Write (a) depending on **dixi**.
2. (a) If Caesar has fought, he has conquered. (b) Write (a) depending on **dicō**. (c) Write (a) depending on **dixi**.
3. (a) If Caesar fights [future], he will conquer. (b) Write (a) depending on **dicō**. (c) Write (a) depending on **dixi**.
4. (a) If Caesar should fight, he would conquer. (b) Write (a) depending on **dicō**. (c) Write (a) depending on **dixi**.
5. If the Aduatuci heard (of) that battle, they returned home. 6. I shall tell you that, if the Aduatuci heard (of) that battle, they returned home. 7. Although their town was surrounded by fortifications, on one side [**pars**] (there) was an easy approach. 8. When we were approaching the walls, they made several sallies out of the town. 9. If we [shall] resist them very bravely, we shall gain possession of the town. 10. Caesar said that, if his men should resist them very bravely, they would get possession of the town. 11. After we had built a tower, we began to move it toward the wall. 12. The Aduatuci thought that, if we were able to do this, we had the help of the gods. 13. The result was that they sent ambassa-











SECOND YEAR LATIN

FOR SIGHT READING

SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR AND
NEPOS

BY

ARTHUR L. JANES

BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN

COPYRIGHT, 1911, BY

ARTHUR L. JANES.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

SECOND YEAR LATIN.

E - P 1

PREFACE

THE conviction has long been growing that pupils, in their study of Latin, are not gaining all they should in power to translate; that too much effort is expended on syntax and on thumbing the vocabulary. In most schools this intensive work of the second year has been limited to the first four books of Caesar's *Gallic War*. Students have learned to depend on notes and vocabulary rather than upon themselves. They have done little independent thinking. In this way they have spent much time and yet have made scanty progress in ability to translate, and have lost all opportunity to read the more interesting parts of Books V, VI, and VII of the *Gallic War*, the very important and highly entertaining narrative of the *Civil War*, and the attractive *Lives* of Nepos. To remedy these conditions is the purpose of this book.

Selections have been made from Books III-VII of the *Gallic War*, from Book III of the *Civil War*, and from Nepos. All words which Professor Lodge in *The Vocabulary of High School Latin* has shown should be mastered by the end of the second year are printed in full-faced type in the text where they first occur. These words with their meanings and forms, together with all other first occurrences, are given in the page vocabularies. The meanings—but not the forms—of others are repeated where necessary, so that pupils will carry in mind only that definite and limited list of words which Professor

Lodge has shown to be of frequent occurrence and of the greatest value.

The footnotes include the meanings of the less usual words, unusual meanings of common words, hints on derivation and translation, and synonyms. Matters of syntax and history have been reduced to a minimum.

The chapter on word formation has been made short and simple with the thought that much of this work should be postponed till later in the course.

The editor wishes to acknowledge his gratitude to the many teachers of Latin who have given helpful suggestions, and especially to Dr. Ernst Riess, Chairman of the Department of Ancient Languages in the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, who has carefully read the entire manuscript.

ARTHUR L. JANES.

BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN.

SIGHT TRANSLATION

THIS volume contains considerably more Latin than is generally read in the second year. The purpose of the additional matter is that the teacher may be given a comparatively wide range of choice and *not* that a much greater amount be read. It cannot be too strongly urged that teachers should exercise the utmost care lest sight translation become a matter of quantity rather than of quality, and lest the pupil think that translation is the result of combining memory with guesswork. It must be understood that the purpose of sight translation is the development of power — not the careless reading of much Latin. The difference between sight translation and the prepared translation is one not of quantity but simply of method. In sight translation, only that information is given which is absolutely and wholly new to the pupil. For the rest he must depend upon his own experience and ingenuity.

It is suggested that a large part of this sight work be done in class. The pupil should be urged to follow closely and get whatever he can from the sentence as the Latin is carefully read by the teacher. The reading may be repeated several times and the meaning brought out so far as possible by careful accentuation. The pupil may then be asked to give the meaning of the sentence in a general way. This may be followed by a rereading by phrases in order of occurrence, and the main import of each phrase and its relation to others should be under-

stood before it is left. The meaning of many phrases is so clear that translation will be found unnecessary. Another reading by the teacher will serve to make the various parts of the sentence fall into their proper relations in the student's mind. Following this a pupil may be asked to give in his own words—with the text before him—not a translation but the full and complete meaning of the sentence as it appears to him. By this method, much of the slavish adherence to Latin idioms will be avoided.

The text covered in this way may be the assigned translation for the next recitation when syntax and forms may be considered as fully as desired. It should be remembered, however, that syntactical questions should be asked simply for the purpose of ascertaining the pupil's knowledge of the bearing of the phrase or word on the meaning of the sentence and not for the purpose of attaching labels to ablatives and subjunctives.

C. IULII CAESARIS DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER TERTIUS

Caesar sends Galba against the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni. Galba goes into winter quarters at Octodurus.

1. Cum in Ītaliā proficiscerētur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque misit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad
5 summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod¹ iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum

INCIPIT LIBER III FELICITER
Cum in Italia proficisceretur Caesar servum galbā cum legione et
a parte equitatus in nantuatos veragros sedunosque misit qui

Beginning of the Third Book of the *Gallic War*, from a manuscript of the tenth century. Reduced one half.

portōriis² mercātōrēs ire cōsuērant,³ patefierī volēbat. Huic permisit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandi causā collocāret. Galba, secundis⁴
10 aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantu-

aliquot, indecl. adj., *several*.

1. quod iter . . . patefierī:
preserve the Latin order in
translation; iter is subject of
patefierī.

2. customs duty.

3. (Contracted from cōsuēve-
rant): *were* (lit. *had become*) ac-
customed.

4. Translate the five ablatives ab-
solute by short, simple sentences.

ātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octōdūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in **valle**, nōn magnā¹ adiectā plānitīē,² altissimis montibus undique continētur. Cum³
 5 hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vicī Gallis concessit, alteram vacuum ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit.

The mountain tribes revolt and occupy near-by heights.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frū-
 10 mentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī quam Gallis concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitudīne Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id⁴ aliquot⁵ dē causis acciderat, ut
 15 subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem ūnam, neque⁶ eam plēnissimam, dētractīs⁷ cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātīm, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus⁸ propter paucitātem dēspiciē-

vallēs, vallis, f., a valley.

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, add;

cf. **ad + iaciō:** adiectā as an adj.,

lying near.

attribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtum,

assign.

renovō, I, renew; cf. **novus.**

plēnus, -a, -um, full.

singillātīm, adv.; cf. **singulī.**

paucitās, paucitātis, f.; cf. **paucī.**

1. nōn magnā = parvā.

2. *plain.*

3. Causal.

4. Explained by ut . . . caperent.

5. aliquot dē causis: these reasons are (1) quod . . . dēspiciēbant, (2) quod . . . existimābant,

(3) quod . . . dolēbant, and

(4) (quod) . . . habēbant.

6. *and not.*

7. dētractis . . . absentibus: these ablatives absolute give the reasons for neque eam plēnissimam.

8. Abl. abs. with complūribus.

bant;¹ tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem² locī, cum ipsi³ ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla concicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinēri existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs
 5 abstractōs obsidum⁴ nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs⁵ nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possēssiōnis⁶ culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

The Romans, called to a council, determine to defend their position.

3. His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hiber-
 10 nōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frumentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sentiētiās exquirere⁷ coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tan-
 15 tum repentinī periculī⁸ praeter opiniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur neque subsidiō⁹ veniri¹⁰ neque commeātūs supportārī¹¹ interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eius modī senten-
 20 tiae dicēbantur, ut impedimentis relictis ēruptiōne factā

abstrahō; cf. trahō.

culmen, culminis, n., *top.*

adiungō; cf. iungō.

1. *despised.*

2. *propter inīquitātem: on account of the unfavorable character; modifies sustinēri.*

3. The mountaineers.

4. *obsidum nōmine: as (lit. under the name of) hostages.*

5. *Rōmānōs . . . adiungere; tells the fact which sibi persuāsum habēbant.*

6. *Sc. causā.*

7. *ask for.*

8. Partitive gen. with *tantum*.

9. *Dat. of purpose.*

10. Impersonal and passive, but translate as personal and active. Supply *posset* from *pos-*

11. *Cf. portō.*

isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen parti placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experiri¹ et castra dēfendere.

The Romans are attacked and outnumbered.

5 4. Brevī spatiō interiectō,² vix ut iis rēbus³ quas cōnstituissent comparandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs⁴ ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī primō integrīs⁵ vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre⁶ neque ūllum frūstrā
10 tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc⁷ superārī, quod diūturnitātē⁸ pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs⁹ vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum¹⁰ ā nostris
15 propter paucitātem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo¹¹ dēfessō¹² ex pugnā excēdendī,¹³ sed nē sauciō quidem eius loci ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

gaesum, -ī, n., *heavy javelin*.
integer, -gra, -grum, *untouched, fresh*.

frūstrā, *in vain*.
saucius, -a, -um, *wounded, hurt, injured*.

1. experiri and dēfendere: subjects of placuit. Trans.: *the majority voted to try, etc., and to defend*.

2. Cf. iaciō.

3. Dative.

4. Nom. as subject of the historical infinitives decurrere and conicere: so also nostrī . . . prōpugnāre, line 9, etc.

5. integrīs vīribus: abl. abs., denoting time.

6. Note the force of the prō in prōpugnāre.

7. Abl. of specification.

8. long duration.

9. integrīs vīribus: abl. of description.

10. Partitive gen. with nihil.

11. nōn modo: sc. nōn.

12. dēfessō, sauciō: indirect objects of dabātur.

13. excēdendī, loci relinquendī, suī recipiendī: modify facultās.

After a six hours' battle, Galba decides upon a sally.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris
sex continenter pugnārētur,¹ ac
nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla
nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs
5 ācrius instārent, languidiōribus-
que² nostris vāllum scindere et
fossās complēre coepissent, rēs-
que esset iam ad extrēmum per-
ducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus,
10 primī pili centuriō, quem³ Ner-
vicō proeliō complūribus cōn-
fectum vulneribus diximus, et
item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus
militum, vir et cōsiliū magnī et
15 virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt⁴
atque ūnam esse spem salūtis
docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrē-
mum auxilium experirentur. Ita-
que convocātis centuriōnibus ce-
20 leriter militēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent⁵
proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex
labōre **reficerent**, post datō signō ex castris ērumperent
atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.



Centurion

languidus, -a, -um, *listless*.
scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum, *split*,
cut down. Cf. rescindō.
pīlus, -ī, m., with **primus**, *of the*
first rank (in a legion).

Nervicus, -a, -um, *of the Nervii*.
tantummodo, *only*.
reficiō; cf. faciō.
ēruppō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum,
burst forth.

1. *had been (and was still being) fought.*

2. **languidiōribus nostris**: abl. abs. of cause.

3. Subject of **cōnfectum (esse)**.

4. *rushed up.*

5. This, together with the four following subjunctives, represents imperative of direct discourse.

The Gauls are completely routed. Galba goes into winter quarters.

6. Quod iussī¹ sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis
 ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque suī²
 colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita com-
 mūtātā³ fortunā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum
 5 vēnerant undique circumventōs intercipiunt,⁴ et ex ho-
 minum milibus⁵ amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum
 ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā
 reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis
 quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus
 10 hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque⁶ exūtis sē in castra mūni-
 tiōnesque suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod
 saepius fortunam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō⁷ sē
 in hiberna cōsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis⁷ occurrisse
 rēbus⁸ vidēbat, maximē frūmentī commeātusque inopiā
 15 permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vicī aedificiis in-
 cēnsis, in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nūllō hoste
 prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem
 in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hie-
 māvit.

colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *col-
lect.*

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum,
stand together, stand firm.

Here impersonal, *it was agreed,
 it was ascertained.*

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour,
 throw, rout.*

exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtum, *draw
 off, despoil.*

meminī, meminisse, defective, the
 perfect, pluperf., and future perf.
 having the meanings of the pres.,
 imperf., and future respectively,
remember.

dēmoror, 1; cf. moror.

1. iussī sunt: sc. facere, of
 which quod is object.

2. suī colligendī: of collecting
 themselves, i.e. of rallying.

3. changed.

4. cut off; cf. intercept.

5. ex milibus: modifies tertiā
 parte.

6. Abl. of separation with
 exūtis which agrees with cōpiis.

7. one, other.

8. conditions.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 7-16

In northwestern Gaul, a revolt breaks out which is led by the Veneti, a seafaring tribe. To meet them, Caesar orders a fleet built, and places Brutus in command, while other staff officers are sent to engage the attention of certain other revolting tribes. Because of the peculiar situation of their towns, the Veneti for a time prolong the revolt. But when Caesar's new fleet arrives, the enemy is out-maneuvered and utterly defeated.

Sabinus goes north against the Venelli, encamps and refuses battle.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iis cōpiis quās ā Caesare accēperat in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperiū tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae
 5 dēfēcērant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque his paucis diēbus¹ Aulerci Eburovicēs Lexoviique senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt² sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magnaue praeterea multītūdō undique
 10 ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat; aliōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotidiānō labōre sēvocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris³ sēsē tenēbat, cum⁴ Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prō-
 15 ductis cōpiis pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus⁵ in contemptiōnem Sabīnus veniret, sed

auctor, auctōris, m., *promoter*; here, *responsible for*.

perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *give over, ruin*. As an adj. here.

latrō, latrōnis, m., *robber, thief, brigand*.

agricultūra, -ae, f.; cf. *ager + colō, cultivate*.

sēvocō, i, *call aside*.

contemptiō, contemptiōnis, f.; cf. Eng. *contempt*.

1. Abl. of time within which.

2. *closed*.

3. Abl. of means.

4. Concessive.

5. Dative of reference: trans., *in the eyes of the enemy*.

etiam nostrorum militum vōcibus nōnnihil carperētur ; tantamque opīniōnem¹ timōris prae-buit ut iam ad vāllum castrorum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitudīne² hostium, prae-
 5 sertim eō absente quī summam imperiī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmican-dum nōn existimābat.

Sabinus by stratagem induces the enemy to attack.

18. Hāc cōfirmatā opīniōne timōris idōneum quen-dam hominem et **callidum** dēlēgit, Gallum,³ ex iis⁴ quōs
 10 auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā⁵ ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet⁶ neque⁷ longius
 15 abesse quā proximā nocte Sabinus **clam** ex castris exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs **occāsiōnem** negōtiī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse,

carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptum, *cen-sure*.

opportunitās, opportunitātis, f., *favorable chance*.

callidus, -a, -um, *shrewd, clever, crafty*.

pollicitātiō, pollicitātiōnis, f.; cf.

polliceor.

ēdoceō; cf. doceō.

clam, *secretly*.

occāsiō, occāsiōnis, f., *chance, op-portunity*.

bene, melius, optimē, adv.; cf. bonus.

1. *impression*.

2. *cum . . . multitudīne*: modifies dīmican-dum.

3. *a Gaul*.

4. *(one) of those*.

5. *prō perfugā*: *as though a deserter*.

6. *docet* has as objects quibus . . . premātur and neque longius abesse, etc.

7. *neque . . . quā*: lit. *and it was not farther away but that*. abesse has for subject quā . . . proficiscātur.

ad castra iri oportere. Multae res¹ ad hoc cōsiliū Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum,² cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn³ prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dimittunt quam ab iis sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut⁴ explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultisque collēctīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant,⁵ ad castra pergunt.

Sabinus gains a complete victory.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab imō acclivis⁶ circiter⁷ passūs⁸ mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, exanimātiq̄ue pervēnērunt. Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus⁹ signum dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est¹⁰ opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscentiā ac dēfatigā-

cunctātiō, cunctātiōnis, f., *delay*.

cōfirmātiō, cōfirmātiōnis, f.; cf. cōfirmō.

parum, minus, minimē, *too little, not sufficiently*; cf. parvus.

laetus, -a, -um, *glad*.

sarmentum, -ī, n., *twig*.

virgulta, -ōrum, n., *brambles*.

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *keep straight, proceed*.

īnscentia, -ae, f.; cf. sciō.

dēfatigātiō, dēfatigātiōnis, f., *weariness*.

1. Explained by the four following noms. and quod . . . crēdunt.

2. *food supplies*.

3. nōn prius . . . quam: *no sooner . . . than*.

4. *as though*.

5. Subjunctive of purpose.

6. *sloping upward*.

7. Adv.

8. Acc. of extent with acclivis.

9. Sc. eis as indir. obj. of dat.

10. factum est = *it turned out*. opportūnitāte = *favorable character*. This and the following abls. denote cause.

tiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitā-
 tiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac¹
 statim terga verterent. Quōs integris viribus militēs
 nostri cōsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt;
 5 reliquōs equitēs² cōsectātī paucōs³ qui ex fugā ēvāserant
 reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā
 Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victoriā Caesar certior factus est,
 cīvitatēque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam
 ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est
 10 animus,⁴ sic mollis ac minimē resistēns⁵ ad calāmitātēs
 perferendās mēns⁶ eōrum est.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 20-22

Crassus, realizing that he must meet a foe who has in former engagements vanquished Roman armies, takes unusual precautions. The Sotiates in Aquitania make an unsuccessful attack on the Romans and later, after entrapping Crassus in an ambush, are again routed and their town is seized. Their chief, Adiatunnus, attempts to escape with his six hundred faithful followers, but fails.

Crassus urges the enemy to fight.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari commōtī, quod oppidum⁷ et nātūrā loci et manū mūni-

cōsector, 1, the frequentative
 form of cōsequor.
 ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, go
 forth, escape.

nāvālis, -e; cf. nāvis.
 alacer, -cris, -cre, eager.
 prōptus, -a, -um, ready.
 mollis, -e, weak.

1. but.

2. Nominative.

3. Obj. of reliquērunt.

4. spirit.

5. sturdy.

6. purpose.

7. Subject of expugnātum
 (esse).

tum¹ paucis diebus² quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitātēs lēgāti quae sunt citeriōris Hispaniae³ finitimae⁴ Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque
 5 arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū⁵ magnā cum auctōritāte⁶ et magnā cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō ii dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei
 10 militāris habēre existimābantur. Hi cōnsuetūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere,⁷ castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituunt. Quod⁸ ubi Crassus animadvertit⁹ suās cōpiās propter exiguitatem¹⁰ nōn facile didūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et¹¹ castris satis
 15 praesidiū relinquere, et ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī,¹² in diēs¹³ hostium numerum augērī, nōn **cunctandum** existimāvit quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentire intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae¹⁴
 20 cōstituit.

quōqueversus, *in every direction*;
 cf. quōque + vertō.
 didūcō; cf. dūcō.

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,
besiege.
 cunctor, *I, delay.*

1. Here an adj.
2. diēbus and quibus: each an abl. of time within which, *within a few days after they had arrived there.*
3. Predicate gen. of possession.
4. Agrees with quae and governs the dat. Aquitāniae.
5. Abl. of cause.

6. *assurance.*
7. Here, *select.*
8. *and so.*
9. Introduces the six following infinitives.
10. *small number.*
11. *and still.*
12. Cf. portō.
13. in diēs: *day by day.*
14. Dative.

The enemy refuses battle and Crassus attacks them.

24. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici aciē institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōsiliū caperent exspectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse¹ arbitrābantur obsessis viis commeātū interclūsō sine vulnere victōriā potiri et, si propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Rōmāni sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis² infirmiorēs animō adoriri cōgitābant.³ Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne⁴ atque opiniōne⁵ timōris hostēs⁶ nostrōs militēs alacriorēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectari
15 diūtius nōn oportere⁷ quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suos omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

The enemy make a strong defense, but Crassus is informed that the rear of the camp is weak.

25. Ibi cum⁸ alii fossās complērent, alii multis telis coniectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent,
20 auxiliārēsq̄, quibus nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat,

tūtō, adv. ; cf. tūtus.

infirmus, -a, -um ; cf. firmus.

dēpellō, -ere, dēpuli, dēpulsum ;
cf. pellō.

auxiliāris, -e, an adj. used here
as a noun, as often in the
plural ; cf. auxiliū.

1. The subject is potiri.

2. baggage.

3. planned.

4. Cf. cunctor.

5. appearance.

6. Nominative.

7. Depends on the idea of saying found in vōcēs.

8. Introduces complērent, dēpellerent, and praebērent.

ad pugnam lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis¹ et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium praebērent, cum² item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō
 5 superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circum-
 itis³ hostium castris Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse diligentīā ab⁴ decumānā⁵ portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habēre.

Crassus charges the camp and kills three fourths of the enemy.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut mag-
 10 nīs praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri vellet ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductis iīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castris relictæ intritæ ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductis,⁶ nē ex hostium castris cōspici posset, omnium oculis mentibusque
 15 ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eās quās diximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutis prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī⁷ aut quid rei gererētur cōgnōsci posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātis⁸ vīribus, quod⁹ plē-
 20 rumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi dē-

caespes, caespitis, m., sod.

circumēd; cf. eō.

excitō, 1, arouse, spur on.

intritus, -a, -um, unworn, un-
 wearied.

intendō, -ere, -tendī, tentum,
 direct toward.

prōruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, destroy,
 break down.

plānē, clearly.

1. furnishing.

2. Introduces pugnārētur and
 acciderent.

3. Abl. abs. with castris:
 after riding around the camp.

4. from the side of.

5. rear.

6. Modifies cohortibus.

7. Sc. posset from posset.

8. Cf. integer.

9. Refers to ācrius impugnāre
 and is therefore neuter singular.

spērātis omnibus rēbus sē per¹ mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis campis cōsectātus ex milium L. numerō, quae² ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, 5 vix quārtā parte relictā multā³ nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Nearly all Aquitania surrenders.

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō misit, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, 10 Elusātēs, Gatēs, Ausci, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae⁴ ultimae nātiōnēs anni tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems suberat,⁵ id facere neglēxērunt.

Caesar proceeds against the Morini and Menapii, but they retreat to the swamps.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī 15 Menapiique supererant⁶ qui in armīs essent neque⁷ ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui⁸ longē aliā ratiōne ac⁹ reliquī Gallī¹⁰ bellum gerere coe-

campus, -i, m., *plain*.
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter*.

exigō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, *finish*,
complete.

1. *over*.

2. Refers to *mīlium* and is subject of *convēnisse*, which in turn is subject of *cōstābat*; transl. *which it was understood had come*, etc.

3. *multā nocte*: *late at night*.

4. *only a few*.

5. *was near at hand*.

6. *were left*.

7. *and . . . not*.

8. *but they*.

9. *than*.

10. Sc. *gerēbant* as predicate.

pērunť. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, **continentēs**que silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaue omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar
 5 pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius¹
 10 impeditiōribus² locīs secūti paucōs ex suis dēperdiderunt.³

Caesar lays waste their country and then goes into winter quarters.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās **caedere** instituit et, nē quis⁴ inermibus⁵ imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam **māteriam**
 15 quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōfectō, cum iam **pecus** atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur,⁶ ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eiusmodi sunt **tempestātēs**
 20 cōsecūtae uti opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus militēs continēri

continēns, **continentis**, adj.; cf. **teneō**.

ēvolō, I, *rush forth*.

deinceps, adv., *one after another*.

caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum, *fell, cut*.

imprūdēns, **imprudentis**, *unwary*.

māteria, -ae, f., *material, timber*.

pecus, **pecoris**, n., *cattle, sheep*.

tempestās, **tempestātis**, f.; cf. Eng. *tempest*.

continuātiō, **continuātiōnis**, f.; cf. Eng. *continuation*.

imber, **imbris**, m., *rain*.

1. *too far*.

2. *rather difficult*.

3. *lost*.

4. Modifies *impetus*.

5. *inermibus . . . militibus*: abl. abs.

6. *were on the point of being seized*.

nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiīsque incēnsis Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs, Lexoviīs, reliquīs item cīvitatibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs collocāvit.

LIBER QUARTUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1-19

At this time practically all Gaul is under subjection to Rome. But Caesar realizes that the Germans menace the eastern border. Already two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, who have been driven from their homes, have crossed the Rhine into Gaul and conquered the Menapii. Caesar fears an alliance between Gauls and Germans, and determines to make war on the Germans. He tells the Usipetes and the Tencteri that there is no place for them in Gaul, but that they may settle in the territory of the Ubii just east of the Rhine. They delay their reply to this suggestion, and make a treacherous but successful attack on the Romans.

Prominent Germans come to Caesar to apologize for the attack, but are thrown into chains. Caesar makes a sudden attack upon the Germans, and slays nearly all of them. That the Germans east of the Rhine may be duly impressed, Caesar decides to cross the river. He builds a bridge in the extraordinarily short time of ten days, crosses, ravages the neighboring country, recrosses, and destroys the bridge.

Caesar decides upon an expedition to Britain, but can get little information about the country.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis¹ hostibus² nostris inde
5 subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo **īnsulam** adisset, genus hominum perspē-

exiguus, -a, -um, small.

īnsula, -ae, f., island.

1. Abl. of time when.

2. Indir. obj. of **subministrāta**.

xisset, loca, **portūs**, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē¹ praeter mercātōrēs **illō** adit quisquam, neque hīs² ipsis quicquam praeter ōram³ maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt
 5 contrā Galliam **nōtum est**. Itaque vocātis⁴ ad sē undique mercātōribus neque⁵ quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī⁶ essent ad maiōrem⁷ nāvium multitudinem idōneī
 10 portūs, reperīre poterat.

To gather information Caesar sends Volusenus, who proves unequal to the task.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus
 15 cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs⁸ undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et quam⁹ superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat **classem** iubet convenīre. Interim, cōsiliō eiūs cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad
 20 Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitātibus ad eum lē-

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor*.

incōgnitus, -a, -um, adj.; cf. cōgnōscō.

illō, *to that place*.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum, *learn*; in perf. tenses, *know*.

trāiectus, -ūs, m., *passage*.

classis, classis. f., *fleet*.

1. *readily*.

2. Dative with **nōtum est**, refers to the traders.

3. *coast*.

4. **vocātis** . . . **mercātōribus**: abl. abs. denoting concession.

5. **neque quanta**: introduce a

series of indir. questions which are the objects of **reperīre**.

6. Agrees with **portūs**.

7. *rather large*.

8. **nāvēs**, **classem**: subjects of **convenīre**.

9. Its antecedent is **classem**.

gātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō
populi Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītis liberāliter
pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent¹
eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium,² quem ipse
5 Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et



Navis Longa.

virtūtem et cōsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse
arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī³
habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat⁴ civi-
tātēs, hortēturque⁴ ut populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur,
10 sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.⁴ Volusēnus per-
spectis regiōnibus, quantum⁵ ei facultātis dari potuit quī
obtemperō, 1, obey. fidēlis, -e; cf. fidēs.

1. Cf. *maneō*.2. Object of *mittit*.

3. Genitive of value.

4. Subjunctives expressing

command after *imperat*.5. *quantum* . . . quī: lit.
*how much of opportunity could
be given to him who.*

nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 22-31

Caesar prepares a fleet, crosses with part of his army to Britain, and after a sharp encounter with the natives effects a landing. The Britons retreat, but Caesar from lack of cavalry cannot pursue them. A few tribes submit, but Caesar determines to await his cavalry before he advances farther. The transports in which his cavalry sail are driven back by a storm, and the fleet is nearly wrecked. The Britons, seeing their chance, plan to rebel. Caesar, however, realizes what their intentions are, repairs his fleet, and makes ready for emergencies.

One Roman legion, separated from the others, is attacked by the Britons.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā
5 frūmentātum¹ missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque
ullā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars
hominum² in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra venti-
tāret, ii quī prō portis castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī
nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam³ cōnsuētūdō ferret
10 in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.
Caesar id⁴ quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris
initum cōsiliī, cohortēs⁵ quae in statiōne erant sēcum in
eam partem proficīsci, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem suc-
cēdere, reliquās armārī⁶ et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit.
15 Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hosti-

frūmentor, 1, *forage*.

ventitō, 1, frequentative of veniō.

pulvis, pulveris, m., *dust*.

cōnfestim, *hastily*.

1. Supine showing the purpose of missā.

2. *i.e.* the Britons.

3. quam cōnsuētūdō ferret:
lit. *than custom raised*.

4. Explained by aliquid . . . cōsiliī. id quod erat: *the fact*.

5. Subject of proficīsci.

6. *to arm themselves*.

bus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna¹ erat reliqua, suspicāti hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs
 5 noctū in silvis dēlituerant; tum dispersōs² dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectis reliquōs incertīs³ ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 33-35

The Romans are thrown into confusion by the war chariots of the Britons, but Caesar frees the legion from its dangerous position. The enemy collect in large numbers, attack the Romans, and are defeated.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem
 10 dē pāce vērērunt. Hīs⁴ Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat dūplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā⁵ diē aequinoctiī infirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam
 15 noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex iis onerāriæ duae eōdem

dēmetō, -ere, -messui, -messum, *reap.*

dēlitēscō, -ere, -litui, —, *hide.*

metō; cf. dēmetō.

incertus, -a, -um; cf. certus.

essedum, -i, n., *chariot.*

duplicō, i, *double.*

aequinoctium, -i, n., *the equinox;*
 cf. *aequus + nox.*

nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōnis, f., *sailing.*

solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtum, *loosen;*
 with nāvēs, *weigh anchor.*

onerārius, -a, -um (with nāvēs),
transports; cf. Eng. freighters.

1. *only one.*

2. Agrees with nostrōs.

3. incertīs ordinibus: abl. abs. of cause.

4. Dative of reference.

5. propinquā diē and infirmīs nāvibus: abls. abs. of cause, modifying subiciendam.

portūs, quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō
inf̄rā dēlātae sunt.

The Morini attack part of the Romans as they return to Gaul.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi milites cir-
citer trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos
5 Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pācātōs reliquerat, spē
praedae adducti primō¹ nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō
circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere
iussērunt. Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter
ad² clāmōrem hominum³ circiter milia sex convēnērunt.
10 Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum
suis auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostri milites impetum ho-
stium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē
pugnāvērunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex
eis occidērunt. Postea⁴ vērō quam equitātus noster in
15 cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armīs terga vertērunt
magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

Labienus conquers the Morini, and the army goes into winter quarters.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis
legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī
rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs
20 palūdum quō⁵ sē recipere nōn habērent, quō perfugiō

inf̄rā, adv., below.

expōnō; cf. pōnō; in pass., dis-
embark.

trecenti, -ae, -a; cf. trēs + cen-
tum.

praeda, -ae, f., booty.

orbis, orbis, m., circle.

abicio, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum; cf.
iaciō.

rebelliō, rebellīōnis, f.; cf. re +
bellō.

siccitās, siccitātis, f., drought,
drying out.

perfugium, -i, n., refuge, retreat.

1. Adverb.

2. ad clāmōrem: at their shout.

3. Modifies milia.

4. postea . . . quam: after.

5. quō . . . habērent: lit. had
not where they might retreat.

superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem
Labiēni vērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī,
quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus
eōrum agris vāstātīs, frūmentis succīs, aedificiīs in-
5 cēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās
abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in
Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae
omninō civitātēs ex Britannīā obsidēs misērunt, reliquae
neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris
10 diērum vīginti supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est

succidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut down*.

LIBER QUINTUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1-5

Caesar realizes on his return to Gaul that, for a successful invasion of Britain, he needs a large army and fleet. He gives instructions that they be made ready, and goes himself to quiet a threatened disturbance among the Treveri. Upon his return a fleet of 800 ships and five legions with 2000 cavalry are found ready.

Treachery of Dumnorix.

6. Erat unā cum ceteris¹ Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante² ā nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallōs
5 auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat hūc quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferēbant, neque³ recusandi aut deprecandi⁴ causā legatos ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus⁵ Caesar cognoverat. Ille⁶ omnibus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerentur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timēret, partim quod religionibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam id obstinātē sibi

insuetus, -a, -um, *unaccustomed, unused.*

navigō, I, *sail.*

mare, maris, n., *sea.*

religiō, religiōnis, f., *religion, scruples.*

obstinātē, *firmly, stubbornly, resolutely.*

1. *the others.*

2. In Bk. I, 18-20.

3. *and yet.*

4. *of begging off.*

5. *i.e.* friends of Dumnorix.

6. *i.e.* Dumnorix.

negārī vidit, omni spē impetrandi **adēptā** principēs Galliae sollicitāre,¹ sēvocāre singulōs hortārique coepit ut in continentī remanērent; metū territāre.² Nōn sine causā fieri³ ut Gallia omni nōbilitate spoliārētur; id esse cōn-
 5 silium Caesaris, ut quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret: fidem reliquīs interpōnere,⁴ iūs iūrandum poscere ut quod⁵ esse ex⁶ ūsū Galliae intellēxissent commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem
 10 dēferēbantur.

Dumnorix deserts and is slain.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum⁷ civitāti Aeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coērcendum⁸ atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorigem statuēbat et, quod longius eius āmentiam⁹ prōgredi vidēbat,
 15 prōspiciendum¹⁰ nē quid¹¹ sibi ac rei pūblicae **nocēre** posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus **ventus** nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuevit,

adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *remove.*

metus, metūs, m., *fear, anxiety, dread.*

territō, i, *alarm.*

spoliō, i, *strip.*

noceō, 2, *injure.*

commoror, i; cf. moror.

ventus, -i, m., *wind.*

flō, *blow.*

1. *tamper with.*

2. Historical inf.

3. fieri, esse: infs. in indir. disc. depending on the idea of saying in territāre.

4. interpōnere, poscere: historical infs. interpōnere: *pledge.*

5. quod . . . intellēxissent: noun clause, the object of administrārent.

6. ex ūsū: *to the advantage of.*

7. tantum dignitātis tribuēbat: *he paid so much respect.*

8. *control.*

9. *folly.*

10. prōspiciendum (esse): *he must see to it; depends on statuēbat.*

11. quid nocēre: *do any harm.*

dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō¹ tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet. At omnium animis impeditis
 5 Dumnorīx cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs insciente² Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis magnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahique³ imperat; sī vim faciat
 10 neque pareat,⁴ interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō⁵ sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī⁶ praesentis⁷ imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis. Illi, uterat
 15 imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Aedui ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 8-11

About the 20th of July B.C. 54 Caesar sets sail, and arrives in Britain on the next day. The Britons offer no objections to his landing, but, upon the Romans' advance inland, resistance is made, which proves unsuccessful. Caesar is compelled to return to his fleet because of news that his ships have been wrecked by a storm. While he is making repairs, the Britons unite against him.

cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsū, climb up, embark.

postpōnō; cf. pōnō.

retrahō; cf. trahō.

sānus, -a, -um, sensible.

clāmitō, ī, shout out.

1. nihilō tamen sētius: but nevertheless.

2. Cf. sciō.

3. The infinitive with imperō is rare.

4. obey.

5. prō sānō: as a sensible person.

6. since he.

7. Sc. ipsius (Caesaris).

Caesar's description of Britain and its inhabitants, which, however, contains many inaccuracies.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur quōs¹ nātōs in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum² dicunt, maritima pars³ ab iis quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē isdem nōminibus civitātum 5 appellantur quibus ortī ex civitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt.



Silver denarius, struck 38–36 B.C., enlarged to twice the original size. Obverse: head of Caesar. Reverse: standard, eagle, plow, scepter.

Hominum est infīnita multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō aureō aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus exāminātis prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum⁴

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, *till, cultivate.*

infinitus, -a, -um; cf. finis.

nummus, -ī, m., *money, coin.*

aureus, -a, -um, *gold.*

tālea, -ae, f., *bar.*

ferreus, -a, -um, *iron.*

exāminō, ī, *weigh.*

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead.*

1. quōs nātōs (esse): subject of prōditum (esse): transl., *whose origin on the island itself is handed down, they say, by tradition.*

2. *handed down.*

3. Sc. incolitur.

4. plumbum album: *white lead, here tin.*

album in mediterrâneis regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua¹ est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et ānserem gustāre fās² nōn putant; haec tamen alunt³ animī voluptātisque⁴ causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frigoribus.⁵

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter⁶ angulus, qui est ad 10 Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior⁷ ad meridiem⁸ spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter milia passuum quīngenta. Alterum⁹ vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia īnsula, dīmidio minor, ut 15 existimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatio trāsmis-sus atque¹⁰ ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae¹¹ īnsulae existimantur; dē quibus īsulīs nōnnūlli scripsērunt¹² diēs continuos

albus, -a, -um, *white*.

mediterrāneus, -ā, -um; cf.

medius + terra.

aes, aeris, n., *copper*.

fāgus, -ī, f., *beech tree*.

abiēs, abietis, f., *fir tree*.

lepus, leporis, m., *a hare*.

gallīna, -ae, f., *a hen*.

ānser, ānseris, m., *a goose*.

gustō, i, *taste*.

temperātus, -a, -um, *mild*.

remissus, -a, -um, *moderate*.

triquetrus, -a, -um, *triangular*.

angulus, -ī, m., *angle*.

appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum; cf. pellō.

occidēns, occidentis, *falling, setting*.

dīmidius, -a, -um, *divided in the middle*; cf. dī + medius. Here a subst., *half*.

trāsmisus, -ūs, m.; cf. mittō.

1. *limited*.

2. *right*.

3. *raise*.

4. *pleasure*.

5. *the cold*.

6. *the one*.

7. Correlative with *alter*.

8. *south*.

9. *the second (side)*.

10. *as*.

11. Sc. *esse*.

12. *have written*.

xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percon-
tātiōnibus¹ reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā² mēnsūrīs
breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus.
Huius est longitūdō³ lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō,
5 dcc mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui
partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus alter
maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc mīlium passuum
dccc in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īn-
sula est in circuitū viciēs centum mīlium passuum.

10 14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī
Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, ne-
que multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interi-
ōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne
vivunt pellibusque sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britanni
15 vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque
hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque⁴
sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte⁴ corporis rāsā praeter
caput et labrum superius.

brūma, -ae, f., *shortest day* (for
brevissima diēs), *midwinter*.

aqua, -ae, f., *water*.

mēnsūra, -ae, f., *measure, meas-
urement*.

viciēs, adv., *twenty times*; cf.
vīgintī.

hūmānus, -a, -um, *refined, civil-
ized*.

serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, *plant,
sow*.

lac, lactis, n., *milk*.

carō, carnis, n., *flesh*.

vivō, -ere, vixī, victum, *live*.

vestiō, 4, *clothe*.

vitrum, -ī, n., *wood* (a plant used
in dyeing).

inficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *put on,
stain*.

caeruleus, -a, -um, *sky-like, i.e.
blue*.

color, colōris, m., *color*.

horribilis, -e, *dreadful*.

aspectus, -ūs, m., *appearance*.

capillus, -ī, m., *hair*.

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let
grow*.

rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsum, *shave*.

labrum, -ī, n., *lip*.

1. *inquiries*.

2. Here refers to the "water-
clock," shaped like an hourglass.

3. Cf. *longus*.

4. Ablatives of description.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 15-23

The Britons engage the Romans in several battles, but are defeated in each instance. Cassivellaunus changes his tactics from pitched battles to harassing the Romans, but, influenced by the desertion of many tribes, finally submits.

Caesar quarters his army among various tribes for the winter.

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samaro-
brīvae **perāctō**, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā prop-
ter siccitātēs angustius prōvēnerat, coactus est aliter
ac¹ superiōribus annīs exercitum in hibernīs collocāre
5 legiōnēque in plūrēs civitatēs **distribuere**. Ex quibus
ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alte-
ram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōs-
ciō quaestōrī; quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in
cōfiniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Belgiō col-
10 locāvit; his M. Crassum quaestōrem et L. Munātium Plan-
cum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem,
quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscripserat, et cohortēs
quinque in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter
Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et
15 Catuvolcī erant, misit. His mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabi-
num et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.
Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus facillimē inopiae
rei frūmentāriae sēsē medēri posse existimāvit. Atque
hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hiberna, praeter eam²
20 quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem

**peragō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, accom-
plish, finish, hold.**

prōveniō; cf. veniō.

**distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtum,
assign, distribute.**

**cōfinium, -ī, n., neighborhood,
locality.**

**medeor, -ēri, —, with dative,
remedy.**

quiētus, -a, -um, calm.

1. *than.*

2. *Sc. legiōnem.*

dūcendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse intereā, **quoad** legiōnēs collocātās mūnitaque hiberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

An especial friend of Caesar is killed.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cuius maiōrēs in suā civitāte rēgnū obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus, maiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimici¹ palam multis² ex civitāte auctōribus³ interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod⁴ ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē civitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficisci iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque⁵ operā⁶ cōgnōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus lēgātīs quaestōribusque quibus legiōnēs trādiderat certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis⁷ esse mūnitum.

The Eburones attack the Roman camp.

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentinī tumultūs⁸ ac dēfectiōnis⁹ ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō, quī, cum¹⁰ ad finēs rēgnī sui

quoad, until.

benevolentia, -ae, f.; cf. bene + volō.

rēgnō, 1, reign.

palam, openly.

impulsus, -ūs, m., instigation.

comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēsum, catch, arrest.

1. Cf. amicus.
2. multis . . . auctōribus: abl. abs.
3. promoters.
4. quod . . . pertinēbat: because many were involved.

5. Has hōs for its antecedent.
6. Modifies interfectum.
7. Dative.
8. uprising.
9. revolt.
10. Concessive.

Sabinō Cottaeque praestō¹ fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī Trēverī nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressis lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vēnērunt. Cum
 5 celeriter nostri arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent atque, ūnā ex parte Hispānis equitibus ēmissis, equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī aliquī² ex nostris ad colloquium prōdīret:
 10 Habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui posse spērārent.

Ambiorix at a conference advises the Romans to withdraw.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quidam, quī iam ante missū³ Caesaris ad
 15 Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud⁴ quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimū eī⁵ cōnfītēri⁶ dēbēre, quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī⁷ et filius et frātris filius
 20 ā Caesare remissi essent, quōs Aduatuci obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnis tenuis-

praestō, adv., *at hand, ready, in readiness.*

concitō, I, *arouse.*

lignātōr, lignātōris, m., *wood-cutter.*

contrōversia, -ae, f., *quarrel.*

missus, -ūs, m.; cf. mittō.

cōnfiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum, *confess.*

liberō, I, *free.*

1. praestō fuissent: *they had offered their services.*

2. Singular.

3. missū Caesaris: *sent by Caesar.*

4. apud quōs: *in their presence.*

5. Caesar.

6. The main verb in indir. discourse.

7. Ambiorix.

sent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdicīō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis; suaque esse eiusmodi imperia ut nōn minus habēret iūris¹ in sē multitudō quam ipse in multitudinem.

5 Civitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentināe Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī² resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperitus³ rērum ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commūne

10 cōnsilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidio venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre⁴ potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūni libertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur. Quibus⁵ quoniam

15 prō⁶ pietāte sātisfēcirit,⁷ habēre nunc sē ratiōnem⁸ officiī prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitio ut suae ac militum salutī cōnsulat. Mag-nam manum Germānōrum conductam⁹ Rhēnum trāns-isse; hanc affore¹⁰ bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium¹¹

20 velintne, priusquam finitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hibernis milites aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter milia passuum circiter quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab iis absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre

coāctus, -ūs, m.; cf. cōgō.

porrō, furthermore.

humilitās, humilitātis, f., weak-ness.

adeō, to such an extent.

recuperō, I, recover.

pietās, pietātis, f., patriotism, loyalty.

1. power.

2. Cf. coniūrō.

3. Cf. peritus.

4. refuse.

5. Gauls.

6. as to.

7. appeased.

8. ratiōnem officiī: regard for his duty.

9. hired.

10. would be here.

11. cōnsilium velintne: it was their business (to consider) whether they wished.

iūrandō cōfirmāre, tūtum sē iter per suōs finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitatī sēsē cōnsulere,¹ quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesari prō eius meritis grātiā referre.¹ Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

The members of the council disagree.

- 5 28. Arpinēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illi repentinā rē perturbāti, etsi ab hoste ea dicēbantur, tamen nōn negligenda existimābant, maximeque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitatē ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō
10 bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum.² Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, magnaue inter eōs³ existit contrōversia.⁴ L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hibernīs iniussū⁵ Caesaris discēden-
15 dum existimābant; quantāsvis Ambiorīgis magnās etiam cōpiās Germānōrum sustinēri posse mūnitis hibernīs docēbant; rem⁶ esse testimōniō,⁷ quod primum hostium impetum multīs ultrō vulneribus illātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximis
20 hibernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius⁸ quam auctōre hoste dē summis rēbus capere cōnsilium?

levō, 1, *lighten, relieve.*

ignōbilis, -e; cf. nōbilis.

humilis, -e, *obscure.*

existō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *arise.*

quantusvis, quantavis, quantumvis; cf. quantus + volō.

postrēmō, *finally, lastly, in conclusion.*

1. Progressive present.

2. *to be believed.*

3. *i.e.* the councilors.

4. *dispute.*

5. *without the order.*

6. Refers to the *quod* clause.

7. *proof.*

8. *more disgraceful.*

Titurius expresses his opinion.

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat,¹ cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūctis² Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hibernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsionē.
 5 Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliā; neque aliter Carnutēs interficiendī Tasgeti cōnsilium fuisse³ cap-



Obsidio

tūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, si ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī⁴ ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē⁵ nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī⁶ Ariovisti mortem et superiōrēs nostrās

sērō, late, too late.

-
- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>shouted.</i> | 5. <i>sēsē . . . spectāre : he was not considering the enemy as his authority, but was looking at the facts.</i> |
| 2. <i>Cf. iungō.</i> | 6. <i>a source of grief.</i> |
| 3. <i>fuisse captūrōs : would have adopted.</i> | |
| 4. <i>Objective genitive.</i> | |

victōriās; ārdēre Galliam tot contumēliis acceptis sub populi Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā rei militāris exstīnctā. Postrēmō quis hoc¹ sibi² persuādēret, sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad eiusmodi cōnsilium
 5 dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in³ utramque partem esse tūtā: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānis cōsentiret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positā salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentirent
 10 cōnsilium quem habēre⁴ exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.

Sabinus disclaims responsibility.

30. Hāc in⁵ utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā primisque ordinibus ācritēr resisterētur, 'Vincite,'⁶
 15 inquit,⁷ 'sī ita vultis,' Sabinus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'quī gravissimē ex⁸ vōbīs mortis periculō terrear; hī⁹ sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem repos-

ārdēō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum, *burn.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, *destroy.*

dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsū, *descend, resort.*

dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsū, *disagree.*

exitus, -ūs, m., *outcome.*

obsidiō, obsidiōnis, f., *siege.*

disputātiō, disputātiōnis, f.; cf. putō.

clārus, -a, -um, *clear, loud.*

vōs, vestrum or vestrī, plu. of tū, *you.*

terreō, 2; cf. perterreō.

sapiō, -ere, sapivī, —, *understand.*

1. of this.

2. Refers to quis.

3. in utramque partem: for either contingency.

4. Infinitive is used because the question here is equivalent to a statement.

5. in utramque partem: on either side.

6. have your own way.

7. said.

8. ex vōbīs: used for a partit. gen. with quī.

9. i.e. militēs.

cent, quī, si per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hibernīs coniūctī commūnem cum reliquīs belli cāsum sustineant,¹ nōn rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō² aut famē intereant.’

Sabinus prevails.

5 31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt³ utrumque⁴ et ōrant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcant: Facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salutem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat⁵ Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. **Prōnūntiātur** primā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset,
15 quid ex instrūmentō hibernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur quārē nec sine periculō maneātur et languōre militum et vigiliis periculum augeātur. Primā lūce sic ex castris proficiscuntur ut⁶ quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximisque impedi-

repscō, -ere, —, —; cf. poscō.

perendinus, -a, -um, *after to-morrow.*

relēgō, I, *send away.*

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *perish.*

cōnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, *rise in a body.*

dissēnsiō, dissēnsiōnis, f.; cf. sentiō.

prōnūntiō, I, *declare.*

circumspiciō; cf. perspicio.

instrūmentum, -ī, n., *tool, equipment.*

excōgitō, I, *think out.*

languor, languōris, m., *weariness.*

1. sustineant (et) nōn intereant: *would bear (and) would not perish.*

2. sword.

3. they grasped by the hand.

4. Cotta and Sabinus.

5. dat manūs: *yielded.*

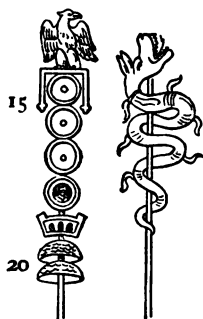
6. ut, etc.: *as (men) who had been persuaded that the plan had been offered.*

Sabinus and Cotta are attacked.

32. At hostēs, posteaquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātis insidiis bipertitō¹ in silvis opportunō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et, cum sē² maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmisisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque iniquissimō nostris³ locō proelium committere coepērunt.

The Romans are attacked by the Eburones.

10 33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre⁴ et concursāre⁴ cohortēsque dispōnere,⁴ haec⁵ tamen ipsa timidē atque ut⁶ eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque iis accidere cōnsuevit quī in ipsō negōtiō cōsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāisset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nullā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat; et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperātōris et in pugnā militis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut



Signa

convallis, convallis, f., *valley*.
trepidō, 1, *run about, become confused*.

concurō, 1, frequentative of concurrō.
obeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *perform*.

1. *in two bodies*.2. sē dēmisisset: *had gone*.

3. Dative.

4. Historical infinitives.

5. Sc. fēcit.

6. *in such a way that*.

impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōsiliū etsī in eiusmodī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effecit, 5 quōd nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgō milites ab signis discēderent, quaeque¹ quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properāret et clamōre et flētū² omnia complē- 10 rentur.

Battle plan of Ambiorix.

34. At barbaris cōsiliū nōn defuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūtiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet: Illōrum esse praedam atque illis reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in victoriā 15 posita existimārent.³ Nostrī tametsi⁴ ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns⁵ quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūtiārī iubet ut procul⁶ tēla 20 coniciant neu propius accēdant et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcērint cēdant (levitāte armōrum et cotidiānā exercitātiōne nihil his nocēri posse), rūsus sē⁷ ad signa recipientēs insequantur.

- incommodē, synonym, male.
dēspērātiō, dēspērātiōnis, f.; cf.
spērō.
necesse, indecl. adj., necessary.

- cārus, -a, -um, dear.
arripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, seize
quickly.
proinde, therefore.

1. -que connects discēderent and properāret.

2. Cf. flēō.

3. Subj. representing imperat. in direct discourse.

4. although.

5. as often as.

6. from a distance.

7. Object of recipientēs: to whom does this refer?

The Romans are defeated with fearful slaughter.

35. Quō praeceptō ab iīs diligentissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe¹ excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam² partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere.

5 Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī reverti coeperant, et³ ab iīs quī cesserant et³ ab iīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sin autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūti locus relinquēbātur neque ab tantā multitudīne coniecta tēla cōnferti vitāre poterant. Tamen tot⁴ incommodis⁵ cōnflictātī, multis vulneribus acceptis resistēbant et magnā parte diēi cōsumptā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsis esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō,⁶ quī superiōre annō primum⁷ pilum dūxerat, virō fortī et

15 magnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā⁸ trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

praeceptum, -ī, n., *order*.

quisquam, quaequam, quodquam, *any*.

refugiō; cf. fugiō.

stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, *stand, take one's stand*.

cōnflictō, ī, *break down*.

indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*.

femur, femoris, n., *thigh*.

trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *pierce*; cf. iaciō.

subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *go to help*.

adhortor, ī; cf. hortor.

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face*.

funda, -ae, f., *sling*.

1. *circle*.

2. *eam partem*: *i.e.* of the Roman army.

3. *both . . . and*.

4. *so many*.

5. *disasters*.

6. *Dative of reference*.

7. *primum pilum*: *first division*.

8. *javelin*.

An interview with Ambiorix is sought.

36. His rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōspēxisset, interpretem suum, Cn. Pompēium, ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: Si velit
 5 sēcum colloqui, licēre; spērāre sē ā multitudīne impetrārī¹ posse quod ad militum salūtem pertineat; ipsī² vērō nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē³ suam fidem interpōnere. Ille⁴ cum Cottā sauciō communicat, sī videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorige ūnā colloquantur:
 10 spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac militum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat⁵ atque in eō persevērat.

Sabinus is slain in conference, and his army is destroyed.

37. Sabīnus quōs⁶ in⁷ praesentiā tribūnōs militum circum sē habēbat et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī
 15 iubet, et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperātum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō sermō ab Ambiorige instituitur, paulātīm circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam con-
 20 clāmānt atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum,
spare.

commūnicō, I, confer.

cōsultō, adv., on purpose.

sermō, sermōnis, m., *conversation.*

ululātus, -ūs, m., *shout, outcry, yell.*

1. impetrārī posse: the subject is quod . . . pertineat.

2. Titurius.

3. sē . . . interpōnere: he pledged his honor.

4. Titurius.

5. said . . . not.

6. quōs tribūnōs = eōs tribūnōs quōs.

7. in praesentiā = illō tempore.

factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interfici-
tur cum maximā parte militum. Reliqui sē in castra
recipiunt unde erant ēgressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius
aquilifer, cum magnā multitudīne hostium premerētur,
5 **aquilam** intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castris fortissimē
pugnāns occiditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem
sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsi
interficiunt. Pauci ex proeliō ēlapsi incertis¹ itineribus
per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveni-
10 unt atque eum dē rēbus gestis certiōrem faciunt.

The Aduatuci and Nervii are persuaded to join the revolt.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum
equitātū in Aduatucōs, qui erant eius rēgnō finitimī,
proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit,
peditātumque sē subsequi iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Adua-
15 tucisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nervios pervenit hor-
tāturque nē sui² in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī
Rōmānōs prō iis quās accēperint iniūriis occāsionem
dīmittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque
partem exercitūs interisse³ dēmōnstrat: Nihil esse⁴ ne-
20 gōtiū subitō oppressam⁵ legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne
hiemet interfici; sē ad eam rem profitetur adiūtorem.
Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nervii persuadet.

aquilifer, -ī, m.; cf. aquila +
ferō.

aquila, -ae, f., eagle.

ēlābor, ēlābi, ēlapsus sum, escape.

peditātus, -ūs, m.; cf. pedes, and
also eques, equitātus..

profiteor, -eri, -fessus sum, offer.

adiutor, adiūtōris, m.; cf. iuvō.

1. chosen at random.

2. sui liberandī atque ulcis-
cendī: modifies occāsionem; the
chance of freeing themselves and
of punishing.

3. perished.

4. The subject is legiōnem . . .
interfici.

5. oppressam interfici: to sur-
prise and slay.

With reinforcements they attack Cicero's camp.

39. Itaque cōfestim dīmissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum¹ imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs, cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant,
5 nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōnnūlli militēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventis magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduatuci atque
10 hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscedunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptōs victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

Cicero prepares for a vigorous defense.

15 40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōfestim ā Cicerōne litterae magnis prōpositis praemiis iis,² quī pertulissent; obsessis³ omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex eā materiā quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum⁴ cxx excitantur⁵ incrēdibili celeritāte, quae
20 deesse operi vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostris eādē ratiōne quā pridīē resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps⁶ fit diēbus. Nulla pars

advolō, 1, *hurry.*

fāma, -ae, f., *report, rumor, news.*

lignātiō, lignātiōnis, f., *getting wood.*

adipiscor, -i, adeptus sum, *gain.*

1. *i.e.* the Nervii.

2. Sc. nūntiis.

3. *blocked.*

4. *fully.*

5. *were erected.*

6. *in succession.*

ram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum
 multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōris tribus mi-
 lium passuum III in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt.
 Reliquis diēbus turrēs ad altitudinem vālli, falcēs testū-
 5 dinēsque, quās idem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere
 coepērunt.

The Nervii make a determined attack, but are sturdily resisted.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coortō ventō
 ferventēs fūsili ex argillā glandēs fundis¹ et fervefacta
 iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tēctae,
 10 iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendē-
 runt² et ventī magnitudīne in omnem locum castrōrum
 distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam
 atque explōratā victoriā, turrēs testudinēsque agere et
 scālis vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta militum
 15 virtūs atque ea praesentia³ animī fuit ut,⁴ cum⁵ undi-
 que flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine
 premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnēs for-
 tūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcē-
 deret nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac
 20 tum omnēs ācerimē fortissimēque pugnārent. Hic diēs
 nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit

exhauriō, -ire, -hausi, -haustum,

drain off, carry off.

falx, falcis, f., *hook.*

corior, -iri, -ortus sum; cf. orior.

ferveō, -ēre, fervui, —, *glow.*

fūsilis, -e, *melted.*

argilla, -ae, f., *clay.*

glāns, glandis, f., *bullet.*

fervefaciō; cf. ferveō + faciō.

iaculum, -i, n., *dart.*

casa, -ae, f., *hut.*

strāmentum, -i, n., *thatch.*

tēgō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, *cover.*

pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, *gain.*

scālae, -ārum, f., *ladder.*

flamma, -ae, f., *fire.*

torreō, -ēre, torruī, tostum, *scorch.*

cōnflagrō, 1, *be on fire.*

1. *with slings;* modifies
 iacere.

2. *caught.*

3. *presence.*

4. Introduces dēcēderet, etc.

5. Concessive.

ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerā-
rētur atque interficerētur, ut¹ sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipā-
verant recessumque primīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum
quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri adactā
5 et contingente² vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex
eō quō stābant³ locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remō-
vērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs,⁴ sī introire vellent, vo-
cāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum
ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis dēturbātī,⁵ turrisque
10 succēnsa est.

The rivalry of two brave centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs,
quī iam primīs ordinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et
L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās⁶ habē-
bant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō⁷
15 summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum
ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,' in-
quit,⁸ 'Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis
exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iudicābit.'
Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā⁹ mūnitiōnēs, quaeque
20 pars hostium cōnfertissima est visa, in eam irrumpit.
Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed om-

cōnstipō, 1, *crowd closely.*

recessus, -ūs, m., *chance for re-
treat*; cf. re-cēdō.

introeō; cf. intrō, *within* + eō.

dēturbō, 1, *drive down, beat
down, dislodge.*

succendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *set on fire.*

anteferō; cf. ferō.

simultās, simultātis, f., *rivalry.*

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your.*

irrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *rush.*

1. *inasmuch as.*

2. *touching.*

3. *stood.*

4. *Accusative.*

5. dēturbātī (sunt): sc. hostēs

as subject.

6. *disputes.*

7. *rank.*

8. *said he.*

9. *outside of.*

nium veritus exīstimātiōnem¹ subsequitur. Mediocrī
 spatiō relictō Pullō pilum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum
 ex multitudīne prōcurrentem trāicit;² quō percussō et
 exanimātō, hunc scūtis prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūni-
 5 versī³ tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem.
 Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigi-
 tur. Avertit hīc cāsus vāginam et gladium ēdūcere cō-
 nantī⁴ dextram morātur manum, impeditumque hostēs
 circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labō-
 10 rantī subvenit.⁵ Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis
 multitudō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfixum⁶ arbitrantur.
 Vorēnus gladiō rem comminus⁷ gerit atque ūnō interfectō
 reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īstat, in locum
 dēlātus inferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō
 15 subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūri-
 bus interfectīs summā cum laude⁸ sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs
 recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine
 utrumque⁹ versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtī-
 que esset, neque diiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte
 20 antefendus vidērētur.

mediocris, -e, moderate.

immittō; cf. mittō.

percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum,
pierce through.

prōtegō; cf. tegō.

prōgredior; cf. ēgredior.

verūtum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

balteus, -ī, m., *sword belt.*

dēfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fix*

firmly, fasten.

vāginā, -ae, f., *sheath.*

succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run*
to help.

concidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *fall.*

ambō, ambae, ambō, *both.*

certāmen, certāminis, n., *contest.*

versō, 1, frequentative of vertō.

diiūdicō, 1, *decide.*

1. Cf. existimō.

2. *pierced.*

3. *in a body.*

4. Sc. eī: lit. *to him trying.*

5. *came to the aid of.*

6. *pierced through.*

7. *at close quarters.*

8. *applause.*

9. *(the relative position of)*
each.

Caesar is informed of the attack.

45. Quantō¹ erat in diēs gravior atque asperior opugnātiō, et maximē quod magnā parte militum cōfectā vulneribus rēs² ad paucitatem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiique ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōspectū nostrōrum militum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō³ nātus honestō,⁴ qui ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat summamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servō⁵ spē libertātis magnisque persuādet praemiis ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō⁶ illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus⁷ ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

Caesar prepares relief for Cicero.

46. Caesar, acceptis litteris hōrā circiter xī diēi, statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venire. Exit cum⁸ nūntiō Crassus. Alterum⁹ ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem adducat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, si rei publicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad finēs

asper, aspera, asperum, violent.
dēprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsūm, *catch.*

intus, adv., within.
illigō, I, *tie to or into, fasten on or in.*

1. quantō . . . tantō : lit. *by how much . . . by so much; freely, the . . . the.*

2. *the force.*

3. *station.*

4. *honorable.*

5. *slave.*

6. in iaculō : the shaft of the javelin was doubtless hollow and the letter hidden inside.

7. *after mingling.*

8. cum nūntiō : *on the receipt of the dispatch.*

9. *a second.*

Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quōd paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximīs hibernīs cōgit.

*Caesar places Crassus in charge of the winter quarters at Samarobriua.
Labienus remains in his own camp.*

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī
5 adventū certior factus eō diē milia passuum xx prōcēdit.
Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit,
quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, lit-
terās publicās, frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae¹
hiemis causā dēvēxerat relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperā-
10 tum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne
occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium
cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiaē vēnis-
sent, veritus nē, sī ex hibernīs fugae similem profectiō-
nem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset,
15 praesertim quōs² recentī victōriā efferrī sciret, litterās
Caesari remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hiber-
nīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus per-
scribit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās
Trēverōrum tria milia passuum longē ab suis castris
20 cōnsēdisse.

A dispatch is sent to Cicero.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsi opiniōne³ trium
legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum com-

antecursor, antecursōris, m., *fore-
runner.*

dēvehō, -ere, -vēxi, -vectum, *carry
away.*

interitus, -ūs, m., = mors.

caedēs, caedis, f., *slaughter.*

similis, -e, *like.*

perscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum,
describe.

recidō, -ere, -cidi, -cāsum, *fall
back, relapse, sink, return, be
reduced.*

1. *enduring.*

2. quōs sciret = cum eōs sciret.

3. *expectation; ablative of sep-
aration.*

mūnī salūti auxilium in celeritatē pōnēbat. Venit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cōgnōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnīs praemiis persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōscriptam litteris mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōsilia cōgnōscantur. Sī adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam¹ cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā² intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus duābus profectum celeriter affore;³ hortātur ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum,⁴ trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ā nostris biduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōnspectur, dēmpla ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū militum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī⁵ incendiōrum procul⁶ videbantur : quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem ādventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls leave Cicero and march against Caesar.

- 20 49. Galli rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum alium ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōn-

epistula, -ae, f., = litterae.

āmentum, -ī, n., *thong*.

adhaerescō, -ere, -haesi, -haesum, *stick*.

dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēemptum, *take down*.

perlegō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *read through*.

recitō, I, *read aloud*.

laetitia, -ae, f., *pleasure, delight, gladness*.

incendium, -ī, n., *fire*.

1. *javelin*.

2. Cf. *illigō*.

3. *would be on hand*.

4. *ordered*.

5. *smoke*.

6. *at a distance*.

strāvimus repetit¹ quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā nocte
 5 Caesar allātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmīcandum animō cōfirmat. Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra et circiter milia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōspicātur. Erat magni periculi rēs cum tantulis² cōpiis iniquō locō dīmī-
 10 cāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum³ dē celeritāte existimābat. Cōnsidit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit atque haec,⁴ etsi erant exigua⁵ per sē, vix hominum⁶ milium **septem**, praesertim nūllis cum impedimentis,
 15 tamen angustiis⁷ viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus⁸ veniat. Interim speculātōribus⁹ in omnēs partēs dimissis explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

Caesar under pretense of fear entices the Gauls to his own ground.

50. Eō diē parvulis¹⁰ equestribus proeliis ad aquam
 20 factis utriq̄e sēsē suō locō continent: Galli,¹¹ quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant;

admoneō, 2; cf. moneō.
 cautē, cautiously.

rīvus, -ī, m., stream.
 septem, indecl. num. adj., seven.

1. Cf. petō.
2. such small.
3. Lit. it might be slackened from.
4. Sc. castra, the obj. of contrahit.
5. small.
6. hominum milium septem:

- gen. of description with haec (castra).
7. angustis viarum: by making the streets narrow.
8. in the eyes of the enemy.
9. spies.
10. slight.
11. Sc. sēsē . . . continent.

Caesar,¹ sī forte² timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rivumque trānsiret.

5. Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proelium-que cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō³ equitēs cēdere sēque in castra rēcipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūniri portāsque obstruī atque in his administrandis rēbus quam maximē
10 concursārī⁴ et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

Caesar attacks and utterly routs the Gauls.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitāti cōpiās trādūcunt aciēmque iniquō locō cōstituunt, nostris vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductis propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praecōnibus-
15 que circummissis prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrūctis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus caespitem,⁵ quod eā⁶ nōn posse intrō-
20 rumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat,

ēliciō, -ere, -licuī, -licitum, *draw out, entice.*

obstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *block.*

praecō, praecōnis, m., *herald.*

circummittō; cf. mittō.

contemnō, -ere, -temp̄sī, -temp-
tum, *despise.*

intrōrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break in.*

1. Sc. sēsē . . . continet.

2. *by chance.*

3. *on purpose.*

4. Cf. currō: concursārī and

agī are impersonal.

5. *sods.*

6. Sc. viā, *i.e.* by way of the gates.

sic uti omninō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex iis numerum occidit atque omnēs armīs exuit.¹

Caesar proceeds to Cicero's camp and congratulates the officers and men on their bravery.

52. Longius prōsequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdebant, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad
 5 Cicerōnem pervenit. Institūtās turrēs, testudinēs mūnitionēsque hostium admiratur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit
 nōn decimum² quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex his omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō
 et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō
 10 eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singulātīm tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē
 cāsū Sabīni et Cottae certius ex captivis cōgnōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, militēs
 15 cōnsolātur et cōfirmat; quod dētrimentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc³ aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod beneficiō⁴ deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō⁵ neque hostibus⁶ diūtina laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 53-58

Because many Gallic tribes seem on the verge of rebellion, Caesar decides to winter in Gaul. Under Indutiomarus the Gauls plan to attack the camp of Labienus. They are lured to the very walls of the camp, and then attacked and completely routed.

collaudō, 1, *praise highly.*

cōntiō, cōntiōnis, f., *assembly.*

culpa, -ae, f., *fault.*

temeritās, temeritātis, f., *rash-*

ness, indiscretion.

expiō, 1, *atone for.*

diūtinus, -a, -um, *long-continued, lasting.*

1. *stripped.*

2. decimum quemque militem:
one soldier in ten.

3. Abl. of cause.

4. beneficiō, virtūte: abls. of
 means.

5. *disaster.*

6. Dat. of reference.

LIBER SEXTUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1-10

During the winter Caesar levies more troops in order to be ready for the expected uprising of the Gauls. In the early spring he lays waste the territory of the Nervii, and the Senones and the Carnutes submit — all of whom previously refused to come to a conference of Gallic tribes which Caesar had called. He then proceeds against the Menapii in the north, who have never been subdued, and receives their submission. Meanwhile Labienus engages in battle with the Treveri, and they surrender. That he may frighten the Suebi, who plan to join the Treveri, Caesar again crosses the Rhine, but finds that they have retreated into the deep forests.

Customs of the Gauls. Two factions.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum¹ perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus cīvitatibus atque in omni-
5 bus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum² iūdicīō habēre existimantur, quōrum³ ad arbitrium⁴ iūdiciumque summa⁵ omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.⁶ Idque
10 eius⁷ rei causā antiquitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilii egēret; suōs enim

egeō, -ēre, eguī, —, *lack*.

1. *point* (in the story).

2. *i.e.* Gallōrum.

3. Refers to party leaders.

4. *discretion*.

5. *final judgment*.

6. *is referred*.

7. *eius rei*: explained by the clause *nē . . . egēret*.

quisque opprimī et circumvenīri nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in¹ summā tōtius Galliae;² namque omnēs civitatēs divisae sunt in duās partēs.

By the help of the Romans, the Aeduans gain the ascendancy.

- 5 12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Aeduis magnaēque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad
10 sē magnis iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque³ perdūxerant. Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omnī nōbilitāte Aeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā⁴ antecesserant⁵ ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduis ad sē trādūcerent⁶ obsidēsque ab his principum filiōs
15 acciperent, et publicē iūrāre⁷ cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliū initūrōs, et partem finitimi agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitate adductus Diviciācus auxilii petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus
20 infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtatiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduis⁸ redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitutīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātis,

clientēla, -ae, f., *dependency*.

iactūra, -ae, f., *a throwing, concession*.

tantum, *to such a degree*.

antecēdō; cf. cēdō.

inficiō; cf. in (not) + faciō.

1. in summā: *in general*.

2. Pred. gen. of possession.

3. Cf. polliceor.

4. Cf. possum.

5. Sc. Sēquanī.

6. With the following four subjunctives denotes result after tantum . . . antecesserant.

7. Sc. principēs as subject.

8. Dative.

quod¹ ii² quī sē ad eōrum³ amicitiam aggregāverant meliōre condiōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūti⁴ vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī principātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī
 5 successerant; quōs⁵ quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, ii quī propter veterēs inimicitias nūllō modō cum Aeduis coniungi poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente⁶ collēctam⁷ auctōritatem tenē
 10 bant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē principēs Aedui habērentur, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.⁸

The condition of the common people and the power of the Druids.

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō⁹ sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs
 15 paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō¹⁰ aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus¹¹ in¹² hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis in servōs.
 20 Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum,

aggregō, I, *attach.*

inimicitia, -ae, f.; cf. amicitia.

dicō, I, *give over.*

status, -ūs, m., *condition.*

tribūtum, -ī, n., *tax.*

dominus, -ī, m., *master.*

druidēs, -um, m., *the druids, priests.*

1. quod . . . vidēbant: tells the reason for novīs . . . comparātis.

2. Subject of vidēbant.

3. *i.e.* Aedūorum.

4. *enjoyed.*

5. Subject of adaequāre.

6. *suddenly.*

7. *acquired.*

8. *held.*

9. aliquō numerō: *of any account.*

10. aere aliēnō: *lit. by another's copper, i.e. debt.*

11. Dat. of possession.

12. *over.*

alterum equitum. Illi rēbus divīnis intersunt,¹ sacrificia pūblica ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs² interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscēntium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrīt, magnōque hī³ sunt apud eōs⁴ honōre. Nam
 5 ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis privātisque cōnstituunt, et, si quod est facinus⁵ admissum,⁶ si caedēs facta, si dē hērēditātē, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; si quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō⁷ nōn stetit, sacrificiis⁸ interdīcunt.⁹ Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs⁹ omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommōdī accipiant, neque iis petentibus iūs redditur
 15 neque honōs ūllus communicātur.¹⁰ Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātē. Hōc mortuō¹¹ aut, si quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitātē, succēdit, aut, si sunt plūrēs¹² parēs, suffrāgiō¹³ druidum, nōnnumquam etiam armis dē prīncipatū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus

sacrificium, -ī, n., *a sacrifice.*

prōcūrō, I; cf. cūrō.

interpretor, I, *explain.*

hērēditās, hērēditātis, f., *an inheritance.*

dēcrētum, -ī, n., *decision.*

impius, -a, -um, *wicked.*

scelerātus, -a, -um, *criminal.*

dēfugiō; cf. fugiō.

contāgiō, contāgiōnis, f., *a touching, contact.*

excellō, -ere, —, —, = *praestat.*

suffrāgium, -ī, n., *vote.*

1. *are concerned with.*

2. *religious rites.*

3. = *druidēs.*

4. = *plēbem.*

5. *crime.*

6. *committed.*

7. dēcrētō nōn stetit: *does not abide by their decision.*

8. *forbid.*

9. Dative. Cf. Eng. *make way for.*

10. *is shared with.*

11. *dead.*

12. *several.*

13. Abl. of means with *contendunt.*

Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōnsidunt¹ in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis iūdiisq̄ue pārent.² Disciplīna³ in Britannīā reperta
 5 atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur, et nunc quī diligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō⁴ discendī causā proficiscuntur.

Doctrine of the Druids.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquis pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiis et
 10 suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnūllī xx in disciplīnā permanent.⁵ Neque fās⁶ esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum⁷ in reliquis ferē rēbus, pūblicis
 15 privātisque ratiōnibus,⁸ Graecis litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam⁹ efferri velint, neque eōs quī discunt litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre; quod¹⁰ ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō¹¹ litterārum diligentiam
 20 in perdiscendō ac memoriā remittant. In primīs hoc¹²

cōnsecrō, 1, *make holy, dedicate, consecrate.*

trānsferō; cf. ferō.

parentēs, -um, m., *parents.*

versus, -ūs, m., *verse.*

ēdiscō, -ere, -didici, ———, *learn by heart.*

perdiscō; cf. ēdiscō.

1. *gather.*

2. *obey.*

3. *the system.*

4. *i.e. in Britanniam.*

5. Cf. maneō.

6. *right.*

7. *Concessive.*

8. *accounts.*

9. *doctrine.*

10. Explained by the clause
 ut . . . remittant.

11. *with the help.*

12. Explained by *interire* and
trānsire.

volunt persuādēre, nōn interire¹ animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī² putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac
 5 terrārum magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The Knights.

15 15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus³ atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod⁴ ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, uti aut ipsī iniuriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum⁵ ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēque habet. Hanc⁶ ūnam grātiā potentiamque nō vērunt.

Human sacrifices.

15 16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum⁷ dēdita religīonibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affecti graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur aut prō victimis hominēs⁸ immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur,

anima, -ae, f., *soul*.

sīdus, sīderis, n., *star*.

mōtus, -ūs, m., *motion*.

mundus, -ī, m., *universe*.

disputō, 1, *discuss*.

iuventūs, iuventūtis, f., *youth*.

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, *be accus-*

tomed, be wont.

ambactus, -ī, m., *retainer*.

morbus, -ī, m., *disease*.

victima, -ae, f., *victim*.

immolō, 1, *sacrifice*.

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *vow*.

administer, -trī, m., *attendant*.

1. *perish*.

2. Sc. hominēs as subject.

3. = opus.

4. Refers to bellum incidit.

5. eōrum ut quisque . . . ita plūrimōs: *the more famous each*

of them is . . . the more, etc.

6. hanc ūnam: *only this, i.e. no other*.

7. *much*.

8. Object of both immolant and immolātūrōs.

quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen placāri arbitrantur; publicēque eiusdem generis habent¹ institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī magnitudine simulācra² habent, quōrum
 5 contexta vīminibus³ membra⁴ vivīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis circumventi flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut in aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsi grātiōra⁵ dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dē-
 10 ficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The gods of the Gauls.

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt;⁶ huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,⁷ hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem,⁸ hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam
 15 arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs⁹ habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere,¹⁰

nūmen, nūminis, n., *divine will.*

placō, 1, *appease.*

immānis, -e, *enormous.*

simulācrum, -i, *image, idol.*

contexō, -ere, -texuī, -textum, *plait.*

membrum, -i, n., *limb.*

vivus, -a, -um, *alive.*

fūrtum, -i, n., *theft.*

latrōcinium, -i, n., *robbery.*

noxia, -ae, f., *offense.*

innocēns, innocentis, *innocent.*

inventor, inventōris, m., *inventor.*

ars, artium, f., *skill, craft.*

quaestus, -ūs, m., *the gaining.*

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money.*

mercātūra, -ae, f., *trade.*

artificium, -i, n., *handicraft.*

1. habent . . . sacrificia: *they have sacrifices established.*

2. i.e. idols in the shape of men.

3. *twigs.*

4. Object of complement.

5. *more pleasing.*

6. *worship.*

7. *they say.*

8. *guide.*

9. *tribes.*

10. *teaches.*

Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtē bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dimicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animalia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum
 5 cōferunt. Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs¹ tumultōs locis cōsecrātis cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne² aut capta³ apud⁴ sē occultāre⁵ aut posita⁶ tollere auderet, gravis-simumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

The reputed origin of the Gauls. Status of children.

10 18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant⁷ idque ab druidibus prōditum⁸ dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut⁹ noctem diēs subsequātur. In
 15 reliquīs vitae institūtis hōc ferē¹⁰ ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus¹¹ militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur, filiumque puerili aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris assistere turpe¹² dūcunt.

caelestis, -e, *heavenly (being)*.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, *control*.

dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *vow*.
 animal, animālis, n., *animal*.

fīniō, 4, *measure*.

nātālis, -e, *of birth*; with diēs, *birthday*.

adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultum, *grow up*.

militia, -ae, f., *military service, warfare*.

puerilis, -e; cf. *puer*.

assistō, -ere, -stitī, ———, *stand near*.

1. *piled up*.

2. *religious obligation*.

3. *i.e.* in war: sc. *ea*.

4. *apud sē*: *at his home*.

5. *hide*.

6. *i.e.* in sacred places.

7. *boast*.

8. *handed down*.

9. *ut . . . subsequātur*: *i.e.* the day began with sunset.

10. *chiefly*.

11. *duty*.

12. *disgraceful*; adj. *agreeing with the inf. assistere*.

Marriage and funeral customs.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus¹ dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant.² Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratio³ habētur fructūsque servantur⁴; uter eōrum vitā⁵ superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Virī in⁶ uxōrēs, sicuti in liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriore locō nātus dēcessit,⁷ eius propinqui conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in⁸ servilem modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō⁹ cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivīs¹⁰ cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō¹¹ suprà¹¹ hanc memoriā servi et clientēs quōs ab iis dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstis¹² fūnebris cōfectis, unā cremābantur.

dōs, dōtis, f., *dowry* (cf. dō).

aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis, f., *calculation, appraisal*.

coniūctim, *jointly*.

fructus, -ūs, m., *profit*.

illūstris, -e, *distinguished*.

quaestiō, quaestiōnis, f.; cf. quaerō.

excruciō, i, *torture*.

fūnus, fūneris, n., *funeral*.

magnificus, -a, -um; cf. magnus + faciō.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, *expensive, costly*.

cor, cordis, n., *heart*.

diligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum = amō.

fūnebris, -e, *of a funeral*; plu. as a subst., *funeral rites*.

1. *wives*.

2. *unite*.

3. *ratio habētur: an account is kept*.

4. *are saved*.

5. *vitā superāvit: has survived*. vitā is abl. of specification.

6. *over*.

7. = *mortuus est*.

8. *in servilem modum: i.e. by torture*.

9. *considering*.

10. *vivīs . . . fuisse: were dear to them while living*.

11. *suprà . . . memoriā: before our day*.

12. *regular*.

All state news is under control of officers.

20. Quae¹ civitatēs commodius² suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur habent³ lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē publicā ā finitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā⁴ accēperit,⁵ utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve⁶ cum quō aliō
5 commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus⁷ impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae⁸ vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex⁹ ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitudinī prōdunt.¹⁰ Dē rē publicā nisi per
10 concilium loqui nōn concēditur.

Religion and customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuetūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent qui rēbus divīnis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt¹¹ quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus¹² iuvantur, Sōlem
15 et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis¹³ labōri ac dūritiae student.

No private ownership of land.

22. Agricultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam

falsus, -a, -um, false.

cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, see, perceive.

vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis, f., hunting.

dūritia, -ae, f.; cf. dūrus.

cāseus, -ī, m., cheese.

1. quae civitatēs = eae civitatēs quae.

2. better (than others).

3. habent lēgibus sānctum utī: have it enacted by law that.

4. common report.

5. has heard.

6. and not.

7. bold deed.

8. quae vīsa sunt: what seems good (to hide).

9. ex ūsū: of advantage.

10. publish.

11. = putant.

12. aid.

13. = pueris.

agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus¹ cōgnātiōnibusque² hominum, quīque³ ūnā⁴ coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post
 5 aliō⁵ trānsire⁶ cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt causās: nē assiduā cōsuētūdine captī studium belli gerendi agricultūrā⁸ commūtent;⁹ nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs¹⁰ atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius quam ad frigora¹¹ atque aestūs vitandōs
 10 aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte¹² plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimis aequārī¹³ videat.

Government. Relations with neighbors. Hospitality.

23. Civitātibus maxima laus¹⁴ est quam lātissimē circū
 15 cum sē vāstātis finibus¹⁵ sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc¹⁶ propriū¹⁷ virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agris finitimōs cēdere,

proprius, -a, -um = privātus.

cōgnātiō, cōgnātiōnis, f.; cf.

nāscor.

coeō; cf. com + eō.

assiduus, -a, -um, continued.

accūrātē = diligenter.

aestus, -ūs, m., heat.

aedificō, 1, erect a building, build (houses).

sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis, f.; cf. sōlus.

1. clans; indir. obj. of attribuunt.

2. cōgnātiōnibus hominum: groups of kinsmen.

3. = eisque quī.

4. ūnā coiērunt: have banded together.

5. Adverb.

6. = excēdere.

7. Explained by the subjunctive clauses which follow.

8. for agriculture; abl. of

price.

9. exchange.

10. Subject of studeant.

11. cold.

12. Cf. aequus.

13. are equalized.

14. = glōria.

15. border lands.

16. Subject of esse understood, explained by the following infinitives.

17. mark.

neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere ; simul hōc ¹
 sē fore tūtiorēs arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre
 sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut illātum dēfendit aut in-
 fert, magistrātūs quī ei bellō praesint et vitae necisque
 5 habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est com-
 mūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum
 inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrō-
 cinia ² nūllam habent infāmiā quae extrā finēs cuiusque
 civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ³ ac dēsidiāe
 10 minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex
 principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem ⁴ fore, quī ⁵ sequi
 velint profiteantur, cōsurgunt ii quī et causam et homi-
 nem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā
 multitudine collaudantur ; ⁶ quī ⁷ ex hīs secūti nōn sunt
 15 in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omnium-
 que ⁸ hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem vio-
 lārē fās nōn putant ; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vē-
 nērunt ab iniuriā prohibent sāctōsque habent, hīsque
 omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

The Germans compared with the Gauls.

20 24. Ac fuit antea ⁹ tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte
 superārent, ultrō ¹⁰ bella inferrent, propter hominum mul-

incursiō, incursiōnis, f., *attack*.

infāmiā, -ae, f., *ill repute*.

iuventūs, iuventūtis, f., *youth*.

dēsidia, -ae, f., *laziness*.

dēsertor, dēsertōris, m., *deserter*.

prōditor, prōditōris, m., *traitor*.

dērogō, 1 ; cf. dētrahō.

violō, 1, *harm*.

sāctus, -a, -um, *inviolable, sacred*.

1. Abl. of cause, explained by
 timōre sublātō.

2. *raids*.

3. *training*.

4. *i.e.* of some expedition.

5. quī profiteantur: *let them
 offer*; represents an imperative

in direct discourse.

6. *are highly praised*.

7. quī ex hīs = ei ex hīs quī.

8. omnium rērum fidēs: *con-
 fidence in all matters*.

9. Adv., *before*.

10. *offensively*.

titūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illi
 5 Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque¹ habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc,² quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā quā³ ante Germānī permanent,
 10 eōdem victū et cultū⁴ corporis ūtuntur, Gallis⁵ autem prōvinciārū propinquitās⁶ et trānsmarinārū rērum nōtitia multa⁷ ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur,⁸ paulātim assuēfacti⁹ superārī multisque victi proeliis nē sē quidem ipsī cum illis¹⁰ virtūte comparant.

The Hercynian forest.

15 25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitudō novem diērum iter¹¹ expeditō¹² patet; nōn enim aliter finiri¹³ potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus rēctāque¹⁴ flūminis Dānuviī regiōne pertinet

colōnia, -ae, f., *colony*.

fertilis, -e, *fruitful*.

bellicus, -a, -um, *military*.

egestās, egestātis, f., *poverty*.

patientia, -ae, f.; cf. *pator*.

trānsmarinus, -a, -um; cf. *mare*.

nōtitia, -ae, f., *knowledge, familiarity*.

rēctus, -a, -um (perf. pass. part. of *regō*), *straight*.

1. Modifies opīniōnem.

2. Contrasts anteā in line 20,
 p. 74, and modifies comparant.

3. quā ante: *as before*.

4. *clothing*.

5. Indir. obj. of largitur.

6. Cf. propinquus.

7. Acc. plur. multa . . .
 ūsūs: lit. *many things for abun-*

dance and necessities.

8. *furnishes*.

9. Sc. Galli.

10. i.e. Germānis.

11. Acc. of extent.

12. *to a fast traveler*.

13. *measured*.

14. rēctā flūminis regiōne: *in a course parallel with the river*.

ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus diversīs¹ ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius² Germāniae quī sē aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum³ diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāsci cōstat quae reliquis in locis vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēteris et memoriae prōdenda⁴ videantur haec⁵ sunt.

The reindeer.

10 26. Est bōs⁶ cervī figūrā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit,⁷ excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sicut palmae rāmique⁸ lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae⁹ marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque
15 cornuum.

The elk.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis capris figūra et varietās pellium, sed magni-

hinc, from this point.

flectō, -ere, flēxī, flēxum, bend, curve, turn.

sinistrōrsus; cf. sinister + vertō.

fera, -ae, f., wild beast; cf. ferus.

bōs, bōvis, m., ox.

cervus, -i, m., stag.

figūra, -ae, f., shape.

auris, auris, f., ear.

excelsus, -a, -um = altus.

dērēctus, -a, -um, straight.

palma, -ae, f., palm, hand.

diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, spread.

mās, maris, adj., male.

fōrma, -ae, f., shape.

alcēs, alcis, f., elk.

capra, -ae, f., she-goat.

varietās, varietātis, f., difference, varied color.

1. diversīs . . . regiōnibus:
in a direction leading from the river.

2. of this (part).

3. Concessive.

4. ought to be handed down.

5. the following.

6. Here probably means reindeer, but the description of this and of other animals is far from accurate.

7. stands out.

8. branches.

9. of the female.

tūdine paulō antecēdunt¹ mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra² sine nōdis articulisque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō afflictāe cāsū conciderunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre³ possunt. His sunt



Reindeer (left) and European Elk

5 arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex

mutilus, -a, -um, *mutilated.*

crūs, crūris, n., *leg.*

nōdus, -ī, m., *knot, joint.*

articulus, -ī, m., *joint, knuckle.*

affligō, -ere, -flixi, -flictum, *press*

upon, throw down.

ērigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *raise up.*

cubīle, cubilis, n., *couch.*

applicō, ī, *apply.* With sē = *lean.*

reclinō, ī, *bend back.*

1. *surpass.*

2. crūra sine nōdis: an in-

credible statement.

3. *prop up.*

vēstigiis cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōsuērīnt, omnēs¹ eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum² ut summa³ speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōsuētūdīne
5 reclināvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

The wild ox.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudīne paulō infrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figurā taurī. Magna vis eōrum est et magna vėlōcītās,
10 neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspēxērunt parcut.⁴ Hōs studiōsē foveis captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adūlēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex his interfēcērunt, relātis in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testīmōniō,⁵ magnam ferunt laudem.
15 Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfieri nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum⁶ cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsita⁷ ab labris⁸ argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulis prō pōculis ūtuntur.

vēstīgium, -ī, n., *footprint*.

vēnātor, **vēnātōris**, m., *hunter*.

accidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum, *cut into*; cf. **ad** + **caedō**.

ūrus, -ī, m., *wild ox*.

elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant*.

taurus, -ī, m., *bull*.

vėlōcītās, **vėlōcītātis**, f.; cf. **vėlōx**.

studiōsē; cf. **studium**.

fovea, -ae, f., *pitfall*.

dūrō, 1, *harden*.

assuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum; cf. **cōsuēscō**.

mānsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tame*.

amplitūdō, **amplitūdinis**, f.; cf. **amplus**.

argentum, -ī, n., *silver*.

circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *surround*.

epulae, -ārum, f., *banquet*.

pōculum, -ī, n., *cup*.

1. Modifies **arborēs**.

2. *to such a degree*.

3. *perfect*.

4. *spare*.

5. *as evidence*.

6. *of oxen*.

7. *collected*.

8. **ab labris**: *at the mouth*.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 29-34

Finding that the Suebi have withdrawn to the interior, Caesar returns to Gaul and marches against Ambiorix and the Eburones to punish them for slaying Sabinus and Cotta. Ambiorix eludes him and disbands his army. Caesar leaves Quintus Cicero in command of the baggage at Aduatua, and, dividing the remainder of his army into three parts, goes in search of Ambiorix. Caesar invites other tribes to share with him in the plundering of the Eburones.

The Sugambri start out to obtain a share in plundering the Eburones, but instead they attack the camp which Caesar has left in Cicero's command.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque appetēbat¹ septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legiōnemque reverti cōstituerat. Hic² quantum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs afferat cāsūs
5 cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātis ac perterritis hostibus, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo³ causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit fāma⁴ diripī⁵ Eburōnēs atque ultrō⁶ omnēs ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo milia Sugambri,
10 quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque trigintā milibus passuum infrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare relictum; primōs Eburōnum finēs adeunt;
15 multōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt, magnō pecoris nūmerō, cuius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō⁷ latrōciniisque⁷ nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in

ēvocō, 1; cf. vocō.

1. = appropinquābat.

2. just here.

3. even.

4. rumor.

5. plunder.

6. moreover.

7. Datives of purpose, modifying nātōs.

locis sit Caesar ex captivis quaerunt; profectum¹ longius
 reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cōgnōscunt.
 Atque ūnus ex captivis, 'Quid vōs,' inquit,² 'hanc
 miseram ac tenuem³ sectāmini praedam, quibus licet
 5 iam esse fortūnātissimōs? Tribus hōris Aduatucam
 venīre potestis; hūc omnēs suās fortūnās exercitus
 Rōmānōrum contulit; praesidiū tantum⁴ est ut nē mūrus
 quidem cingī⁵ possit neque quisquam ēgredi extrā
 mūnitiōnēs audeat.' Hāc oblātā spē Germānī quam
 10 nacti erant praedam in occultō relinquunt; ipsī Aduatu-
 cam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce cuius haec indicio⁶
 cōgnōverant.

Contrary to Caesar's orders, Cicero sends a large number of men out of camp to forage.

36. Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praeceptis
 Caesaris summā diligentia militēs in castris continuisset
 15 ac nē cālōnem⁷ quidem quemquam extrā mūnitiōnem
 ēgredi passus esset, septimō diē diffidēs⁸ dē numerō
 diērum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prō-
 gressum⁹ audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū eius fāma af-
 ferēbātur, simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus quī illius
 20 patientiam paene obsessiōnem appellābant, sī quidem
 ex castris ēgredi nōn liceret, nūllum eiusmodī cāsum
 exspectāns quō, novem oppositis¹⁰ legiōnibus maximōque

sector, 1, frequentative of sequor.
 fortūnātus, -a, -um; cf. fortūna.
 reditus, -ūs, m.; cf. red-eō.

obsessiō, obsessiōnis, f., blockade.
 oppōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum;
 cf. pōnō.

1. profectum (esse): sc. Caesarem as subject.

2. said he.

3. insignificant.

4. so little.

5. = dēfendī.

6. information.

7. camp servant.

8. not feeling sure.

9. prōgressum (esse): sc. Caesarem as subject.

10. sent against the enemy.

equitātū, dispersis ac paene dēlētis¹ hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi² posset, quinque cohortēs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omninō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castris
 5 ex legiōnibus aegrī relictī; ex quibus quī hōc spatiō diērum convaluerant, circiter ccc, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur; magna praetereā multitudō cālōnum, magna vīs³ iūmentōrum,⁴ quae in castris subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

The Germans assault the camp and a panic ensues.

10 37. Hōc ipsō tempore cāsū Germāni equitēs interveniunt prōtinusque⁵ eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab decumānā portā in castra irrumpere⁶ cōnantur, nec⁷ prius sunt vīsī, obiectis ab eā parte silvis, quam castris appropinquārent, usque⁸ eō ut quī sub vāllō tenderent⁹
 15 mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. Inopināntēs¹⁰ nōstrī rē novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statīōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī¹¹ quem aditum reperire possint. Aegrē portās nōstrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs

seges, segetis, f., grain, grain field.

convalēscō, -ere, -valui, —, recover.

subsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, stay

behind, remain.

interveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; cf. veniō.

circumfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, surround; pass. gather around.

1. destroyed.

2. offendi posset: harm could be done; subjunctive of result introduced by quō.

3. = numerus.

4. beasts of burden.

5. at once.

6. rush.

7. nec prius quam: and not till.

8. usque eō ut: so much so that.

9. stretched (tents), had their booths.

10. unprepared.

11. to see whether.

locus ipse per sē mūnitiōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidatur¹ castris, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat² prōvident. Alius castra iam
 5 capta prōnūntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit;³ plērique novās⁴ sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt Cottaque et Titūrī calamitātem, quī in eōdem castellō occiderint, ante oculos pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritis cōfirmātur
 10 opiniō barbaris,⁵ ut ex captivō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere⁶ nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur⁷ nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

Publius Sextius Baculus again displays his bravery.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, quī primum pilum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cuius
 15 mentiōnem superiōribus proeliis fēcimus, ac diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat. Hic diffisus suae atque omnium salutī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostēs atque in summō esse rem discriminē; capit arma ā proximis atque in portā cōsistit. Cōsequuntur hunc
 20 centuriōnēs eius cohortis quae in statīōne erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit⁸ animus Sextium

tālis, -e, such.

mentiō, mentiōnis, f., mention.

cibus, -i, m., food.

careō, -ēre, carui, —, want, be

without.

immineō, -ēre, —, —, be
close at hand.

discrimen, discriminis, n., crisis.

1. there was a panic.

2. rally.

3. insisted.

4. novās . . . fingunt: make
up new superstitions from the
locality.

5. Dat. of reference modifying
cōfirmātur.

6. Cf. irrumpere.

7. Cf. hortor.

8. relinquit animus Sextium:
Sextius fainted.

gravibus acceptis vulneribus; aegrē per¹ manūs trāditus servātur. Hōc spatiō² interpositō reliquī sēsē cōfirmant tantum³ ut in mūnitiōnibus cōsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

The foragers return toward camp amidst much confusion.

5 39. Interim cōfectā frūmentātiōne militēs nostri clāmōrem exaudiunt;⁴ praecurrunt equitēs, quantō rēs sit in periculō cōgnōscunt. Hic vērō nūlla mūnitiō est quae perterritōs recipiat; modo⁵ cōscriptī atque ūsūs militāris imperitī ad tribūnum militum centuriōnēsque
10 ōra⁶ convertunt; quid ab hīs praeciipiāt⁷ exspectant. Nēmō est tam fortis quā rei novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī sīgna procul⁸ cōspicātī oppugnātiōne dēsistunt; redisse primō legiōnēs crēdunt, quās longius discessisse ex captīvīs cōgnōverant; postea dēspectā paucitāte ex
15 omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

The foragers finally reach camp with some loss.

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumultum prōcurrunt. Hinc celeriter dēiectī sē in sīgna manipulōsque coniciunt; eō magis timidōs perterrent militēs. Alii cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant cēnsent:⁹ Quoniam tam propinqua
20 sint castra, etsī pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at¹⁰

frūmentātiō, frūmentātiōnis, f.,
foraging.

praecurrō, -ere, -cucurri, -cursum,

to hurry ahead.

novitās, novitātis, f, novelty.

cuneus, -ī, m., "flying wedge."

1. per manūs: from hand to hand.

2. Sc. temporis.

3. to such a degree.

4. heard from a distance.

5. newly.

6. faces.

7. was ordered.

8. from a distance.

9. expressed it as their opinion.

10. at any rate.

reliquōs servāri posse ; aliī¹ ut in iugō cōsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hoc veterēs nōn probant militēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, qui iis erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem impetū militum virtūte servantur. At ii qui in iugō cōstiterant, nullō etiam nunc ūsū rei militāris perceptō,² neque in eō quod probāverant cōsiliō permanēre,³ ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam⁴ quam prōfuisse aliis vim celeritatemque viderant imitārī potuerunt, sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī iniquum in locum dēmiserunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōnnūlli ex inferiōribus ordinibus reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōrēs erant ordinēs huius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam⁵ rei militāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pugnantēs conciderunt. Militum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbaris circumventa
20 periit.⁶

The Germans depart, but the Romans are left in great fear, which is allayed by Caesar's arrival.

41. Germāni dēspērātā expugnātiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā

percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, obtain, gain.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, to be advantageous.

imitor, 1, copy, represent, imitate.

expugnātiō, expugnātiōnis, f.; cf. expugnō.

1. Sc. cēnsent.

2. having gained.

3. Complementary inf. to potuerunt.

4. Modifies vim celeritatemque.

5. acquired.

6. perished.

praedā quam in silvis dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē
 recēpērunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum ho-
 stium terror ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus missus cum
 equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem¹ nōn faceret adesse cum
 5 incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sic omnium animōs timor
 occupāverat ut, paene aliēnātā mente, dēlētis omnibus
 cōpiīs equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dicerent neque²
 incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppugnātūrōs fuisse
 contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sus-
 10 tulit.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 42-44

Caesar inflicts punishment on other revolting tribes, distributes his forces, and returns to Italy for the winter.

aliēnō, 1, make strange; part. frenzied.

-
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>fidem nōn faceret:</i> could
<i>not make them believe.</i> | <i>man) army safe the Germans
 would not have attacked the</i> |
| 2. <i>neque . . . contenderent:</i>
<i>and they held that with the (Ro-</i> | <i>camp.</i> |

LIBER SEPTIMUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1-67

While Caesar is in Italy, the Carnutes and Arverni begin a revolt under Vercingetorix, who storms a city of the Boii called Gorgobina. Caesar returns from Italy with help. On the way he takes several towns and proceeds to Avaricum, a town which the Gauls have not burned because they think it impregnable to Caesar's attack. But the town is finally taken after a defense has been maintained for twenty-five days and 40,000 men, women, and children have been slain. Caesar thinks that this victory will destroy the compact against him that exists among the Gallic tribes, and so divides his army. But more states join Vercingetorix. Caesar himself goes to Gergovia, engages the Gauls, and suffers a heavy loss. The Haeduan immediately revolt and sack Noviodunum, one of their own towns, in which Caesar has placed provisions and hostages. Caesar nevertheless marches northward through the Haeduan territory to the Senones, and is joined by Labienus, who has just won a great victory at Lutetia.

Upon the revolt of the Haeduan, defection spreads to nearly all the Gallic tribes. A council of all Gaul is called, and Vercingetorix is named commander in chief. Caesar meanwhile sends to the Germans for cavalry, and starts out to defend the Province, which Vercingetorix has threatened. During this march, the Gauls make an attack on the Romans, but are defeated and pursued by the Romans to Alesia.

Vercingetorix retires to Alesia. Caesar pursues him and begins to build a wall.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit cele-
riterque impedimenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī ius-
5 sit. Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostēs quan-

tum diē tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū,¹ quā maximē parte exercitūs² cōn-
5 fidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus³ ad labōrem militēs Alesiam circumvāllāre instituit.

The situation of Alesia.

69. Positum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum⁴ ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidē-
rētur; cuius collis rādīcēs⁵ duo duābus ex partibus
10 flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitudinē patēbat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocri interiectō⁶ spatiō parī⁷ altitudinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae
15 locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitudinē sex pedum praedūxerant. Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs instituēbātur circuitus x mīlia passuum tenēbat.⁸ Castra opportūnis locis erant
20 posita viii castellaque xxiii facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitoribus ac firmis prae-
sidiis tenēbantur.

situs, -ūs, m., *location.*

circumvāllō, i; cf. circum + vāllō (vāllum).

subluō, -ere, —, —, *wash.*

fastigium, -ī, n., *elevation.*

māceria, -ae, f., *wall.*

praeducō; cf. ducō.

excubitor, excubitōris, m., *sentinel.*

1. *in skirmishes with their cavalry.*

2. *i.e. of the Gauls.*

3. *Cf. hortor.*

4. *very.*

5. *Accusative.*

6. *Cf. inter + iaciō.*

7. *parī altitudinis fastigiō: with tops of equal height.*

8. *embraced.*

The Gauls are beaten in a cavalry battle.

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitīē quam intermissam¹ collibus tria milia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsq̄ue contenditur. Labōrantibus nostris Caesar Germanōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castris cōstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostris animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniecti sē ipsi multitūdine impediunt atque angustioribus² portis relictis coartantur. Germānī ācrius
10 usque ad mūnitiōnēs persequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōnnūlli relictis equis fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn³ minus qui intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Galli perturbantur; veniri ad sē
15 cōnfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōnnūlli perterriti in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās⁴ claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multis interfectis, complūribus equis captis, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix sends his cavalry home to make a general levy.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānis
20 perficiantur, cōsiliū capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque qui per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae⁵ salūtis ratiōnem habeant

irruptiō, irruptiōnis, f., a breaking in, attack.

coartō, I, crowd together.
obtestor, I, entreat.

1. broken.

2. angustioribus . . . relictis:
because the gates had been left
(made) too narrow.

3. nōn minus: i.e. than the
cavalry.

4. inner gates.

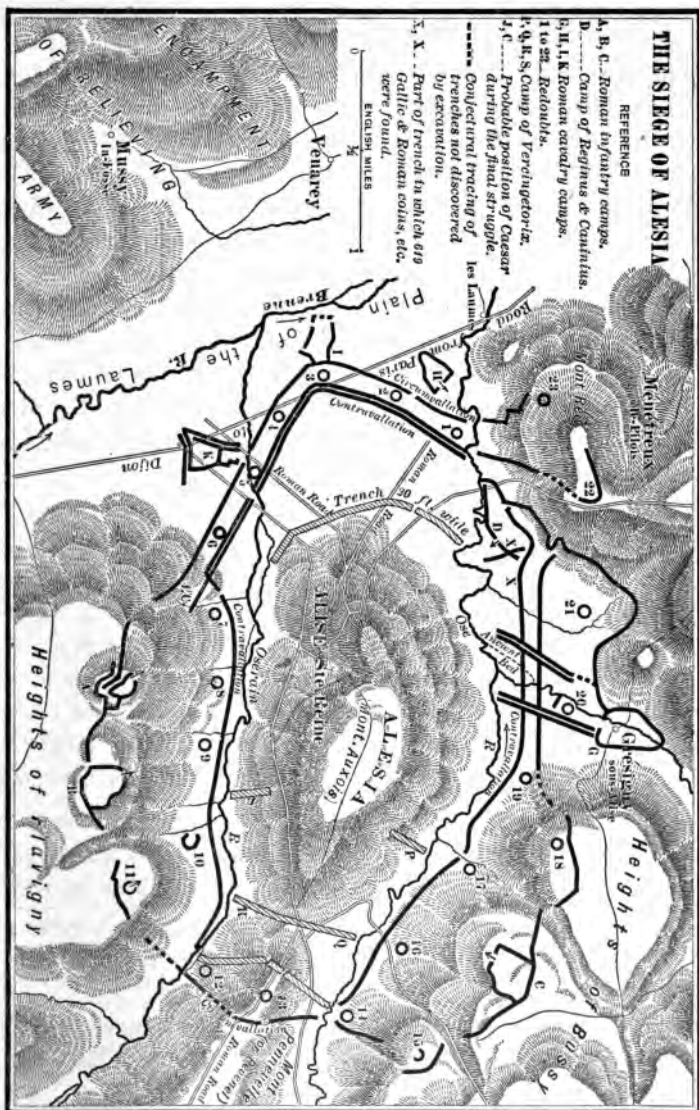
5. Refers to Vercingetorix.

THE SIEGE OF ALESIA

REFERENCE

- A, B, C. Roman infantry camps.
- D. Camp of Regulus & Cestius.
- E, H, I, K. Roman cavalry camps.
- 1 to 22. Redoubts.
- 23, 24. Camp of Vercingetorix.
- 25, 26. Probable position of Caesar during the final struggle.
- . Conjectured tracing of trenches not discovered by excavation.
- X, X'. Part of trench in which 619 Gallic & Roman coins, etc. were found.

0 1/2 1
ENGLISH MILES



neu¹ sē² optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod si indiligentiōrēs fuerint, milia hominum delēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne³ initā frūmentum sē exiguē⁴ diērum
 5 xxx habēre sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī⁵ posse parcendō.⁶ His datis mandātis, quā erat nostrum opus⁷ intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dimittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam iis quī nōn pāruerint⁸ cōstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat
 10 cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, viritim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētiri instituit; cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Caesar's circumvallation.

15 72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis ex perfugīs et captivīs, Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit. Fossam pedum xx dērēctis⁹ lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum¹⁰ tantundem patēret quantum summa labra¹¹ distārent; reliquās omnēs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedibus cccc redūxit
 20 hōc¹² cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum spatium necessariō esset complexus nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum cingeretur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multitudō

silentium, -ī, n., *silence.*

viritim, *individually*; cf. vir.

parcē, *sparingly.*

tantundem, *just so far.*

distō, -āre, —, —, *be apart.*

corōna, -ae, f., *crown, ring, line.*

1. *and not.*

2. sē . . . meritum: *him who had done his best for, etc.*

3. ratiōne initā: *by actual calculation.*

4. *barely.*

5. *be endured*; impersonal.

6. *by being saving.*

7. *fortification.*

8. *did obey.*

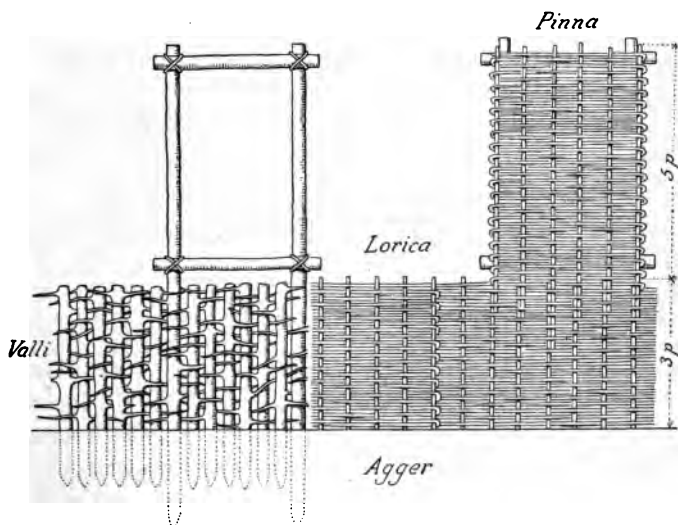
9. *perpendicular.*

10. *bottom.*

11. *edges.*

12. hōc cōnsiliō: *explained by*
 nē . . . advolāret aut . . . pos-
 sent.

hostium advolāret,¹ aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēsti-
nātōs² conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fos-
sās xv pedēs lātās eādem altitūdine perdūxit ; quārum in-
teriōrem³ campestribus ac dēmissis⁴ locīs aquā ex flūmine
5 dērivātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii
pedum exstrūxit ; huic lōricam⁵ pinnāsque adiēcit, grandi-



The Defenses on Caesar's Rampart before Alesia

bus cervīs⁶ ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque
aggeris quī ascēnsū hostium tardārent,⁷ et turrēs tōtō
opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

campester, -ris, -re, *flat*.

dērivō, 1 ; cf. dēdūcō.

ēmineō, -ēre, -minuī, —, *project*.

commissūra, -ae, f., *a joining, junction*.

pluteus, -ī, m., *shed, defense*.

1. *hastened*.

2. *detailed*.

3. *Sc. fossam*.

4. *low*.

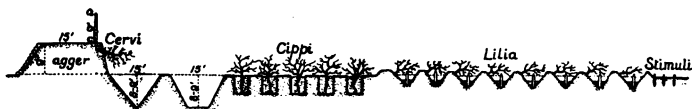
5. lōricam pinnāsque : *breastworks and bulwarks*.

6. *branched tree trunks*.

7. *check*.

Caesar's defenses.

73. Erat eodem tempore et materiari et frumentari et tantas munitiones fieri necesse deminutis nostris copiis, quae longius a castris progrediiebantur; ac nonnumquam¹ opera nostra Galli temptare atque eruptionem ex oppido
 5 pluribus portis summam vi facere conabantur. Quare ad haec rursus opera addendum² Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent. Itaque truncis arborum aut admodum firmis ramis abscisis atque horum delibratis ac praeacutis cacuminibus per-



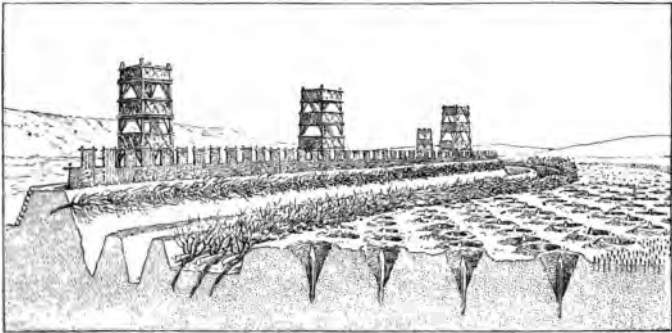
ab Pinnae. bc Lorica of Plutei.

Outline of Caesar's Works before Alesia

10 petuae³ fossae quinque pedes altae duciebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi et ab⁴ infimo revincti, ne revelli⁵ possent, ab⁶ ramis eminebant.⁷ Quini erant ordinis, coniuncti inter se atque implicati; quo qui intraverant⁸ se⁹ ipsi acutissimis vallibus induebant. Hos cippos appellabant.

materiari, I, *cut timber.*truncus, -i, m., *trunk.*abscido, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, *cut down.*delibro, I, *peel.*cacumen, cacuminis, n., *top.*stipes, stipitis, m., *log.*revincto, -ire, -vinxi, -vinctum, *fasten.*implico, I, *interweave.*acutus, -a, -um, *sharp.*vallus, -i, m., *stake.*cippus, -i, m., *pointed pillar, tombstone.*1. *at times.*2. *addition should be made.*3. *continuous.*4. *ab infimo: at the bottom.*5. *be torn away.*6. *with.*7. *projected.*8. *entered.*9. *se induebant: were impaled.*

Ante hōs obliquis ōrdinibus in¹ quincuncem dispositis
 scrobēs in altitudinem trium pedum fodiēbantur pau-
 lātim angustiore ad infimum fastigiō.² Hūc teretēs sti-
 pitēs feminis³ crassitudine⁴ ab summō praeacūti et
 5' praeusti dēmittēbantur ita ut nōn amplius digitis⁵ quat-
 tuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandi et stabiliendi
 causā singuli⁶ ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur,



Conjectural Appearance of Caesar's Works before Alesia

For greater clearness, only a few rows of cippi and of lilia are shown.

reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās vīminibus
 ac virgultis integēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ōrdinēs
 10 ducti ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitudine

obliquus, -a, -um, *transverse*.

quincunx, quincuncis, m., see
 note on this word.

scrobis, scrobis, m. and f., *pit*.

fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossum, *dig*.

teres, teretis, *smooth*.

stabiliō, 4, *fasten*.

exculcō, 1, *stamp down*.

integō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *cover*
over.

octōnī, -ae, -a, *eight each, eight*.

ternī, -ae, -a, *three each*.

similitūdō, similitūdinis, f., *re-*
semblance.

1. in quincuncem: *i.e.* ar-
 ranged thus ∴.

2. *slope*.

3. *thigh*.

4. *thickness*.

5. *finger (breadths), inches*.

6. singuli pedēs: *a foot of*
each stake.

flōris lilium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae¹ pedem longae ferreis hāmis infixis tōtae in terram infodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

Caesar builds similar defenses against the enemy outside.

- 5 74. His rēbus perfectis, regiōnēs secūtus² quam potuit aequissimās prō loci nātūrā, XIII mīlia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, diversās³ ab his, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine mūnitiōnum praesidia circumfūsa⁴
 10 perrumpī⁵ possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castris ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum⁶ frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

An enormous army is levied by the Gauls.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Galli conciliō principum indictō⁷ nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut
 15 cēnsuit⁸ Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitatī imperandum, nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs⁹ nec frū-

flōs, flōris, m., *flower*.

lilium, -ī, n., *lily*.

hāmus, -ī, m., *hook*.

infigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fasten on*.

infodiō; cf. fodiō.

disserō, -ere, —, —, *plant at intervals*.

stimulus, -ī, m., *goad*.

exterus, -a, -um, *outside*.

convehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *collect*.

cōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *combine*.

moderor, 1, *check, control, keep within bounds*.

discernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *separate, distinguish*.

1. *stakes*.

2. *keeping to*.

3. *facing opposite, i.e. toward the enemy outside*.

4. *surrounded*.

5. *broken through*.

6. *forage*.

7. *appointed*.

8. *proposed*.

9. *Object of both infinitives*.

mentandi ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Aeduis atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvis, Ambarris, Aulercis Brannovicibus, milia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūctis¹ Helviīs, Cadūrcis, Gabalis, Vellāviis, quī sub
 5 imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutēnis, Carnutibus duodēna² milia; Bellovacis x; totidem Lemovicibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonis et Parisiis et Helvētiis; sēna Andibus, Ambiānis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis, Nervii,
 10 Morinis, Nitiobrogibus; v milia Aulercis Cēnomanis; totidem Atrebātibus; iiii Veliocassis; Esuviis et Aulercis Eburovicibus iii; Rauracis et Bōiis bina; x ūniversis civitatibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numero
 15 Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibarii, Caletēs, Osismi, Veneti, Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō³ cum Rōmānis bellum gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs;⁴ rogāti tamen ab Commiō prō⁵
 20 eius hospitiō duo milia misērunt.

The Gauls, confident of success, start for Alesia. The command is divided among four men.

76. Huius operā Commii, ut antea dēmōstrāvimus, fidēli atque ūtillī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs civitatem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinōs
 25 attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō

bini, -ae, -a, two each.

ūtilis, -e, useful.

immūnis, -e, exempt (from

taxes).

cōnsēnsiō, cōnsēnsiōnis, f.; cf.

cōnsentiō.

1. allied with.

2. duodēna milia: twelve thousand each.

3. discretion.

4. would obey.

5. in consideration of.

fuit libertātis vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae,¹ ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērētur,² omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctis equitum milibus VIII et
 5 peditum circiter cCL, haec in Aeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibātur,³ praefectī cōstituēbantur: Commiō Atrebāti, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōsobrinō Vercingetorigis, summa imperiī trāditur. His dēlēctī⁴ ex ci-
 10 vitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum⁵ modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti⁶ proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, foris tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

Extraordinary measures are proposed by Critognatus.

77. At īi quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā⁷ diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsūmptō omnī frūmentō, insciī quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō
 20 dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōsultābant. Ac variis dictis sententiis, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppetarent,⁸ ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat,⁹ nōn praeter-

vindicō, I, *claim*.

incumbō, -ere, -cubūi, -cubitum,
apply one's self.

recēnsēō, -ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsūm,
count over.

cōsobrinus, -ī, m., *cousin*.

fidūcia, -ae, f., *confidence*.

foris, adv., *outside*.

inscius, -a, -um; cf. sciō.

cōsultō, I, *take counsel*.

1. *recovering*.

2. Sc. Gallia as subject.

3. *was recorded*.

4. *representatives*.

5. *sight*.

6. The following clauses explain why.

7. Cf. *praeter* + *eō*.

8. *held out*.

9. *considered*.

eunda vidētur ōrātiō Critognātī propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crudelitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctoritātis, 'Nihil,' inquit, 'dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servi-
 5 tūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs civium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum¹ hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōsēnsū² pristinae rēsidēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animi est ista mollitia, nōn
 10 virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant³ facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc⁴ sententiam probārem (tantum⁵ apud mē dignitās potest), si nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iactūrā⁶ fieri vidērem; sed
 15 in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus.⁷ Quid hominum milibus⁸ LXXX ūnō locō interfectis propinquis⁹ cōsanguineisque⁹ nostris animi¹⁰ fore existimātis, si paene in ipsis cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlite
 20 hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salutis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte

nefārius, -a, -um, *impious*.

cīvis, cīvis, m. and f., *citizen*.

resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, —; cf. maneo.

iste, ista, istud, demonstrative pron., *that of yours*.

mollitia, -ae, f., *irresolution*.

patienter, *patiently*.

praeterquam, prep., *except*.

vester, vestra, vestrum, *your* (plu.).

exspoliō, I, *rob*.

stultitia, -ae, f., *folly, foolishness*.

1. cum . . . est: *my concern lies with these*.

2. Cf. cōsentiō.

3. Cf. ferō.

4. hanc sententiam: *i.e.* of making a sally.

5. tantum . . . potest:

such weight has honor with me.

6. *loss*.

7. Cf. incitō.

8. Abl. abs.

9. Datives of possession with fore.

10. Partitive gen. with quid.

vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōster-
 nere¹ et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.¹ An, quod ad
 diem nōn vērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque² dubi-
 tātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūni-
 5 tiōnibus animine³ causā cotidiē exercēri⁴ putātis?
 Si illōrum⁵ nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis, omnī aditū
 praesaep̄tō, hīs⁶ ūtimini testibus appropinquāre
 eōrum⁷ adventum; cuius rei timōre exterritī diem
 noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō mei cōsili
 10 est? Facere⁸ quod nostri maiōrēs nēquāquam pari⁹
 bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonūque fēcērunt; quī in oppida
 compulsi ac simili inopiā subācti eōrum corporibus¹⁰ qui
 aetate ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvē-
 runt¹¹ neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius rei si
 15 exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institui
 et posteris prōdi¹² pulcherrimum¹³ iūdicārem. Nam
 quid¹⁴ illi simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbri
 magnāque illātā calamitāte finibus quidem nostris ali-
 quandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra,

imbēcillitās, imbēcillitātis, f.,
 weakness.

prōsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum,
 ruin.

ergō, therefore, then.

praesaep̄iō, -ire, -saepsī, -saep-
 tum, block.

exterreō, 2; cf. per-terreō.

meus, -a, -um, my.

nēquāquam, by no means.

subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, subdue.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beau-
 tiful, noble.

aliquandō, finally.

1. Sc. nolite.

2. steadfastness.

3. animī + ne, the interrog.
 participle. animī causā: for the
 sake of amusement.

4. are kept in motion.

5. i.e. the Gauls outside.

6. i.e. the Romans.

7. i.e. the Gauls.

8. (it is my plan) to do.

9. i.e. to the present war.

10. Abl. of means with tolerā-
 vērunt.

11. sustained.

12. Cf. dō.

13. Agrees with institui and
 prōdi.

14. quid . . . fuit: what simi-
 larity had that war (to this
 one)?

lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō
 quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adducti,
 quōs¹ fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt,
 hōrum in agris civitatibusque cōsidere atque his aeter-
 5 nam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā
 condiōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longin-
 quis nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis,² respicite finitimam
 Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus
 commūtātis,³ secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur
 10 servitūte.'

Caesar refuses to allow noncombatants to leave Alesia.

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt ut ii quī valētūdine⁴
 aut aetate inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque
 omnia prius experienda arbitrantur quam ad Critognātī
 sententiam dēscendant; illō⁵ tamen potius ūtendum
 15 cōnsiliō, si rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut
 dēditōnis aut pācis subeundam condiōnem. Mandubiī,
 quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus
 exire cōguntur. Hī, cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum
 accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in
 20 servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis
 in vāllō custōdiis⁶ recipī prohibēbat.

The Gallic troops arrive and encamp near the town.

79. Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs quibus summa
 imperiī permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam

invidia, -ae, f., *envy*.

aeternus, -a, -um, *everlasting*.

iniungo, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum;

cf. *impōnō*.

secūris, *secūris*, f., *ax*; symbol of
 Roman authority.

1. The antecedent is *hōrum*.

2. Cf. *nōscō*.

3. *changed*.

4. *ill health*.

5. *illō . . . cōnsiliō, quam: but
 that plan must be used rather
 than*.

6. *guards*.



Levis armaturae miles

perveniant et colle ēditiōre¹ occupātō nōn longius mille passibus ā nostris mūnitiōnibus cōsident.

Posterō diē equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiam quam in longitūdinem milia passuum tria patēre dēmōstrāvimus complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locis superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus² in campum. Concurrunt³ hīs auxiliis visīs; fit grātulātiō⁴ inter eōs, atque omnium animi ad laetitiam⁵ excitantur. Itaque prōductis cōpiis ante oppidum cōsistunt et proximam fossam⁶ crātibus⁷ integunt atque aggere⁸ expleant sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

The Gallic cavalry suffers defeat.

80. Caesar, omni exercitū⁹ ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, si ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castris ēdūci et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex

1. *higher.*

2. Cf. dēspiciō.

3. *i.e.* the Gauls in the town.

4. *expressions of joy.*

5. *joy.*

6. *i.e.* the twenty-foot ditch nearest Alesia.

7. *wickerwork.*

8. *earth.*

9. *i.e.* the infantry.

omnibus castris quae summum undique iugum tenēbant dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intenti pugnae prōventum¹ exspectābant. Galli inter equitēs **rārōs** sagittariōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēceraut qui suis
 5 cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Galli² cōfiderent et nostrōs multitudīne premi vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et ii quī mūnitiōnibus
 10 continēbantur et ii quī ad auxiliū convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū³ suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque⁴ aut rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtutē excitābat. Cum ā
 15 meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur,⁵ Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertis turmis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectis sagittariī circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostri cēdentēs⁶ usque ad castra
 20 insecūti suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At ii quī Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

The Gauls make a night attack.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium,⁷ scālārum,⁸ harpagōnum numerō effectō Galli,

rārus, -a, -um, *wide apart*.

rēctē, adv., *well*.

ignōminia, -ae, f., *disgrace*.

turma, -ae, f., *squadron*.

maestus, -a, -um, *sad*.

harpagō, **harpagōnis**, m., *hook*.

1. = *eventum*.

2. *i.e.* the onlookers.

3. *yell*.

4. *neque . . . poterat*: *no brave or cowardly deed could*

escape notice.

5. *had been raging*.

6. Accusative.

7. *hurdles*.

8. *ladders*.

mediā nocte silentiō ex castris ēgressi ad campestrēs¹
mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā
significātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū
cōgnōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundis,² **sagittis**,
5 lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaue quae ad
oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem



10

Glans

Inscribed FERI, and on the other side
POMP (for *Pompeium*), i.e. Strike
Pompey.

tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat
tubā sīgnum suis Vercinge-
torīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.
Nostri, ut superiōribus diēbus
suus cuique erat locus attri-
būtus, ad mūnitiōnēs ac-
cēdunt; fundis³ librilibus
sudibusque,⁴ quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus⁵
15 Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebris adēptō multa
utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentis
tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius
lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant,
quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex
20 ulteriōribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

The Gauls retire without accomplishing their desire.

82. Dum⁶ longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs
multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius
successērunt, aut sē⁷ stimulis⁸ inopīnantēs induēbant aut
in scrobēs⁹ dēlāti trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turri-

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*.

librillis, -e, of a pound weight.

prōterreō, 2; cf. perterreō.

tenebrae, -arum, f., *darkness*.

trānsfodiō, -ere, -fodi, -fossus,
pierce through.

1. *in the field*.

2. *with slings*.

3. *slingstones*.

4. *stakes*.

5. *bullets*.

6. *as long as*.

7. sē induēbant: *were im-
paled*.

8. *sharp points*.

9. *ditches*.

bus¹ trāiectī² pilis³ mūrālibus interībant.⁴ Multis undique vulneribus acceptis, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret,⁵ veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castris ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpē-
 5 runt. At interiōrēs,⁶ dum ea quae ā Vercingetorige ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt,⁷ priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in his rēbus administrandis morāti prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The Gauls make a third attack.

10 83. Bis magnō cum dētrimentō repulsi Gallī quid agant cōsulunt; locōrum peritōs adhibent; ex his superiōrum castrōrum sitūs⁸ mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī,
 15 necessariōque paene iniquō locō et lēniter⁹ dēclivi¹⁰ castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Caninius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitis per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium Lx mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum civitātum quae maxi-
 20 mam virtūtis opiniōnem habēbant; quid quōque¹¹ pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundi tempus dēfīniunt, cum meridiēs esse videātur. His cōpiis Ver-

praeparō, 1; cf. parō.

prōferō; cf. ferō.

inficiō; cf. faciō.

bis, twice.

circumplector, -ī, -plexus sum, surround.

pactum, -ī, n., manner.

dēfīniō, 4, limit, set.

1. Abl. of separation.

2. run through.

3. Abl. of means.

4. perished.

5. = appropinquāret.

6. i.e. those in the town.

7. Sc. et to connect with explent.

8. locations.

9. gently.

10. sloping downward.

11. = et quō.

cassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militēsque ex nocturnō labōre
 5 sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam meridiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

The Romans are attacked from both sides.

10 84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūrālēs¹ falcēs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē visa pars firma est, hūc con-
 15 curritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantis mūnitiōnibus distinetur² nec facile plūribus locis occurrit.³ Multum⁴ ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus existit,⁵ quod suum⁶ praesidium in aliēnā vident virtūte cōstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt⁷
 20 vehementius⁸ hominum mentēs perturbant.

Desperate fighting continues on both sides.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque⁹ ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud

longurius, -ī, m., long pole.

1. wall.

2. Cf. teneō.

3. resisted; sc. hostibus.

4. multum . . . valet: does much toward frightening.

5. arises.

6. suum praesidium . . . cōstāre: their own protection depends much on others' bravery.

7. are out of sight.

8. quite strongly.

9. to both sides.

tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērānt; Rōmānī, sī rem¹ obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Ver-
 5 cassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum² locī ad dēclivitātem fastigium magnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs³ in⁴ vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēsum dat Gallīs et ea
 10 quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec virēs suppetunt.

Caesar sends rēenforcements and urges on his men.

86. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne⁵ pugnet; id nisi necessariō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortā-
 15 tur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum⁶ in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs⁷ dēspērātīs campestribus⁸ locīs propter magnitūdinem mūnitiōnum loca praerupta ascēnsū⁹
 20 temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs¹⁰ dēturbant,¹¹

dēclivitās, dēclivitātis, f., descent.
 mōmentum, -i, n., movement, importance.
 contegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, cover over.

succumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, yield.
 dīmicātiō, dīmicātiōnis, f.; cf. dīmicō.
 praeruptus, -a, -um, steep.

1. the battle.
2. iniquum . . . fastigium: the uneven downward slope of the ground.
3. wearied.
4. in vicem: in turn.
5. Abl. of means.

6. fruit.
7. i.e. those inside.
8. level.
9. Abl. of specification with praerupta.
10. i.e. the Romans: acc. case.
11. drive off.

aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam¹ rescindunt.

Caesar himself enters the fight.

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscēntem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postremō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidio addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi, partem circumire exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs
10 adoriri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis xi cohortibus, quās ex proximis praesidiis dēductās fors² obtulit, Caesarem per nūtiōs facit certiōrem quid³ faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō
15 intersit.⁴

The Gauls are completely defeated.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestitūs cōgnitō, turmīs-⁵ que equitum et cohortibus visis quās sē sequi iusserat, ut dē locis superiōribus haec dēclīvia⁶ et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre
20 sublātō excipit⁷ rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī ēmissis pilis gladiis rem gerunt. Repente⁸ post⁹ tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs

accelerō, 1, *hurry.*

vestitus, -ūs, m., *attire.*

1. *breastworks.*

2. *chance.*

3. *quid faciendum: i.e. to make a sally.*

4. *take part.*

5. *squadrons.*

6. *dēclīvia et dēvexa: the downward slopes and hillsides.*

7. *followed.*

8. *suddenly.*

9. *post tergum: i.e. of the Gauls.*

aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellanus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa
 5 militāria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī¹ ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris sub-
 10 sidiīs ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōsequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in civitatēs discēdunt.

Vercingetorix surrenders himself and his entire army.

15 89. Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad² utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere³ seu vivum⁴ trādere
 20 velint. Mittuntur dē his rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castrīs cōnsidit⁵; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorix dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Aeduis atque Arvernīs, si⁶ per cōs civitatēs recuperāre posset,
 25 ex reliquīs captivīs tōtī exercitui capita⁷ singula prae-
 dae nōmine distribuit.

1. Sc. Galli.

2. ad utramque rem: for
 either alternative; explained by
 seu . . . seu . . . velint.

3. appease.

4. alive.

5. took his place.

6. to see if.

7. capita singula: a man
 a piece.

Caesar distributes his army for the winter.

90. His rēbus cōfectis in Aeduōs proficiscitur ; civitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Capti-
 5 vōrum circiter xx milia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sē-
 quanōs proficisci iubet ; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā
 10 finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēginum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Caninium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Maticōne in Aeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae
 15 causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. His rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cōgnitis, Rōmae diērum viginti supplicātiō¹ redditur.

1. *thanksgiving.*

C. IULII CAESARIS
DE BELLO CIVILI
LIBER TERTIUS

The so-called First Triumvirate (B.C. 60), composed of Caesar, Crassus, and Pompey, was formed for the purpose of advancing the selfish interests of its members. Caesar wished to extend his power, Crassus to increase his wealth, Pompey to secure his hold on the East. With the help of Crassus and Pompey, Caesar was elected consul for the year B.C. 59. The Senate, influenced by Crassus and Pompey, voted that Caesar as proconsul should have as his province Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina, and Illyricum, with an army of four legions — an arrangement that was to hold good for five years.

Caesar thereupon set out to subdue Gaul, the narrative of which he has given us in his *Commentaries on the Gallic War*. The five-year period proved too short for the purpose, and hence an additional five years was granted, while Spain was allotted to Pompey, and Syria to Crassus. Pompey remained at Rome and governed his province through trusted lieutenants. Crassus proceeded to Syria, where he was killed in battle, B.C. 53.

Caesar's proconsulship was to expire at the end of B.C. 49, and wishing to stand for his second consulship in that year, he had arranged with Pompey that he should candidate for the office even though absent from the city. But Pompey, growing jealous of Caesar's marked success in Gaul and Britain, joined the aristocratic (senatorial) party and induced the Senate to decree that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen some months before the expiration of his second five-year term.

Knowing that he would not be safe at Rome, where Pompey was in supreme command, Caesar refused to obey, and taking but a single legion, crossed the Rubicon, which bounded his province, and

marched towards Rome. Thus the Civil War was begun. As he advanced, many cities submitted, while Pompey, dismayed at this evidence of Caesar's power, hastened to Brundisium and thence to Macedonia.

Caesar turned his attention to his enemies in the West. With Spain, Sicily, Sardinia, and Italy won, he returned to Rome and assumed the dictatorship, to which he had been appointed in his absence.

At this point the following selections take up the story.

Caesar is elected consul.

1. Dictatōre habente comitia Caesare cōsulēs creantur Iūlius Caesar et P. Servilius; is enim erat annus, quō per lēgēs eī cōsulem¹ fieri liceret.



Pompey

Caesar resigns the dictatorship and goes to Brundisium.

2. His rēbus et fēriis Latinis comitiisque omnibus perficiendis xi diēs tribuit² dictatūrāque sē abdicat et ab urbe proficiscitur Brundisiumque pervenit.

Eō legiōnēs xii, equitātum omnem venire iusserat. Sed tantum³ nāvium reperit, ut angustē xv milia legiōnāriōrum militum, dc equitēs trānsportāre possent. Hoc ūnum Caesari ad celeritātem cōficiendī bellī dēfuit.

dictatōr, dictatōris, m., *dictator*.
comitia, -ōrum, n., *election*.
fēriae, -ārum, f., *festival*.

dictatūra, -ae, f., *dictatorship*.
abdicō, i, *resign*.
angustē, *scarcely, by crowding*.

1. Pred. acc. agreeing with implied subject of fieri.

2. assigned.

3. so few.

Meanwhile Pompey has collected an enormous army.

3. Pompēius annum spatium ad comparandās cōpiās nactus, quod vacuum ā bellō atque ab hoste ōtiōsum fuerat, magnam ex Asiā Cycladibusque insulis, Corcyrā, Athēnis, Pontō, Bīthyniā, Syriā, Ciliciā, Phoenicē, Aegyptō classem coēgerat, magnam omnibus locis aedificandam cūrāverat.

Caesar addresses his troops, and crosses to Palaeste.

6. Caesar, ut Brundisium vēnit, cōtiōnātus apud militēs, quoniam prope ad finem labōrum ac periculōrum esset perventum, aequō animō mancipia atque impedimenta in Italiā relinquerent,¹ ipsi expediti nāvēs cōscenderent, quō maior numerus militum posset impōnī, omniaque ex victōriā et ex suā liberalitāte spērarent, conclāmantibus omnibus, imperāret,² quod vellet, quodcumque imperāvisset, sē aequō animō esse factūrōs, 11 Nōn. Iān. nāvēs³ solvit. Impositae,⁴ ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, legiōnēs VII. Postridiē terram attigit Germiniōrum. Saxa inter⁵ et alia loca periculōsa⁶ quiētam nactus statiónem et portūs omnēs timēns, quod tenērī ab adversāriis arbitrābantur,⁷ ad eum locum, qui appellābatur Palaestē, omnibus nāvibus ad ūnam incolumibus militēs exposuit.

annuus, -a, -um; cf. annus.

ōtiōsus, -a, -um, *undisturbed*.

cōtiōnor, I, *address*.

mancipium, -i, n., *slave*.

Nōnae, -arum, f., *the Nones*, the

seventh of March, May, July, and October, the fifth of the other months.

Iānuārius, -a, -um, *of January*.

expōnō; cf. pōnō.

1. (cōtiōnātus) relinquerent, etc., (*urging*) that they should leave, etc.

2. Depends on conclāmantibus, just as relinquerent depends on cōtiōnātus above.

3. nāvēs solvit: *set sail*.

4. Sc. sunt.

5. Its position after the noun is unusual.

6. *dangerous*.

7. Here passive in meaning.

Both Caesar and Pompey hasten to reach Dyrrhachium. Pompey gains the town and both go into winter quarters.

13. At Pompēius, cōgnitis his rēbus, Dyrrhachiō timēns, diurnis eō nocturnisque itinēribus contendit. Simul Caesar appropinquāre dicēbātur, tantusque terror incidit eius exercitui, quod propterāns noctem diē
5 coniūxerat¹ neque iter intermiserat,¹ ut paene omnēs ex Ēpirō finitimisque regiōnibus signa relinquerent, complūrēs arma prōicerent ac fugae simile iter vidērētur. Sed cum prope Dyrrhachium Pompēius cōstitisset castraque mētārī iussisset, perterritō etiam tum exercitū
10 princeps² Labiēnus prōcēdit³ iūratque sē eum nōn dēsertūrum eundemque cāsum subitūrum, quemcumque⁴ ei⁵ fortūna tribuisset. Hoc idem reliquī iūrant lēgātī; tribūnī mīlitum centuriōnēsque sequuntur, atque idem omnis exercitus iūrat. Caesar praeoccupātō⁶ itinere ad
15 Dyrrhachium finem properandī facit castraque ad flūmen Apsum pōnit in finibus Apollōniātium, ut castellis vigiliisque bene meritaē civitatēs tūtā⁷ essent, ibique reliquārum⁸ ex Italiā legiōnum adventum expectāre et sub pellibus hiemāre cōstituit. Hoc idem Pompēius
20 fēcit et trāns flūmen Apsum positīs castris eō cōpiās omnēs auxiliāque condūxit.

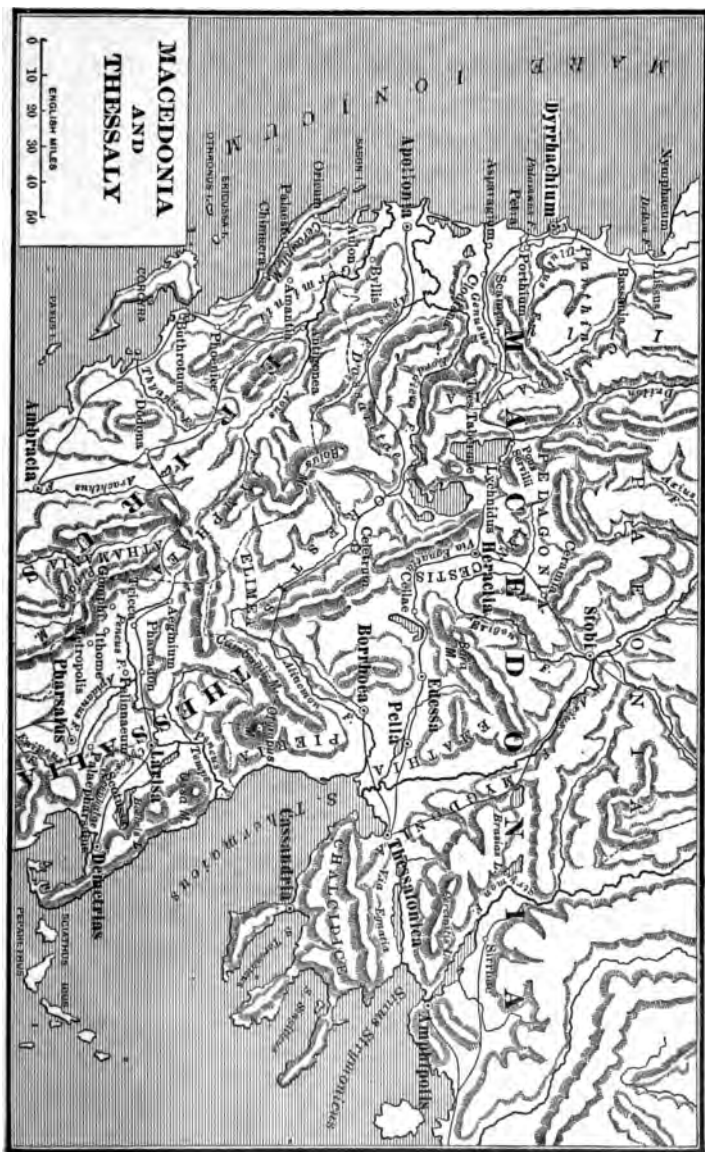
Caesar's effort for peace is defeated.

19. Inter bina castra Pompēi atque Caesaris ūnum flūmen intererat Apsus, crēbraque inter sē colloquia

diurnus, -a, -um, of the or by day. mētor, I, measure off.
iūrō, I, swear, take an oath.

1. The subject is Pompey.
2. = *primus*.
3. *advanced*.
4. -que: *but*.
5. *i.e.* Pompey.

6. *praeoccupātō itinere*: since Pompey had got the start of him.
7. *protected*.
8. *reliquārum legiōnum*: those at Brundisium.



milites habebant, neque ullum interim telum per
 pactiōēs loquentium traiciēbātur. Mittit¹ P. Vatinius
 lēgātum ad ripam ipsam flūminis, quī ea, quae maximē
 ad pācem pertinēre vidērentur, ageret et crēbrō magnā
 5 vōce prōnūntiāret, liceretne² cīvibus ad cīvēs dē pāce
 tūtō lēgātōs mittere, quod etiam fugitivis³ ab saltū
 Pŷrēnaeō praedōnibusque⁴ licuisset, praesertim cum⁵
 id agerent, nē cīvēs cum cīvibus armis dēcertārent?
 Multa suppliciter locūtus est, ut dē suā atque omnium
 10 salūte dēbēbat, silentiōque ab utrisque militibus audītus.
 Respōsum est ab alterā parte Aulum Varrōnem pro-
 fitērī sē alterō diē ad colloquium ventūrum atque eundem
 visūrum,⁶ quemadmodum tūtō lēgātī venīre et quae
 vellent expōnere possent, certumque eī rei tempus cōn-
 15 stituitur. Quō cum esset posterō diē ventum, magna
 utrimque multitudō convēnit, magnaue erat expectātiō
 eius rei, atque omnium animi intentī⁷ esse ad pācem
 vidēbantur. Quā ex frequentīā Titus Labiēnus prōdit,
 summissā⁸ ōrātiōne dē pāce loquī atque altercārī cum
 20 Vatiniō incipit. Quōrum mediam certātiōnem inter-

pactiō, pactiōnis, f., *agreement*.

crēbrō, adv.; cf. crēber.

saltus, -ūs, m., *mountain glade*.

praedō, praedōnis, m., *pirate*.

profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, *declare openly*.

utrimque, *on each side*.

altercor, i, *dispute*.

certātiō, certātiōnis, f., *strife, debate*.

interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum;
cf. perrumpō.

1. Sc. Caesar as subject.

2. (asking) whether it was not allowable.

3. Refers to the remnants of Sertorius' army in Spain (B.C. 72).

4. In the war with the pirates (B.C. 66).

5. cum . . . agerent: since they were working to this end.

6. visūrum . . . possent: would see how commissioners might be able, etc.

7. bent upon.

8. summissā ōrātiōne: in a calm speech.

rumpunt subitō undique tēla immissa; quae ille¹ ob-
tēctus armīs militum vitāvit; vulnerantur tamen com-
plūrēs, in hīs Cornēlius Balbus, M. Plōtius, L. Tiburtius,
centuriōnēs militēsque nōnnūlli. Tum Labiēnus:
5 ‘Dēsinite ergō dē compositiōne loquī; nam nōbīs nisi
Caesaris capite relātō pāx esse nūlla potest.’

*Caesar's troops which were left at Brundisium under Antony and Calenus,
acting under orders, cross to Greece.*

26. Illi² adhibitā audāciā et virtūte administrantibus
M. Antōniō et Fūfiō Calēnō, multum ipsīs militibus hor-
tantibus neque ūllum periculum prō salūte Caesaris re-
x 10 cūsantibus nactī austrum nāvēs solvunt atque alterō diē
Apollōniam praetervehuntur. Quī cum essent ex con-
tinenti³ visī, Cōpōnius, quī Dyrrhachī classī Rhodiae⁴
praeerat, nāvēs ex portū ēdūcit, et cum iam nostrīs re-
missiōre⁵ ventō appropinquāssent, idem auster incrēbuit
x 5 nostrisque praesidiō fuit. Neque vērō ille ob eam
causam cōnātū⁶ dēsistēbat, sed labōre et perseverantiā
nautārum sē vim tempestātis superāre posse spērābat
praetervectōsque Dyrrhachium magnā vī ventī nihilō
sētius sequēbātur. Nostrī ūsī fortūnae beneficiō tamen
20 impetum classis⁷ timēbant, si⁸ forte ventus remīsisset.

obtegō, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctum, *pro-
tect.*

dēsinō, -ere, dēsiī, dēsītum, *cease.*
compositiō, compositiōnis, f.,
settlement.

auster, austrī, m., *south wind.*

praetervehor, -ī, -vectus sum, *be
carried by, sail by.*

incrēbescō, -ere, -crēbui, —,
increase.

perseverantia, -ae, f., *persistence.*

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*

1. *i.e.* Vatinius.

2. *i.e.* Caesar's troops at
Brundisium.

3. Sc. terrā: *mainland.*

4. Adj. with classī.

5. *milder.*

6. Cf. cōnor.

7. Subjective genitive.

8. si . . . remīsisset: *if the
wind should die down.*

Nacti portum, qui appellatur Nymphaeum, ultra Lissum milia passuum III, eo nave introduxerunt (qui portus ab Africo tegebatur, ab austro non erat tutus) leviusque tempestatis quam classis¹ periculum aestimaverunt.
 5 Quo simulatque intro est itum, incredibili felicitate² auster, qui per biduum flaverat,³ in Africum se vertit.

Both Caesar and Pompey advance toward Antony. Caesar joins Antony, and Pompey encamps.

30. Haec eodem ferre tempore Caesar atque Pompeius cognoscunt. Nam praetervectas Apolloniam Dyrrachiumque nave viderant, ipsi iter secundum⁴ eas terra
 10 direxerant, sed quo essent eae delatae, primis diebus ignorabant. Cognitaque res diversa⁵ sibi ambobus⁶ consilia capiunt: Caesar, ut quam primum se cum Antonio coniungeret; Pompeius, ut venientibus⁷ in itinere se opponeret, si⁸ imprudentes⁷ ex insidiis adoriri posset,
 15 eodemque die uterque eorum ex castris statis a flumine Apsone exercitum educunt⁹: Pompeius clam et noctu, Caesar palam¹⁰ atque interdiu.¹¹ Sed Caesaris circuitu¹² maiore iter erat longius adverso¹³ flumine, ut vadum transire posset: Pompeius, quia expedito itinere flumen
 20 ei transeundum non erat, magnis itineribus ad Antonium

Africus, -i, m., southwest wind.

leviter, adv.; cf. levis.

aestimō, I, estimate.

intro, adv., within.

dirigō, -ere, -rexi, -rectum, direct.

ignorō, I, not know.

stativus, -a, -um, permanent.

1. i.e. Pompey's.

2. good fortune.

3. had blown.

4. Prep., following, abreast of.

5. different.

6. both.

7. Refer to Antony's men.

8. (to see) if.

9. Note the singular subject.

10. openly.

11. by day.

12. circuitu maiore: explains iter longius.

13. adverso flumine: up the river.

contendit atque eum ubi appropinquāre cōgnōvit, idō-
neum locum nactus, ibi cōpiās collocāvit suōsque om-
nēs in castris continuit ignēsque fieri prohibuit, quō occul-
tior esset eius adventus. Haec ad Antōnium statim
5 per Graecōs dēferuntur. Ille missis ad Caesarem
nūntiis ūnum diem sēsē castris tenuit; alterō diē ad eum
pervēnit Caesar. Cuius adventū cōgnitō Pompēius, nē
duōbus circumclūderētur exercitibus, ex eō locō discēdit
omnibusque cōpiis ad Asparāgium Dyrrhachinōrum
10 pervenit atque ibi idōneō locō castra pōnit.

Caesar fails to lure Pompey to fight, but cuts him off from Dyrrhachium.

41. Caesar, postquam Pompēium ad Asparāgium esse
cōgnōvit, eōdem¹ cum exercitū profectus expugnātō in
itinere oppidō Parthīnōrum, in quō Pompēius praesidium
habēbat, tertiō diē ad Pompēium pervēnit iūxtaque²
15 eum castra posuit et postrīdiē ēductis omnibus cōpiis
aciē instrūctā dēcernendī³ potestātem Pompēiō fēcit.
Ubi illum suis locis sē tenēre animadvertit, reductō in
castra exercitū, aliud sibi cōsiliū capiendum existi-
māvit. Itaque posterō diē omnibus cōpiis magnō cir-
20 cuitū difficilī angustōque itinere Dyrrhachium profectus
est spērāns Pompēium aut Dyrrhachium compelli aut ab
eō interclūdī posse, quod omnem commeātum tōtiusque
belli apparātum eō contulisset;⁴ ut⁵ accidit. Pom-
pēius enim primō ignōrāns eius cōsiliū, quod diversō
25 ab eā regiōne itinere profectum⁶ vidēbat, angustis⁷ rei

apparātus, -ūs, m., *equipment*.

1. *to the same place.*

2. *close to.*

3. *of fighting a decisive com-
bat.*

4. The subject is Pompey.

5. *ut accidit: and so it turned
out.*

6. *profectum (esse): sc. Cae-
sarem.*

7. *scarcity, abl. of cause.*

frūmentāriae compulsum discessisse existimābat; postea per explorātōrēs certior factus posterō diē castra mōvit breviorē itinere sē occurrere ei posse spērāns. Quod fore suspicātus Caesar milītēsque adhortātus, ut aequō
 5 animō labōrem ferrent, parvā parte noctis itinere intermissō māne¹ Dyrrhachium vēnit, cum primum agmen Pompēi procul cernerētur, atque ibi castra posuit.

Caesar arranges for food supply.

42. Pompēius interclūsus Dyrrhachiō, ubi prōpositum tenēre nōn potuit, secundō² ūsus cōsiliō ēditō locō,
 10 quī appellātur Petra aditumque habet nāvibus medio-crem³ atque eās ā quibusdam prōtegit ventis, castra commūnit. Eō partem nāvium longārum convenire, frūmentum commeātumque ab Asiā atque omnibus regiōnibus, quās tenēbat, comportārī imperat.⁴ Caesar
 15 longius bellum ductum irī existimāns et dē Ītalicis commeātibus dēspērāns, quod tantā diligentīā omnia litora ā Pompēiānis tenēbantur, classēsque ipsius, quās hieme in Siciliā, Galliā, Ītaliā fēcerat,⁵ morābantur, in Ēpīrum rei frūmentāriae causā Q. Tillium et L. Canulēium lēgā-
 20 tum misit, quodque hae regiōnēs aberant longius, locis certis horrea cōstituit vectūrāsque frūmentī finitimis civitātibus dēscripsit. Item Lissō⁶ Parthinisque et omnibus castellis quod esset frūmentī conquīrī⁷ iussit. Id erat perexiguū cum⁸ ipsius agrī nātūrā, quod sunt

prōpositum, -ī, n., *purpose*.

lītus, lītoris, n., *shore*.

horreum, -ī, n., *storehouse*.

vectūra, -ae, f., *transportation*.

dēscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *assign*.

perexiguus, -a, -um, *very small, very little*.

1. *early in the morning*.

2. *alternative*.

3. *fairly good*.

4. Here used with acc. and inf., an unusual construction.

5. = faciendās cūrāverat.

6. Lissō, etc.: ablatives.

7. *to be collected*.

8. cum . . . tum: *not only . . . but also*.

loca aspera ¹ ac montuōsa ac plērumque frūmentō ūtuntur importātō, tum quod Pompēius haec ² prōvīderat et superiōribus diēbus praedae locō Parthinōs habuerat frūmentumque omne conquisitum spoliātis ³ effossisque ⁴
5 eōrum domibus per equitēs comportārat.

Caesar hems in Pompey with a line of fortresses.

43. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar cōnsilium capit ex loci nātūrā. Erant enim circum castra Pompēi permulti ēditi atque asperi collēs. Hōs primum praesidiis tenuit castellaque ibi commūnit. Inde, ut loci cuiusque
10 nātūra ferēbat, ⁵ ex castellō in castellum perductā mūnitiōne circumvallāre Pompēium instituit, haec ⁶ spectāns, quod angustā rē frūmentariā ūtēbatur, ⁷ quodque Pompēius multitudine equitum valēbat, quō minōre periculō undique frūmentum commeātumque exercitui supportāre
15 posset, simul, uti pābulātiōne Pompēium prohibēret equitatumque eius ad rem gerendam inūtilem efficeret, tertiō, ut auctōritātem, quā ille ⁸ maximē apud exterās nātiōnēs nitī ⁹ vidēbatur, ¹⁰ minueret, cum fāma per orbem terrarum percrēbuisset illum ā Caesare obsidērī neque
20 audēre proeliō dīmicāre.

montuōsus, -a, -um, *mountainous*.
pābulātiō, pābulātiōnis, f., *foraging*.

percrēbēscō, -ere, -crēbuī, —, *become very frequent, be spread*.

1. *rough*.
2. *haec prōvīderat*: *had foreseen this move*.
3. *stripped*.
4. *undermined*.
5. = *postulābat*.

6. Explained by clauses quō . . . posset, etc.
7. *found*.
8. *i.e.* Pompey.
9. *rely on*.
10. *was seen*.

Pompey builds counter fortifications and harasses Caesar's men while they are at work.

44. Pompēius neque ā mari Dyrrhachiōque discēdere volēbat, quod omnem apparātum bellī, tēla, arma, tormenta ibi collocāverat frūmentumque exercituī nāvibus supportābat, neque mūnitiōnēs Caesaris prohibēre
 5 poterat, nisi proeliō dēcertāre vellet; quod eō tempore statuerat nōn esse faciendum. Relinquēbātur,¹ ut extrēmam² ratiōnem bellī sequēns quam plūrimōs collēs occupāret et quam lātissimās regiōnēs praesidiis tenēret Caesarisque cōpiās, quam maximē posset, distinēret;
 10 idque accidit. Castellis enim xxiv effectīs xv milia passuum circuitū amplexus hōc spatiō pābulābātur; multaque erant intrā eum locum manū sata;³ quibus interim iūmenta pāsceret.⁴ Atque ut nostrī perpetuās⁵ mūnitiōnēs habēbant, perductās ex castellis in proximā
 15 castella, nē quō locō ērumperent Pompēiāni ac nostrōs post tergum adorirentur, ita illī interiōre spatiō perpetuās mūnitiōnēs efficiēbant, nē quem locum nostrī intrāre atque ipsōs ā tergō circumvenire possent. Sed illī⁶ operibus⁷ vincēbant, quod et numerō militum
 20 praestābant et interiōre spatiō⁸ minōrem circuitum habēbant. Quārē cum⁹ erant loca Caesarī capienda, etsi prohibēre Pompēius tōtis cōpiis et dimicāre nōn cōn-

amplector, -ī, -plexus sum, *sur-* intrō, I, *enter*.
round.

1. The subject is the clause ut, etc.

2. extrēmam ratiōnem: the last resort.

3. planted.

4. could feed.

5. continuous.

6. i.e. the Pompeians.

7. in (pushing) their fortifications.

8. Abl. of cause.

9. cum . . . capienda: whenever Caesar had to seize new places.

stituerat, tamen suis¹ locis sagittariōs² funditorēsque mittēbat, quōrum magnum habēbat numerum, multique ex nostris vulnerābantur, magnusque incesserat timor sagittarum, atque omnēs ferē militēs aut ex coāctis aut
 5 ex centōnibus aut ex coriis tunicās aut tegimenta³ fēcerant, quibus tēla vitārent.⁴

Caesar's troops retire from a skirmish with slight loss.

46. Nostrī vērō, quī satis⁵ habēbant sine dētrimentō discēdere, complūribus⁶ interfectis v omnīnō suōrum āmissis quiētissimē sē recēpērunt paulōque citrā eum
 10 locum morātī aliis comprehēnsis collibus mūnitiōnēs perfēcērunt.

Pompey has abundant supplies while Caesar suffers from want.

47. Erat nova et inūsītata⁷ bellī ratiō cum tot castellōrum numerō⁸ tantōque spatiō et tantis mūnitiōnibus et tōtō obsidiōnis genere, tum etiam reliquis rēbus.
 15 Nam⁹ quicumque alterum¹⁰ obsidēre cōnāti sunt, percussōs atque infirmōs hostēs adorti aut proeliō superātōs aut aliquā offēnsiōne¹¹ permōtōs continuērunt,¹² cum

incēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *come up, arise.*
 coāctum, -ī, n., *felt.*
 centō, centōnis, m., *matting.*

corium, -ī, -n., *hide.*
 tunica, -ae, f., *shirt.*
 percussus, -a, -um, *upset, disconcerted.*

1. suis locis: *favorable places.*

2. sagittariōs funditorēsque: *bowmen and slingers.*

3. coverings.

4. escape.

5. satis habēbant: *deemed it sufficient.*

6. i.e. of the enemy.

7. unusual.

8. numerō, etc.: *abls. of specification.*

9. nam . . . prohibērent: *a statement of a general truth; therefore praestārent and prohibērent should be translated by the present tense.*

10. his opponent.

11. defeat.

12. kept in check.

ipsi numerō equitum militumque praestarent; causa¹ autem obsidiōnis haec ferē esse cōsuēvit, ut frūmentō hostēs prohibērent. At² tum integrās atque incolumēs cōpiās Caesar inferiōre militum numerō continēbat,³ cum
 5 illi omnium rerum cōpiā abundārent; cotidie enim magnus undique nāvium numerus conveniēbat, quae comēatū supportarent, neque ūllus flāre⁴ ventus poterat, quīn⁵ aliquā ex parte secundum cursum habērent. Ipse⁶ autem cōsumptis omnibus longē lātēque frū-
 10 mentis summis erat in angustiis. Sed tamen haec singulari patientiā milites ferēbant. Recordābantur enim eadem sē superiōre annō in Hispāniā perpressos labōre et patientiā maximum bellum cōnfēcisse, meminerant⁷ ad Alesiam magnam sē inopiam perpressos, multō etiam
 15 maiōrem ad Avaricum maximārum sē gentium victōrēs discessisse. Nōn,⁸ illis hordeum cum darētur, nōn legūmina recūsābant; pecus vērō, cuius rei summa erat ex Epirō cōpia, magnō in hōnōre habēbant.

A substitute for bread is found.

48. Est etiam genus rādīcis inventum ab iis, quī vacā-
 20 bant ab operibus, quod appellātur chara, quod admix-

recordor, 1, *call to mind, remember, recollect.*

perpetior, -ī, -pessus sum, *endure.*

hordeum, -ī, n., *barley.*

legūmen, legūminis, n., *bean.*

chara, -ae, f., *chara*, a kind of wild vegetable.

admisceō, -ēre, -miscui, -mixtum, *mixed with.*

1. causa . . . cōsuēvit, ut: *moreover the purpose of such a blockade has generally been this, that.*

2. at tum: *but on this occasion.*

3. *tried to keep in check.*

4. *to blow.*

5. quīn . . . habērent: *lit. but that they had a favorable wind from some quarter.*

6. *i.e. Caesar.*

7. *remembered.*

8. nōn, illis hordeum cum darētur = hordeum nōn recūsābant cum darētur.

tum lacte multum inopiam levābat.¹ Id ad similitūdinem² pānis efficiēbant. Eius erat magna cōpia. Ex hōc effectōs pānēs, cum in colloquiis Pompēiānī famem³ nostris obiectārent, vulgō in eōs iaciēbant, ut spem eōrum
5 minuerent.

Pompey's army suffers from want of food and water.

49. Iamque frūmenta mātūrēscere incipiēbant, atque ipsa spēs inopiam sustentābat,⁴ quod celeriter sē habitūrōs cōpiam cōfidēbant; crēbraeque vōcēs militum in vigiliis colloquiisque audiēbantur, prius sē cortice⁵ ex
10 arboribus victūrōs,⁶ quam Pompēium ē manibus dīmīsūrōs. Libenter⁷ etiam ex perfugīs cōgnōscēbant equōs eōrum⁸ tolerārī,⁹ reliqua vērō iūmenta interīsse; ūtī autem ipsōs¹⁰ valētūdine nōn bonā, cum angustīs locī et odōre taetrō ex multitūdine cadāverum¹¹ et cotidiānis
5 labōribus insuētōs¹² operum, tum aquae summā inopiā affectōs.¹³ Omnia enim flūmina atque omnēs rīvōs,¹⁴ quī ad mare pertinēbant, Caesar aut āverterat aut magnīs operibus obstrūxerat,¹⁵ atque ut erant loca montuōsa et aditūs perangustī vallium, hās¹⁶ sublicīs¹⁷ in terram

pānis, pānis, m., *bread.*

obiectō, I, *throw up at, taunt with.*

mātūrēscō, -ere, mātūrui, —, *begin to ripen.*

odōr, odōris, m., *stench.*

taeter, taetra, taetrum, *foul.*

1. *relieved.*

2. *likeness.*

3. *hunger.*

4. *made bearable.*

5. *bark.*

6. *live.*

7. *gladly.*

8. *i.e. Pompey's men.*

9. *kept alive.*

10. Subject of ūtī.

11. *dead bodies.*

12. *insuētōs operum: being unused to work.*

13. *afflicted: agrees with ipsōs and is modified by the abl. of cause.*

14. *brooks.*

15. *stopped.*

16. *i.e. vallēs.*

17. *stakes.*

dēmissis praesaepserat¹ terramque adiēcerat, ut aquam continēret. Ita illi necessariō loca sequi dēmissa² ac palūstria et puteōs³ fodere⁴ cōgēbantur atque hunc labōrem ad cotidiāna opera addēbant; quī tamen fontēs
 5 ā quibusdam praesidiis aberant longius et celeriter aestibus exārēscēbant. At Caesaris exercitus optimā valētūdine summāque aquae cōpiā ūtēbatur, tum⁵ commeātūs omni genere praeter frūmentum abundābat, cuius cotidiē melius succēdere tempus maiōremque spem mā-
 10 tūrītate frūmentōrum prōpōni vidēbant.

Night attacks are made on Caesar's troops.

50. In novō genere bellī novae ab utrīsq; bel-
 landī ratiōnēs⁶ reperiēbantur. Illi, cum animadvertis-
 sent ex ignibus nocte cohortēs nostrās ad mūnitiōnēs
 excubāre, silentiō aggressi ūniversi intrā multitudinem
 15 sagittās coniciēbant et sē cōnfestim ad suōs recipiēbant.
 Quibus rēbus nostrī ūsū docti haec reperiēbant remedia,
 ut aliō locō ignēs facerent aliō excubārent. . . .

Sulla's arrival drives the Pompeians off.

51. Interim certior factus P. Sūlla, quem discēdēs ca-
 stris praefēcerat Caesar, auxiliō cohorti vēnit cum legiōni-
 20 bus duābus; cuius adventū facile sunt repulsi Pompēiāni.
 Neque vērō cōspectum aut impetum nostrōrum tulērunt,
 prīmisque dēiectis reliqui sē vertērunt et locō cessērunt.

palūster, -tris, -tre, *swampy, marshy.*

fōns, fontis, m., *spring, well.*

exārēscō, -ere, -āruī, —, *dry up.*

abundō, I, *abound.*

mātūrītās, mātūrītātis, f.; cf. mā-
 tūrus.

excubō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum,
keep watch.

remedium, -i, n., *help.*

1. *blocked up.*

2. *low.*

3. *wells.*

4. *dig.*

5. *and then too.*

6. *methods.*

Sed insequentēs nostrōs, nē longius prōsequerentur, Sūlla revocāvit. At plērique existimant, sī ācrius insequī voluisset, bellum eō diē potuisse¹ finire. Cuius cōsiliū reprehendendum nōn vidētur. Aliae² enim sunt lēgātī
 5 partēs atque imperātōris: alter omnia agere ad³ praescrīptum,⁴ alter liberē⁵ ad summam⁶ rērum cōsulare dēbet.

Six engagements bring losses to both sides. Caesar rewards his men.

53. Ūnō diē vi proeliis factis, tribus ad Dyrrhachium, tribus ad mūnitiōnēs, cum hōrum omnium ratiō⁷ habēretur, ad⁸ duo milia numerō ex Pompēiānis cecidisse
 10 reperiēbāmus, ēvocātōs⁹ centuriōnēsq̄ complūrēs (in eō fuit numerō Valerius Flaccus, L. filius, eius, quī praetor Asiam obtinuerat); signaque sunt militāria vi relāta. Nostri nōn amplius xx omnibus sunt proeliis dēsiderāti.¹⁰ Sed in castellō nēmō fuit omninō militum,
 15 quī vulnerārētur, quattuorque ex ūnā cohorte centuriōnēs oculōs āmisērunt. Et cum labōris sui periculique testimōnium afferre vellent, milia sagittārum circiter xxx in castellum coniecta Caesarī renūntiāvērunt, scūtōque ad eum relātō Scaevae centuriōnis inventa sunt in
 20 eō forāmina cxx. Quem¹¹ Caesar, ut erat dē sē meritis et dē rē pūblicā, dōnātum¹² milibus¹³ cc . . . collaudātumque ab octāvis ōrdinibus ad primipilum sē trādūcere¹⁴

forāmen, forāminis, n., hole.

1. Sc. Sūllam as subject.

2. aliae atque: *different from.*

3. *according to.*

4. *instructions.*

5. *freely.*

6. summam rērum: *general interests.*

7. *reckoning.*

8. *about, adv.*

9. *veterans*; appositive with milia.

10. *lost.*

11. Obj. of trādūcere.

12. *presented with*; agrees with quem, as does also collaudātum.

13. milibus cc: sc. sēstertium. 200,000 sesterces equals something like \$8000.

14. *promote.*

prōnūntiāvit (eius enim ope¹ castellum magnā ex part
cōservātum esse cōstābat²) cohortemque postea d
plici stipendiō, frūmentō, veste,³ congiāriis militāribus
que dōnis amplissimē dōnāvit.

Because of scarcity of fodder, Pompey plans to force the blockade.

- 5 58. Caesar, quō facilius equitātum Pompēianum a
Dyrrhachium contineret et pābulatiōne prohiberet, ad
tūs duōs, quōs esse angustōs dēmōstrāvimus, magn
operibus praemūnivit castellaque his locis posuit. Pon
pēius, ubi nihil prōfici⁴ equitātū cōgnōvit, paucis inte
10 missis diēbus rūsum eum⁵ nāvibus ad sē intrā mūn
tiōnēs recipit. Erat summa inopia pābuli,⁶ adeō⁷ i
foliis⁸ ex arboribus strīctis et teneris⁹ harundinum rād
cibus⁸ contūsīs equōs alerent¹⁰ (frūmenta enim, qua
fuerant intrā mūnitiōnēs sata,¹¹ cōsūmpserant); cōg
15 bantur Corcyrā atque Acarnāniā longō interiectō nāvig
tiōnis spatiō pābulum supportāre, quodque erat eius r
minor¹² cōpia, hordeō adaugēre atque his ratiōnib
equitātum tolerāre. Sed postquam nōn modo hordeu
pābulumque omnibus locis herbaeque dēsectae,¹³ se
20 etiam frōns¹⁴ ex arboribus dēficiēbat, corruptis¹⁵ equi

congiārium, -ī, n., *reward*.

folium, -ī, n., *leaf*.

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strīctum,
pluck.

harundō, harundinis, f., *reed*.

contundō, -ere, -tudi, -tūsur
bruise.

adaugeō, -ēre, -auxī, -auctum; c
augeō.

herba, -ae, f., *grass*.

1. *help*.

2. *it was clear*.

3. *clothing*.

4. *accomplished*.

5. = *equitātum*.

6. *fodder*.

7. *to such a degree*.

8. Ablatives of means with

alerent.

9. *tender*.

10. *had to feed*.

11. *sown*.

12. *too small*.

13. *cut down*.

14. *foliage*.

15. *emaciated*.

māciē cōnandum sibi aliquid Pompēius dē ēruptiōne existimāvit.

Two brothers who have received many favors from Caesar are charged by the troopers with dishonesty.

59. Erant apud Caesarem ex equitum numerō Allobrogēs duo frātrēs, Raucillus et Egus, Adbucilli filiī,
 5 quī principātum in civitatē multis¹ annis obtinuerat, singulārī virtūte hominēs, quōrum operā² Caesar omnibus Gallicis bellis optimā fortissimāque erat ūsus. His domī ob hās causās amplissimōs magistrātūs mandāverat atque eōs extrā³ ordinem in⁴ senātum legendōs cūrā-
 10 verat agrōsque in Galliā ex hostibus captōs praemiaque rei⁵ pecūniariae magna tribuerat⁶ locuplētēsque ex egentibus⁷ fēcerat. Hī propter virtutem nōn solum apud Caesarem in honōre erant, sed etiam apud exercitum cārī⁸ habēbantur: sed frēti⁹ amicitia Caesaris et
 15 stultā ac barbarā arrogantia ēlāti dēspiciēbant suōs stipendiumque equitum fraudābant et praedam omnem domum¹⁰ āvertēbant. Quibus illi¹¹ rēbus permōti ūniversi Caesarem adiērunt palamque¹² dē eōrum iniūriis sunt questī et ad cētera addidērunt falsum ab his¹³

māciēs, —, abl. māciē, f., *lack of fodder*.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *choose*.

locuplēs, locuplētis, *rich*.

stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*.

fraudō, I, *steal*.

1. multis annis: abl. of time within which, but to be translated like acc. of extent.

2. operā optimā erat ūsus: *aid Caesar had found very useful*.

3. extrā ordinem: *outside the regular routine*.

4. in senātum: *as members of the senate* (of the Allobroges).

5. rei pecūniariae: *money*.

6. *had given*.

7. *poor*.

8. *dear*.

9. *relying*.

10. domum āvertēbant: *i.e. appropriated*.

11. *i.e. the cavalrymen*.

12. *openly*.

13. *i.e. the two brothers*.

equitum numerum dēferri, quōrum stipendium āverterent.

Caesar censures them and they return to Pompey.

60. Caesar neque tempus illud animadversīōnis esse existimāns et multa virtūti eōrum concēdēns rem tōtam
 5 distulit; illōs sēcrētō castigāvit, quod quaestui¹ equitēs habērent, monuitque, ut ex suā amicitia omnia exspectārent et ex² praeteritis suis officiis reliqua³ spērarent. Magnam tamen haec rēs illis offēnsiōnem⁴ et contemptiōnem ad⁵ omnēs attulit, idque⁶ ita esse cum ex
 10 aliōrum obiectātiōnibus tum etiam ex domesticō⁷ iūdictiō atque animi⁸ cōnscentiā intellegēbant. Quō pudōre adducti et⁹ fortasse nōn sē liberārī, sed in aliud tempus reservārī arbitrāti discēdere ā nōbis et novam temptāre fortūnam novāsque amicitias experiri cōstituērunt. Et
 15 cum paucis collocūti clientibus suis, quibus tantum facinus¹⁰ committere audēbant, primum cōnāti sunt praefectum equitum C. Volusēnum interficere, ut postea bellō cōnfectō cōgnitum est, ut cum¹¹ mūnere aliquō perfūgissee ad Pompēium vidērentur; postquam id difficilius vīsum est neque facultās perficiendī dabātur,
 20 quam maximās potuērunt pecūniās mūtuātī, proinde¹² ac animadversio, animadversiois, f., obiectatio, obiectationis, f., re-
consideration, attention, punishment. *proach.*
castigo, I, punish. *fortasse, perhaps.*
mūtuor, I, borrow.

1. quaestui habērent: *used for gain.*

2. ex . . . officiis: *in accordance with his past favors.*

3. future (favors).

4. discredits.

5. in the eyes of.

6. id ita esse: *it to be such.*

7. their own.

8. animi cōnscentiā: *guilty conscience.*

9. Connects adducti and arbitrāti.

10. deed.

11. cum mūnere: *carrying some favor, i.e. the death of Volusenus.*

12. proinde ac: *just as though.*

suīs satisfacere¹ et fraudatā restituere vellent, multis coëemptis² equis ad Pompēium trānsiērunt cum iis, quōs suī cōsiliī participēs habēbant.

Pompey gladly receives them and they inform him about Caesar and his army.

61. Quōs³ Pompēius, quod erant honestō⁴ locō nātī
5 et instrūctī liberālīter magnōque comitatū et multis iūmentīs vēnerant virique fortēs habēbantur et in honōre apud Caesarem fuerant, quodque⁵ novum et praeter cōsuētūdinem acciderat, omnia sua praesidia⁶ circumdūxit atque ostentāvit.⁷ Nam ante id tempus nēmō aut
10 miles aut eques ā Caesare ad Pompēium trānsierat, cum⁸ paene cotidiē ā Pompēiō ad Caesarem perfugerent, vulgō⁹ vērō ūniversi in Ēpirō atque Aetoliā cōscripti milītēs eārumque regiōnum omnium, quae ā Caesare tenēbantur. Sed hī¹⁰ cōgnitis omnibus rēbus, seu¹¹
15 quid¹² in mūnitiōnibus perfectum nōn erat, seu quid ā peritioribus rei¹³ militāris dēsiderārī¹⁴ vidēbātur, temporibusque¹⁵ rērum¹⁶ et spatiis¹⁵ locōrum et custōdiarum¹⁷

particeps, participis, m., accom-
plice.

comitātus, -ūs, m., escort, train,
retinue.

1. repay.
2. bought up.
3. Object of dūxit in circumdūxit and of ostentāvit.
4. honorable.
5. quodque . . . acciderat : and because it had happened as (something) new and unusual.
6. Acc. with circum and also as secondary object of ostentāvit.
7. showed.
8. Concessive.
9. (et) vulgō in Ēpirō . . . cōscripti milītēs . . . omnium :

- (and) in fact the soldiers enrolled in Ēpirus and in Aetolia and (those) of all those districts . . . (had deserted) in a body.
10. i.e. the brothers.
11. seu . . . seu : whether . . . or.
12. Indef. pronoun.
13. Objective genitive.
14. be lacking.
15. Sc. animadversis.
16. for various matters (connected with the blockade).
17. guards.

variā diligentīā animadversā, prout¹ cuiusque eōrum, quī negōtiis praeerant, aut nātūra aut studium ferēbat, haec² ad Pompēium omnia dētulērunt.

Pompey plans an attack on Caesar.

62. Quibus ille cōgnitis ēruptiōnisque iam ante captō
5 cōsiliō, ut dēmōnstrātum est, tegimenta galeis³ militēs
ex vīminibus⁴ facere atque aggerem⁵ iubet comportāre.
His parātis rēbus magnum numerum levis armātūrae et
sagittariōrum aggeremque omnem noctū in scaphās⁶
et nāvēs actuāriās⁷ impōnit et dē mediā nocte cohortēs
10 LX ex maximīs castrīs praesidiīsque dēductās ad eam
partem mūnitiōnum dūcit, quae pertinēbant ad mare
longissimēque ā maximīs castrīs Caesaris aberant.
Eōdem nāvēs, quās dēmōnstrāvimus aggere et levis
armātūrae militibus complētās, quāsque ad Dyrrhachium
15 nāvēs⁸ longās habēbat, mittit et, quid ā quōque fieri
velit, praecipit.⁹ Ad eas mūnitiōnēs Caesar Lentulum
Mārcellinum quaestōrem cum legiōne nōnā positum
habēbat. Huic, quod valētūdine¹⁰ minus commodā
ūtēbatur, Fulvium Postumum adiūtōrem¹¹ summiserat.

Description of the point of attack. Caesar's men are driven back.

20 63. Erat eō locō fossa pedum xv et vāllum contrā
hostem in altitūdinem pedum x, tantundemque¹² eius

prout, according, as.

1. prout . . . ferēbat: *according as the character and zeal of each man showed (itself).*
The clause explains variā.

2. Explained by the preceding clauses, cōgnitis . . . ferēbat.

3. *helmets.*

4. *twigs.*

5. *rubbish.*

6. *skiffs.*

7. *swift.*

8. *nāvēs longās: warships.*

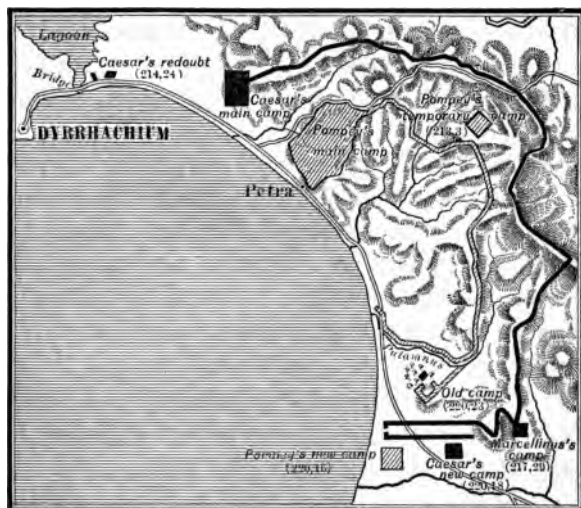
9. *ordered.*

10. *valētūdine minus commodā: ill health.*

11. *adjutant.*

12. *just as far as.*

välli agger¹ in lātitudinem patēbat: ab eō intermissō
 spatiō pedum dc alter conversus in contrāriam partem
 erat vällus² humiliōre paulō mūnitiōne. Hoc³ enim
 5 superiōribus diēbus timēns Caesar, nē nāvibus nostrī
 circumvenirentur, duplicem eō locō fēcerat vällum, ut,



Caesar's Siege of Pompey near Dyrrhachium

sī ancipitī proeliō dīmīcārētur, posset resistī. Sed
 operum magnitūdō et continēns⁴ omnium diērum labor,
 quod mīlia passuum in circuitū xvii erat complexus, per-
 ficiendi spatium nōn dabat. Itaque contrā mare trāns-
 5 versum⁵ vällum, quī hās duās mūnitiōnēs coniungeret,
 nōndum perfēcerat. Quae rēs nōta erat Pompēiō dēlāta
 per Allobrogas perfugās, magnumque nostrīs attulerat

1. *embankment.*

2. *rampart.*

3. Explained by *nē . . . cir-*

cumvenirentur.

4. *continuous.*

5. *at right angles.*

incommodum.¹ Nam ut ad mare ii cohortēs nōnae
 legiōnis excubuerant,² accessēre³ subitō primā lūce
 Pompēiānī; simul nāvibus circumvecti⁴ milites in ex-
 teriōrem vāllum tēla iaciēbant, fossaeque aggere com-
 5 plēbantur, et legiōnārii interiōris mūnitiōnis dēfēnsōrēs
 scālis⁵ admōtis tormentis⁶ cuiusque generis tēlisque ter-
 rēbant, magnaue multitudō sagittāriōrum ab utrāque
 parte circumfundēbātur.⁷ Multum⁸ autem ab ictū⁹
 lapidum, quod ūnum nostris erat tēlum, viminea tegi-
 10 menta galeis imposita dēfendēbant. Itaque cum omni-
 bus rēbus nostrī premerentur atque aegrē resisterent,
 animadversum est vitium¹⁰ mūnitiōnis, quod suprā
 dēmōnstrātum est, atque inter duōs vāllōs, quā per-
 fectum opus nōn erat, per mare nāvibus expositi in¹¹
 15 āversōs nostrōs impetum fēcērunt atque ex utrāque
 mūnitiōne dēiectōs terga vertere coēgērunt.

A panic ensues. The eagle is saved by the bravery of the standard bearer.

64. Hōc tumultū nūntiātō Mārcellīnus cohortēs sub-
 sidiō nostris labōrantibus summittit ex castris; quae
 fugientēs¹² cōspicātae neque illōs suō adventū cōn-
 20 firmāre potuērunt neque ipsae hostium impetum tulē-
 runt. Itaque quodcumque¹³ addēbātur subsidiō, id
 correptum¹⁴ timōre fugientium terrōrem et pericūlum
 augēbat; hominum enim multitudīne receptus¹⁵ impediē-

1. *injury.*

2. *had bivouacked.*

3. Perfect third pers. plur.

4. *brought around.*

5. *ladders*, abl. abs. with ad-
 mōtis.

6. *missiles*, abl. of means.

7. *crowded around.*

8. *to a great extent.*

9. *blow.*

10. *weakness.*

11. *in . . . nostrōs: upon our
 rear.*

12. Accusative.

13. *quodcumque subsidiō:*
whatever in the way of help.

14. *carried away.*

15. *retreat.*

bātur. In eō proeliō cum gravī vulnere esset affectus¹ aquilifer et ā vīribus² dēficeretur,³ cōspicātus equitēs nostrōs, 'Hanc⁴ ego,' inquit, 'et vivus multōs per annōs magnā diligentīā dēfendī et nunc moriēns eādem fidē
5 Caesarī restituō. Nōlīte, obsecrō,⁵ committere, quod ante in exercitū Caesaris nōn accidit, ut rei militāris dēdecus admittātur,⁶ incolumemque ad eum dēferte.' Hōc cāsū aquila cōservātur omnibus primae cohortis centuriōnibus interfectīs praeter principem priōrem.

Both Caesar and Pompey come to help.

10 65. Iamque Pompēiāni magnā⁷ caede nostrōrum castris Mārcellīni appropinquābant nōn mediocrī terrōre illātō reliquis cohortibus,⁸ et M. Antōnius, quī proximum locum praesidiōrum tenēbat, eā rē nūntiātā cum cohortibus XII dēscendēns ex locō superiōre cernēbātur.
15 Cuius adventus Pompēiānōs compressit nostrōsque firmāvit, ut sē⁹ ex maximō timōre colligerent. Neque multō post Caesar significātiōne per¹⁰ castella fūmō factā, ut erat superiōris temporis cōsuētūdō, dēductīs quibusdam cohortibus ex praesidiis eōdem vēnit. Qui
20 cōgnitō dētrīmentō cum animadvertisset Pompēium extrā mūnitiōnēs ēgressum secundum¹¹ mare, ut¹² liberē pābulārī posset nec¹³ minus aditum nāvibus habēret,

dēdecus, dēdecoris, n., *disgrace.*

comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *check.*

1. *afflicted.*
2. Personified and hence abl. of agent.
3. *was abandoned.*
4. Sc. aquilam.
5. *implore.*
6. *be committed.*
7. magnā caede: abl. of at-

- tendant circumstance.
8. Dat. with illātō.
9. sē colligerent: *recovered.*
10. per castella: *from one re-*
doubt to another.
11. Prep., *along.*
12. ut . . . habēret: *result.*
13. nec minus: *and yet.*

commūtātā ratiōne bellī, quoniam prōpositum ¹ nōn tenuerat, castra iūxtā Pompēium mūnīre ² iussit.

Pompey sends a legion to seize an abandoned camp.

66. Quā perfectā mūnitiōne animadversum est ā speculātōribus Caesaris cohortēs quāsdam, quod ³ instar ⁴ legiōnis vidērētur, esse post silvam et in vetera castra dūcī. Castrōrum hīc situs ⁵ erat. Superiōribus diēbus nōna Caesaris legiō cum sē obiēcisset Pompēianīs cōpiīs atque opere, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, circummūnīret, ⁶ castra eō locō posuit. Haec silvam quandam
10 contingēbant neque longius ā marī passibus ccc aberant. Post mūtātō cōnsiliō quibusdam dē causīs Caesar paulō ultrā eum locum castra trānstulit, paucisque intermissis diēbus eadem ⁷ Pompēius occupāverat et, quod eō locō plūrēs erat legiōnēs habitūrus, relictō ⁸ interiōre vāllō
15 maiōrem adiēcera mūnitiōnem. Ita minōra castra inclūsa maiōribus ⁹ castelli atque arcis locum obtinēbant. Item ab angulō castrōrum sinistrō mūnitiōnem ad flūmen perdūxerat, circiter passūs cccc, quō liberior ac sine periculō militēs aquārentur. Sed is quoque mūtātō cōnsiliō
20 quibusdam dē causīs, quās commemorārī necesse nōn est, eō locō excesserat. Ita ¹⁰ complūrēs diēs inānia mānserant castra; mūnitiōnēs quidem omnēs integrae erant.

prōpositum, -ī, n., *plan*.

mūtō, 1, *change*.

inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *in-*

close.

aquor, 1, *get water*.

inānis, -e, *empty*.

1. prōpositum nōn tenuerat: *had not carried out his plan (of blockade).*

2. Sc. suōs as subject.

3. Attracted from gender and number of cohortēs to gender and number of instar.

4. *the equal of.*

5. *location.*

6. Sc. eās, referring to cōpiās.

7. Sc. castra.

8. *left standing.*

9. Sc. castris.

10. *in this condition.*

The camp is reached but is attacked by Caesar.

67. Eō¹ signō legiōnis illātō speculātōrēs Caesarī re-
nūntiārunt.² Hoc idem visum ex superiōribus quibus-
dam castellis cōfirmāvērunt. Is locus aberat ā novis
Pompēi castris circiter passūs D. Hanc legiōnem
5 spērāns Caesar sē opprimere posse et cupiēns eius diēi
dētrīmentum sarcire, reliquit in opere cohortēs duās,
quae speciem mūnitiōnis praeberent; ipse diversō iti-
nere quam potuit occultissimē reliquās cohortēs, numerō
xxxiii, in quibus erat legiō nōna multis āmissis cen-
x o turiōnibus dēminūtōque militum numerō, ad legiōnem
Pompēi castraque minōra duplici aciē ēdūxit. Neque
eum prima opiniō fefellit.³ Nam et pervēnit prius,
quam Pompēius sentīre posset, et tametsī erant mūni-
tiōnēs castrōrum magnae, tamen sinistrō cornū, ubi erat
x 5 ipse, celeriter aggressus Pompēiānōs ex vāllō dēturbā-
vit. Erat obiectus portis ēricius. Hic paulisper est
pugnātum, cum irrupere⁴ nostrī cōnārentur, illi castra
dēfenderent, fortissimē T. Pūliōne, cuius operā prōdi-
tum⁵ exercitum C. Antōnī dēmōstrāvimus, ē locō prō-
20 pugnante. Sed tamen nostrī virtūte vicērunt excisōque
ēriciō primō in maiōra castra, post etiam in castellum,
quod erat inclūsum maiōribus castris, irrūpērunt et,
quod eō⁶ pulsa legiō sēsē recēperat, nōnnūllōs ibi
repugnantes⁷ interfēcērunt.

sarciō, -īre, sarsī, sartum, re-
pair.

ēricius, -ī, m., log set with spikes.

excidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut
down.

1. Adverb.

2. Sc. rem, referring to signō
. . . illātō.

3. did disappoint.

4. rush in.

5. betrayed.

6. Adv., modifies recēperat.

7. Accusative.

Caesar's men mistake an outlying wall for the camp.

68. Sed fortūna, quae plūrimum potest cum in reli-
quīs rēbus tum praecipuē in bellō, parvis mōmentis¹
magnās rērum commūtatiōnēs efficit; ut tum accidit.
Mūnitiōnem, quam pertinēre ā castris ad flūmen suprā
5 dēmōnstrāvimus, dextrī Caesaris cornūs cohortēs ignō-
rantiā loci sunt secūtae, cum portam quaerent castrō-
rumque eam mūnitiōnem esse arbitrārentur. Quod²
cum esset animadversum, coniūctam esse flūminī, prō-
rutis³ mūnitiōnibus dēfendente nūllō transcendērunt,
10 omnisque noster equitātus eās cohortēs est secūtus.

Pompey comes up with help and Caesar's men are panic-stricken.

69. Interim Pompēius hāc satis longā interiectā morā
et rē nūntiātā v legiōnēs ab opere dēductās subsidiō
suis dūxit, eōdemque tempore equitātus eius nostris
equitibus appropinquābat, et aciēs instrūcta ā nostris,
15 quī castra occupāverant, cernēbātur, omniaque sunt
subitō mūtata. Legiō Pompēiāna celeris spē subsidii
cōfirmāta ab decumānā portā resistere cōnābātur atque
ultrō in nostrōs impetum faciēbat. Equitātus Caesaris,
quod angustō⁴ itinere per⁵ aggerēs ascendēbat, re-
20 ceptuī⁶ suō timēns initium fugae faciēbat. Dextrum
cornū, quod erat ā sinistrō sēclūsum, terrōre equitum
animadversō, nē⁷ intrā mūnitiōnem opprimerētur, eā⁸

ignōrantia, -ae, f., *ignorance*.

sēclūdō, -ere, -clūdī, -clūsum, *shut
off, separate*.

1. *incidents*.

2. Explained by coniūctam
... flūminī, which has mūnī-
tiōnem (understood) as subject.

3. *torn down*.

4. angustō itinere: *i.e.* the
breach.

5. *over*.

6. receptuī suō timēns: *fear-
ing for their retreat*.

7. nē ... opprimerētur: pur-
pose of sēsē recipiēbat.

8. eā parte: *i.e.* by the
breach.

parte, quam prōruerat, sēsē recipiēbat, ac plērīque ex his, nē in angustiās inciderent, ex x pedum mūnitiōne sē in fossās praecipitābant, primisque oppressis¹ reliqui per hōrum corpora salūtem sibi atque exitum pariēbant.²

5 Sinistrō cornū militēs, cum ex³ vāllō Pompēium adesse et suōs fugere cernerent, veriti, nē angustiis interclūderentur, cum extrā et intus hostem habērent, eōdem,⁴ quō vēnerant, receptū sibi cōsulēbant, omniaque erant tumultūs, timōris, fugae plēna, adeō⁵ ut, cum Caesar

x o signa fugientium manū prēnderet et cōsistere iubēret, aliī eōdem⁶ cursū fugerent, aliī ex metū etiam signa dīmitterent, neque quisquam omnīnō cōsisteret.

The same outlying wall proves the salvation of Caesar's men.

70. His tantis malis haec⁷ subsidia succurrēbant,⁸ quō⁹ minus omnis dēlērētur exercitus, quod Pompēius

x 5 insidiās timēns, crēdō, quod haec praeter spem acciderant eius, qui paulō ante ex castris fugientēs suōs cōnspēxerat, mūnitiōnibus appropinquāre aliquamdiū¹⁰ nōn audēbat, equitēsque eius angustiis atque¹¹ his ab Caesaris militibus occupātis ad¹² insequendum tardābantur.¹³

praecipitō, I, throw headlong.

1. *trampled to death.*

2. *won.*

3. *ex vāllō*: modifies *cernerent*.

4. *eōdem receptū sibi cōnsulēbant*: *they looked out for themselves by retreating over the same path by which they had come.*

5. *so much so.*

6. *eōdem cursū*: *with the same speed.*

7. Explained by the *quod* clause.

8. *aided.*

9. *quō*, etc.: *in preventing the whole army from being destroyed.*

10. *for some time.*

11. *atque his occupātis*: *and by the fact that these were seized.*

12. *ad insequendum*: *in (regard to) their pursuit.*

13. *were checked.*

Ita parvae rēs magnum in utramque partem mōmentum¹ habuērunt. Mūnitiōnēs enim ā castris ad flūmen perductae expugnātis iam castris Pompēi propriam² expeditamque Caesaris victōriam interpellāvērunt,³
 5 eadem rēs celeritāte insequentium tardātā nostris salūtem attulit.

Caesar's losses. Pompey saluted as Imperator. Cruelty of Labienus.

71. Duōbus his ūnius diēi proeliis Caesar dēsiderāvit⁴ militēs DCCCCLX et nōtōs equitēs Rōmānōs Fleginātem Tūticanū Gallum, senātōris filium, C. Fleginātem Placentiā,⁵ A. Grānium Puteolis, M. Sacrātivirum Capuā, tribūnōs militum, et centuriōnēs xxxii; sed hōrum omnium pars magna in fossis mūnitiōnibusque et flūminis ripīs oppressa suōrum in terrōre ac fugā sine ūllō vulnere interiit: signaque sunt militāria āmissa xxxii.
 15 Pompēius eō proeliō imperātor est appellātus. Hoc nōmen obtinuit atque ita sē posteā salūtāri passus est; sed in litteris numquam scribere est⁶ solitus, neque in fascibus insīgnia⁷ laureae praetulit. At Labiēnus, cum ab eō impetrāvisset, ut sibi captivōs trādī iubēret,
 20 omnēs⁸ prōductōs⁹ ostentātiōnis, ut vidēbātur, causā,

salūtō, 1, greet, hail.

fascis, fascis, m, in plu. fasces, a bundle of rods inclosing an ax, a symbol of authority.

laurea, -ae, f., the laurel tree, laurel wreath.

ostentātiō, ostentātiōnis, f., display.

1. influence.

2. propriam expeditamque: complete and easy.

3. prevented.

4. lost.

5. from Placentia.

6. est solitus: was accustomed.

7. insīgnia praetulit: had the decoration of laurel wreath carried before him.

8. Obj. of appellāns, interrogāns, and interfēcit.

9. prōductōs causā: after they had been led out for the sake.

quō¹ maior perfugae fidēs habērētur, commilitōnēs² appellāns et magnā³ verbōrum contumēliā interrogāns, solērentne veterānī militēs fugere, in omnium cōspectū interfēcit.

Pompey's men are prematurely elated.

5 72. His rēbus tantum fidūciae⁴ ac spiritūs⁵ Pompeiānis accessit, ut nōn dē ratiōne bellī cōgitārent, sed vīcisse iam vidērentur. Nōn⁶ illi paucitātem⁷ nostrōrum militum, nōn iniquitātem loci atque angustias praeoccupātis⁸ castris et ancipitem terrōrem intrā extrāque
 10 mūnitiōnēs, nōn abscisum⁹ in duās partēs exercitum, cum altera alterī auxilium ferre nōn posset, causae¹⁰ fuisse cōgitābant. Nōn ad haec addēbant, nōn concursū ācri factō, nōn proeliō dimicātum,¹¹ sibique¹² ipsōs¹² multitudīne atque angustīs maius attulisse dē-
 15 trimentum, quam ab hoste accēpissent, nōn dēnique commūnēs bellī cāsūs¹³ recordābantur,¹⁴ quam parvulae¹⁵ saepe causae vel falsae¹⁶ suspiciōnis vel terrōris repentinī vel obiectae¹⁷ religiōnis magna dētrimenta intulissent, quotiēns vel ducis vitiō¹⁸ vel culpā¹⁹ tribūnī in exercitū
 commilitō, commilitōnis, m., *fel-* interrogō, 1, *ask.*
low soldier.

1. quō . . . habērētur: *that greater confidence might be placed in him though a deserter.*

2. Appositive with omnēs.

3. magnā . . . contumēliā: *with most insulting words.*

4. confidence.

5. pride.

6. Emphatic.

7. paucitātem, etc.: subjects of fuisse.

8. praeoccupātis castris: *due to the fact that the enemy had previously occupied the camp.*

9. cut.

10. causae fuisse: *had been the cause (of our flight).*

11. Sc. esse: impersonal.

12. Refer to Caesar's men.

13. Explained by the indir. questions following.

14. did recollect.

15. slight.

16. groundless.

17. obiectae religiōnis: *of opposing religious scruples.*

18. mistake.

19. fault.

esset¹ offēsum; sed proinde² ac sī virtūte vicissent neque ūlla commūtatiō rērum posset accidere, per orbem³ terrārum fāmā ac litteris victōriam eius diēi celebrābant.

Caesar encourages his troops.

5 73. Caesar ā superiōribus cōnsiliis dēpulsus omnem sibi commūtandam bellī ratiōnem existimāvit. Itaque ūnō tempore praesidiis omnibus dēductis et oppugnātiōne dimissā coāctōque in ūnum locum exercitū cōntiōnem⁴ apud militēs habuit hortātusque est, nē ea, quae
10 accidissent, graviter ferrent, nēve his rēbus terrērentur multisque secundis proeliis ūnum adversum et⁵ id mediocre oppōnerent.⁶ Habendam fortunāe grātiā, quod Ītaliā sine aliquō vulnere cēpissent, quod duās Hispāniās bellicōsissimōrum hominum perītissimis atque
15 exercitātissimis ducibus pācāvissent, quod finitimās frūmentāriāsque prōvinciās in potestātem redēgissent; dēnique recordārī dēbere, quā fēlicitāte inter mediās hostium classēs opplētis nōn solum portibus sed etiam litoribus omnēs incolumēs essent trānsportāti. Sī nōn
20 omnia caderent secunda, fortunā esse industriā sublevandā.⁷ Quod⁸ esset acceptum dētrimentī, cuiusvis⁹ potius quam suae culpae dēbere tribuī. Locum sē aequum ad dimicandum dedisse, potitum esse hostium

concelebrō, 1, *proclaim.*

oppleō, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *fill.*

industria, -ae, f., *diligence, activity, zeal.*

1. esset offēsum: *harm had been done.*

2. proinde ac sī: *just as if.*

3. orbem terrārum: *the world.*

4. *speech.*

5. et id mediocre: *and that a slight one.*

6. *set . . . over against.*

7. *help.*

8. quod . . . dētrimentī: *subject of dēbere tribuī.*

9. Possessive gen., modifying culpae, which is indir. obj. of tribuī.

castris, expulisse ac superasse pignantēs.¹ Sed sive ipsorum perturbātiō sive error aliquis sive etiam fortuna partam² iam praesentemque victōriam interpellāvisset, dandam omnibus operam, ut acceptum incommodum
 5 virtūte sarcirētur;³ quod si esset factum, futurum ut detrīmentum in bonum verteret, uti⁴ ad Gergoviam accidisset, atque ei, qui ante dimicāre timuissent, ultrō sē proeliō offerrent.

They become zealous.

74. Hāc habitā cōntiōne nōnnūllos signiferōs ignō-
 10 miniā⁵ notāvit ac locō mōvit. Exercitui quidem omni tantus incessit ex incommodō dolor tantumque studium infāmia⁶ sarcindae, ut nēmō aut tribūnī aut centuriōnis imperium dēsiderāret,⁷ et sibi quisque etiam poenae locō graviōrēs impōneret labōrēs simulque omnēs ardē-
 15 rent⁸ cupiditāte⁹ pugnandī. Cum superiōris etiam ōrdinis nōnnūllī ōrātiōne permōti manendum eō locō et rem proeliō committendam existimārent, contrā¹⁰ ea Caesar neque satis militibus perterritis cōfidēbat spatiumque interpōnendum ad recreandōs animōs putābat, et re-
 20 lictis¹¹ mūnitiōnibus magnopere rei frūmentāriae timēbat.

perturbātiō, perturbātiōnis, f. ; cf.
 perturbō.

error, errōris, m., mistake.

notō, I, designate with a mark,
 brand, censure.

recreō, I ; cf. creō.

1. Object.

2. partam . . . praesentem-
 que: already won and in their
 grasp.

3. repair.

4. as.

5. disgrace.

6. dishonor.

7. waited for.

8. burned.

9. eager desire.

10. contrā ea: on the other
 hand.

11. inasmuch as he had left.

Caesar withdraws from the siege with Pompey following close behind.

75. Itaque nullā interpositā morā, sauciōrum modo¹ et aegrōrum habitā ratiōne, impedimenta omnia silentiō primā nocte ex castris Apollōniam praemisit. Haec² conquiēscere ante iter cōfectum vetuit.³ Hīs ūna legiō
5 missa praesidiō est. Hīs explicitis rēbus duās in castris legiōnēs retinuit, reliquās dē quārtā vigiliā complūribus portis ēductās eōdem itinere praemisit parvōque spatiō intermissō, ut et militāre institūtum servārētur et quam sērissimē⁴ eius profectiō cōgnōscerētur, conclāmārī⁵
10 iussit statimque ēgressus et novissimum agmen cōsecūtus celeriter ex cōspectū castrōrum discessit. Neque vērō Pompēius cōgnitō cōnsiliō eius moram ūllam ad insequendum intulit, sed id⁶ spectāns,⁷ sī itinere impedītōs perterritōs dēprehendere⁸ posset, exercitum ē castris
15 ēdūxit equitātumque praemisit ad novissimum agmen dēmorandum,⁹ neque cōsequi potuit, quod multum expeditō itinere antecesserat Caesar.

Pompey finally changes his plan.

77. Posterō diē Caesar similiter praemissis primā nocte impedimentis dē quārtā vigiliā ipse ēgreditur, ut,
20 sī qua esset imposita dimicandī necessitās, subitum cāsum expeditō exercitū subīret.¹⁰ Hoc idem reliquē

conquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum,
rest.

explicō, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātum
(-itum), *arrange.*
similiter, *in like manner.*

1. modo habitā ratiōne: *simply making provision for.*

2. i.e. the baggage train.

3. forbade.

4. latest.

5. the signal to be given.

6. Explained by sī . . . posset.

7. having in view.

8. catch.

9. delay.

10. meet.

fēcīt diēbus. Quibus rēbus perfectum est, ut altissimis¹ flūminibus atque impeditissimis itineribus nūllum acciperet incommodum. Pompēius primī diēi morā² illātā et reliquōrum diērum frūstrā labōre susceptō cum³ sē
5 magnis itineribus extenderet et praegressōs cōnsequi cuperet, quārto diē finem sequendi fēcīt atque aliud sibi cōnsilium capiendum existimāvit.

Caesar goes to Apollonia. Pompey makes for the same goal.

78. Caesarī ad sauciōs dēpōnendōs, stipendium exercitui dandum, sociōs cōnfirmandōs, praesidium urbibus
10 relinquendum necesse erat adire Apollōniam. Pompēius quoque dē Caesaris cōnsiliō coniectūrā iūdicāns ad Scipiōnem properandum sibi existimābat: sī Caesar iter illō⁴ habēret, ut subsidium Scipiōnī ferret; sī ab ōrā maritimā Ōricōque discēdere nōllet, quod legiōnēs
15 sequitātumque ex Ītaliā exspectāret, ipse ut omnibus cōpiis Domitium aggredērētur.

Domitius barely escapes from Pompey and joins Caesar.

79. His dē causis uterque eōrum celeritātī studēbat, et suis ut esset auxiliō, et ad opprimendōs adversāriōs nē occāsioni⁵ temporis deesset. Sed Caesarem Apollō
20 nia ā dirēctō itinere āverterat; Pompēius per Candāviam iter in Macedoniam expeditum habēbat. Accessit⁶ etiam ex imprōvisō aliud incommodum, quod⁷ Domitius, quī diēs

extendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum
 (-tēsum), *stretch*; with sē, *extert one's self*.

praegredior; cf. ēgredior.
 coniectūra, -ae, f., *inference*.
 adversārius, -ī, m., *enemy*.

1. altissimis, etc.: abl. abs. denoting concession.

2. morā illātā, labōre susceptō: abl. abs. denoting cause.

3. Concessive.

4. Adverb.

5. occāsioni temporis: *favorable chance*.

6. *was added*.

7. *namely that*.

complūrēs castrīs Scīpiōnis castra collāta¹ habuisset, rei frūmentāriāe causā ab eō discesserat et Hēraclīam, quae est subiecta² Candāviae, iter fēcerat, ut ipsa fortūna illum³ obicere Pompēiō vidērētur. Haec ad id tempus
 5 Caesar ignōrābat. Simul ā Pompēiō litteris per omnēs prōvinciās cīvitatēsque dīmissīs dē proeliō ad Dyrrhachium factō lātius inflātiusque multō, quam⁴ rēs erat gesta, fāma percrēbuerat pulsum⁵ fugere Caesarem paene omnibus cōpiis āmissīs. Haec⁶ itinera infesta
 10 reddiderat, haec cīvitatēs nōnnūllās ab eius amicitia āvertēbat. Quibus accidit rēbus, ut plūribus dimissī⁷ itineribus ā Caesare ad Domitium et ā Domitiō ad Caesarem nūllā ratiōne iter cōficere possent. Sed Allobrogēs,⁸ Rauçilli atque Egī familiārēs, quōs perfūgissee ad
 15 Pompēium dēmōnstrāvimus,⁹ cōnspicātī in itinere explōrātōrēs Domiti, seu pristinā¹⁰ suā cōnsuētūdine, quod ūnā in Galliā bella gesserant, seu glōriā¹¹ ēlātī cūcta, ut erant ācta, exposuērunt et Caesaris profectiōnem, adventum Pompēi docuērunt. Ā quibus Domitius certior factus
 20 vix iv hōrārum spatiō antecēdēs¹² hostium beneficiō perīculum vitāvit et ad Aeginium, quod est adiectum¹³ appositumque Thessaliae, Caesarī venientī occurrit.

inflātius, *with more exaggeration.*

percrēbrēscō, -ere, -crēbrui (-crēbui), —, *be spread abroad.*
 infestus, -a, -um, *dangerous.*

1. brought together, i.e. near to.

2. brought close, i.e. next to.

3. illum obicere: to put him in the way of.

4. quam . . . gesta: than the facts warranted.

5. pulsum . . . āmissis: indir. disc. depending on fāma.

6. = fāma.

7. Sc. nūtiī.

8. certain Allobroges.

9. See p. 129, l. 2.

10. pristinā suā cōnsuētūdine: because of their former intimacy.

11. glōriā ēlātī: puffed up by the glory (they had won).

12. getting the start.

13. adiectum appositumque: near and bordering upon.

Caesar storms Gomphi.

80. Coniūctō exercitū Caesar Gomphōs pervēnit, quod est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus¹ ab Ēpirō; quae gēns paucis ante mēnsibus ultrō ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserat, ut suis omnibus facultātibus
 5 ūteretur, praesidiumque ab eō militum petierat. Sed eō fāma iam praecurrerat,² quam suprā docuimus, dē proeliō Dyrrhachinō, quod³ multis auxerat partibus. Itaque Androthenēs, praetor Thessaliae, cum sē victōriae Pompēi comitem esse mallet quam socium Caesaris in rēbus adversis, omnem ex agris multitudinem servōrum ac liberōrum in oppidum cōgit portāsque praeclūdit et ad Scīpiōnem Pompēiumque nūntiōs mittit, ut sibi subsidiō veniant: sē cōfidere mūnitiōnibus oppidi, si celeriter succurratur;⁴ longinquam oppugnatiōnem
 15 sustinēre nōn posse. Scīpiō discessū exercituum ab Dyrrhachiō cōgnitō Lārisam legiōnēs addūxerat; Pompēius nōndum Thessaliae appropinquābat. Caesar castris mūnitis scālās⁵ mūsculōsque⁶ ad repentinam oppugnatiōnem fieri et crātēs⁷ parārī iussit. Quibus
 20 rēbus effectis cohortātus militēs docuit, quantum⁸ ūsum habēret ad sublevandam omnium rērum inopiam potiri⁹

comes, comitis, m. and f., companion, associate, partaker, sharer.

mālō, malle, māluī, prefer. praeccludō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut.

1. as you come.

2. Cf. currō.

3. quod . . . partibus: which it (fāma) had increased many times.

4. some one would hurry to help.

5. ladders.

6. sheds.

7. wicker hurdles.

8. quantum habēret, etc.: how great a help toward relieving, etc., it would bring to gain possession of.

9. potiri, inferre, fieri: subjects of habēret.

oppidō plēnō atque opulentō, simul reliquis civitatibus huius urbis exemplō¹ inferre terrōrem et id fieri celeriter, priusquam auxilia concurrerent. Itaque ūsus singulārī militum studiō eōdem, quō vēnerat, diē post
 5 hōram nōnam oppidum altissimis² moenibus oppugnāre aggressus ante sōlis occāsum expugnāvit et ad diripiendum³ militibus concessit statimque ab oppidō castra mōvit et Mētrópolis vēnit, sic ut nūntiōs expugnātī⁴ oppidī fāmamque antecēderet.

The other surrounding states surrender.

10 81. Mētrópolis primū⁵ eōdem ūsi cōnsiliō isdem permōti rūmōribus portās clausērunt mūrōsque armātis complēvērunt; sed postea cāsū civitātis Gomphēnsie cōgnitō ex captivīs, quōs Caesar ad mūrū prōdūcendōe cūrāverat, portās aperuērunt. Quibus diligentissimē
 15 cōservātis collātā⁶ fortunā Mētrópolis⁷ cum cāsē Gomphēnsium nūlla Thessaliae fuit civitās praeter Lārsaeōs, quī magnīs exercitibus Scipionis tenēbantur, quī⁸ Caesarī pāreret atque imperāta faceret. Ille⁹ idōneum locum in agrīs nactus plēnis frūmentōrum,¹⁰ quae prope
 20 iam mātūra erant, ibi adventum exspectāre Pompēi eoque¹¹ omnem bellī¹² ratiōnem cōferre cōstituit.

opulentus, -a, -um; cf. Eng. *opulent*.

1. *warning example.*
2. altissimis moenibus: abl. of description with oppidum.
3. *plundering.*
4. expugnāti oppidī: *of the storming of the town.*
5. Here = *at first.*
6. collātā cum: *compared with.*

7. = Mētrópolisarum.
8. quī pāreret: *but that obeyed.*
9. *i.e. Caesar.*
10. Note the plural.
11. eō cōferre: *transfer to that place.*
12. bellī ratiōnem: *issue of the campaign.*

Pompey and Scipio join forces. The Pompeians quarrel over the booty as though the victory were already won.

82. Pompēius paucis post diēbus in Thessaliam per-
venit cōtīnētusque¹ apud cūctum exercitum suis agit
grātiās, Scīpiōnis milītēs cohortātur, ut partā² iam
victōriā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs,³
5 receptisque omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus suum cum
Scīpiōne honōrem partitur classicumque apud eum canī
et alterum⁴ illi iubet praetōrium tendī.⁵ Auctis cōpiis
Pompēi duobusque magnis exercitibus coniūctis pristina
omnium cōnfirmātur opīniō et spēs victōriae augētur,
10 adeō ut, quidquid intercēderet temporis, id morārī redi-
tum in Ītaliā vidērētur, et⁶ sī quāndō quid Pompēius
tardius aut cōnsiderātius faceret, ūnūs⁷ esse negōtium
diēi, sed illum⁸ dēlectārī imperiō et cōnsulārēs praetō-
riōsque⁹ servōrum habēre numerō dicerent.¹⁰ Iamque
15 inter sē palam dē praemiis ac sacerdotiis contendēbant
in¹¹ annōsque cōsulātum¹² dēfiniēbant,¹³ aliī domōs
bonaque eōrum, quī in castris erant Caesaris, petēbant;
magnaue inter eōs in cōnsiliō fuit contrōversia, oportē-

partior, 4, *divide*.

classicum, -ī, n., *trumpet call*.

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, *sing, sound*.

praetōrium, -ī, n., *general's tent*.

cōnsiderātē, *deliberately*.

dēlectō, 1, *delight*.

cōnsulāris, cōnsulāris, m., *ex-con-sul*.

sacerdotium, -ī, n., *priesthood*.

1. *after making an address*.

2. *gained*.

3. *sharers*.

4. *a second*.

5. *pitch*.

6. Connects vidērētur and dicerent.

7. ūnūs . . . diēi: *was a task of but a single day*; depends on dicerent.

8. illum dēlectārī imperiō: *he was too much pleased with his command*.

9. *ex-praetors*.

10. *they said (in criticism)*.

11. in annōsque: *and for years ahead*.

12. *consulship*.

13. *established*.

retne Lūcili¹ Hirri, quod² is ā Pompēiō ad Parthōs missus esset, proximis comitiis³ praetōriis absentis ratiōnem habēri, cum eius necessariū fidem implorārent Pompēi, praestāret, quod proficiscenti recēpisset, nē per
 5 eius auctōritātem dēceptus vidērētur, reliquī, in labōre parī ac periculō nē ūnus omnēs antecēderet, recūsārent.

Pompey finally offers battle.

85. Pompēius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad infimās rādīcēs montis aciem instruēbat,⁴ semper, ut vidēbātur, exspectāns⁵ sī iniquis locis Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar
 10 nūllā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlici⁶ posse Pompēium existimāns, hanc sibi commodissimam belli ratiōnem⁷ iūdicāvit, utī castra ex eō locō movēret, semperque esset in itineribus, haec⁸ spectāns, ut movendis castris plūribus
 adeundis locis commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur,
 15 simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsionem dimicandī nanciscerētur et insolitum ad labōrem Pompēi exercitū cotidiānis itineribus dēfatigāret.⁹ Hīs cōstitutis rēbus, signō iam profectiōnis datō tabernāculisque¹⁰ dētēnsis
 animadversum est paulō¹¹ ante extrā¹² cotidiānam cōn-
 20 suētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompēi prōgressam, ut¹³ nōn iniquo locō posse dimicārī vidērētur

insolitus, -a, -um, *unaccustomed, unusual.*

dētendō, -ere, —, -tēnsus, *tak- down.*

1. Lūcili Hirri: obj. gen. with ratiōnem.

2. quod . . . esset: explains absentis.

3. *elections.*

4. Imperf., denoting repeated action.

5. exspectāns sī: *waiting to see whether.*

6. *lure out.*

7. Explained by utī . . . movēret . . . esset.

8. Explained by the following subjunct. clauses.

9. *exhaust.*

10. *tents.*

11. paulō ante: adv., modifying esse prōgressam.

12. *contrary to.*

13. ut . . . vidērētur: *so that*

Tunc Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portis, 'Differendum est,' inquit, 'iter in¹ praesentia nōbis et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sicut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō² simus ad dīmicandum parātī: nōn facile oc-
 5 cāsionem postea reperiēmus;' cōnfestimque expeditās cōpiās ēdūcit.

Pompey expects to win with his cavalry.

86. Pompēius quoque, ut postea cōgnitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Namque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōribus diēbus dixerat, priusquam
 10 concurrerent aciēs, fore uti exercitus Caesaris pellerētur. Id cum essent plērique admirātī, 'Sciō mē,' inquit, 'paene incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem³ cōn- siliī mei accipite, quō firmiōre animō in proelium prōdeā- tis. Persuāsī equitibus nostrīs (idque mihi factūrōs
 15 cōnfirmāvērunt) ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō aggredierentur et cir- cumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent, quam ā nōbis tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine periculō legiōnum et paene sine vulnere bellum
 20 cōnficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus.' Simul dēnūntiāvit, ut essent animō parātī in⁴ posterum et, quoniam fieret dīmicandī po- testās, ut⁵ saepe cōgitāvissent, nē ūsū⁶ manūque reli- quōrum⁷ opīniōnem fallerent.⁸

dēposcō, -ere, -poposci, —; cf. hortātus, -ūs, m., cf. hortor. poscō.

it seemed that a decisive battle could be fought in a place not unfavorable (to Caesar).

1. in praesentia: for the present.
2. Abl. of specification.
3. nature.

4. in posterum: for the future.

5. as.

6. ūsū manūque: as to their

practice and power.

7. i.e. those not present.

8. disappoint.

Labienuſ speaks ſlightly of Caſar's troops.

87. Hunc Labiēnuſ excēpit¹ et, cum² Caſaris cōpiāſ dēſpiceret, Pompēi cōſiliū ſummis laudibus efferret,³ 'Nōli,' inquit, 'exiſtimāre, Pompēi,⁴ hunc eſſe exercitū, quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvicerit. Omnibus interfui⁵ proeliis neque temerē incōgnitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua⁶ pars illius exercitūſ ſuperest; magna pars dēperiit, quod accidere tot proeliis fuit neceſſe, multōſ autūmnī peſtilentia in Italiā cōſūmpſit, multi domū diſceſſerunt, multi ſunt relictī in continenti.⁷ An nōn audisti ex⁸ iis, quī per cauſam valētudinis remānſerunt, cohortēs eſſe Brundisī factās? Hae cōpiaſ, quāſ vidētis, ex dēlectibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā ſunt reſectae, et plēriue ſunt ex colōniis⁹ Trāſpadāniſ. Ac tamen quod fuit rōboris¹⁰ duobus proeliis Dyrrhachiniſ interiit.' Haec cum dixiſſet, iūrāvit ſē niſi victōrem in caſtra nōn reſerūrum reliquōſque, ut idem facerent, hortātus eſt. Hoc laudāſ Pompēiuſ idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quiſquam, quī iūrāre dubitāret. Haec tum facta ſunt in cōſiliō, magnāque ſpē et laetitiā¹¹ omnium diſceſſum eſt; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiēbant,¹¹ quod dē rē

dēvincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victum; cf. vincō.

dēpereō, -īre, -periī, —, *perish* (from among them).

autūmnus, -ī, m., *autumn*.

peſtilentia, -ae, f., *plague*.

dēlectus, -ūs, m., *draft*.

rōbor, rōboris, n., *oak, vigor, strength*.

laudō, I, *praise*.

1. followed.

2. cum . . . dēſpiceret: while he ſhewed his contempt for.

3. extolled.

4. Vocative.

5. took part.

6. very ſmall.

7. continenti (terrā): continent, i.e. Italy.

8. ex iis: modifies eſſe factās.

9. colonies.

10. joy.

11. anticipated.

tantā et ā tam peritō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfirmārī vidēbātur.

Pompey forms his battle line.

88. Caesar, cum Pompēi castris appropinquasset, ad hunc modum aciem eius instructam animadvertit.
 5 Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae trāditae ā Caesare initio dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōsultō; quārum ūna prima, altera tertia appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scipiō cum legiōnibus Syriacis tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūcta cum cohortibus
 10 Hispānis, quās trāductās ab Afrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant collocātae. Hās¹ firmissimās sē habēre Pompēius existimābat. Reliquās inter aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcera numerōque cohortēs ex explēverat. Haec erant milia XLV, ēvocātorum circiter duo,²
 15 quae ex beneficiariis superiōrum exercitiū ad eum convēnerant; quae tōtā aciē disperserat. Reliquās cohortēs VII in castris propinquisque castellis praesidiō disposuerat. Dextrum cornū eius rīvus³ quidam impeditis ripis mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūctum equitātum,
 20 sagittariōs funditōrēsque omnēs in sinistrō cornū obiēcera.

Caesar forms his battle line.

89. Caesar superius⁴ institūtum servāns decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō collocāverat, tametsi⁵ erat Dyrrhachinīs proeliis vehementer attenuāta
 25 et huic sic adiūnxit octāvam, ut paene ūnam ex duābus

beneficiarius, -i, m., *privileged soldier* attenuō, I, *weaken*.

1. hās . . . habēre: *these were the strongest he had.*

2. Sc. milia.

3. *stream.*

4. *former.*

5. *although.*

efficeret, atque alteram alteri praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX cōstitūtās habēbat, quae summa¹ erat milium XXII; cohortēs II castris praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sūllam, mediā aciē
 5 Cn. Domitium praeposuerat. Ipse contrā Pompēium cōstitit. Simul hīs rēbus animadversīs, quās dēmōn-
 strāvimus, timēns nē ā multitudīne equitum dextrum
 cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās²
 cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex hīs quārtam instituit equitātui-
 10 que opposuit et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque eius
 diēi victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōstāre. Simul tertiāe aciēi totique exercitui imperāvit, nē iniussū
 suō concurreret: sē, cum id fieri vellet, vēxillō³ signum
 datūrum.

Caesar addresses his army and gives signal for battle.

15 90. Exercitum cum militārī mōre ad pugnam cohortā-
 rētur suaque in eum perpetui⁴ temporis officia praedicā-
 ret,⁵ imprimis commemorāvit: Testibus sē militibus ūti
 posse, quantō studiō pācem petisset; quae per Vatinius
 in colloquiis, quae per A. Clōdium cum Scipiōne ēgisset,
 20 quibus modis ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendis lēgā-
 tīs contendisset. Neque sē umquam abūtī militum
 sanguine neque rem pūblicam alterutrō exercitū privāre
 voluisse. Hāc habitā ōrātiōne exposcentibus militibus et
 studiō pugnae ārdentibus tubā signum dedit.

imprimis, *especially.*

abūtor, -ī, -ūsus sum, *waste.*

sanguis, sanguinis, m., *blood.*

alteruter, -tra, -trum, *either.*

privō, ī, *deprive.*

exposcō; cf. poscō.

1. *total.*

2. *one from each legion.*

3. *flag.*

4. *perpetui temporis officia:*
his constant services.

5. *related.*

Crastinus leads the charge upon Pompey.

91. Erat Crāstinus ēvocātus in exercitū Caesaris, quī
superiōre annō apud eum primum pilum in legiōne x
dūxerat, vir singulārī virtūte. Hic signō datō, 'Sequi-
mini mē,' inquit, 'manipulārēs mei quī fuistis, et vestrō
5 imperātōri quam cōstituistis¹ operam date. Unum hoc
proelium superest; quō cōfectō et ille² suam dignitā-
tem³ et nōs nostram libertātem⁴ recuperābimus.'⁵
Simul respiciēns Caesarem, 'Faciā,' inquit, 'hodiē,
imperātor, ut aut vivō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās.'
10 Haec cum dixisset, prīmus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit,
atque eum ēlēctī militēs circiter cxx voluntārii eiusdem
centuriae sunt prōsecūtī.

Pompey awaits the result. Caesar criticizes his tactics.

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatii, ut
satis esset ad concursum utriusque exercitūs. Sed Pom-
15 pēius suis praedixerat, ut Caesaris impetum exciperent
nēve sē locō movērent aciemque eius distrahī pateren-
tur; idque admonitū C. Triārī fēcisse dicēbātur, ut
prīmus excursus vīsque militum infringerētur aciēsque
distenderētur atque in suis ordinibus dispositi⁶ dispersōs

manipulāris, -e, *belonging to a
maniple*; as noun, *soldier of a
maniple*, here *comrade*.

hodiē; cf. hōc + diē.

ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *pick*.

voluntārius, -a, -um, *volunteer*.

centuria, -ae, f., *century, company*.

praedicō; cf. dicō.

distrahō; cf. trahō.

admonitus, -ūs, m.; cf. moneō.

excursus, -ūs, m.; cf. currō.

infringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum,
break.

distendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum,
throw into confusion.

dispōnō; cf. pōnō.

dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum,
scatter.

1. Sc. dare.

2. i.e. Caesar.

3. rank.

4. i.e. from military service.

5. recover.

6. Refers to Pompey's men.

adorirentur; leviusque cāsūra pīla spērābat in locō re-
tentis militibus, quam sī ipsī immissis tēlis occur-
rissent, simul fore,¹ ut duplicatō cursū Caesaris milites
exanimarentur et lassitudine² cōnficerentur. Quod
5 nōbīs quidem nullā ratiōne factum ā Pompēiō videtur,
propterea quod³ est quaedam animī incitātiō atque
alacritās nātūrālīter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pug-
nae incenditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augere im-
perātōrēs dēbent; neque frūstrā antīquitus⁴ institūtum
10 est, ut signa⁵ undique concinerent clāmōremque ūni-
versī tollerent: quibus rēbus et hostēs terrēri et suōs
incitārī existimāvērunt.

Caesar's men advance halfway, halt, and then attack.

93. Sed nostrī milites datō signō cum infestis⁶ pīlis
prōcucurrissent atque animadvertissent nōn⁷ concurrī ā
15 Pompēiānis, ūsū peritī ac superiōribus pugnīs exercitātī
suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē
spatium cōstitērunt, nē cōsumptis viribus appropinquā-
rent, parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō ac rūsus
renovātō cursū pīla mīsērunt celeriterque, ut erat prae-
20 ceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strinxērunt. Neque vērō
Pompēiānī huic rei dēfuērunt. Nam et tēla missa ex-
cēpērunt⁸ et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ordinēs con-
servāvērunt pīlisque missis ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem

leviter; cf. *levis*.

incitātiō, incitātiōnis, f.; cf. *incitō*.
nātūrālīter, *naturally*.

reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum;

cf. *opprimō*.

concinō, -ere, -cinui, —, *sound*.
stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum,

draw.

1. Depends on *spērābat*.

2. *weariness*.

3. Refers to Pompey's plan
of battle.

4. *in former days*.

5. Nominative.

6. *threatening*.

7. *nōn concurrī*: *no attack was
being made*.

8. *i.e.* on their shields.

tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēi cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitudō sagittāriōrum sē profūdīt. Quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit,
 5 equitēsque Pompēi hōc ācrius īnstāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciemque nostram ā latere apertō circumīre coepērunt. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quārtae aciēi, quam īstituerat sex¹ cohortium, dedit sīgnum. Illī celeriter prōcucurrērunt īfestisque sīgnis tantā vī in
 10 Pompēi equitēs impetum fēcērunt, ut eōrum nēmō cōsisteret omnēsque conversī nōn sōlum locō excēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus summōtis² omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque dēstitūtī³ inermēs sine praesidiō interfectī sunt. Eōdem im-
 15 petū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompēiānis circumiērunt eōsque ā tergō sunt adortī.

The Pompeians are routed. Pompey shows himself a coward.

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prō-
 20 currere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integrī dēfessīs successissent, aliī autem ā tergō adorīrentur, sustinēre Pompēiāni nōn potuērunt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem fefellit,⁴ quīn ab iīs cohortibus, quae contrā equitātum in quārtā aciē collocātae essent,
 25 initium victōriae orīrētur, ut ipse in cohortandīs militibus

profundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, turmātim, by squadrons.
 pour forth; with sē, rush explicō, -āre, -āvi (-uī), -ātum
 forth. (-itum), spread out.

1. sex cohortium: made up of six cohorts, modifies quam.

2. dislodged.

3. abandoned.

4. did escape; the subject is the quīn clause.

prōnūntiāverat. Ab hīs enim primum equitātus est pulsus, ab isdem factae caedēs sagittariōrum ac funditorum, ab isdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā parte circumita atque initium fugae factum. Sed Pompēius, ut
 5 equitātum suum pulsum vīdit atque eam partem, cui maximē cōfidēbat, perterritam animadvertit, aliīs quoque diffusus aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra equō contulit et iīs centuriōnibūs,¹ quōs in statīōne ad praetōriam² portam posuerat, clārē, ut milītēs exaudīrent,
 10 'Tuēminī,'³ inquit, 'castra et dēfendite diligenter, sī quid dūrius acciderit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō⁴ et castrōrum praesidia cōfirmō.'⁴ Haec cum dixisset, sē in praetōrium⁵ contulit, summae⁶ rei diffidēs et tamen ēventum exspectāns.

Caesar captures Pompey's camp.

15 95. Caesar Pompēiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsis nūllum spatium⁷ perterritis dare oportēre existimāns milītēs cohortātus est, ut beneficiō fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō⁸ aestū (nam ad merīdiem rēs erat perducta), tamen ad omnem
 20 labōrem animō parātī imperiō pāruērunt.⁹ Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictæ, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarisque auxiliīs. Nam quī aciē refūgerant milītēs, et animō

diffidō, -ere, -fusus sum, *despair of, distrust.*

clārē, *loudly.*

industriē, *actively.*

1. Modifies inquit.

2. praetōriam portam: *front gate.*

3. *protect.*

4. Pres. tense in sense of fut.

5. *the general's tent.*

6. summae rei: *the outcome of the battle.*

7. *respite.*

8. magnō aestū: abl. abs. introduced by etsī.

9. *obeyed.*

perterriti et lassitudine cōfecti, missis¹ plērique armis signisque militāribus magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque² vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōstitērant, multitudinem tēlorum sustinēre
 5 potuerunt, sed cōfecti vulneribus locum reliquerunt prōtinusque omnēs ducibus³ ūsi centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōfūgērunt.

Caesar finds the camp luxuriously fitted up. Pompey escapes.

96. In castris Pompēi vidēre licuit trichilās strūctās,
 10 magnum argenti⁴ pondus expositum, recentibus cespiti-
 bus⁵ tabernācula⁶ cōstrāta, Lucī etiam Lentulī et
 nōnnūllōrum⁷ tabernācula prōtēcta ederā, multaque
 praetereā, quae nimiam lūxuriam et victōriae fidūciam
 dēsīgnārent,⁸ ut facile exīstimārī posset nihil eōs dē
 15 ēvēntū eius diēi timuisse, quī nōn⁹ necessāriās conquīre-
 rent¹⁰ voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō
 exercitū Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia
 ad necessārium ūsum dēfuissent. Pompēius, iam cum
 intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus dētractis¹¹
 20 īnsīgnibus imperātōris decumānā portā sē ex castris

trichila, -ae, f., *arbor*.

struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctum,
build.

cōnsternō, -ere, -strāvi, -strātum,

cover, pave.

edera, -ae, f., *ivy*.

nimius, -a, -um, *too much, excessive*.

1. *flung away.*

2. neque vērō diūtius: *and in fact not very long.*

3. In apposition with centuriōnibus and tribūnis.

4. *silver plate.*

5. *sods.*

6. *tents.*

7. *of some others.*

8. *indicated.*

9. nōn necessāriās: *unnecessary.*

10. Cf. quaerō.

11. dētractis īnsīgnibus imperātōris: *removing the decorations that belonged to him as general.*

eiēcit prōtinusque equō citātō Lārīsam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucōs ¹ suōs ex fugā nactus nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō comitātū equitum trīgintā ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmen-
 5 tāriam cōnscendit saepe, ut dīcēbātur, querēns tantum ² sē opīniōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērasset, ab eō initīo fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

Pompey's army retires to a hill and treats for peace.

97. Caesar castrīs potītus ā militibus contendit,³ nē
 10 in praedā occupātī reliquī⁴ negōtiī gerendī facultātem dīmitterent. Quā rē impetrātā montem opere circum-
 mūnīre instituit. Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisī eī locō relictō monte ūniversī iugīs⁵ eius Lārīsam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē ani-
 15 madversā Caesar cōpiās suās dīvisit partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remisit, quattuor sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit⁶ et prōgressus mīlia passuum vi aciem instrūxit. Quā rē animadversā
 20 Pompēiānī in quōdam monte cōstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat.⁷ Caesar militēs cohortātus, etsi tōtīus diēi continentī labōre erant cōfecti noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnitiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī⁸ Pompēiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere

citātus, -a, -um, at full speed.

versus, prep., toward.

1. paucōs suōs: a few of his own men.

2. tantum . . . fefellisse: that his expectations had so completely disappointed him.

3. earnestly requested of.

4. Modifies negōtiī.

5. iugīs eius: along its ridges, abl. of means.

6. started.

7. washed the base of.

8. to get water.

illī dē dēditionē missīs lēgātīs agere coepērunt. Pauci
ordinis senātōriī, quī sē cum iīs coniūnixerant, nocte fugā
salūtem petivērunt.

After surrender, the Pompeians are pardoned by Caesar.

98. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōn-
5 sēderant, ex superiōribus locīs in plānitie dēscendere
atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne
fēcērunt passisque palmīs prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab
eō salūtem petivērunt, cōsōlātus cōsurgere iussit et
pauca apud eōs dē lēnitātē¹ suā locūtus, quō minōre
10 essent timōre, omnēs cōservāvit militibusque suis com-
mendāvit, nē quī eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī dēsiderā-
rent.² Hāc adhibitā diligentīā ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs
aliās occurrere et eās, quās sēcum dūxerat, in vicem
requiēscere atque in castra revertī iussit eōdemque diē
15 Lārisam pervēnit.

The losses.

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius cc militēs dēsiderāvit,
sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmisit. Inter-
fectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius
mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in³ ōs adversum
20 coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille in pugnam
proficiscēns dixerat. Sic⁴ enim Caesar existimābat, eō
proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crāstinī fuisse optimē-
que eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat. Ex Pompēiānō exer-

senātōrius, -a, -um, *senatorial*.
recūsātiō, recūsātiōnis, f., *refusal*,
protest.
commendō, i, *intrust, urge upon*.

violō, i, *harm*.
in vicem, *in turn*.
requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum,
rest.

1. lēnitāte suā: *his well-known kindness*.

2. lose.

3. in ōs adversum: *full in the face*.

4. Explained by eō fuisse.

citū circiter milia xv cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditionem vērunt amplius milia xxiv (namque etiam cohortēs, quae praesidiō in castellis fuerant, sēsē Sūllae dēdidērunt), multī praeterea in finitimās civitatēs refūgērunt, signaque militāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta CLXXX et aquilae IX. L. Domitius ex castris in montem refugiēns, cum virēs eum lassitudine dēfēcissent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

.
Caesar pursues Pompey, who sails away.

102. Caesar omnibus rēbus relictis persequendum sibi Pompēium existimāvit, quāscumque in partēs sē ex fugā recēpisset, nē rūsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset, et quantumcumque itineris equitātū efficere poterat cotidie prōgrediēbātur legiōnemque ūnam minōribus itineribus subsequi iussit. Erat 15 ēdictum Pompēi nōmine Amphipoli prōpositum, uti omnēs eius prōvinciae iūniōrēs, Graeci civēsque Rōmāni, iūrāndi causā convenirent. Sed utrum¹ āvertendae suspiciōnis causā Pompēius prōposuisset, ut quam diūtissimē longiōris fugae cōnsilium occultāret, an novis dē- 20 lēctibus,² si nēmō premeret, Macedoniam tenēre cōnārētur, existimārī³ nōn poterat. Ipse ad **ancoram** ūnā nocte cōstitit et vocātis ad sē Amphipoli hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessariōs sūmptūs⁴ corrogātā cōgnitō Caesaris adventū ex eō locō discessit et Mytilēnās paucis

quantuscumque, -acumque, -um-

cumque, *however much.*

ēdictum, -i, n., *proclamation.*

iuvenis, iūnior, minimus natū,

young.

ancora, -ae, f., *anchor.*

corrogō, i, *collect by asking, borrow.*

1. utrum . . . an . . . cōnārētur: double indir. question; subject of existimārī poterat.

2. *levies.*

3. *determined.*

4. *expense.*

diēbus vēnit. Bīdūm tempestāte retentus nāvibusque aliīs additis āctuāriis¹ in Ciliciam atque inde Cyprum pervēnit. Ibi cōgnōscit cōsēnsū² omnium Antiochēnsium civiumque Rōmānōrum, quī illic negōtiārentur, arcem captam esse exclūdendī suī causā nūntiōsque dimissōs ad eōs, quī sē ex fugā in finitimās cīvitatēs recēpisse dicerentur, nē Antiochiā adirent: id sī fēcissent, magnō³ eōrum capitis periculō futurum.

Pompey seeks protection from Ptolemy, king of Egypt.

103. Quibus cōgnitis rēbus Pompēius dēpositō ad eundae Syriae cōsiliō pecūniā societātis sublātā et ā quibusdam prīvātis sūmptā et aeris⁴ magnō pondere ad militārem ūsum in nāvēs impositō duōbusque milibus hominum armātis, partim quōs ex familiis societātum dēlēgerat, partim⁵ ā negōtiātōribus coēgerat, quōs ex⁶ suis quisque ad hanc rem idōneōs exīstimābat, Pēlūsium pervēnit. Ibi cāsū rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetāte, magnīs cōpiīs cum sorōre Cleopatrā bellum gerēns, quam paucis ante mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amīcōs rēgnō expulerat: castraque Cleopatrae nōn longō spatiō ab eius castris distābant. Ad eum Pompēius misit, ut prō hospitio atque amīcitiā patris Alexandriā reciperētur atque illius opibus in calamitāte tegerētur. Sed quī ab eō missi erant, cōfectō lēgā-

negōtior, 1, *do business*.
societās, societātis, f., *alliance*,
tax collectors' company.

negōtiātor, negōtiātōris, m.; cf.
negōtior.

1. *swift*.
2. *concerted action*, modifies
captam esse.
3. *magnō . . . periculō: at the*
risk of their lives.

4. *money*.
5. Sc. quōs after the second
partim.
6. *ex suis: of his own*
friends.

tionis officiō, liberius cum militibus rēgis colloquī coepērunt eōsque hortārī, ut suum officium Pompēiō praestarent¹ nēve eius fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs Pompēi militēs, quōs ex eius exercitū
5 acceptōs in Syriā Gabīnius Alexandriam trādūxerat bellōque cōfectō apud Ptolemaeum, patrem pueri, reliquerat.

But instead he is treacherously murdered.

104. Hīs tunc² cōgnitis rēbus amīci³ rēgis, quī propter aetātem eius in cūrātiōne erant rēgnī, sive timōre⁴ ad-
10 ductī, ut postea praedicābant, sollicitatō⁵ exercitū rēgiō nē Pompēius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret, sive dēspectā eius fortūna, ut plērumque in calamitatē ex amicis inimici existunt, hīs, quī erant ab eō missi, palam⁶ liberāliter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venire
15 iussērunt; ipsī clam cōsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum rēgium, singulārī hominem audaciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnum militum, ad interficiendum Pompēium misērunt. Ab hīs liberāliter⁷ ipse⁸ appellātus et quādam nōtitiā⁹ Septimii prōductus, quod bellō praedōnum¹⁰
20 apud eum ōrdinem¹¹ dūxerat, nāviculam¹² parvulam cōnscendit cum paucīs suis: ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge et in custodiā¹³ necātur.

cūratiō, cūratiōnis, f.; cf. cūrō.

rēgius, -a, -um; cf. rēx.

1. *do.*
2. *at this time.*
3. Subject of respondērunt and iussērunt.
4. Explained by nē . . . occupāret.
5. *stirred up.*
6. *openly*; contrast with clam.

7. liberāliter appellātus: *courteously addressed.*
8. *i.e.* Pompey.
9. *acquaintance.*
10. *pirates.*
11. Here = *a century.*
12. *skiff.*
13. *prison.*

Caesar saves the temple of Diana from being plundered. Strange portents happen on the day of the battle of Pharsalus.

105. Caesar, cum in Asiam vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās¹ tollere Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eiusque rei causā senātōres omnēs ex prōvinciā ēvocāsse, ut hīs testibus in² summā pecūniae
 5 ūterētur, sed interpellātum³ adventū Caesaris profūgis-
 - gisse. Ita duōbus temporibus Ephesiae pecūniae Caesar auxilium tulit. . . . Item cōnstābat⁴ Ēlide in templō Minervae repetitis⁵ atque ēnumerātis diēbus,
 10 Victōriae, quod ante ipsam Minervam collocātum esset et ante ad simulācrum Minervae spectāvisset, ad valvās sē templī limenque convertisse. Eōdemque diē Antiochiāe in Syriā bis tantus exercitūs clāmor et signōrum sonus exaudītus est, ut in mūrīs armāta civi-
 15 tās⁶ discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolemāide accidit, Pergamīque⁷ in occultis⁸ ac reconditis templī, quō praeter sacerdotēs adire fās nōn est, quae Graeci *ἄδύτα*⁹ appellānt, tympana sonuērunt. Item Trallibus in templō

fānum, -ī, n., temple.

ēnumerō, 1, count.

valvae, -ārum, f., folding doors.

limen, liminis, n., entrance.

sonus, -ī, m., sound.

discurro, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī),

-cursum, run to and fro, run to one's place.

reconditus, -ā, -um, remote.

sacerdōs, sacerdotis, m., priest.

tympanum, -ī, n., drum.

sonō, -ere, sonuī, sonitum, sound.

1. treasures.

2. in summā: as to the amount.

3. prevented.

4. it was ascertained by reckoning.

5. reckoned backward.

6. body of citizens.

7. Locative.

8. occultis ac reconditis templī: parts of the temple set aside and remote.

9. (Greek): inner sanctuaries.

Victōriae, ubi Caesaris statuam cōsecrāverant, palma per eōs diēs inter coagmenta lapidum ex pavimentō exstitisse ostendēbātur.

Caesar arrives at Alexandria and learns of Pompey's death.

106. Caesar paucōs diēs in Asiā morātus cum audisset Pompēium Cypri vīsum, coniectāns eum Aegyptum¹ iter habere² propter necessitudinēs³ rēgnī reliquāsque eius loci opportunitātēs, cum legiōne ūnā, quam sē ex Thessaliā sequi iusserat, et alterā, quam ex Achāiā ā Q. Fūfiō lēgātō ēvocāverat, equitibusque dccc et nāvibus 10 longis Rhodiis x et Asiaticis paucis Alexandriam pervēnit. In hīs erant legiōnibus hominum milia⁴ tria cc; reliqui vulneribus ex proeliis et labōre ac magnitudine itineris cōfecti cōsequi nōn potuerant. Sed Caesar cōfusus fāmā rērum gestārum infirmis auxiliis proficisci 15 nōn dubitāverat aequē omnem sibi locum tūtum fore existimāns. Alexandriae dē Pompēi morte cōgnōscit.

statua, -ae, f., *statue*.

cōsecrō, 1, *consecrate*.

palma, -ae, f., *palm, palm tree*.

coagmentum, -ī, n., *joint*.

pavimentum, -ī, *pavement*.

coniectō, 1, *infer*.

aequē; cf. *aequus*.

1. The omission of the prep. is unusual.

2. iter habere: *was on the road*.

3. necessitudinēs rēgnī: *friendships in the kingdom*.

4. milia tria cc: *only 3200*.

LIFE AND WORKS OF CORNELIUS NEPOS

OF the life and works of Cornelius Nepos, little is positively known. He was born in the town of Ticinum (Pavia) in Northern Italy, about B.C. 100. He died about B.C. 24. That he was well-to-do is evident from the fact that he was enrolled as a Roman knight, and he seems to have given his attention to literature and learning rather than to politics. Among his intimate friends were Cicero, Catullus, and Atticus.

It is clear that Nepos was a prolific writer, for we learn from various sources that he was the author of (a) *an outline of the world's history*; (b) *a treatise on Roman customs*; (c) *a detailed life of Cato the Censor*; (d) *a life of Cicero*; (e) *a work on geography*; (f) *De Viris Illustribus*. The last-named was divided into sixteen sections, as follows: — I. *De Regibus Exterarum Gentium*. II. *De Regibus Romanorum*. III. *De Excellentibus Ducibus Exterarum Gentium*. IV. *De Excellentibus Ducibus Romanorum*. V. *De Iuris Consultis Graecis*. VI. *De Iuris Consultis Romanis*. VII. *De Oratoribus Graecis*. VIII. *De Oratoribus Romanis*. IX. *De Poetis Graecis*. X. *De Poetis Latinis*. XI. *De Historicis Graecis*. XII. *De Historicis Latinis*. XIII. *De Philosophis Graecis*. XIV. *De Philosophis Latinis*. XV. *De Grammaticis Graecis*. XVI. *De Grammaticis Latinis*. Of these, one has been preserved entire — *De Excellentibus Ducibus Exterarum Gentium* — and parts of two others — *De Regibus Exterarum Gentium* and *De Historicis Latinis*. From the first most of the following selections have been chosen and from the last the life of Cato.

The style of Nepos, though of the same period as that of Caesar and Cicero, shows some peculiarities of construction. As a writer he should be considered as an essayist rather than as a historian. His *Lives* are models of literary form rather than of historical accuracy.

I. MILTIADES

? - 488

He goes to the Chersonesus to establish a colony.

I. MILTIADĒS, Cīmōnis filius, Athēniēnsis, cum¹ et² antiquitāte³ generis et² glōriā³ maiōrum et² suā modestiā³ ūnus⁴ omnium maximē flōrēret, eāque⁵ ēssēt aetāte ut nōn⁶ iam solum dē eō bene spērāre sed etiam
 5 cōfidere civēs possent suī tālem eum futūrum,⁷ quālem cōgnitum iūdicārunt, accidit ut Athēniēnsēs Chersonēsum⁸ colōnōs vellent mittere. Cuius⁹ generis cum magnus numerus ēssēt et multī eius dēmigrātiōnis peterent societātem,¹⁰ ex iis dēlēctī Delphōs dēliberātum¹¹
 10 missi sunt, quī cōsulerent Apollinem, quō¹² potissimum duce¹³ ūterentur. Namque tum Thrāces eās regiōnēs tenēbant, cum¹⁴ quibus armīs erat dimicandum. Hīs

antiquitās, antiquitātis, f., *antiquity*.

modestia, -ae, f., *modesty*.

colōnus, -ī, m., *colonist*.

dēmigrātiō, dēmigrātiōnis, f., *emigration*.

potissimum, *especially, rather than any other*.

1. Causal.

2. et . . . et . . . et: *not only . . . and . . . but also*.

3. Abl. of cause.

4. ūnus omnium maximē flōrēret: *was the most conspicuous one of them all*.

5. eā aetāte: abl. of description.

6. nōn solum . . . iūdicārunt: *his fellow citizens were able not only to hope much from him, but even to confidently expect that he would turn out to be such a man as they thought him (when he*

afterward became) known.

7. Sc. esse: depends on cōnfidere.

8. Chersonēsum: Nepos treats this word as though it were the name of a town.

9. cuius generis: *of this sort (of people); i.e. would-be colonists*.

10. *alliance (with)*.

11. Supine.

12. Interrogative.

13. Predicate noun.

14. cum quibus: *more often written quibuscum*.

cōnsulentibus nōminātim¹ Pythia praecēpit ut Miltiadem imperātōrem sibi sūmerent; id si fēcissent, incepta prōspera futūra.² Hōc ōrāculi respōnsō³ Miltiadēs cum dēlēctā manū classe⁴ Chersonēsum profectus, cum
 5 accessisset Lēmnum et incolās eius insulae sub potestātem redigere vellet Athēniēnsium, idque Lēmniī suā sponte facerent⁵ postulāset, illi irridentēs respondērunt tum id sē factūrōs, cum ille domō nāvibus proficiscēns ventō aquilōne vēnisset Lēmnum. Hic enim ventus ab
 10 septentriōnibus oriēns adversum⁶ tenet Athēnis⁷ proficiscentibus.⁸ Miltiadēs morandī tempus nōn habēns cursum dirēxit, quō tendēbat, pervēnitque Chersonēsum.

Brings Lemnos into the power of Athens.

2. Ibi brevī tempore barbarōrum cōpiis disiectis, tōtā regiōne, quam petierat, potitus, loca castellis idōnea
 15 commūniit, multitudinem, quam sēcum dūxerat, in agrīs collocāvit crēbrisque excursiōnibus locuplētāvit. Neque minus in eā rē prūdentiā quam fēlicitātē adiūtus est. Nam cum virtūte militum dēvicisset hostium exercitūs, summā⁹ aequitātē rēs cōstituit atque ipse ibidem ma-
 20 nēre dēcrēvit. Erat¹⁰ enim inter eōs dignitātē rēgiā,

inceptum, -ī, n., *undertaking*.

prōsperus, -a, -um, *fortunate*.

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle*.

incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant*.

aquilō, **aquilōnis**, m., *north wind*.

dirigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *direct*.

locuplētō, ī, *enrich*.

ibidem, *in that very place*.

1. (mentioning him) by name; an unusual proceeding.

2. Sc. esse: inf. in indirect discourse depending on praecēpit.

3. Abl. of cause.

4. by boat.

5. Subjunct. representing imperat. in direct discourse.

6. adversum tenet: blows straight against.

7. Ablative.

8. Dat. with adversum.

9. summā . . . cōstituit: arranged matters with the utmost fairness.

10. erat . . . rēgiā: for he held the position of king.

quamquam carēbat nōmine, neque id¹ magis imperiō² quam iūstitiā cōsecūtus. Neque eō sētius Athēniēnsibus, ā quibus erat profectus, officia praestābat. Quibus rēbus fiēbat ut nōn minus eōrum voluntāte perpetuō imperium obtinēret quī miserant, quam illōrum cum quibus erat profectus. Chersonēsō³ tāli modō cōstitutā, Lēmnum revertitur et ex pactō⁴ postulat ut sibi urbem trādant. Illī enim dixerant, cum⁵ ventō boreā domō profectus eō pervēnisset, sēsē dēditūrōs; sē⁶ autem domum Chersonēsī⁷ habēre. Cārēs, quī tum Lēmnum incolēbant, etsi praeter opīniōnem rēs ceciderat, tamen nōn dictō, sed secundā fortunā adversāriōrum captī, resistere ausī nōn sunt atque ex insulā dēmigrārunt. Parī felicitāte cēterās insulās, quae Cyclades nōminantur, sub
15 Athēniēnsium redēgit potestātem.

Tries to free the Greeks from Darius, but fails.

3. Iisdem temporibus Persārum rēx Dārius, ex Asiā in Eurōpam exercitū trāiectō, Scythīs bellum īferre dēcrēvit. Pontem fēcit in⁸ Histrō flūmine, quā cōpiās trādūceret. Eius pontis, dum⁹ ipse abesset,¹⁰ custōdēs¹¹
20 reliquit principēs, quōs sēcum ex Iōniā et Aeolide dūxerat; quibus¹² singulīs suārum urbium perpetua dederat imperia. Sic enim facillimē putāvit sē Graecā linguā

boreās, -ae, m., *north wind*.

-
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>that position.</i> | 7. Locative. |
| 2. <i>display of power.</i> | 8. <i>over.</i> |
| 3. Chersonēsō . . . cōstitutā: <i>with matters in the Chersonesus thus settled.</i> | 9. <i>as long as.</i> |
| 4. <i>agreement.</i> | 10. Subjunct. because of implied indirect discourse. |
| 5. With pervēnisset. | 11. Appositive with principēs. |
| 6. sē habēre: depends on a word of saying understood. | 12. quibus singulīs, etc.: <i>to each of them he had given control over one city.</i> |

loquentēs quī Asiam incolerent sub suā retentūrum potestāte, sī amicis suis oppida tuenda trādidisset, quibus sē oppressō nūlla spēs salutis relinquerētur. In hōc fuit tum numerō Miltiadēs cui illa custōdia crēderētur.¹

5 Hīc cum crēbrī adferrent nūntiī, male rem gerere



Bridge of Boats

Dārium premīque ā Scythīs, Miltiadēs hortātus est pontis custōdēs nē ā fortūnā² datam occāsiōnem liberandae Graeciae dīmitterent. Nam sī cum iīs cōpiis quās sēcum trānsportārat interīssset Dārius, nōn solum Eurō-
 10 pam fore tūtā, sed etiam eōs quī Asiam incolerent Graeci genere liberōs ā Persārum futurōs dominātiōne et periculō:³ id et facile effīci posse: ponte enim rescissō, rēgem vel hostium ferrō vel inopiā paucis diēbus interitūrum. Ad hoc cōnsilium cum⁴ plērique

dominātiō, dominātiōnis, f., *control*.

1. *could be intrusted.*

2. Personified, hence ā.

3. *danger (arising from it).*

4. Concessive.

accēderent, Histiaeus Milēsius nē rēs cōnficerētur ob-
stitit, dicēns nōn¹ idem ipsis quī summās imperiī tenē-
rent expedire et multitudinī, quod Dārīi rēgnō ipsōrum
nīterētur dominātiō: quō² exstinctō ipsōs³ potestāte
5 expulsōs civibus suis poenās datūrōs. Itaque adeō sē
abhorrēre ā cēterōrum cōnsiliō ut nihil putet ipsis ūti-
lius quam cōfirmārī rēgnum Persārum. Huius cum
sententiam plūrimī essent secūtī, Miltiadēs, nōn⁴ dubi-
tāns tam⁵ multis cōnsciīs ad rēgis aurēs⁶ cōnsilia sua
10 perventūra, Chersonēsum reliquit ac rūsus Athēnās
dēmigrāvit. Cuius ratiō etsī nōn valuit, tamen magnō
opere est laudanda, cum amīcior omnium libertātī quam
suae fuerit dominātiōnī.

Darius invades Greece.

4. Dārīus autem, cum ex Eurōpā in Asiam redisset,
15 hortantibus amicīs ut Graeciam redigeret in suam pote-
stātem, classem quīgentārum nāvium comparāvit eīque
Dātīm praefecit et Artaphernem, hisque ducenta⁷ pedi-
tum, decem equitum milia dedit, causam⁸ interserēns sē
hostem⁹ esse Athēniēnsibus, quod eōrum auxiliō Iōnēs

obstō, -āre, -stitī, —, *oppose*.
abhorreō, -ēre, -horruī, —,
shrink from, dissent from.

interserō, -ere, —, —, *en-
twine, assign.*

1. nōn idem . . . multitudinī:
*one and the same (course) was
not equally advantageous for
those men who held the chief con-
trol and for the great bulk of
people.*

2. i.e. Darius.

3. ipsōs civibus . . . datūrōs:
*they themselves would suffer pun-
ishment at the hands of their
subjects.*

4. nōn dubitāns: Nepos here
uses the infinitive where most
writers use quīn with the sub-
junctive.

5. tam . . . cōnsciīs: *with so
many in the secret.*

6. ears.

7. Sc. milia.

8. as a reason.

9. Here as an adj. with the
dative.

Sardis¹ expugnāssent suaque praesidia interfēcissent. Illi praefecti² rēgiī, classe ad Euboeam appulsā, celeriter Eretriam cēpērunt omnēsque eius gentis civēs abreptōs³ in Asiam ad rēgem mīsērunt. Inde ad Atticam accessērunt ac suās cōpiās in campum Marathōna dēdūxērunt. Is abest ab oppidō circiter milia passuum decem. Hōc tumultū Athēniēnsēs tam propinquō tamque magnō permōtī, auxilium nusquam nisi ā Lacedaemoniis petivērunt Phīdippumque cursōrem eius generis, quī hēmerodromoe⁴ vocantur, Lacedaemonem mīsērunt, ut nūntiāret quam⁵ celerī opus esset auxiliō. Domī autem creant decem praetōrēs,⁶ qui exercitui praeessent, in iis Miltiadem. Inter quōs magna fuit contentiō, utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent, an obviam īrent hostibus aciēque dēcerne-
rent. Ūnus⁷ Miltiadēs maximē nītēbātur, ut⁸ primō quōque tempore castra fierent; id sī factum esset, et⁹ civibus animum accessūrum, cum vidērent dē eōrum virtūte nōn dēspērārī,⁹ et⁸ hostēs eādem rē fore tardiorēs, sī animadverterent audērī⁹ adversus sē tam
exiguīs¹⁰ cōpiīs dīmicārī.⁹

The battle of Marathon.

5. Hōc in tempore¹¹ nūlla civitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō fuit praeter Plataeēnsēs. Ea mille mīsīt militum.

nusquam, nowhere.

cursor, cursōris, m., runner.

hēmerodromoe (Greek), day-

runner.

obviam, in the way of; with eō, go to meet.

1. Accusative.

2. officers.

3. carried off.

4. quam . . . auxiliō: what a need there was of speedy help.

5. generals.

6. ūnus . . . nītēbātur: Miltiades alone was very insistent.

7. ut primō . . . fierent: that they take the field at the first instant possible.

8. et . . . et: not only . . . but also.

9. Impersonal.

10. small.

11. crisis.

accessit. Cum ¹ iam in eō esset ut oppidō potirētur, procul in continenti ² lūcus, quī ex insulā cōspiciēbātur, nesciō ³ quō cāsū nocturnō tempore incēnsus est. Cuius flamma ut ab oppidānis et oppugnātōribus est vīsa, utrisque ⁴ vēnit in opīniōnem sīgnū ā classiāriīs rēgiis datum. Quō factum est ut et Parii ā dēditionē dēterrērentur et Miltiadēs, timēns nē classis rēgia adventāret, incēnsis operibūs quae statuerat, cum totidem ⁵ nāvibus atque erat profectus, Athēnās magnā cum offēnsiōne civium suōrum rediret. Accūsātus ergō est prōditionis, quod, cum Parum expugnāre posset, ā rēge corruptus infectis ⁶ rēbus discessisset. Eō tempore aeger erat vulneribus, quae in oppugnandō oppidō accēperat. Itaque cum ipse prō sē dicere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter eius Stēsagorās. Causā cōgnitā, capitis ⁷ absolūtus pecūniā multātus est, eaque lis quīnquāgintā talentis aestimāta est, quantus in classem sūmptus factus erat. Hanc pecūniā quod solvere ⁸ in praesentiā nōn poterat, in vincula pūblica coniectus est ibique diem obiit ⁹ suprē-
mum.

lūcus, -ī, m., *grove*.

oppugnātor, oppugnātōris, m.; cf. oppugnō.

classiārius, -a, -um; as a substantive in plu., *seamen*.

adventō, ī, *arrive*.

prōditiō, prōditiōnis, f., *treason*.

absolvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, *free from*.

multō, ī, *fine*.

lis, lītis, f., *lawsuit, damages*.

talentum, -ī, n., *talent*; Greek sum of money, amounting to about \$1100.

1. cum . . . potirētur: *just as he was on the point of taking the town*.

2. continent.

3. nesciō quō = aliquō.

4. utrisque . . . opīniōnem: *it occurred to both*.

5. totidem atque: *same number as*.

6. infectis rēbus: *with his purpose unaccomplished*.

7. capital punishment.

8. pay.

9. met.

Another reason for his imprisonment.

8. Hīc etsī crimine Pariō est accūsātus, tamen alia causa fuit damnātiōnis. Namque Athēniēnsēs propter Pisistratī tyrannidem, quae paucis annis ante fuerat, omnium civium suorum potentiam extimēscēbant. Miltiadēs, multum in imperiis magistrātibusque versātus, nōn vidēbātur posse esse prīvātus,¹ praesertim cum cōsuētūdine ad imperiī cupiditatem trahī vidērētur. Nam Chersonēsī, omnēs illōs quōs habitārat annōs, perpetuam obtinuerat dominātiōnem, tyrannusque fuerat appellātus, 10 sed iustus. Nōn erat² enim vī cōsecūtus, sed suorum voluntate, eamque potestatem bonitate retinēbat. Omnēs autem et dicuntur et habentur tyrannī, quī potestate sunt perpetuā in eā civitate, quae libertate ūsa est. Sed in Miltiade erat cum summa hūmānitās, tum mīra commūnitās, ut nēmō tam humilis esset, cui nōn ad eum aditus patēret; magna auctōritās³ apud omnēs civitatēs, nōbile nōmen, laus rei militāris maxima. Haec populus respiciēns⁴ māluit illum innoxium plecti quam sē diūtius esse in timōre.

crimen, **criminis**, n., *charge*.

affability.

extimēscō, -ere, -timui, —, *fear*.

innoxius, -a, -um, *harmless, innocent*.

habitō, i, *reside*.

tyrannus, -ī, m., *tyrant*.

plectō, -ere, —, —; in passive,

commūnitās, **communitātis**, f.,

suffer punishment.

1. *a mere private citizen*.

3. *auctōritās*, etc.: sc. *eique*

2. *erat cōsecūtus*: sc. *tyrannidem*.

erat.

4. *considering*.

II. THEMISTOCLES

C. 527-C. 460

His early life.

I. THEMISTOCLĒS, Neoclī filius, Athēniēnsis. Huius vitia¹ ineuntis adulēscētiaē magnīs sunt ēmendāta virtūtibus, adeō ut anteferātur² huic nēmō, paucī parēs putentur. Sed ab initiō est ōrdiendus. Pater eius
 5 Neoclēs generōsus fuit. Is uxōrem Acarnānam cīvem dūxit,³ ex quā nātus est Themistoclēs. Quī cum minus⁴ esset probātus parentibus, quod et liberius vivēbat et rem familiārem negligēbat, ā patre exhērēdātus est. Quae contumēlia nōn frēgit eum, sed ērēxit.⁵ Nam
 10 cum iūdicāset sine summā industriā nōn posse eam⁶ exstinguī,⁷ tōtum sē dēdidit rei pūblīcae, diligentius amicīs fāmaeque⁸ serviēns. Multum in iūdicīis⁹ prīvātīs versābātur, saepe in cōtiōnem¹⁰ populī prōdībat; nūlla rēs maior¹¹ sine eō gerēbātur, celeriter quae opus
 15 erant reperiēbat, facile eadem¹² ōrātiōne explicābat.¹³ Neque minus in rēbus gerendis prōptus¹⁴ quam excōgitandīs erat, quod et dē instantibus,¹⁵ ut ait Thūcýdidēs,

ēmendō, 1, *compensate for.*ōrdior, -īrī, ōrsus sum, *begin, describe.*generōsus, -a, -um, *well-born.*exhērēdō, 1, *disinherit.*serviō, 4, *serve, devote one's self.*āiō, defective; imperf. āiēbam, *say.*1. *faults.*

2. Cf. ferō.

3. Sc. in mātrimōnium.

4. minus . . . probātus: *not wholly approved of.*5. *roused.*

6. Sc. contumēliam.

7. *blot out.*8. *reputation.*9. *trials.*10. *assembly.*11. *more important (than usual).*12. *i.e. ea quae opus erant.*13. *explained.*14. *ready.*15. instantibus (rēbus): *present matters.*

vērissimē iūdicābat et dē futūrīs callidissimē coniciēbat.¹
Quō factum est ut brevī tempore illūstrārētur.

Xerxes invades Greece but is defeated. Themistocles interprets an oracle of Apollo.

2. Prīmus autem gradus fuit capessendae rei pūblicae bellō Corcȳraeō; ad quod gerendum praetor ā populō
5 factus, nōn solum praesentī bellō, sed etiam reliquō tempore ferōciōrem reddidit cīvitātem. Nam cum pecūnia pūblica, quae ex metallīs redibat, largitōne² magistrātuum quotannis interīret,³ ille persuāsit populō ut eā pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificārētur. Quā
10 celeriter effectā primum Corcȳraeōs frēgit, deinde maritimōs⁴ praedōnēs cōsectandō mare tūtum reddidit. In⁵ quō cum divitiīs ōrnāvit, tum etiam perītissimōs bellī nāvālis fēcit Athēniēnsēs.⁶ Id quantae⁷ salūtī fuerit ūniversae Graeciae, bellō cōgnitum est Persicō.
15 Nam⁸ cum Xerxēs et marī et terrā bellum ūniversae inferret Eurōpae cum tantīs cōpiīs, quantās⁹ neque ante nec posteā habuit quisquam: huius enim classis mīlle et ducentārum nāvium longārum fuit, quam duō mīlia onerāriarum sequēbantur, terrestres autem exercitūs
20 septingenta peditum, equitum quadringenta mīlia fuē-

vērē, truly, accurately.

callidē, shrewdly.

illūstrō, I, make famous.

gradus, -ūs, m., step, stage.

capessō, -ere, capessivī, capessitum, take eagerly, undertake.

ferōx, ferōcis, wild, warlike.

metallum, -ī, n., mine.

divitiae, -ārum, f., riches.

ōrnō, I, provide with.

terrestris, -e, belonging to the land, land.

1. guessed.

2. lavish giving.

3. was lost.

4. maritimōs praedōnēs: pirates.

5. in quō: in so doing.

6. Obj. of ōrnāvit and fēcit.

7. quantae salūtī: how helpful.

8. nam cum, etc.: this clause is not completed but, after the parenthetical huius . . . fuērunt, is taken up in another form.

9. as.

runt: — cuius dē adventū cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta et maximē¹ Athēniēnsēs petī dicerentur propter pugnam Marathōniam, misērunt Delphōs cōsultum, quidnam facerent dē rēbus suis. Dēliberantibus²
 5 Pŷthia respondit ut moenibus ligneis sē mūnīrent. Id³ respōsum quō valēret cum intellexeret nēmō, Themistoclēs persuāsīt⁴ cōsiliū esse Apollinis ut in nāvēs sē suaque cōferrent; eum⁵ enim ā deō signifi- cārī mūrū lignēum. Tālī cōsiliō probātō, addunt
 10 ad supēriōrēs⁶ totidem nāvēs trirēmēs suaque omnia quae movērī poterant partim Salamīna, partim Troe- zēna dēportant; arcem sacerdotibus paucisque maiōribus nātū ad sacra prōcūranda trādunt, reliquū oppidū relinquunt.

Battles at Thermopylae and near Artemisium.

15 3. Huius cōsiliū plērisque civitātibus displicēbat et in terrā dīmicārī magis placēbat. Itaque missī sunt dēlēctī cum Leōnidā, Lacedaemoniōrū rēge, quī Thermopylās occupārent longiusque barbarōs prōgredi nōn paterentur. Iī vim hostiū nōn sustinuērunt eōque
 20 locō omnēs interiērunt. At classis commūnis Graeciae trecentārum nāvium, in quā ducentae erant Athēni- ēnsiū, primum apud Artemīsium inter Euboeam

līgneus, -a, -um, wooden, made of wood.

trirēmīs, -e, with three banks of oars; as substantive, trireme.

dēportō, 1; cf. portō.

sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred; here as substantive, sacred rites.

prōcūrō, 1, care for, manage.

displicēō, -ēre, -plicui, -plicitum, displease.

1. maximē . . . dicerentur: lit. the Athenians were said to be aimed at particularly.

2. seeking advice.

3. id . . . valēret: what this reply meant.

4. convinced; note the infinitive with this verb.

5. eum . . . lignēum: that kind of wooden wall was indicated by the god.

6. the former ones.

continentemque terram cum classiariis regiis cōflīxit. Angustiās enim Themistoclēs quaerēbat nē multitudīne circumīrētur. Hinc etsi parī¹ proeliō discesserant, tamen eōdem locō nōn sunt ausī manēre, quod erat periculum, 5 nē, si pars nāvium adversariōrum Euboeam superāssent,² ancipitī premerentur periculō. Quō factum est ut ab Artemisiō discēderent et exadversum Athēnās apud Salamina classem suam cōstituerent.

Xerxes seizes and destroys Athens. Battle of Salamis.

4. At Xerxēs, Thermopylis expugnātis, prōtinus accessit astū idque, nūllis dēfendentibus, interfectis sacerdotibus, quōs in arce invēnerat, incendiō dēlēvit. Cuius flammā perterriti classiarii cum manēre nōn audērent et plūrimī hortārentur ut domōs suās discēderent moenibusque sē dēfenderent, Themistoclēs ūnus restitit et 15 ūniversōs³ parēs⁴ esse posse aiēbat, dispersōs testābatur peritūrōs, idque⁵ Eurybiadi,⁶ regī Lacedaemoniōrum, quī tum summae imperiī praeerat, fore adfirmābat. Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū dē⁷ servis suis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad regem⁸ misit, ut ei 20 nūntiāret, suis⁹ verbis, adversariōs eius¹⁰ in fugā esse; quī si discessissent, maiōre cum labōre et longinquiōre tempore bellum cōfectūrum, cum singulōs cōsectārī cōgerētur; quōs si statim aggredērētur, brevī¹¹ ūniversōs

exadversum, prep., *opposite*.
astū, indeclin., n., *city*.

testor, 1, *bear witness, assert*.
adfirmō, 1; cf. **cōfirmō**.

1. *undecided*.

2. *sailed past*.

3. *if united*.

4. *equal to the occasion*.

5. Subject of *fore*.

6. Modifies *adfirmābat*.

7. *dē servis suis*: sc. eum.

8. *i.e.* Xerxes.

9. *suis verbis*: *i.e.* speaking for Themistocles.

10. *i.e.* Xerxes.

11. = *brevi tempore*.

oppressūrum. Hoc ¹ eō valēbat, ut ingrātiis ad dēpug-
 nandum omnēs cōgerentur. Hāc rē audītā barbarus,
 nihil dolī subesse crēdēns, postrīdiē aliēnissimō sibi locō,



Painting by F. Cormon.

Return of the Greeks from Salamis

contrā opportūnissimō hostibus, adeō angustō marī cōn-
 5 flixit, ut eius multitudō nāvium explicārī ² nōn potuerit.
 Victus ergō est magis etiam cōsiliō Themistoclī quam
 armīs Graeciae.

Xerxes returns to Asia on the advice of Themistocles.

5. Hīc ³ etsi male rem gesserat, tamen tantās habēbat
 reliquiās cōpiārum, ut etiam tum iis opprimere posset

ingrātiis, *unwillingly, under com-
 pulsion.*

dēpugnō, 1, *fight it out.*

reliquiae, -ārum, f., *remainder,
 remnants.*

1. hoc eō valēbat: *the plan
 of this was.*

2. *spread out.*

3. Adverb.

hostēs. Iterum ab eōdem¹ gradū² dēpulsus est. Nam Themistoclēs, verēns nē bellāre perseverāret certiōrem eum fēcīt id³ agī, ut pōns, quem ille in Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissolverētur⁴ ac reditū in Asiam exclūderētur;⁵ idque eī persuāsīt. Itaque, quā sex mēnsibus iter fēcerat, eādē⁶ minus diēbus trigintā in Asiam reversus est sēque ā Themistocle nōn superātum, sed cōservātum iūdicāvit. Sic ūnūs virī prūdentiā Graecia liberāta est Eurōpaeque succubuit⁷ Asia. Haec est altera victōria quae cum Marathōniō possit comparārī tropaeō. Nam parī modō apud Salamīna parvō numerō nāvium maxima post hominum memoriā classis est dēvicta.

The Spartans object to the rebuilding of Athens. Themistocles goes to them as an ambassador.

6. Magnus hōc bellō Themistoclēs fuit neque minor in pāce. Cum enim Phalēricō portū neque magnō neque bonō Athēniēnsēs ūterentur, huius cōsiliō triplex⁸ Pīraei portus cōstitutus est eisque moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitāte⁹ aequirerāret, ūtilitāte¹⁰ superāret. Idem mūrōs Athēniēnsium restituit praeceptuō suō periculō. Namque Lacedaemoniī, causam¹¹ idōneam nactī propter barbarōrum excursiōnēs quā¹² negārent oportēre extrā Peloponnēsum ūllam urbem mūrōs habēre, nē essent loca mūnita, quae hostēs possitropaeum, -ī, n., trophy, victory. possidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, occupy, seize.
aequiperō, 1, compare, rival.

1. Abl. of agent.
2. gradū dēpulsus est: he was deprived of his advantage.
3. id agī: this plan was being considered.
4. cut down.
5. Sc. Xerxēs.
6. Sc. viā.

7. gave way.
8. i.e. with three basins.
9. grandeur.
10. Cf. ūtilis.
11. causam idōneam: a likely pretense.
12. quā negārent: for saying . . . not.

derent, Athēniēnsēs aedificantēs prohibēre sunt cōnātī. Hoc longē¹ aliō spectābat atque vidēri volēbant. Athēniēnsēs enim duābus victōriis, Marathōniā et Salamīniā, tantam glōriam apud omnēs gentēs erant cōsecūtī, ut

5

10

15



The Piraeus

intellegerent Lacedaemonii dē principātū sibi cum iis certāmen fore. Quārē eōs quam infirmīssimōs esse volēbant. Postquam autem audierunt mūrōs struī,² lēgātōs Athēnās mīsērunt, quī id fieri vetārent. His praesentibus dēsiē-

runt³ ac sē dē eā rē lēgātōs ad eōs missūrōs dixērunt. Hanc lēgatiōnem suscēpit Themistoclēs et sōlus primō
20 profectus est; reliquī⁴ lēgātī ut tum exīrent, cum satis altī tuendō⁵ mūrī exstrūctī vidērentur, praecēpit: interim omnēs, servī atque liberī, opus facerent neque ūllī locō parcerent, sive sacer sive profānus, sive prīvātus esset sive pūblicus, et undique, quod idōneum ad mūni-
25 endum putārent, congererent. Quō factum est ut Athēniēnsium mūrī ex sacellis sepulcrīsque cōstārent.⁶

profānus, -a, -um, *profane, unholy*.

sacellum, -ī, n., *shrine*.
sepulcrum, -ī, n., *tomb*.

1. longē . . . spectābat atque: *had quite a different meaning than.*

2. *being built.*

3. Sc. Athēniēnsēs as subject.

4. reliquī . . . ut . . . exīrent: *depends on praecēpit.*

5. *for defense.*

6. *consisted of (material); substantive result.*

He outwits the Spartans and Athens is rebuilt.

7. Themistoclēs autem, ut Lacedaemonem vēnit, adire ad magistrātūs nōluit et dedit ¹ operam, ut quam longissimē tempus dūceret, causam interpōnēns sē collēgās exspectāre. Cum Lacedaemoniī quererentur opus
 5 nihilō minus fieri eumque in eā rē cōnārī fallere, interim reliquī lēgātī sunt cōnsecūtī. Ā quibus cum audisset nōn multum superesse mūnitiōnis, ad ephorōs Lacedaemoniōrum accessit, penes quōs summum erat imperium, atque apud eōs contendit falsa ² iīs esse dēlāta; quārē
 10 aequum esse illōs ³ virōs bonōs nōbilēsque mittere, quibus fidēs habērētur, quī rem explōrarent; intereā sē obsidem retinērent. Gestus ⁴ est ei mōs, trēsque lēgātī fūnctī summis honōribus Athēnās missī sunt. Cum his collēgās suōs Themistoclēs iussit proficīsci iisque prae-
 15 dixit ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Hōs postquam Athēnās pervēnisse ratus est, ad magistrātūs senātumque Lacedaemoniōrum adiit et apud eōs liberrimē professus ⁵ est: Athēniēnsēs suō ⁶ cōnsiliō, quod ⁷ cōmūnī iūre gentium
 20 facere possent, deōs ⁸ pūblicōs suōsque patriōs ac penātēs, quō facilius ab hoste possent dēfendere, mūris saep-

ephorus, -ī, m., *ephor* (a magistrate).

penes, prep., *in the hands of*.

fungor, -i, fūnctus sum, *perform, fill*.

reor, rērī, ratus sum, *think*.

penātēs, -ium, m., *household gods*.

saepiō, -īre, saepsi, saeptum, *protect*.

1. dedit operam: *took pains*.

2. falsa . . . dēlāta: *false reports had been brought to them*.

3. Subject of mittere, which has virōs for object. Refers to the ephors.

4. gestus . . . mōs: *his wish was carried out*.

5. professus est: *talked*.

6. suō cōnsiliō: *by his advice*.

7. a thing which.

8. Object of saepsisse.

sisse, neque in¹ eō quod inūtile esset Graeciae fēcisse. Nam illōrum urbem ut² prōpugnāculum oppositum³ esse barbaris, apud⁴ quam iam bis classēs rēgiās fēcisse naufragium. Lacedaemoniōs autem male et iniūstē
 5 facere, quī id potius intuērentur, quod ipsōrum dominātiōnī quam quod ūniversae Graeciae ūtile esset. Quārē, sī suōs lēgātōs recipere vellent, quōs Athēnās miserant, sē remitterent, cum aliter illōs numquam in patriam essent receptūrī.

Themistocles is banished.

10 8. Tamen nōn effūgit cīvium suōrum invidiam.⁵ Namque ob eundem timōrem quō⁶ damnātus erat Miltiadēs, testulārum⁷ suffrāgiis ē civitatē ēiectus, Argōs⁸ habitātum concessit. Hīc cum propter multās virtūtēs magnā cum dignitatē viveret, Lacedaemoniū lēgātōs
 15 Athēnās mīsērunt, quī eum absentem accūsārent, quod societātem⁹ cum rēge Persē¹⁰ ad Graeciam opprimendam fēcisset. Hōc crīmine absēns prōditiōnis¹¹ damnātus est. Id ut audīvit, quod nōn satis tūtum sē Argīs vidēbat, Corcyrā dēmigrāvit. Ibi cum eius¹² prīncipēs
 20 animadvertisset timēre, nē propter sē bellum iis Lacedaemoniū et Athēniēnsēs indīcerent, ad Admētum, Molossū rēgem, cum quō eī hospitium¹³ erat, cōnfūgit. Hūc

prōpugnāculum, -ī, n., *barrier*.
 naufragium, -ī, n., *shipwreck*.
 iniūstē, *unjustly*.

effugiō; cf. fugiō.
 testula, -ae, f., *voting tablet*.
 ēiciō; cf. iaciō.

1. in eō: *thereby*.
2. ut prōpugnāculum: *as an outpost*: pred. noun after *esse*.
3. *built against*.
4. apud quam = et apud eam.
5. *ill will*.
6. *because of which*.

7. testulārum suffrāgiis: *i.e.* votes written on bits of pottery.
8. Acc. plural.
9. *alliance*.
10. Greek for Persē.
11. Modifies *damnātus est*.
12. Sc. *insulae*.
13. *guest-friendship*.

cum vēnisset et in praesentiā rēx abesset, quō maiōre religiōne¹ sē² receptum tuērētur, filiam eius parvulam arripuit et cum eā sē in sacrārium, quod summā colēbātur caerimōniā, coniēcit. Inde nōn prius ēgressus est
 5 quam rēx eum, datā dextrā, in fidem reciperet; quam praestitit.³ Nam cum ab Athēniēnsibus et Lacedaemoniīs expōscerētur publicē, supplicem nōn prōdidit monuitque⁴ ut cōsuleret sibi: difficile enim esse in tam propinquō locō tūtō⁵ eum versārī. Itaque Pydnam
 10 eum dēdūcī iussit et quod satis esset praesidiū dedit. Hīc in nāvem omnibus ignōtus nautis ēscendit. Quae cum tempestāte maximā Naxum ferrētur, ubi tum Athēniēnsium erat exercitus, sēnsit Themistoclēs, sī eō pervēnisset, sibi esse pereundum. Hāc necessitatē coactus
 15 dominō nāvis, quis sit, aperit, multa pollicēns, sī sē cōservāsset. At ille, clārissimī virī captus misericordiā,⁶ diem noctemque procul ab insulā in salō nāvem tenuit in ancorīs neque quemquam ex eā exīre passus est. Inde Ephesum pervenit ibique Themistoclēn expōnit:
 20 cui ille prō meritis postea grātiā rettulit.

He writes to King Artaxerxes tendering his aid.

9. Sciō plērōsque ita scripsisse, Themistoclēn Xerxe rēgnante⁷ in Asiam trānsisse. Sed ego potissimum Thūcydidī crēdō, quod et aetāte⁸ proximus dē iīs, quī

arripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, *seize.* ēscendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēnsium, *sacrārium, -ī, n., sanctuary.* *embark.*

caerimōnia, -ae, f., *sacred rite,* *salum, -ī, n., deep sea.*
reverence.

-
1. *fear of the gods.*
 2. *sē receptum tuērētur: he (the king) might receive and guard him.*
 3. *made good.*

4. *-que: but.*
 5. *Adverb.*
 6. *pity.*
 7. *ruling.*
 8. *in point of time.*

illōrum temporum historiam reliquērunt, et eiusdem
cīvitātis fuit. Is autem ait ad Artaxerxēn eum vēnisse
atque hīs verbīs epistolam mīsisse: "Themistoclēs vēnī
ad tē, quī plūrima mala omnium Grāiōrum¹ in domum²
5 tuam intulī, quam³ diū mihi necesse fuit adversum patrem
tuum bellāre patriamque meam dēfendere. Īdem multō
plūra bona fēcī, postquam in tūtō ipse⁴ et ille in periculō
esse coepit. Nam cum in Asiam revertī vellet, proeliō
apud Salamīna factō litterīs eum certiōrem fēcī id agī
10 ut pōns, quem in Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissolverētur atque
ab hostibus circumirētur;⁵ quō nūntiō ille periculō est
liberātus. Nunc autem cōnfūgi ad tē exagitātus ā cūctā
Graeciā, tuam petēns amicitiam: quam sī erō adeptus,⁶
nōn minus mē bonum amicum habēbis quam fortem
15 inimicum ille expertus est. Tē autem rogō, ut dē iīs
rēbus, quās tēcum colloquī volō, annum⁷ mihi tempus
dēs eoque trānsactō ad tē venīre patiāris."

Themistocles is well received in Persia by the king. He dies there.

10. Huius rēx animī magnitudinem admīrāns cupi-
ēnsque tālem virum sibi conciliārī veniam dedit. Ille
20 omne illud tempus litterīs sermōnīque⁸ Persārum sē
dēdidit; quibus adeō ērudītus est ut multō commodius
dicātur apud rēgem verba fēcisse quam iī poterant quī in
Perside erant nātī. Hīc cum multa rēgī esset pollicitus
grātissimumque⁹ illud, sī suis ūtī cōnsiliis vellet, illum

historia, -ae, f., *history.*

trānsigō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, *drive through, finish.*

venia, -ae, f., *indulgence, per- mission.*

ērudīō, 4, *instruct.*

1. Partit. gen. with quī.

2. *house, line.*

3. *quam diū: as long as.*

4. Sc. *esse coepī.*

5. Sc. *ipse.*

6. = *nactus.*

7. *annuum tempus: a year's time.*

8. *spoken language.*

9. *grātissimum illud: and as the most welcome the following, that.*

Graeciam bellō oppressūrum, magnīs mūneribus Artaxerxe dōnātus, in Asiam¹ rediit domiciliū Magnēsiae sibi cōstituit. Namque hanc urbem e dōnārat, his² quidem verbis, quae³ eī pānem prael
 5 (ex quā regiōne quinquāgēna talenta quotannis bant⁴); Lampsacum autem, unde vinum sūm Myunta, ex quā obsōnium habēret.

Huius ad nostram memoriam monumenta mānsē duo; sepulcrum prope oppidum, in quō est sep
 10 statua in forō Magnēsiae. Dē cuius morte multis n apud plērōsque scriptum est, sed nōs eundem po mum Thūcydidem auctōrem probāmus, qui illun Magnēsiae morbō⁵ mortuum neque negat fuisse fār venēnum suā sponte sūmpsisse, cum sē, quae rēg
 15 Graeciā opprimendā pollicitus esset, praestāre p dēspēraret. Īdem ossa eius clam in Atticā ab ai sepulta,⁶ quoniam lēgibus nōn concēderētur, quod ditiōnis esset damnātus, memoriae prōdidit.

III. CIMON

? - 449

Cimon is delivered from prison by his sister.

1. CīmōN, Miltiadis filius, Athēniēnsis, dūrō a
 20 dum⁷ initiō ūsus⁸ est adulēscēntiae. Nam cum p

Quinquāgēnus, -a, -um, <i>fifty each.</i>	sepeliō, -īre, sepelīvī (-īī), <i>to bury.</i>
Obsōnium, -ī, n., <i>food, fish.</i>	tum, <i>bury.</i>
Monumentum, -ī, n., <i>memorial, monument.</i>	venēnum, -ī, n., <i>poison.</i>
	os, ossis, n., <i>bone.</i>

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Sc. minōrem. | 4. <i>were returned (in tax</i> |
| 2. his verbis: <i>on just these terms.</i> | 5. <i>disease.</i> |
| 3. = ut ea: <i>make corresponding changes in unde and ex quā.</i> | 6. Sc. esse. |
| | 7. <i>very.</i> |
| | 8. ūsus est: <i>experienced.</i> |

eius litem ¹ aestimātam ² populō solvere nōn potuisset ob eamque causam in vinclis pūblicis dēcessisset,³ Cīmōn eādē custodiā tenēbātur neque lēgibus Athēniēnsium ēmitti poterat, nisi pecūniam, quā pater multātus erat, solvisset. Habēbat autem in mātirimōniō sorōrem germanā suam, nōmine Elpinicē, nōn magis amōre quam mōre ductus: namque Athēniēnsibus licet eōdem patre nātās uxōrēs dūcere.⁴ Huius⁵ coniugii cupidus Calliās quīdam, nōn tam generōsus⁶ quam pecūniōsus, quī magnās pecūniās ex metallis fēcerat, ēgit cum Cīmōne ut eam sibi uxōrem daret: id sī impetrāsset, sē prō illō pecūniam solūtūrum. Is cum⁷ tālem condiciōnem āspērnrētur, Elpinicē negāvit sē passūram Miltiadis prōgeniem in vinclis pūblicis interīre, quoniam prohibēre posset, sēque Calliae nūptūram, sī ea quae pollicēretur praestitisset.

He becomes famous as a statesman and general.

2. Tālī modō custodiā liberātus Cīmōn celeriter ad principātum pervēnit. Habēbat enim satis ēloquentiae, summam liberālītātem, magnam prūdentiam cum iūris cīvilis tum rei militāris, quod cum patre ā puerō⁸ in exercitiis fuerat⁹ versātus. Itaque hīc et populum ur-

germānus, -a, -um, *own*; here used with sorōrem for *half sister*.
coniugium, -ī, n., *marriage*.
pecūniōsus, -a, -um, *moneyed, wealthy*.

āspernor, I, *scorn*.
prōgeniēs, acc. -em, abl. -ē, f., *descendant*.
ēloquentia, -ae, f., *eloquence*.
cīvilis, -e, *civil*.
urbānus, -a, -um, *of the city*.

1. *fine*.

2. *imposed*.

3. = mortuus est.

4. *marry*.

5. *with her*.

6. = nōbilis.

7. *Concessive*.

8. ā puerō: *from boyhood*.

9. fuerat versātus: fui and fueram are often used by Nepos to form the perf. and pluperf. tenses.

bānum in suā tenuit potestāte et apud exercitum plūri-
 mum valuit auctoritāte. Primum imperātor apud flūmen
 Strýmona magnās cōpiās Thrācum fugāvit, oppidum
 Amphipolim cōstituit, eoque decem milia Athēniēnsium
 5 in colōniam mīsit. Īdem iterum apud Mycalēn, Cypriō-
 rum et Phoenīcum ducentārum nāvium classem dēvic-
 tam¹ cēpit eodemque diē parī fortunā in terrā ūsus est.
 Namque, hostium nāvibus captīs, statim ex classe cōpiās
 suās ēdūxit barbarōrumque maximam vim ūnō concursū
 10 prōstrāvit.² Quā victoriā magnā praedā potitus, cum
 domum reverterētur, quod iam nōnnullae īnsulae propter
 acerbitātem imperiī dēfēcerant, bene animātās cōfirmā-
 vit, aliēnātās ad officium redire coēgit. Scýrum, quam
 eō tempore Dolopes incolēbant, quod contumācius sē
 15 gesserant, vacuēfēcit, sessōrēs veterēs urbe īsulāque
 ēiēcit, agrōs cīvibus dīvisit. Thasiōs opulentiā frētōs³
 suō adventū frēgit. . Hīs ex manubiīs⁴ arx Athēnārum,
 quā ad merīdiem vergit, est ōrnāta.

He is banished, recalled, restores peace, dies.

3. Quibus rēbus cum⁵ ūnus in civitāte maximē
 20 flōrēret, incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus
 ceterīque Athēniēnsium prīncipēs: nam testārum suf-
 frāgiīs, quod⁶ illi ὀστρακισμόν vocant, decem annōrum
 exsilīo multātus est.⁷ Cuius factī celerius Athēniēnsēs

acerbitās, acerbitātis, f., *severity*.
 animātus, -a, -um, *disposed*.
 aliēnātus, -a, -um, *estranged*.
 contumāciter, *with insubordina-
 tion*.

vacuēfaciō; cf. *vacuus* + *faciō*.
 sessor, sessōris, m., *inhabitant*.
 opulentiā, -ae, f., *wealth*.
 testa, -ae; cf. *testula*.
 exsilium, -ī, n., *exile*.

1. dēvictam cēpit = dēvīcit et
 cēpit.

2. *vanquished*.

3. *relying on*.

4. *spoils*.

5. *Causal*.

6. *(a proceeding) which*.

7. *was punished*.

quam ipsum **paenituit**.¹ Nam cum ille animō forti invidiae² ingrātōrum civium cessisset bellumque Lacedaemoniī Athēniēnsibus indixissent, cōnfestim nōtae eius virtūtis dēsiderium cōsecūtum est. Itaque post³ annum quīntum quam expulsus erat, in patriam revocātus est. Ille, quod hospitio Lacedaemoniōrum utēbatur, satius⁴ existimāns concēdere quam armīs contendere, Lacedaemonem suā sponte est profectus pācemque inter duās potentissimās civitatēs conciliāvit.⁵ Post,⁶ neque ita multō, Cyprum cum ducentis nāvibus imperātor missus, cum eius maiōrem partem insulae dēvīcisset, in⁷ morbum implicitus in oppidō Citiō est mortuus.

His generosity.

4. Hunc Athēniēnsēs nōn solum in bellō sed etiam in pāce diū dēsiderāvērunt. Fuit enim tantā liberālitate, cum complūribus locis praedia hortōsque habēret, ut⁸ numquam in iīs custōdem imposuerit frūctūs servandī grātiā,⁹ nē quis impedirētur quō¹⁰ minus eis rēbus, quibus¹¹ quisque vellet fruerētur. Semper eum pedisequi

paenitet, -ēre, **paenituit**, impersonal, *repent*.
ingrātus, -a, -um, *ungrateful*.
nōtus, -a, -um, *well-known*.
dēsiderium, -i, n., *loss, need*.
dēsiderō, 1, *regret, need*.

praedium, -i, n., *farm*.
hortus, -i, m., *garden*.
fruor, -i, frūctus sum, *delight in, enjoy*.
pedisequus, -i, m., *footman, attendant*.

1. Takes acc. of person and gen. of the cause of the feeling.

2. Indir. obj. of *cessisset*.

3. *post . . . quā*: five years after.

4. *better*.

5. *arranged*.

6. *post . . . multō*: later, but not much so.

7. in morbum implicitus: seized by illness.

8. Translate this word before the cum concessive clause.

9. = *causā*.

10. *quō minus fruerētur*: from enjoying.

11. Abl. with *frui*, understood with *vellet*.

cum nummīs¹ sunt secūtī, ut, sī quis opis² eius indigēret, habēret, quod statim daret, nē differendō³ vidēretur negāre. Saepe, cum aliquem offēnsū⁴ fortuitō vidēret minus bene vestitū, suū amiculum dedit.
 5 Cotidiē sīc cēna⁵ eī coquēbātur, ut, quōs invocātōs vidisset in forō, omnēs dēvocāret: quod facere nūllō diē praetermittēbat. Nūlli fidēs⁶ eius, nūlli opera, nūlli rēs familiāris dēfuit: multōs locuplētāvit,⁷ complūrēs pauperēs mortuōs, quī unde⁸ efferrentur nōn reliquis-
 10 sent, suō sūmptū extulit. Sic⁹ sē gerendō minimē est mirandū sī et vīta eius fuit sēcūra et mors acerba.¹⁰

IV. EPAMINONDAS

C. 418-362

Differences between the customs of the Greeks and the Romans.

1. EPAMINŌNDAS, Polymnidis filius, Thēbānus. Dē hōc priusquam scribimus, haec praecipienda videntur lēctōribus, nē¹¹ aliēnōs mōrēs ad suōs referant, nēve ea,

indigeō, -ēre, -digui, —, *need.*fortuitō, *by chance.*amiculum, -ī, n., *mantle.*coquō, -ere, coxi, coctum, *cook.*invocātus, -a, -um; cf. in (*not*) + vocō.forum, -ī, n., *forum.*

dēvocō, i; cf. vocō.

praetermittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *let pass, omit.*pauper, pauperis, *poor.*sēcūrus, -a, -um, *free from care.*acerbus, -a, -um, *bitter.*lēctor, lēctōris, m., *reader.*1. *pieces of money.*2. *aid.*3. *by putting him off.*4. *found.*5. *dinner.*6. *protection.*7. *enriched.*8. *unde efferrentur: with which**they might be buried.*9. *sic sē gerendō = cum sē gereret.*10. *i.e. to his fellow citizens.*11. *nē . . . referant: that they shall not refer the customs of others to their own (as a standard).*

quae ipsis ¹ leviōra ² sunt, parī modō apud cēterōs fuisse ³ arbitrentur. Scīmus enim ⁴ mūsicēn nostrīs mōribus abesse ⁵ ā principis persōnā, saltāre ⁶ vērō etiam in vitiīs pōnī; quae omnia apud Graecōs et grāta et laude digna dūcuntur. Cum autem exprimere ⁷ imāginem cōsuētūdinis atque vītāe velīmus Epaminōndae, nihil vidēmur ⁸ dēbēre praetermittere quod pertineat ad ⁹ eam dēclārādam. Quārē dicēmus primum dē genere eius; deinde quibus disciplinīs et ā quibus sit ēruditus; tum dē mōribus ingenīique ¹⁰ facultātibus et sī ¹¹ qua alia memoriā digna erunt; postrēmō dē rēbus gestīs, quae ā plūrimis animī antepōnuntur virtūtibus.

The education of Epaminondas.

2. Nātus igitur patre, quō diximus, genere honestō, pauper iam ā maiōribus relictus est, ēruditus autem sic, ¹⁵ ut nēmō Thēbānus magis. Nam et citharizāre et cantāre ad chordārum sonum doctus est ā Dionysiō, quī nōn minōre fuit in mūsicīs glōriā quam Dāmōn aut

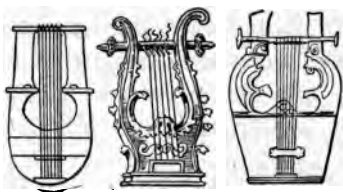
mūsica, -ae, and mūsicē, acc.
-ēn, f., *music* (including *poetry*).
persōna, -ae, f., *mask, part, character*.
saltō, I, *dance*.
dignus, -a, -um, *worthy*.
ingenium, -ī, n., *talent*.
antepōnō; cf. pōnō.

igitur, *therefore, then*.
citharizō, -āre, —, —, *play on the lyre*.
cantō, I, *sing, play*.
chorda, -ae, f., *string*.
mūsicus, -a, -um, *musical*; masc. as subst., *musician*; neut. as subst., *music*.

1. *in their own eyes.*
2. *quite trivial.*
3. Sc. *levia.*
4. *for example.*
5. *is inconsistent with.*
6. Trans. as a participial noun, the subject of pōnī.
7. *exprimere imāginem: to*

- write a sketch.*
8. *vidēmur dēbēre: it seems that we ought.*
 9. *ad eam dēclārādam: to make it clear.*
 10. *ingenīi facultātibus: native ability.*
 11. *sī qua: whatever.*

Lamprus, quōrum pervulgāta sunt nōmina, cantāre tibiis ab Olympiodōrō, saltāre ā Calliphrone. At philosophiae praeceptōrem habuit Lysim Tarentinum, Pŷthagorēum; cui quidem sic fuit dēditus ut adulēscēns¹
 5 tristem ac sevērū senem omnibus aequālibus suis in familiāritātē anteposuerit; neque prius eum ā sē dimisit quam in doctrinīs tantō
 10 antecessit condiscipulōs, ut facile intellegī posset parī modō superātūrū omnēs in cēteris artibus. Atque haec ad nostram cōnsuētūdinem sunt levia et potius contemnenda; at in Graeciā, uti-
 15 que² ōlim, magnae laudī erant. Postquam ephēbus est factus et palaestrae dare operam coepit, nōn tam magnitudinī viriūm servivit³ quam vėlōcitātī; illam enim ad āthlētārū ūsum, hanc ad bellī exīstimābat ūtilitātē pertinēre. Itaque exercēbātur⁴ plūrimū currendō et
 20 luctandō ad eum finem, quoad⁵ stāns complectī posset atque contendere. In armīs vērō plūrimū studiī cōsumēbat.



Citharae

pervulgātus, -a, -um, *well-known*.

tibia, -ae, f., *flute*.

philosophia, -ae, f., *philosophy*.

praeceptor, praeceptōris, m., *teacher*.

sevērus, -a, -um, *stern*.

aequālis, -e, *equal*.

familiāritās, familiāritātis, f., *intimacy*.

doctrīna, -ae, f., *study, wisdom*.

condiscipulus, -ī, m., *fellow student*.

ars, artis, f., *art, skill*.

ephēbus, -ī, m., *youth*.

palaestra, -ae, f., *wrestling*.

āthlēta, -ae, m., *athlete*.

currō, -ere cucurrī, cursum, *run*.

luctor, i, *wrestle*.

1. Concessive.
2. utique ōlim: *formerly at any rate*.
3. labored for.

4. *he used to train himself*.
5. quoad . . . contendere: *until he could grapple and struggle while standing*.

His characteristics.

3. Ad hanc corporis firmitatem plūra etiam animi bona accesserant.¹ Erat enim modestus, prūdēns, gravis, temporibus² sapienter ūtēns, perītus bellī, fortis manū, animō maximō, adeō vērītātis dīligēns ut nē iocō
 5 quidem mentīrētur. Īdem continēns,³ clēmēns patiēns-
 que admirandum in modum, nōn solum populī sed etiam amicōrum ferēns iniūriās, in prīmīs commissa cēlāns, quod interdum nōn minus prōdest⁴ quam disertē dīcere, studiōsus audiendī; ex hōc enim facillimē discī⁵ arbitrā-
 10 bātur. Itaque cum in circulum vēnisset in quō aut dē rē pūblicā disputārētur⁶ aut dē philosophiā sermō habērētur, numquam inde prius discessit quam ad finem sermō esset adductus. Paupertātem adeō facile per-
 pessus⁷ est, ut dē rē pūblicā nihil praeter glōriam cē-
 15 perit. Amicōrum in⁸ sē tuendō caruit⁹ facultātibus,¹⁰ fidē ad aliōs sublevandōs saepe sīc ūsus est, ut iūdicārī possit omnia eī¹¹ cum amicīs fuisse commūnia. Nam cum aut cīvium suōrum aliquis ab hostibus esset captus,

modestus, -a, -um, *modest*.
 prūdēns, prūdētis, *shrewd*.
 sapienter, *wisely*.
 vērītās, vērītātis, *f., truth*.
 dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *be fond of*.
 iocus, -ī, m., *jest*.

mentior, 4, *lie*.
 clēmēns, clēmētis, *kind*.
 admirandus, -a, -um; cf. *admiror*.
 commissum, -ī, n., *something in-
 trusted, secret*.
 disertē, *clearly*.
 circulus, -ī, m., *circle, group*.

1. *were added.*
2. *chances.*
3. *self-controlled.*
4. *is useful.*
5. *that one learned.*
6. *a question was being dis-
 cussed.*

7. *suffered.*
8. *in sē tuendō: in protecting
 himself.*
9. *he did without.*
10. *= opibus.*
11. *eī cum amicīs: between
 his friends and himself.*

aut virgō amīcī nūbilis, quae propter paupertātem collo-
cārī¹ nōn posset, amīcōrum cōnsilium habēbat et, quan-
tum quisque daret, prō facultātibus imperābat. Eam-
que summam² cum confēcerat, priusquam acciperet
5 pecūniam, addūcēbat eum quī quaerēbat ad eōs quī
cōferēbant, eīque ut ipsī numerārent faciēbat ut ille
ad quem ea perveniēbat scīret quantum cuique dē-
bēret.

His incorruptibility.

4. Tentāta autem eius est abstinētia ā Diomedonte
10 Cyzicēnō; namque is, rogātū Artaxerxis rēgis, Epamīnōn-
dam pecūniā corrumpendum³ suscepērat. Hīc magnō
cum pondere aurī Thēbās vēnit et Mīcythum adulēscen-
tulum quīnque talentis ad suam perdūxit voluntātem,
quem tum Epamīnōndās plūrimum diligēbat. Mīcythus
15 Epamīnōndam convēnit et causam adventūs Diomedontis
ostendit. At ille Diomedonte cōram:⁴ “nihil,” inquit,
“opus pecūniā est; nam sī rēx ea vult quae Thēbānis
sunt ūtilia, grātiis facere sum parātus, sīn autem con-
trāria, nōn habet aurī atque argentī satis. Namque
20 orbis terrārum divitiās accipere nōlō prō patriae cāritāte.
Tū quod mē incōgnitum tentāstī tuīque similem exīsti-
māstī, nōn mīror tibiue ignōscō; sed ēgredere properē,
nē aliōs corrumpās, cum mē nōn potueris. Et tū, Mīcy-

nūbilis, -e, *marriageable*.

paupertās, paupertātis, f.; cf.

pauper.

numerō, I, *count out*.

tentō, I, *test*.

abstinētia, -ae, f., *self-restraint*.

rogātū, only in abl., m., *by re-quest*.

aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.

grātiis, *for nothing*.

cāritās, cāritātis, f., *love*.

properē, *in a hurry*.

1. *be given in marriage*.

2. *amount*.

3. *bribe*; the gerundive con-

struction with **Epamīnōndam**.

4. *in the presence of*; a post-positive prep. with the abl. case.

the, argentum huic redde, aut, nisi id cōnfēstim facis, ego tē trādam magistratui." Hunc Diomedōn cum rogāret ut tūtō exiret suaque quae attulerat liceret efferre; "istud quidem," inquit, "faciam, neque¹ tuā
 5 causā, sed meā, nē, sī tibi² sit pecūnia adēpta, aliquis dicat id ad mē ēreptum³ pervēnisse, quod dēlātum⁴ accipere nōluissem." Ā quō cum quaesisset quō sē dēdūcī⁵ vellet, et ille Athēnās dixisset, praesidium dedit, ut tūtō perveniret. Neque vērō id satis habuit, sed
 10 etiam, ut inviolātus in nāvem ēscenderet, per Chabriam Athēniēsem, dē quō suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, effēcit. Abstinētia erit hoc satis testimōnium. Plūrima quidem prōferre possumus, sed modus adhibendus est, quoniam
 15 ūnō hōc volūmine vītā excellentium virōrum complūrium conclūdere cōstituimus, quōrum⁶ sēparātīm multis milibus⁷ versuum complūrēs scrīptōrēs ante nōs explicā-
 runt.⁸

His ready repartee and his eloquence.

5. Fuit etiam disertus, ut nēmō eī Thēbānus pār esset ēloquentiā, neque minus concinnus in brevitate respon-
 20 dendī quam in perpetuā⁹ ōrātiōne ōrnātus. Habuit obtrēctātorem Meneclidēn quendam, indidem Thēbīs, et

invioīātus, -a, -um, *unharmēd.*

volūmen, volūminis, n., *book.*

conclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *include.*

versus, -ūs, m., *line.*

scrīptor, scrīptōris, m., *writer.*

disertus, -a, -um, *fluent.*

concinnus, -a, -um, *well adjusted, concise.*

ōrnātus, -a, -um, *elegant.*

obtrēctātor, obtrēctātōris, m., *disparager, rival.*

indidem, *from the same place, likewise.*

1. neque tuā causā: *but not for your sake.*

2. Dat. of separation.

3. *by seizure.*

4. *when offered.*

5. *be escorted.*

6. Sc. vītā.

7. Abl. of means.

8. *described.*

9. *set.*

adversarium in administrandā rē publicā, satis exercitātum in dicendō, ut¹ Thēbānum scilicet; namque illi genti plūs inest virium quam ingeniī. Is, quod in rē militārī flōrēre Epaminōndam vidēbat, hortārī solēbat Thēbānōs
 5 ut pācem bellō anteferrent, nē illius imperātōris opera dēsiderārētur. Huic ille: "fallis," inquit, "verbō² civēs tuōs, quod hōs ā bellō āvocās; ōtiū enim nōmine servitūtem conciliās. Nam paritur³ pāx bellō. Itaque quī eā diūtina⁴ volunt frui, bellō exercitātī esse dēbent.
 10 Quārē sī principēs Graeciae vultis esse, castrīs est vōbis ūtendum, nōn palaestrā." Īdem ille Meneclidēs cum huic obiceret insolentiam, quod sibi Agamemnonis bellī glōriam vidērētur cōsecūtus, at ille "quod," inquit, "autem mē Agamemnonem aemulārī putās, falleris;
 15 namque ille cum ūniversā⁵ Graeciā vix decem annīs ūnam cēpit urbem; ego, contrā⁶ ea, ūnā urbe nostrā diēque ūnō tōtam Graeciam Lacedaemoniīs fugātīs liberāvī."

Further evidence of his readiness.

6. Īdem⁷ cum in conventum vēnisset Arcadum, petēns
 20 ut societātem cum Thēbānīs et Argīvīs facerent, contrāque⁸

insum; cf. sum.

āvocō, 1; cf. vocō.

ōtium, -ī, n., inactivity, peace.

insolentia, -ae, f., haughtiness, arrogance.

aemulor, 1, rival.

1. ut Thēbānum scilicet: *that is, for a Theban.*

2. *by means of that word (i.e. pācem).*

3. *is brought about.*

4. *long.*

5. ūniversā Graeciā: *with all Greece united.*

6. contrā... nostrā: *on the*

other hand with this one city of ours.

7. Īdem cum, etc.; the main verb of the sentence is dixit, line 11, page 198. The subject is repeated in Epaminōndās, l. 9, page 198.

8. -que, connects vēnisset and postulāret.

Callistratus, Athēniēnsium lēgātus, quī ēloquentiā omnēs
 eō praestābat tempore, postulāret ut potius amicitiam se-
 querentur Atticōrum, et in ōrātiōne suā multa invectus
 esset in Thēbānōs et Argīvōs, in¹ iisque hoc posuisset,
 5 animadvertere dēbere² Arcades quālēs utraque civitās
 civēs prōcreāset, ex quibus dē cēteris possent iūdicāre;
 Argīvōs enim fuisse² Orestem et Alcmaeonem māttricidās,
 Thēbis Oedipum nātum esse,² quī patrem suum interfēcis-
 set; huic in respondendō Epamīnōndās, cum dē cēteris
 10 perōrāset, postquam ad illa duo opprobria pervēnit, ad-
 mirārī sē dixit stultitiam³ rhētoris Attici, quī nōn ani-
 madverterit, innocentēs illōs nātōs⁴ domī, scelere admissō
 cum patriā essent expulsī, receptōs esse ab Athēniēnsi-
 bus. Sed maximē eius ēloquentia ēlūxit Spartae lēgātī⁵
 15 ante pugnam Leuctricam. Quō cum omnium sociōrum
 convēnissent lēgātī, cōram frequentissimō lēgātiōnum con-
 ventū sic Lacedaemoniōrum tyrannidem coarguit, ut nōn
 minus illā ōrātiōne opēs eōrum concusserit quam Leuc-
 tricā pugnā. Tum enim perfēcit, quod post apparuit, ut
 20 auxiliō Lacedaemonii sociōrum privārentur.

invehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry (implying contempt) *talker,*
against; in pass. with reflexive
force, make an attack.
prōcreō, I, produce. *speechifier.*

māttricida, -ae, m., one who ēlūceō, -ēre, -lūxī, —, *shine out,*
murders his mother, matri-
cide. *be conspicuous.*

perōrō, I, finish.

opprobrium, -i, n., reproach.

rhētor, rhētoris, m., orator;

coarguō, -ere, -arguī, -argūtum, *prove, expose.*

concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, dis- *concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, dis-*
turb, crush.

appareō, -ēre, -pāruī, -pāritum, *appear.*

1. in iis hoc posuisset: *had*
inserted among these attacks this
statement.

2. Depend on verb of say-

ing implied in in . . . posuisset.

3. *stupidity.*

4. *Sc. esse.*

5. Appositive with *eius.*

His patience under criticism. He retains his command beyond the legal time limit.

7. Fuisse¹ patientem suorumque iniuriās ferentem civium, quod sē patriae irāscī nefās esse dūceret, haec sunt testimōnia. Cum eum propter invidiam civēs suī praeficere exercituī nōlissent, duxque esset dēlēctus bellī
 5 imperitus, cuius errōre eō esset dēducta illa multitūdō militum ut omnēs dē salūte pertimēscerent, quod locōrum angustīis clausi ab hostibus obsidēbantur, dēsiderārī coepta est Epaminōndae diligentia; erat enim ibi prīvātus numerō² militis. Ā quō cum peterent opem, nūllam ad-
 10 hibuit memoriā contumēliae et exercitum obsidiōne liberātum domum redūxit incolumem. Nec vērō hoc semel fēcit, sed saepius. Maximē autem fuit illūstre,³ cum in Peloponnēsum exercitum dūxisset adversus Lacedaemoniōs habēretque collēgās duōs, quōrum alter
 15 erat Pelopidās, vir fortis ac strēnuus. Hī cum crīminibus adversārīōrum omnēs in invidiam vēnissent, ob eamque rem imperium iis⁴ esset abrogātum, atque in eōrum locum alii praetōrēs successissent, Epaminōndās populī scītō nōn pārui, idemque ut facerent persuāsīt collēgīs, et bel-
 20 lum quod suscēperat gessit. Namque animadvertēbat, nisi id fēcisset, tōtum exercitum propter praetōrum imprudentiam inscītiāque bellī peritūrum. Lēx erat Thēbis quae morte multābat, sī⁵ quis imperium diūtius

irāscor, -ī, irātus sum, *be angry.*

nefās, indecl., n., *sin.*

pertimēscō, -ere, -timui, —; cf. timeō.

strēnuus, -a, -um, *active.*

abrogō, ī, *take away.*

scītum, -ī, n., *decree.*

imprudentia, -ae, f.; cf. in (not) + prūdentia.

inscītia, -ae, f.; cf. in (not) + sciō.

1. Sc. Epaminōndam as subject.

2. *with the rank.*

3. *famous.*

4. Dat. of separation.

5. sī quis: *whoever.*

retinuisset, quam lēge praefīnītum foret.¹ Hanc Epaminōndās, cum rei pūblicae cōservandae causā lātā² vidēret, ad perniciem civitātis cōferre³ nōluit et quattuor mēnsibus diūtius, quam populus iusserat, gessit imperium.

He ingeniously defends his act and escapes the penalty.

5 8. Postquam domum reditum est, collēgae eius hōc crimine accūsābantur. Quibus ille permīsit, ut omnem causam in sē trānsferrent, suāque operā⁴ factum contenderent ut lēgi nōn oboedirent. Quā dēfēnsiōne illis periculō liberātis, nēmō Epaminōndam respōnsūrum⁶
10 putābat, quod quid diceret nōn habēret. At ille in iūdicium vēnit, nihil eōrum negāvit quae adversariī crimini⁶ dabant, omniaque quae collēgae dixerant cōfessus est, neque recūsāvit quō minus lēgis poenam subiret, sed ūnum ab iis petivit ut in sepulcrō suō in-
15 scriberent: "Epaminōndās ā Thēbānis morte multātus est, quod eōs coēgit apud Leuctra superāre Lacedaemoniōs, quōs ante⁷ sē imperātorem nēmō Boeotiōrum ausus sit aspicere in aciē, quodque ūnō proeliō nōn solum Thēbās ab interitū retrāxit, sed etiam ūniversam Grae-
20 ciam in⁸ libertātem vindicāvit, eōque⁹ rēs utrōrumque perdūxit ut Thēbānī Spartam oppugnārent, Lacedaemoniī satis habērent, sī salvī esse possent, neque prius bellāre dēstitit quam Messēnē restitūtā urbem eōrum

praefiniō, 4, *prescribe*.
oboediō, 4, *obey*.
inscribō; cf. scribō.

aspiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectum;
cf. perspicīō.
salvus, -a, -um, *safe*.

1. = *esset*.

2. Sc. *esse: had been passed*.

3. *apply*.

4. *instrumentality*.

5. *offer a defense*.

6. *as a charge*.

7. *ante sē imperātorem: before he was general*.

8. *in libertātem vindicāvit: set free*.

9. *eō . . . perdūxit: so managed the fortunes of both*.

obsidiōne clausit." Haec cum dīxisset, rīsus omnium cum hilaritāte coortus est, neque quisquam iūdex ausus est dē eō ferre suffrāgium. Sic ā iūdicīō¹ capitis maximā discessit glōriā.

His death.

5 9. Hic extrēmō² tempore imperātor apud Mantinēam, cum aciē instrūctā audācius instāret hostibus, cōgnitus ā Lacedaemoniīs, quod in ūnīus³ perniciē eius patriae sitam⁴ putābant salūtem, ūniversi in⁵ ūnum impetum fēcērunt, neque prius abscessērunt quam magnā caede
10 factā, multisque occīsīs, fortissimē ipsum Epaminōndam pugnātem, sparō ēminus percutsum,⁶ concidere vidērunt. Huius cāsū aliquantum retardātī sunt Boeōtiī, neque tamen prius pugnā excessērunt quam repugnantēs⁷ prōfligārunt. At Epaminōndās, cum animadverteret
15 mortiferum sē vulnus accēpisse, simulque sī ferrum, quod ex hastilī in corpore remānserat, extrāxisset, animam statim ēmissūrum,⁸ usque⁹ eō retinuit,¹⁰ quoad renūtiātum est vīcisse Boeōtiōs. Id postquam audīvit, "satis," inquit, "vīxī; invictus enim morior." Tum ferrō
20 extractō cōnfestim exanimātus est.

rīsus, -ūs, m., *laughter*.

hilaritās, hilaritātis, f., *gayety*.

iūdex, iūdicis, m., *judge*.

abscedō; cf. cēdō.

sparus, -ī, m., *small spear*.

ēminus, *from a distance*.

aliquantum, *somewhat*.

retardō, 1, *keep back*.

mortiferus, -a, -um; cf. mors + ferō.

hastile, hastilis, m., *spear shaft*.

extrahō; cf. trahō.

1. iūdicīō capitis: *trial for his life*.

2. extrēmō tempore: *at last*.

3. ūnīus eius: *of this one man*.

4. depended on.

5. in ūnum: sc. Epaminōndam.

6. *pierced*.

7. *opponents*.

8. Depends on animadverteret; sc. sē as subject.

9. usque eō quoad: *even to the time when*.

10. Sc. ferrum.

Anecdotes. The decline of Thebes after his death.

10. Hic uxorem numquam dūxit. In¹ quō cum reprehenderetur (quod liberōs nōn relinqueret) ā Pelopidā, quī filium habēbat infāmem, maleque² eum in³ eō patriae cōsulare diceret,⁴ "vidē," inquit, "nē tū
5 peius cōsulās, quī tālem ex tē nātum relictūrus sis. Neque vērō stirps potest mihi deesse; namque ex⁵ mē nātam relinquo pugnam Leutricam, quae nōn modo mihi superstes, sed etiam immortalis sit necesse est." Quō⁶ tempore, duce Pelopidā, exsulēs Thēbās occupārent
10 et praesidium Lacedaemoniōrum ex arce expulērunt, Epaminōndās, quamdiū⁷ facta est caedēs cīvium, domō sē tenuit quod neque malōs⁸ dēfendere volēbat neque impugnāre, nē manūs suōrum⁹ sanguine cruentāret; namque omnem civilem¹⁰ victōriam fūnestam putābat.
15 Idem, postquam apud Cadmēam cum Lacedaemoniīs pugnārī coeptum est, in¹¹ primīs stetit.

Huius dē virtūtibus vitāque satis erit dictum, sī hoc unum adiūnxerō, quod nēmō ibit infitiās, Thēbās¹² et ante Epaminōndam nātum et post eiusdem interitum
20 perpetuō¹³ aliēnō pāruisse imperiō; contrā ea, quam diū

infāmis, -e, *disreputable*.

stirps, stirpis, f., *stock, progeny*.

superstes, superstitis, *surviving*.

exsul, exsulis, m., *exile*.

cruentō, i, *stain*.

fūnestus, -a, -um, *fatal, disastrous*.

infitiās, acc. only; with ire, *deny*.

1. in quō: *on this point*.

2. male cōsulare: *had no proper regard for*.

3. in eō: *in this matter*.

4. Sc. Pelopidās as subject.

5. ex mē nātam: *as my daughter*.

6. quō tempore: *at the time when*.

7. quamdiū: *as long as*.

8. traitors.

9. of his fellow citizens.

10. over his fellow citizens.

11. in primīs: *among the first*.

12. Subject of pāruisse and fuisse.

13. Adverb.

ille praefuerit rei publicae, caput fuisse totius Graeciae. Ex quo intellegi potest unum hominem pluris¹ quam civitatem fuisse.

V. HANNIBAL

247-183

Hannibal's greatness as a general. His hatred of the Romans.

1. HANNIBAL, Hamilcaris filius, Karthaginiensis. Si
5 verum est, quod nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus
omnes gentes virtute superaret, non est infitandum
Hannibalem tanto praestitisse ceteros imperatores pru-
dentiā, quanto populus Romanus antecedit fortitudine
cunctas nationes. Nam quotienscumque cum eo² con-
10 gressus est in Italiā, semper discessit superior. Quod³
nisi domi civium suorum invidia debilitatus esset, Ro-
manos videtur superare potuisse.⁴ Sed multorum ob-
trectatio devicit unius virtutem.

Hic autem velut⁵ hereditate relictum odium patrum
15 erga Romanos sic conservavit, ut prius animam quam id⁶
deposuerit; qui quidem, cum patria pulsus esset et
alienarum opum indigeret,⁷ numquam destiterit animo
bellare cum Romanis.

infitor, 1, deny.

quotienscumque, as often as.

debilito, 1, weaken.

obtrectatio, obtrectationis, f.,
jealousy.

odium, -i, n., hatred, grudge, ani-
mosity.

paternus, -a, -um, of a father;
here, his father's.

erga, towards.

1. of more consequence.

2. i.e. populo Romano.

3. quod nisi: unless then.

4. would have been able.

5. velut hereditate: by inher-
itance, as it were.

6. i.e. odium.

7. needed.

His vow.

2. Nam ut¹ omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditatē incendit²

5

10



Sacrificium

bellandī, ut usque ā rubrō mari arma cōnātus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē eius voluntatē explorārent darentque³ operam cōsiliīs clandestīnīs, ut Hannibalem in suspiciōnem rēgī⁴ addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptus alia⁵ atque antea sentiret, neque id frūstrā fēcissent, idque

Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōsiliīs sē-
15 gregārī vīdisset, tempore⁶ datō adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāset, hoc adiūnxit. "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō,⁷ in Hispāniam imperātor proficiscēns Karthāgine, Iovī optimō
20 maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae divīna rēs dum cōficiēbātur, quaesivī ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficiscī. Id cum libenter accēpīsem atque ab eō petere⁸ coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, 'faciam,' inquit,

ruber, rubra, rubrum, *red.*

clandestīnus, -a, -um, *hidden, secret.*

tamquam, *as if.*

sēgregō, *1, separate, exclude.*

puerulus, -i, m., *little boy.*

utpote, *namely, as being.*

hostia, -ae, f., *victim.*

1. ut omittam: *to omit.*

2. Sc. Hannibal as subject.

3. darent operam: *try.*

4. in the king's eyes.

5. alia atque antea sentiret:

felt differently than before.

6. chance.

7. Agrees with mē.

8. petere nē dubitāret: *beg him not to hesitate.*

'sī mihi fidem, quam postulō, dederis.' Simul mē ad
 āram addūxit, apud quam sacrificāre instituerat, eamque
 cēteris remōtīs tenentem iūrāre iussit, numquam mē in
 amicitīā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūsiūrandum patrī
 5 datum usque ad hanc aetātem ita cōservāvī, ut nēminī
 dubium esse dēbeat, quīn reliquō tempore eādē mente
 sim futūrus. Quārē sī quid amicē dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis,
 nōn imprūdentē fēceris sī mē¹ cēlāris; cum quidem
 bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis sī nōn mē in cō
 10 prīncipem posueris."

His campaign in Spain, and his advance over the Alps into Italy.

3. Hāc igitur quā diximus aetāte cum patre in His-
 pāniam profectus est; cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale
 imperātōre suffectō, equitātū omni praefuit. Hōc
 quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperiū ad eum
 15 dētulit. Id² Karthāginem delātum pūblicē comprobātum
 est. Sīc Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus
 imperātor factus proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs His-
 pāniae bellō subēgit;³ Saguntum, foederātam civitātem,
 vī expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex
 20 hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsīt, alterum cum Hasdrubale
 frātre in Hispāniā reliquit, tertium in Ītaliā sēcum
 dūxit. Saltum⁴ Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque iter
 fēcit, cum omnibus incolīs cōflīxit; nēminem nisi vīctum

āra, -ae, f., altar.

sacrificō, 1, sacrifice.

amicē, adv.; cf. amicus.

imprūdentē; cf. in (not) + prū-
 dentia.

frūstror, 1, deceive, disappoint,
 trick.

sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, ap-
 point instead.

comprobō, 1, approve.

triennium, -ī, n.; cf. trēs + annus.

foederātus, -a, -um, allied.

quicumque, quaecumque, quod-
 cumque, whoever, whatever.

1. from me.

2. i.e. his appointment.

3. subdued.

4. mountain range.

dīmīsīt. Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, quae Ītaliā ab Galliā sēiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāiū trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibere trānsitū concidit, loca patefēcīt, itinera mūniit,¹ effēcīt ut eā² elephantus ōrnātus³ ire posset, quā antea ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Ītaliāque pervēnit.

His victories in Italy.

4. Cōnflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scipiōne cōsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidiū⁴ apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dimittit. Tertiō idem Scipiō cum collēgā Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum iis manum cōnseruit; utrōsque prōfligāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō gravī morbō adfcitur oculōrum, ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiam—
tum premerētur lecticāque ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasumennum cum exercitū insidiis circum—
20 ventum occīdit, neque multō post C. Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlēctā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpuliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam⁵ ei vērunt duo cōsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvīt, Paulum cōnsulem occīdit e—

sēiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, cōnserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, join
separate. with manum, join battle.
trānsitus, -ūs; cf. eō. lectica, -ae, f., couch, sedan.
rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, rēptum, creep.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. built. | 3. with its load. |
| 2. eā . . . quā: there . . . where. | 4. Locative. |
| | 5. to meet. |

aliquot¹ praetereā cōsulārēs, in iīs Cn. Servīlium Geminum, quī superiōre annō fuerat cōsul.

He outwits Fabius and defeats the Roman generals.

5. Hāc pugnā pugnātā, Rōmam profectus est nūllō resistente. In propinquīs urbī montibus morātus est.
 5 Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam revertētur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō ei sē obiēcit. Hīc clausus locōrum angustīis, noctū sine ūllō dētrimentō exercitūs² sē expēdīvit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit³ verba. Namque
 10 obductā⁴ nocte sarmenta⁵ in cornibus iuvencōrum dēligāta incendit eiusque generis multitudinem magnam dispālātā immisit. Quō repentinō obiectō vīsū, tantum terrōrem iniēcit⁶ exercitūi Rōmānōrum ut ēgredi extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita
 15 multīs diēbus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum equitum parī ac⁷ dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Tiberium Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōsulem, in⁸ Lūcānis absēns⁹ in insidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēs cōsulem, apud
 20 Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quārē hoc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit quantus ille fuerit: quamdiū in

iuvencus, -ī, m., *bullock*.
 dispālōr, ī, *wander about*.
 vīsus, -ūs, m., *sight*.

magister, magistrī, m., *master, commander*.
 quīnquiēs, *five times*.

1. *several*.
2. Objective gen. with dētrimentō.
3. dedit verba: *deceived*.
4. obductā nocte: *under the cover of night*.
5. *twigs*.

6. Sc. Hannibal as subject.
7. ac dictātōrem: *to that of dictator*.
8. in Lūcānis modifies sustulit.
9. *though not in command personally*.

Italiā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēsem pugnam in campō¹ castra posuit.

He retires from Italy and is defeated by Scipio at Zama.

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēsum² revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, filium eius Scīpiōnis, quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hoc exhaustis³ iam patriae facultātibus cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior postea congredērētur. In colloquium convēnit, condiціōnēs nōn convēnērunt.⁴ Post id factum paucis diēbus apud Zamam cumeōdem cōnflīxit; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cumeō ex aciē excesserant, insidiātī sunt eī; quōs nōn solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī reliquōs ē fugā collēgit; novīs dēlēctibus paucis diēbus multōs contrāxit.

As chief magistrate, he manages home affairs well, but finally flees to Antiochus.

7. Cum in apparandō ācerimē esset occupātus, Karthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercituī postea praefuit rēsque in Africā gessit itemque Māgō frāter eius usque ad⁵ P. Sulpicium C. Aurēlium cōnsulēs. Hīs⁶ enim magistrātibus lēgātī Karthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vērunt, quī senātui populōque

impraesentiārum, *for the present.*
compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,
settle, end.

insidior, 1, *lie in wait for.*
dēlēctus, -ūs, m.; cf. dēligō.
apparō, 1, *prepare.*

1. *field.*

2. *Supine.*

3. *drained.*

4. *were agreed upon.*

5. *to the time of.*

6. *his magistrātibus: abl. abs.*

Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum iis pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā¹ eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellis² essent captivique redderentur. His ex senātūs cōsultō respōsum est:
 5 mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod³ Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum nōminī Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātre[m] eius Māgōnem.
 10 Hōc respōsō Karthāginiēnsēs cōgnitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat, annō secundō et vicēsīmō; ut enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sic Karthāgine quotannis annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magi-
 15 strātū parī diligentīā sē Hannibal praebuit, ac⁴ fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectīgālibus nōn solum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānis ex⁵ foedere penderētur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerāriō repōnerētur. Deinde, M. Claudiō L. Fūriō cōsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī
 20 Karthāginem vērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī expōscendī grātiā missōs, priusquam iis senātus⁶ darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam⁷ factā Poenī nāvēs duās, quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōsequī, misērunt;
 25 bona eius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentis disiēcērunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

foedus, foederis, n., *treaty*.
 aerārium, -ī, n., *treasury*.
 repōnō; cf. pōnō.

pūblicō, i, *confiscate*.
 fundāmentum, -ī, n., *foundation*,
groundwork.

1. *golden*.
 2. *at Fregellae*.
 3. *quod Hannibalem, etc.: because they even then kept Hannibal . . . in command of*

the army.
 4. *as*.
 5. *in accordance with*.
 6. *hearing before the senate*.
 7. *palam factā = nūntiātā*.

He arouses Antiochus to war against the Romans.

8. At Hannibal annō quārtō, postquam domō pro-
fūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quinque
nāvibus Africam accessit in finibus Cŷrēnaeorum, si¹
forte Karthāginiensēs ad bellum Antiochī² spē fidūciāque
indūcerentur,³ cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in
Italiam proficiscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātre[m] excivit.
Id ubi Poenī rescivērunt, Māgōnem eādem, quā frātre[m],
absentem adfēcērunt poenā. Illi⁴ dēspērātis rēbus cum
solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventis dedissent, Hannibal
ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex
memoria prōdita est; namque aliī naufragiō,⁵ aliī ā ser-
vulīs ipsius interfectum eum scriptum⁶ reliquērunt.
Antiochus autem, si tam in gerendō bellō cōsiliis eius⁷
pārere voluisset quam⁸ in suscipiendō instituerat, pro-
pius Tiberī⁹ quam Thermopylis dē summā imperiī
demicāset. Quem¹⁰ etsi multa stultē¹¹ cōnārī vidēbat,¹²
tamen nullā dēseruit¹³ in rē. Praefuit paucis nāvibus,
quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, iisque adver-
sus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphylīō marī cōflīxit.
Quō cum¹⁴ multitudīne adversāriōrum sui¹⁴ superārentur,
ipse, quō cornū rem gessit, fuit superior.

excitō (or excitō), -ēre (-ire), -civī
(-ii), -citum (-citum), call out,
summon.

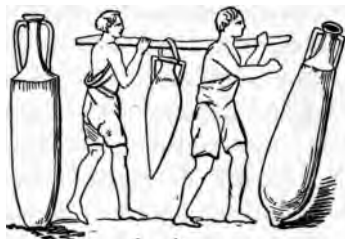
vēlum, -ī, n., sail.
servulus, -ī, m., a little slave,
slave.

1. (to see) if.
2. Antiochī . . . fidūciāque :
because of the faith and hope
(they had) in Antiochus.
3. they could be drawn into.
4. i.e. Hannibal and Mago.
5. Cf. nāvis + frangō.
6. scriptum reliquērunt : have
a record to the effect that.

7. i.e. Hannibalis.
8. quam . . . instituerat : a
he had done in beginning it.
9. Dat. with propius.
10. i.e. Antiochus.
11. foolishly.
12. Sc. Hannibal as subject.
13. Concessive.
14. his forces.

He goes to Crete and there saves his money by a ruse.

9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine
dubiō accidisset si¹ suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētā ad
Gortyniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōferret cōsiderāret.
Vidit autem vir omnium
5 callidissimus in magnō
sē fore periculō, nisi²
quid prōvidisset, propter
avāritiam Crētēnsium;
magnam enim sēcum
10 pecūniā portābat, dē
quā sciēbat exisse fā-
mam. Itaque capit tāle
cōsiliū. Amphorās complūrēs complet plumbō,³
summās⁴ operit aurō et argentō. Hās, praesentibus
15 prīncipibus, dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās
fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis,
statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omni suā pecūniā
complet eāsque in prōpatulō domi abicit.⁵ Gortynii
templum magnā cūrā custodiunt, nōn tam ā cēteris quam
20 ab Hannibale, nē ille, inscientibus iis, tolleret sēcumque
dūceret.



Amphorae

cōsiderō, 1, look at carefully,
consider.

amphora, -ae, f., a two-handed
jar.

operiō, -ire, -perui, -pertum,
cover.

aēneus, -a, -um, bronze.

prōpatulum, -i, n., courtyard.

1. si . . . potestātem: if he
had given them a chance at him.

2. nisi . . . prōvidisset: un-
less he should take some precau-
tion.

3. lead.

4. Sc. amphorās: the tops of
the jars.

5. As though they were of no
value.

SELECTIONS FROM CAE

He goes to Prusias. Invents a novel piece of stratagem.

10. Sic cōservātis suis rēbus Poenus, illūsis Crētēnsi-
bus omnibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud
quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Ītaliā, neque aliud quic-
quam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus
5 Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus
esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat
bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō² Pergamēnus rēx
Eumenēs, Rōmānis amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs
gerēbātur et mari et terrā; quō magis cupiēbat eum
10 Hannibal opprimī. Sed utrobique Eumenēs plūs valēbat
propter Rōmānōrum societātem: quem sī remōvisset,
faciliōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc inter-
ficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucis diēbus
erant³ dēcrētūrī. Superābātur nāvium multitudīne;
15 dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armis. Im-
perāvit quam plurimās venēnātās serpētēs vivās colligī
eāsque in vāsa fictilia conici. Hārum cum effēcisset
magnam multitudīnem, diū ipsō, quō factūrus erat nāvāle
proelium, classiārīos convocat iisque praecipit, omnēs ut
20 in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēteris tan-
tum satis⁴ habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpen-
tium multitudīne cōsecūtūrōs. Rēx autēm in quā nāve

illūdō, -ere, -lūsi, -lūsum, *deceive.*
rōbustus, -a, -um, *powerful.*

dissideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sēssum,
differ.

utrobique, *on both sides; here,*
on land and sea.

venēnātus, -a, -um, *filled with*
poison, poisonous.
serpēs, serpentis, f., *snake.*
vās, vāsis, n., plu. vāsa, vāsōr
jar.
fictilis, -e, *earthen.*

1. not very.

2. i.e. Prusias.

3. dēcrētūrī: they were

going to fight.

4. satis habeant: shoul
sider it enough.

veherētur ut¹ scirent sē factūrum ; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō iis pollicētur praemiō fore.

By this strategy, he defeats Eumenes.

11. Tālī cohortātiōne militum factā classis ab utrīsque in proelium dēducitur. Quārum aciē cōstitutā, prius-
 5 quam sīgnū pugnāe darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis, quō locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā² cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēns sē rēgem professus³ est
 10 quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod. nēmō dubitābat quī aliquid dē pāce esset scriptum. Tabellārius ducis nāve dēclārātā suis,⁴ eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā⁵ epistolā nihil in eā repperit,
 15 nisi quae ad irrīdendum eum pertinērent. Cuius etsī causam mirābātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bithynī Hannibalis praeceptō⁶ ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriantur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre
 20 nōn posset, fugā salūtem petiit ; quam⁷ cōsecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō litore erant collocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conici coepta



Caduceus

tabellārius, -ī, m., messenger, herald.

cādūceus, -ī, m., herald's staff, the token of a peace envoy.

1. ut . . . factūrum : he would see to it that they should know.

2. small boat.

3. professus est : stated.

4. to his own men.

5. opened.

6. in accordance with the command.

7. quam . . . esset : he would not have reached safety.

sunt. Quae¹ iacta initiō rīsum pugnantibus concitārent, neque quārē id fieret poterat intellegi. Postquam autem nāvēs suas opplētās cōspēxērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterriti cum quid² potissimum vitārent nōn vidērent, 5 puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sic Hannibal cōsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum solum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpiis pari prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

His death by poison.

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī 10 Prūsiae Rōmae apud³ T. Quīntium Flāmininum cōsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex iis ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāmininus senātui dētulit. Patrēs⁴ cōscriptī, quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existi- 15 marent, lēgātōs in Bithyniam mīsērunt, in iis Flāmininum, quī ab rēge peterent nē⁵ inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique⁶ dēderet.⁷ His Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est; illud⁸ recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fieri postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitii esset; ipsi, sī possent, com- 20 prehenderent;⁹ locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat in castellō, quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūneri, idque sic aedificārat ut in

nauticus, -a, -um, *naval*.

cēnō, 1, *dine*.

1. quae iacta: *the throwing of these.*

2. quid . . . vitārent: *what they should avoid most.*

3. at the house of.

4. patrēs cōscriptī: *senators.*

5. nē . . . habēret: *that he should not keep their greatest*

enemy with him.

6. -que: *but.*

7. Sc. ut.

8. illud recūsāvit nē, etc.: *but he did object to this that they, etc.*

9. Subjunctive representing imperative of direct discourse.

omnibus partibus aedificiū exitūs habēret, scilicet¹ verēns
 nē² ūsū venīret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmā-
 nōrum vēnissent ac multītūdine domum eius circumdedis-
 sent, puer ab iānuā prōspiciēns Hannibali dixit plūrēs
 5 praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs appārere.³ Qui imperā-
 vit eī ut omnēs forēs aedificiū circumīret, ac properē⁴
 sibi nūntiāret num⁵ eōdem modō undique obsidērētur.
 Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāssset omnēsque
 exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō
 10 factum, sed sē petī neque⁶ sibi diūtius vitam esse reti-
 nendam. Quam⁷ nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor
 pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum,⁸ quōd semper sēcum ha-
 bere cōsuērat, sūmpsit.

His historians and his own writings.

13. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfūctus
 15 labōribus, annō adquiēvit septuāgēsīmō. Quibus⁹ cōn-
 sulibus interierit, nōn¹⁰ convenit. Namque Atticus M.
 Claudiō Mārcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōsulibus mor-
 tuum¹¹ in annālī suō scriptum reliquit, at Polybius L.
 Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem
 20 Blithō P. Cornēliō Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque¹²

iānuā, -ae, f., door.

foris, foris, f., door.

memor, memoris, *mindful*.

perfungor, -ī, -fūctus sum, *per-*

form.

adquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum,
go to rest, die.

annālis, annālis, m., *record.*

1. *evidently.*

2. nē . . . venīret: *lest that*
should happen.

3. *appeared.*

4. = *celeriter.*

5. *whether.*

6. neque retinendam: *could*
not be preserved.

7. *i.e. vitam.*

8. *poison.*

9. quibus . . . interierit: *in-*
direct question.

10. nōn convenit: *it is not*
agreed.

11. mortuum (esse): *sc.*
eum; depends on scriptum reli-
quit.

12. *and yet.*

- hic tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus nōnnihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot eius librī sunt, Graecō sermōne cōfecti, in iis ad¹ Rhodiōs dē² Cn. Manlii Vulsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestis. Huius³ belli⁴ gesta
 5 multī memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex his duo⁵ quī cum eō in castris fuērunt simulque vixērunt, quamdiū fortuna passa est, Silēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārū Graecārū ūsus est doctōre.
- 10 Sed nōs⁶ tempus est huius librī facere finem et Rōmānōrum explicāre imperātōrēs, quō facilius collātis utrōrumque⁷ factis, quī virī praeferendī sint, possit iūdicārī.

VI. CATO

234-149

Cato's life up to his consulship.

1. M. CATO, ortus mūnicipiō Tusculō, adulēscēntulus, priusquam honōribus operam daret, versātus est⁸ in Sabī
 15 nīs, quod ibi hērēdiūm ā patre relictum habēbat. Inde hortātū⁹ L. Valeriī Flacci, quem in cōsulātū cēnsūrāque habuit collēgam, ut M. Perpenna cēnsōrius nārrāre

dīstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strīctum,
draw apart, engage.

liber, librī, m., *book.*

doctor, doctōris, m.; cf. doceō.

mūnicipiū, -ī, n., *a free town,*
i.e. with its own laws.

adulēscēntulus, -ī, m., *a very young man.*

hērēdiūm, -ī, n., *an inherited estate.*

cēnsūra, -ae, f., *consulship.*

cēnsōrius, -ī, m., *ex-censor.*

1. ad Rhodiōs: *i.e. liber ad Rhodiōs.*

2. Guberns rēbus gestis.

3. *i.e. Hannibal.*

4. bellī gesta: *deeds of war.*

5. Sc. sunt.

6. nōs facere finem: *for me to make an end.*

7. *i.e. Roman and Greek generals.*

8. versātus est = *vixit.*

9. *at the suggestion.*

solitus est, Rōmam dēmigrāvit in forōque esse coepit. Primum stipendium¹ meruit annōrum decem septemque. Q. Fabiō M. Claudiō cōsulibus tribūnus militum in Siciliā fuit. Inde ut rediit, castra secūtus est C. Claudi
 5 Nerōnis, magnique opera eius exīstimāta est in proeliō apud Sēnam, quō cecidit Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis. Quaestor obtigit P. Āfricānō cōsulī, cum quō nōn prō² sortis necessitudīne vīxit; namque ab eō perpetuā dis-sēnsit vitā. Aedilis plēbī³ factus est cum C. Helviō.
 10 Praetor prōvinciam obtinuit Sardiniam, ex quā quaestor superiōre tempore ex Āfricā dēcēdēns Q. Ennium poē-tam dēdūxerat, quod nōn minōris aestimāmus quam quemlibet amplissimum Sardiniēsem triumphum.

His consulship and censorship. His sternness.

2. Cōsulātum gessit cum L. Valeriō Flaccō; sorte
 15 prōvinciam nactus Hispāniam citeriōrem, exque eā tri-
 umphum dēportāvit. Ibi cum diūtius morārētur, P. Scīpiō Āfricānus cōsul iterum, cuius in priōrī cōsulātū
 quaestor fuerat, voluit eum dē prōvinciā dēpellere et
 ipse eī succēdere, neque hoc per senātum efficere potuit,
 20 cum⁴ quidem Scīpiō prīncipātum in civitāte obtinēret,
 quod tum nōn potentiā,⁵ sed iūre rēs pūblica administrā-
 bātur. Quā ex rē irātus senātuī, cōsulātū perāctō prī-
 vātus in urbe mānsit. At Catō, cēnsor cum eōdem
 Flaccō factus, sevērē praefuit eī potestātī. Nam et in

obtingō, -ere, -tigī, —, *fall to the lot of.*

aedilis, aedilis, m., *aedile.*

poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*

quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet
any.

sevērē, *strictly, with sternness, rigorously.*

1. stipendium meruit: *served of this assignment.*
a campaign.

2. prō sortis necessitudīne: *in accordance with the usual terms*

3. Genitive.

4. Concessive.

5. *personal influence.*

complūrēs nōbilēs animadvertit, et multās rēs novās in
 ēdictum¹ addidit, quā rē lūxuria reprimerētur, quae iam
 tum incipiēbat pullulāre. Circiter annōs octōgintā, us-
 que ad extrēmam aetātem ab adulēcentiā, rei publicae
 5 causā suscipere inimicitias nōn dēstitit. Ā multis tentā-
 tus² nōn modo nūllum dētrimentum existimātiōnis³
 fēcit,⁴ sed, quoad vixit, virtūtum laude crēvit.

His versatility. His writings.

3. In omnibus rēbus singulārī fuit industriā; nam et
 agricola sollers et perītus iūris cōsultus et magnus im-
 10 perātor et probābilis ōrātor et cupidissimus litterārū
 fuit. Quārū studium etsi senior arripuerat,⁵ tamen
 tantum prōgressum fēcit ut nōn facile reperiri possit,
 neque dē Graecis neque dē Ītalicis rēbus, quod ei fuerit
 incōgnitum. Ab adulēcentiā cōnfēcit ōrātiōnēs. . Senex
 15 historiās scribere instituit. Eārū sunt librī septem.
 Primus continet rēs gestās rēgū populī Rōmānī, se-
 cundus et tertius unde quaeque civitās orta sit Ītalica,
 ob quam rem omnēs Orīginēs vidētur appellāsse. In
 quārtō autem bellum Poenicum est primum, in quīntō
 20 secundum; atque haec omnia capitulātīm sunt dicta.
 Reliqua quoque bella parī modō persecūtus est usque ad
 praetūrā Servī Galbae, quī diripuit Lūsitānōs; atque
 hōrū bellōrū dūcēs nōn nōmināvit, sed sine nōmini-
 bus rēs notāvit.⁶ In iisdem exposuit quae in Ītaliā
 25 Hispāniisque aut fierent aut vidērentur admiranda; in

pullulō, *i, increase.*
 agricola, *-ae, m., farmer.*
 sollers, sollertis, *expert.*

iūris cōsultus, *-i, m., lawyer.*
 probābilis, *-e, pleasing.*
 capitulātīm, *briefly.*

1. proclamation.
2. attacked.
3. reputation.

4. sustained.
5. had taken up.
6. set down.

quibus multa industria et diligētia compāret,¹ nūlla doctrīna.

Huius dē vītā et mōribus plūra in eō librō persecūtī sumus, quem sēparātīm dē eō fēcimus rogātū T. Pom-
5 pōnī Atticī. Quārē studiōsōs² Catōnis ad illud volūmen dēlēgāmus.

1. *are found.*

2. *those interested.*

WORD FORMATION

Many Latin words are made up from other words:

- A. By appending certain endings;
- B. By joining one word to another.

A. BY APPENDING CERTAIN ENDINGS

1. Nouns derived from verb stems by adding:

- a. **-tor (-sor)**, denoting *agency*; as **vic** (*vincō, conquer*) + **-tor** (denoting *agent*) = **victor**, *one who conquers, conqueror*.
- b. **-tiō (-siō)** and **-tus (-sus)**, gen. **-ūs**, denoting *an action going on*; as, **profec** (*proficiscor, start out*) + **-tiō** (denoting *action*) = **profectiō**, *a starting out, departure*; and as, **adven** (*adveniō, approach*) + **-tus** (denoting *action*) = **adventus**, *coming, arrival*.

2. Nouns derived from nouns and adjectives by adding:

- ia, -itia, -tās, -tūs, -tūdō**, denoting *abstract quality*; as, **audāc** (*audāx, bold*) + **-ia** (denoting *quality*) = **audācia**, *boldness*.
- amic** (*amicus, friendly*) + **-itia** (denoting *quality*) = **amicitia**, *friendship*.
- liber** (*liber, free*) + **-tās** (denoting *quality*) = **libertās**, *freedom*.
- vir** (*vir, man*) + **-tūs** (denoting *quality*) = **virtūs**, *manliness, courage*.
- magn(i)** (*magnus, great*) + **-tūdō** (denoting *quality*) = **mag-nitūdō**, *greatness*.

B. BY JOINING ONE WORD WITH ANOTHER

1. Words with prefixes which have a meaning of their own:

- ā, ab, abs**, *away, from*; as, **ā-mittō**, *send away*.
- ad** (**ac, ā, ap, at**), *to, toward, at, on, near*; as, **ad-dūcō**, *lead toward*.
- ante**, *before*; as, **ante-ferō**, *carry before, prefer*.
- circum**, *around*; as, **circum-dūcō**, *lead or carry around*.

cum (com, con, col, co), *together, with*; as, **com-portō**, *bring together*: *completely, thoroughly*; as, **com-moveō**, *move thoroughly*.

dē, *from*; as, **dē-cēdō**, *go away from*.

ē, **ex** (ef), *out from, forth*: as, **ē-dūcō**, *lead forth*: *completely*; as, **ef-ficiō**, *do completely*.

in (im, ir, il), *in, into, at, on, against*; as, **in-colō**, *live in*; **in-ferō**, *bring against*.

inter, *between*; as, **inter-pōnō**, *put between*.

ob (o, obs, oc, of, og, op), *against*; as, **oc-currō**, *run against*.

per, *through*; as, **per-dūcō**, *lead through*: *thoroughly*; as, **per-terreō**, *frighten thoroughly*.

prae, *in front of*; as, **prae-ficiō**, *place at the head of*.

prō (prōd), *forth, before*; as, **prō-cēdō**, *go forth*.

sub (su, subs, suc, suf, sup), *under, down*; as, **sub-eō**, *go under*.

trāns (trān, trā), *across*; as, **trā-dūcō**, *lead across*.

2. Words with prefixes which have not an independent meaning:

dis (dī, dif, dir), *apart, between*; as, **dī-mittō**, *send apart*.

red (re), *back, again*; as, **re-mittō**, *send back*.

3. Nouns and adjectives with prefixes which have not an independent meaning:

in, *not, un-*: as, **in-crēdibilis**, *unbelievable*.

Frequentative or Intensive Verbs denote repeated or earnest action. They are formed by adding **-tō** (**-eō**) to supine stems; as, **iac** (**iacio**, *throw*) + **-to** (denoting *repetition*) = **iacō**, *throw often*.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

- A.**, abb. for *Aulus*, a Roman given name.
Acarnāna, -ae, f., a woman of Acarnania.
Acarnānia, -ae, f., a province of Greece.
Achāia, -ae, f., a Roman province in Greece.
Achillās, -ae, m., one of Pompey's murderers.
Adbucillus, -ī, m., an Allobrogian.
Admētus, -ī, m., a king of the Molossians in Epirus.
Aduatuca, -ae, f., a stronghold of the Eburones.
Aduatucī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians in northern Gaul, originally German.
Aeduus, -a, -um, *Aeduan*; as a subs. **Aeduus**, -ī, m., generally plu., *the Aeduans*, a tribe in central Gaul, allies of Rome.
Aeginium, -nī, n., a stronghold in Epirus.
Aegyptius, -a, -um, *Egyptian*.
Aegyptus, -ī, f., *Egypt*, a country in northern Africa.
Aemilius, -lī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. See **Paulus**. 2. **Lucius Aemilius**, an officer in Caesar's cavalry.
Aeolis, **Aeolidis**, f., a country in Asia Minor.
Aetōlia, -ae, f., a province of Greece.
Afrānius, -nī, m., a lieutenant of Pompey.
Āfrica, -ae, f., the continent of *Africa*.
Āfricānus, -ī, m., a title.
Agamemnōn, **Agamemnonis**, m., a king of Mycenae.
Alcmaeōn, **Alcmaeonis**, m., a Greek.
Alesia, -ae, f., a town in eastern Gaul.
Alexandria, -ae, f., *Alexandria*, the capital of Egypt.
Allobrox, **Allobrogis**, m., generally plu., *the Allobroges*, a tribe of south-eastern Gaul.
Alpēs, **Alpium**, f., *the Alps*, mountains in Europe.
Alpicī, -ōrum, m., inhabitants of the Alps.
Ambarri, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul, clients of the Aedui.
Ambiānī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
Ambibarii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.
Ambiorix, **Ambiorigis**, m., a king of the Eburones.
Ambivaretī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
Amphipolis, **Amphipolis**, f., a city in Thrace.
Ampius, -pī, m., *Titus Ampius*, a follower of Pompey.
Anartēs, **Anartium**, m., a German tribe.
Andebrogius, -gī, m., an ambassador of the Remi.

- Andēs, Andium, m.,** a tribe of western Gaul.
Androsthēnēs, Androthenia, m., a governor of Thessaly.
Antiochēnsēs, -ium, m., inhabitants of Antioch.
Antiochia, -ae, f., the capital of Syria.
Antiochus, -ī, m., a king of Syria.
Antistius, -tī, m., *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Antōnius, -nī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. *Marcus Antonius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. 2. *Gaius Antonius*, brother of the above.
Apollō, -inis, m., god of prophecy.
Apollōnia, -ae, f., a city in Macedonia.
Apollōniātēs, -ium, m., the inhabitants of Appollonia.
Appennīnus, -ī, m., the *Apennines*, mountains in Italy.
Apsus, -ī, m., a river of Macedonia.
Āpulia, -ae, f., a country in southeastern Italy.
Aquilēia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul.
Aquītānia, -ae, f., a country in southwestern Gaul.
Aquītānus, -a, -um, Aquitanian; generally plu., *the Aquitanians*.
Arar, Araris, m., a river of eastern Gaul; the modern *Saône*.
Arcas, Arcadis, Arcadian.
Aremoricus, -a, -um, Aremorian, applied to the seacoast states of north-western Gaul.
Argī, -ōrum (Argos, -eos), m., the capital of Argolis, in the Peloponnesus.
Argīvus, -a, -um, belonging to Argos.
Ariovistus, -ī, m., a king of the Germans.
Arpīnēius, -ēī, m., *Gaius Arpineius*, a follower of Caesar.
Artaphernēs, -is, m., a commander of the Persians at Marathon.
Artaxerxēs, -is, m., king of Persia.
Artemīsium, -sī, n., a promontory on the northeastern coast of Euboea.
Arvernus, -a, -um, Arvernian, generally plu., a tribe of central Gaul; rivals of the Aedui.
Asia, -ae, f. 1. *Asia*, the continent. 2. *Asia Minor*.
Asiāticus, -a, -um, Asiatic.
Asparāgium, -gī, n., a town in Illyricum.
Athēnae, -ārum, f., the capital of Attica.
Athēniēnsis, -is, Athenian; generally masc. plu., *the Athenians*.
Atrebās, Atrebātis, m., Atrebatian; generally plu., *the Atrebatians*, a tribe of northern Gaul.
Attica, -ae, f., a country of Greece.
Atticus, -a, -um, belonging to Attica.
Atticus, ī, m., *Titus Pomponius Atticus*, friend of Nepos and Cicero.
Aulerci, -ōrum, m., a strong tribe of central Gaul, divided into four branches.
Aurēlius, -lī, m., *C. Aurelius Cotta*, a Roman consul.
Aurunculēius, -ēī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Auscī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.

Avaricum, -ī, n., a stronghold of the Bituriges.

Axona, -ae, m., a river of northern Gaul; the modern *Aisne*.

Baculus, -ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion.

Baebius, -bī, m., see **Tamphilus**.

Balbus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Lucius Cornelius Balbus*, a friend of Atticus.

Baleāris, -e, *belonging to the Balearic Islands*, off the eastern coast of Spain.

Balventius, -tī, m., *Titus Balventius*, one of Caesar's centurions.

Basilus, -ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Belgae, -ārum, m., *the Belgians*, a people in northeastern Gaul, occupying one of the three parts into which Gaul was divided.

Belgium, -gī, n., the country of the Belgians in northeastern Gaul.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m., a powerful tribe of Belgians in northern Gaul.

Bibracte, -is, n., a town in eastern Gaul, chief city of the Aedui.

Bibrax, *Bibractis*, f., a town of the Remi in northern Gaul.

Biggerriōnēs, -um, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.

Bīthynia, -ae, f., a country in Asia Minor.

Bīthynīī, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Bithynia.

Biturigēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

Blithō, -ōnis, m., *Sulpicius Blitho*, a Roman historian.

Boduōgnātus, -ī, m., a leader of the Nervii.

Boeōtus, -a, -um, *Boeotian*, of *Boeotia*, a province of central Greece; generally as a subs., masc. plu., *the Boeotians*.

Boīī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in central Gaul; a nomadic people, who fought with the Helvetians against Caesar, and were placed by him among the Aedui.

Brannovicēs, -um, m., a branch of the Aulerci.

Bratuspantium, -tī, n., a town of the Bellovaci in northern Gaul.

Britannī, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Britain.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*.

Brundisium, -sī, n., a town in southeastern Italy.

Brūtus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Junius Brutus*, one of Caesar's officers.

C., abb. for *Gaius* (*Caius*), a Roman given name.

Cabūrus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who had been presented with Roman citizenship.

Cadmēa, -ae, f., the citadel of Thebes.

Cadūrcī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.

Caemānī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northeastern Gaul.

Caesar, *Caesaris*, m., a Roman family name of the Julian gens. *Gaius Julius Caesar*, general, writer, and statesman.

- Calēnus**, -ī, m., a Roman family name, see *Fūfius*.
Caletī, -ōrum (*Caletēs*, -um), m., a Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
Calliās, -ae, m., an Athenian.
Calliphrōn, -ōnis, m., a teacher of dancing.
Callistratus, -ī, m., an Athenian orator.
Candāvia, -ae, f., a district in Macedonia.
Canīnius, -nī, m. See *Rebilus*.
Cannēnsis, -e, *belonging to Cannae*, a town in Apulia.
Cantabrī, -ōrum, m., a warlike tribe in the north of Spain.
Cantium, -tī, n., a district in southeastern Britain.
Canulēius, -ēī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Lucius Canuleius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Capua, -ae, f., a city of Campania.
Car, *Cāris*, m., an inhabitant of Caria.
Cāria, -ae, f., a country in Asia Minor.
Carnutēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
Cassiānus, -a, -um, *of Cassius*.
Cassius, -sī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul, B.C. 107; killed in battle with the Tigurini.
Casticus, -ī, m., a prominent Sequanian.
Catamantaloedis, -is, m., a chieftain of the Sequanians.
Catō, *Catōnis*, m., the name of a Roman family. *Marcus Cato*, the censor.
Caturīgēs, -um, m., a tribe of the western Alps.
Catuvolcus, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Eburones.
Cavillōnum, -ī, n., a town of the Aedui.
Celtae, -ārum, m., the people in central Gaul, occupying the largest of the three divisions of Gaul.
Cēnomanī, -ōrum, m., a branch of the Auleri.
Centēnius, -nī, m., a Roman general.
Cethēgus, -ī, m., *Publius Cornelius Cethegus*, consul, B.C. 181.
Ceutronēs, -um, m. 1. A tribe of the western Alps. 2. A Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
Chabriās, -ae, m., an Athenian general.
Chersonēsus, -ī, m., a peninsula of Thrace.
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., the name of a Roman family. *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, brother of the famous orator; a lieutenant of Caesar.
Cilicia, -ae, f., a district in southeastern Asia Minor.
Ciliciēnsis, -e, *Cilician*.
Kimberius, -rī, m., a chieftain of the Suebi.
Cimbri, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany; invaded southern Europe, and were defeated by Marius.
Cimōn, -ōnis, m. 1. The father of Miltiades. 2. An Athenian general.
Citium, -tī, n., a town on the coast of Cyprus.
Clastidium, -dī, n., a stronghold of Cisalpine Gaul.

- Claudius**, -dī, m., the name of a Roman patrician gens. 1. See **Nerō**. 2 & 3. See **Mārcellus**. 4. *Appius Claudius Pulcher*, consul, B.C. 54.
- Cleopatra**, -ae, f., a queen of Egypt.
- Clōdīus**, -dī, m., the name of a Roman plebeian gens. 1. *Aulus Clodius*, a follower of Caesar. 2. *Publius Clodius Pulcher*, murdered by Milo, B.C. 52.
- Cn.**, abb. for *Gnaeus* (*Cnaeus*), a Roman given name.
- Cocosātēs**, -um, m., a people of Aquitania.
- Colōnae**, -ārum, f., a town in Asia Minor.
- Commīus**, -mī, m., a chieftain of the Atrebates.
- Condrūsī**, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.
- Cōnsīdīus**, -dī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Publius Considius*, an officer of Caesar.
- Cōpōnīus**, -nī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Gaius Coponius*, a commander of Pompey's fleet.
- Corcȳra**, -ae, f., an island off Epirus.
- Corcȳraeus**, -a, -um, *Corcyrean*.
- Coriosolitēs**, -um, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.
- Cornēlius**, -lī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. *Lucius Cornelius*, consul, B.C. 193. 2, 3, 4, 5. See **Balbus**, **Cethēgus**, **Lentulus**, **Scīpiō**.
- Cotta**, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family; see **Aurunculēius** and **Aurēlius**.
- Crassus**, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, consul; father both of 2. *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, a quaestor of Caesar; and of 3. *Publius Licinius Crassus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
- Crāstinus**, -ī, m., a veteran in Caesar's army.
- Crēta**, -ae, f., *Crete*, an island in the Mediterranean.
- Crētēnsēs**, -ium, m., inhabitants of Crete.
- Crētēs**, -um, m., inhabitants of Crete.
- Critognātus**, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Arverni.
- Cyclades**, -um, f., group of islands in the Aegean Sea.
- Cyprius**, -a, -um, of *Cyprus*, *Cyprian*.
- Cyprus**, -ī, f., an island in the eastern Mediterranean.
- Cȳrēnaēī**, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Cyrene, a city in northern Africa.
- Cyzicēnus**, -a, -um, of *Cyzicus*, a city in Asia Minor.
- D.**, abb. for *Decimus*, a Roman given name.
- Dācī**, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Dacia, on the Danube.
- Dāmōn**, -ōnis, m., an Athenian poet and musician.
- Dānuvius**, -vī, m., *the Danube*.
- Dārius**, -rī, m., a king of the Persians.
- Dātis**, **Dātidis**, m., a Persian general.
- Delphī**, -ōrum, m., a town in Phocis.

Dēmētrius, -rī, m., *Demetrius* of Phalereum, a famous Greek orator and statesman.

Diāna, -ae, f., the goddess of hunting.

Diomedōn, -ontis, m., an inhabitant of Cyzicus.

Dionȳsius, -sī, m., a Theban musician.

Dīs, Dītis, m., *Pluto*, the god of the lower world.

Dīviciācus, -ī, m. 1. A chieftain of the Aedui, and friend of Caesar.

2. A chieftain of the Suessiones.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetii.

Dolopes, -um, m., *the Dolopians*, a people of Thessaly.

Domitius, -tī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul, B.C. 54, an officer of Pompey. 2. *Gnaeus Domitius Calvinus*, an officer of Caesar.

Dubis, -is, m., a river in eastern Gaul, branch of the Arar.

Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., a chieftain of the Aedui, brother of Diviciacus.

Dyrrhachīnus, -a, -um, *of Dyrrhachium*.

Dyrrhachium, -chī, n., a town of Illyricum.

Eburōnēs, -um, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

Eburovīcēs, -um, m., a branch of the Aulerci.

Egus, -ī, m., an Allobrogan.

Eleutetī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.

Ēlis, Ēlidis, f., a city in the Peloponnesus.

Elpinicē, -ēs, f., half sister of Cimon.

Elusātēs, -um, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.

Ennius, -nī, m., one of the first Roman poets.

Epaminōndās, -ae, m., a famous Theban general.

Ephesius, -a, -um, *of Ephesus*.

Ephesus, -ī, f., a town of Ionia in Asia Minor.

Ēpirus, -ī, f., a country in western Greece.

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, m., a chieftain of the Aedui.

Eratosthenēs, -is, m., a Greek geographer.

Eretria, -ae, f., a city in Euboea.

Esuviī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in northwestern Gaul.

Etrūria, -ae, f., a country on the west coast of Italy.

Euboea, -ae, f., an island off the east coast of Greece

Eumenēs, -is, m., a king of Pergamum.

Eurōpa, -ae, f., the continent of *Europe*.

Eurybiadēs, -is, m., a Spartan general.

Fabius, -bī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus (Cunctator)*; consul, B.C. 214, opponent of Hannibal. Han. 5. 2. *Quintus Fabius Labeo*, consul, B.C. 183. Han. 13. 3. *Gaius Fabius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. B. G., V. 24.

- Falernus**, -a, -um, of *Falernus*, a district in Campania.
- Flaccus**, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. *Lucius Valerius Flaccus*, a patrician and consul with Cato. 2. *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, propraetor in Gaul. 3. *Valerius Flaccus*, his son.
- Flāminīus**, -ī, m., *Titus Quintius Flamininus*, sent to King Prusias.
- Flāminius**, -nī, m., *Gaius Flaminius*, consul.
- Fleginās**, -ātis, m., the name of a Roman family. *Gaius Fleginas*, a knight.
- Fregellae**, -ārum, f., a city of Latium.
- Fūfius**, -fī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Quintus Fufius Calenus*, a supporter of Caesar.
- Fulvius**, -vī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Postumus**.
- Fūrius**, -rī, m., *Lucius Furius*, a consul.
- Gabalī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.
- Gabīnius**, -nī, m., *Aulus Gabinius*, a consul.
- Gaius**; see **C.**, abb.
- Galba**, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. A king of the Suesiones. 2. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a praetor. 3. *Publius Sulpicius Galba*, consul, B.C. 200.
- Gallia**, -ae, f., *Gaul*, corresponding in general to France.
- Gallicus**, -a, -um, *Gallic*.
- Gallus**, -ī, m., a *Gaul*.
- Gallus**, -ī, m., *Tuticanus Gallus*, one of Caesar's men.
- Garumna**, -ae, m., a river of southwestern Gaul.
- Garumnī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.
- Gatēs**, **Gatum**, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.
- Geidumnī**, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northeastern Gaul.
- Geminus**, -ī, m., see **Servilius**.
- Genava**, -ae, f., the city of *Geneva*.
- Genusus**, -ī, m., a river in western Macedonia.
- Gergovia**, -ae, f., chief city of the Arverni.
- Germānia**, -ae, f., *Germany*.
- Germānus**, -a, -um, *German*; generally a subs. in plu., *the Germans*.
- Germiniī**, -ōrum, m., a people on the coast of Epirus.
- Gomphēnsis**, -e, of *Gomphi*.
- Gomphī**, -ōrum, m., a town in western Thessaly.
- Gortynīī**, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Gortyna, a city in Crete.
- Gracchus**, -ī, m., *Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus*, consul.
- Graecia**, -ae, f., *Greece*.
- Graecus**, -a, -um, *Greek*.
- Grāiocelī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the western Alps.
- Graius**, -a, -um, *Grecian*.
- Grānius**, -nī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Aulus Granius*, a knight.
- Grudīī**, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.

- Hadrūmētum**, -ī, n., a seacoast town south of Carthage.
Hamilcar, -aris, m., the father of Hannibal.
Hannibal, -alis, m., a famous Carthaginian general.
Harūdēs, -um, m., a tribe in southwestern Germany.
Hasdrubal, -alis, m. 1. Hamilcar's son-in-law and successor. 2. Brother of Hannibal.
Hellēspontus, -ī, m., the strait between Europe and Asia.
Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian*; as a subs. **Helvētius**, -ī, m., generally plu., *the Helvetians*, a tribe in the eastern part of Gaul, in modern Switzerland.
Helvī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Roman Province.
Helvius, -vī, m., a colleague of Cato.
Hēraclīa, -ae, f., a city of Macedonia.
Herculēs, -is, m., the national hero of Greece.
Hercynia (silva), *the Hercynian forest*, in southern Germany.
Hibernia, -ae, f., *Ireland*.
Hirrus, -ī, the name of a Roman family. *Gaius Lucilius Hirrus*, a follower of Pompey.
Hispania, -ae, f., *Spain*.
Hispanus, -a, -um, *Spanish*.
Hister, -tri, m., the river Danube.
Histiaeus, -ī, m., tyrant of Miletus.
- Iccius**, -cī, m., a chieftain of the Remi.
Īllyricum, -ī, n., a Roman province on the east shore of the Adriatic.
Indutiomārus, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Treveri.
Īonēs, -um, m., *Ionians*; the Greeks in Asia Minor.
Īonia, -ae, f., part of the western coast of Asia Minor.
Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy*.
Ītalicus, -a, -um, *Italian*.
Īūlius, -lī, m., *Julius*; the name of a Roman gens. See **Caesar**.
Īūnius, -nī, m., *Junius*; the name of a Roman gens. 1. *Quintus Junius*, a Spaniard in the service of Caesar. 2. See **Brūtus**.
Iuppiter Iovis, m., *Jupiter*, the supreme god of the Romans, king of the gods.
Īūra, -ae, m., the Jura mountains, northwest of Helvetia.
- Karthāginiēnsis**, -e, *Carthaginian*.
Karthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*, a city on the northern coast of Africa.
- L.**, abb. for *Lucius*, a Roman given name.
Labeō, -ōnis, m., see **Fabius**.
Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Titus Atius Labienus*, a faithful lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul, but a follower of Pompey in the civil war.

- Lacedaemōn**, -onis, f., *Sparta*, the chief city of Laconia, in southern Greece.
- Lacedaemonius**, -a, -um, *Spartan*.
- Lamprus**, -ī, m., a Greek musician.
- Lampsacus**, -ī, f., a town on the Hellespont.
- Lārīsa**, -ae, f., a town of Thessaly.
- Lārīsaeī**, -ōrum, m., the people of Larisa.
- Latinus**, -a, -um, *Latin*.
- Latobrigī**, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in western Germany.
- Lemannus**, -ī, m., *Lake Geneva*.
- Lēmniī**, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of the island of Lemnos.
- Lēmnus** (os), -ī, f., an island in the northern part of the Aegean Sea.
- Lemovicēs**, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
- Lentulus**, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. *Lucius Cornelius Lentulus*, consul, opponent of Caesar. 2. *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Marcellinus*, one of Caesar's quaestors. 3. *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Spinther*, consul, follower of Pompey.
- Leōnidās**, -ae, m., a king of Sparta.
- Leuci**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
- Leuctra**, -ōrum, n., a town in Boeotia.
- Leuctricus**, -a, -um, of *Leuctra*.
- Levācī**, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.
- Lexoviī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe in northern Gaul.
- Libō**, **Libōnis**, m., a Roman family name. *Lucius Scribonius Libo*, a commander in Pompey's fleet.
- Ligurēs**, -um, m., a tribe on the northwest coast of Italy.
- Lingonēs**, -um, m., a tribe in east central Gaul.
- Liscus**, -ī, m., a magistrate of the Aedui.
- Lissus**, -ī, m., a town in Illyricum.
- Longus**, -ī, m., *Tiberius Sempronius Longus*, consul.
- Lūcānius**, -nī, m., *Quintus Lucanius*, a centurion.
- Lūcānus**, -ī, m., *Lucanian*, an inhabitant of Lucania, a province in southwestern Italy.
- Lūcilius**, -lī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Hirrus**.
- Lūna**, -ae, f., *the moon*.
- Lūsitānī**, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of modern Portugal.
- Lýsis**, **Lýsis**, m., a native of Tarentum.
- M.**, abb. for *Marcus*, a Roman given name.
- Macedonia**, -ae, f., a country of northern Greece.
- Magetobriga**, -ae, f., a town in central Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls.
- Magnēsia**, -ae, f., a city in Lydia.
- Māgō**, **Māgōnis**, m., Hannibal's brother.
- Mandubii**, -ōrum, m., a tribe in east central Gaul.

- Manlius**, -lī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See *Torquātus*, *Vulsō*.
Mantinēa, -ae, f., a city of Arcadia, in Greece.
Marathōn, -ōnis (acc. -a), f., a plain and a town on the eastern coast of Attica.
Marathōnius, -a, -um, of *Marathon*.
Mārcellinus, -ī, m., see *Lentulus*.
Mārcellus, -ī, m., *Marcus Claudius Marcellus*. 1. A famous Roman general; defeated Hannibal; conquered Syracuse; consul five times.
 2. Consul, B.C. 183.
Marcomannī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany.
Marius, -rī, m., *Gaius Marius*, a famous Roman general; defeated the Cimbri and Teutoni.
Mārs, **Mārtis**, m., god of war.
Maticō, -ōnis, m., a town of the Aedui.
Matrona, -ae, f., a river in northern Gaul, now the *Marne*.
Maximus, -ī, m., see *Fabius*.
Mediomatricī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
Menapiī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Belgic Gaul.
Meneclidēs, -is, m., a Theban orator.
Mercurius, -rī, m., the god *Mercury*.
Messāla, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul, B.C. 61.
Messēnē, -ēs, f., a city of Sicily.
Mētius, -tī, m., *Marcus Metius*, a friend of Ariovistus.
Mētrópolis, -is, f., a city of Thessaly.
Mētropolītae, -ārum (-um), m., the inhabitants of Metropolis.
Mīcythus, -ī, m., a Theban youth.
Mīlēsius, -a, -um, of *Miletus*, a city of Ionia.
Miltiadēs, -is, m. 1. A famous Athenian general. 2. Founder of colony in the Chersonesus. Nepos confused the two.
Minerva, -ae, f., goddess of war and wisdom.
Minucius, -cī, m. 1. *Quintus Minucius*, consul. 2. See *Rūfus*. 3. See *Basilus*.
Molossī, -ōrum (-ūm), m., a tribe in Epirus.
Mona, -ae, f., an island off the coast of Britain.
Morinī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.
Mosa, -ae, m., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the *Meuse*.
Munātius, -tī, m., see *Plancus*.
Mycalē, -ēs (acc. -ēn), f., a promontory on the coast of Asia Minor.
Mytilēnae, -ārum, f., a city on the island of Lesbos.
Myūs, **Myuntis**, f., a city of Ionia.

Nammēius, -ēī, m., a prominent Helvetian.
Namnetēs, -um, a tribe of western Gaul.
Nantuātēs, -ium, m., a tribe south of Lake Geneva.

- Nasua**, -ae, m., a chieftain of the Suebi ; brother of Cimberius.
Naxus (os), -ī, f., an island in the Aegean Sea.
Nemetēs, -um, m., a tribe living on the border of Germany and Gaul.
Neoclēs, -is (-ī) m., the father of Themistocles.
Nerō, -ōnis, m., *Gaius Claudius Nero*, consul, B.C. 207, conquered Hasdrubal.
Nervicus, -a, -um, *Nervian*.
Nervius, -vī, m., a *Nervian*, one of a tribe living in Belgic Gaul.
Nitiobrogēs, -um, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul.
Nōrēia, -ae, f., a town of the Norici.
Nōricus, -a, -um, *Norican* ; generally masc. plu., *the Norici*, a tribe in modern western Austria.
Noviodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the Suessiones in Belgic Gaul.
Numidae, -ārum, m., a tribe of barbarians in northern Africa.
Nymphaeum, -ī, n., a town in Illyricum.

- Oceanus**, -ī, m., *the ocean*.
Ocelum, -ī, n., a town in western Cisalpine Gaul.
Octōdūrus, -ī, m., a town of the Veragri in the Alps.
Oedipus, -ī (-odis), m., son of the king and queen of Thebes.
Olympiodōrus, -ī, m., a musician.
Orcynia, -ae, f., the Greek name for *Hercynia*.
Orestēs, -is (-ae), m., son of Agamemnon and Clytemnestra.
Orgetorix, -igis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetii.
Oricum, -ī, n., a town in Epirus.
Originēs, -um, f., the title of a work written by Cato the Censor.
Osismī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in extreme western Gaul.

- P.**, abb. for *Publius*, a Roman given name.
Padus, -ī, m., the river *Po* in Italy.
Palaestē, -es, f., a town of Epirus.
Pamphylus, -a, -um, *Pamphylian*, of *Pamphylia*, a province of Asia Minor.
Parisiī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of north central Gaul.
Parius, -a, -um, of *Paros* ; generally masc. plu., *the Parians*.
Parthī, -ōrum, m., a tribe southeast of the Caspian Sea, in Asia.
Parthini, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Greeks in Illyricum.
Parus (os), -ī, f., one of the Cyclades Islands in the Aegean.
Paulus, -ī, m., *Lucius Aemilius Paulus*, a Roman consul, killed in the battle of Cannae.
Pedius, -dī, m., *Quintus Pedius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Pelōpidās, -ae, m., a Theban general.
Peloponnēsus, -ī, f., a large peninsula, forming the southern part of Greece.
Pēlūsium, -sī, n., a city in Egypt.

Pergamēnus, -a, -um, of *Pergamum*; generally masc. plu., the inhabitants of *Pergamum*.

Pergamum, -ī, n., a city of Mysia, in Asia Minor.

Perpenna, -ae, m., a Roman consul, B.C. 92.

Persae, -ārum, m., the inhabitants of Persis, east of the Persian Gulf.

Persēs, -ae, m., sing. of *Persae*.

Persicus, -a, -um, *Persian*.

Persis, -idis, f., the chief province of the Persian empire.

Petra, -ae, f., a hill in Illyricum.

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul.

Petrosidius, -dī, m., *Lucius Petrosidius*, a standard bearer.

Phalēreus, -eos (-ēī), m., of *Phalerum*, the oldest harbor of Athens, and a city near by.

Phalēricus, -a, -um, of *Phalerum*.

Phidippus, -ī, m., an Athenian courier.

Philippus, -ī, m., a king of Macedonia.

Phoenicē, -ēs, f., *Phoenicia*, a district on the coast of Syria.

Phoenices, -um, m., *Phoenicians*.

Pictionēs, -um, m., a tribe of western Gaul.

Piraeus, -ī, m., the principal port of Athens.

Pisistratus, -ī, m., a tyrant of Athens.

Placentia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul.

Plancus, -ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, an officer of Caesar.

Plataeēnsēs, -ium, m., the inhabitants of Plataea, a town in Boeotia.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

Plōtius, -tī, m., *Marcus Plotius*, one of Caesar's followers.

Poecilē, -ēs, f., a celebrated portico in Athens.

Poenicus, -a, -um, *Carthaginian*.

Poenus, -ī, m., an inhabitant of Carthage.

Polybius, -bī, m., a Greek historian.

Polymnis, -idis (-ī), m., the father of Epaminondas.

Pompēiānus, -a, -um, *Pompeian*.

Pompēius, -ēī, m. 1. *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, a triumvir and a rival of Caesar. 2. *Gnaeus Pompeius*, an interpreter.

Pompōnius, -nī, m., see *Atticus*.

Pontus, -ī, m., a country of Asia Minor.

Postumus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Fulvius Postumus*, one of Caesar's soldiers.

Procillus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of Gaius Valerius Caburus.

Prūsia or **Prūsias**, -ae, m., a king of Bithynia.

Ptianiī, -ōrum, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

Ptolemaeus, -ī, m. 1. *Ptolemy*, king of Egypt, father of Cleopatra.
2. Son of preceding.

Ptolemāis, -idis, f., a city of Phoenicia.

Pūliō, -ōnis, m., one of Pompey's officers.

Pullō, -ōnis, m., *Titus Pullo*, a centurion in Caesar's army.
Puteolī, -ōrum, m., a city of Campania.
Pydna, -ae, f., a city of Macedonia.
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, of the *Pyrenees (mountains)*; between Gaul and Spain.
Pythagorēus, -ī, m., a follower of the philosopher Pythagoras.
Pythia, -ae, f., the priestess of Apollo.

Q., abb. for *Quintus*, a Roman given name.

Quīntius, -tī, m., see **Flāminius**.

Raucillus, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Allobroges.
Rauracī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
Rebilus, -ī, m., *Gaius Caninius Rebilus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Redonēs, -um, m., a tribe of western Gaul.
Rēmus, -a, -um, *Reman*; generally masc. plu., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
Rhēnus, -ī, m., the river *Rhine*.
Rhodanus, -ī, m., the river *Rhone*.
Rhodium, -a, -um, *Rhodian*; generally masc. plu., the inhabitants of the island of Rhodes in the Aegean Sea.
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*.
Rōscius, -cī, m., *Lucius Roscius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Rūfus, -ī, m. 1. *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
 2. *Marcus Minus Rufus*, a master of horse under Fabius Maximus.
Rutēnī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.
Rutilus, -ī, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

S., abb. for *Sextus*, a Roman given name.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., an ancient tribe of central Italy.
Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Sabis, **Sabis**, m., a river in northern Gaul.
Sacrātivir, -virī, m., *Marcus Sacrativir*, a knight in Caesar's army.
Saguntum, -ī, n., a city of Spain.
Salaminius, -a, -um, of *Salamis*.
Salamis, -inis (acc. -a), f., an island off the coast of Attica.
Samarobrīva, -ae, f., a city in Belgic Gaul.
Santonī, -ōrum (**Santonēs**, -um), m., a tribe of western Gaul.
Sardēs (-is), -um (acc. -īs), f., a city of Lydia, in Asia Minor.
Sardinia, -ae, f., an island west of Italy.
Sardiniēsis, -e, *Sardinian*.
Scaeva, -ae, m., a centurion of Caesar.
Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. *Quintus Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio*, Pompey's father-in-law. 2. *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, consul, B.C. 218, father of 3. *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus*, defeated Hannibal at Zama.

- Scȳrus**, -ī, f., an island in the Aegean Sea.
- Scythēs**, -ae, m., generally plu., *the Scythians*, a tribe living north of the Caspian and Euxine Seas.
- Sedulius**, -lī, m., a chieftain of the Lemovices.
- Sedūnī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of the Alps.
- Sedusiī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Germany.
- Segusiāvī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of east central Gaul.
- Semprōnius**, -nī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Rutilus**, **Gracchus**, **Longus**.
- Sena**, -ae, f., a town on the coast of Umbria, in Italy.
- Senonēs**, -um, m., a tribe of north central Gaul.
- Septimius**, -mī, m., *Lucius Septimius*, a military tribune.
- Sēquana**, -ae, m., a river in Gaul, the modern *Seine*.
- Sēquanus**, -a, -um, *Sequanian*; in plu., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
- Ser**, abb. for *Servius*, a Roman given name.
- Sertōrius**, -rī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Quintus Sertorius*, a partisan of Marius and commander in Spain.
- Servilius**, -lī, m. 1. *Gnaeus Servilius Geminus*, consul, B.C. 217. 2. *Publius Servilius Vatia*, consul, B.C. 48.
- Sextius**, -tī, m. 1. See **Baculus**. 2. *Titus Sextius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
- Sibusātēs**, -um, m., a tribe of extreme southwestern Gaul.
- Sicilia**, -ae, f., an island at the southern end of Italy.
- Silēnus**, -ī, m., a Greek historian.
- Sōl**, **Sōlis**, m., *the sun*.
- Sōsilus**, -ī, m., a Spartan historian.
- Sparta**, -ae, f., the capital of Laconia, in southern Greece.
- Staberius**, -rī, m., a commander in Pompey's army.
- Stēsagorās**, -ae, m., a brother of Miltiades.
- Strȳmōn**, -onis, m., a river of Thrace.
- Suēbus**, -a, -um, *of the Suebi*; generally masc. plu., a tribe of central Germany.
- Suessiōnēs**, -um, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- Sugambriī**, -ōrum, a tribe of eastern Germany.
- Sūlla**, -ae, m. 1. *Lucius Sulla*, Roman dictator. 2. *Publius Sula*, nephew of the preceding; a lieutenant of Caesar.
- Sulpicius**, -cī, m., see **Rūfus**, **Galba**, **Blithō**.
- Syria**, -ae, f., a country in Asia, southeast of Asia Minor.
- Syriacus**, -a, -um, *Syrian*.
- T**, abb. for *Titus*, a Roman given name.
- Tamphilus**, -ī, m. 1. *Gnaeus Baebius Tamphilus*, consul B.C. 182. 2. *Marcus Baebius Tamphilus*, consul, B.C. 181.
- Tarbellī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe in extreme southwestern Gaul.
- Tarentinus**, -a, -um, *of Tarentum*, a town of southern Italy.
- Tarusātēs**, -īum, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul.

- Tasgetius**, -tī, m., chieftain of the Carnutes.
Tectosagēs, -um, m., a tribe of southern Gaul; a branch of the Volcae.
Tencterī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Germany.
Terentius, -tī, m., see **Varrō**.
Teutoni, -ōrum (**Teutonēs**, -um), m., a tribe of northern Germany.
Thasiī, -orum, m., the inhabitants of Thasos, an island in the Aegean Sea.
Thēbae, -ārum, f., the chief city of Boeotia.
Thēbānus, -ī, m., a *Theban*, an inhabitant of Thebes in Boeotia.
Themistoclēs, -is (-ī), acc. -em, -ēn, m., a famous Athenian statesman and general.
Thermopylae, -ārum, f., a narrow pass on the coast of Thessaly.
Thessalia, -ae, f., a country in northern Greece.
Thrāx, **Thrācis**, m., a *Thracian*, an inhabitant of Thrace, in north-eastern Greece.
Thūcydidēs, -is, m., a Greek historian.
Tī, abb. for *Tiberius*, a Roman given name.
Tiberis, -is, m., a river of Italy.
Tiburtius, -tī, m., *Lucius Tiburtius*, a follower of Caesar.
Tigurīnus, -a, -um, of the *Tigurini*; generally masc. plu., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
Tillius, -lī, m., *Quintus Tillius*, a follower of Caesar.
Titūrius, -rī, m., see **Sabīnus**.
Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.
Torquātus, -ī, m., *Lucius Manlius Torquatus*, a commander of Caesar's forces.
Trallēs, -ium, a town of Lydia, in Asia Minor.
Trānspadānus, -a, -um, across the River *Po*.
Trasumennus, -ī, m., a lake in Etruria, in Italy.
Trebia, -ae, f., a river in northern Italy.
Trebōnius, -nī, m. 1. *Gaius Trebonius*, a lieutenant of Caesar. 2. *Gaius Trebonius*, a Roman knight, B. G., VI, 40.
Trēverī, -ōrum, a tribe of northeastern Gaul.
Triārius, -rī, m., a commander under Pompey.
Tribocī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germans in Belgic Gaul.
Troezen, **Troezenis**, (acc. -a), f., a city in the Peloponnesus.
Troucillus, -i, m., *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a Gallic interpreter.
Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.
Tullius, -lī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Cicerō**.
Turonī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
Tusculum, -ī, n., a city of Latium.
Tūtīcānus, -ī, m., *Tuticanus Gallus*, one of Caesar's followers.
Ubiī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.
Usipetēs, -um, m., a German tribe on the lower Rhine.

- Valerius**, -rī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Troucillus**, **Flaccus**, **Cabūrus**, **Procillus**, **Messāla**.
- Vangionēs**, -um, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.
- Varrō**, -ōnis, m. 1. *Gaius Terentius Varro*, consul, B.C. 216. 2. *Aulus Terentius Varro*, a soldier of Pompey.
- Vatīnius**, -nī, m., *Publius Vatinius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
- Veliocassēs**, -um, m., a Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
- Vellāvīi**, -orum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.
- Venellī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northern Gaul.
- Venetī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme western Gaul.
- Veneticus**, -a, -um, *of the Veneti*.
- Venusia**, -ae, f., a town of Apulia, in southern Italy.
- Veragrī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the Alps.
- Verbigenus**, -ī, m., a district of Helvetia.
- Vercassivellaunus**, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Arverni.
- Vercingetorix**, -īgis, m., a chieftain of the Arverni, and leader of the Gauls.
- Verticō**, -ōnis, m., one of the Nervii.
- Verucloetius**, -tī, m., an ambassador of the Helvetii.
- Vesontīō**, -ōnis, m., a town of the Sequani.
- Victōria**, -ae, f., the goddess of victory.
- Viridomārus**, -ī, m., a chief of the Aedui.
- Viridovīx**, -īcis, m., a chief of the Venelli.
- Viromandui**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- Vocātēs**, -ium, m., a people of Aquitania.
- Vocciō**, -ōnis, m., a king of Noricum.
- Vocontii**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme southeastern Gaul.
- Volcae**, -ārum, m., see **Tectosagēs**.
- Volusēnus**, -ī, m., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus*, a military tribune.
- Vorēnus**, -ī, m., *Lucius Vorenus*, a centurion in Caesar's army.
- Vulcānus**, -ī, m., the god of fire.
- Vulsō**, -ōnis, m., *Gnaeus Manlius Vulso*, consul, B.C. 189.
- Xerxēs**, -is, m., a king of Persia. *
- Zama**, -ae, f., a town of Numidia in Africa.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For distinction in meaning, consult Latin-English Vocabulary.

A

able: be able, *possum*.
 abstain, *mihi*, etc., *temperō*, *abstineō*.
 accept, *accipio*; *recipio*.
 account: (on this) account, *quam ob rem*; (on) account (of), *propter*; *ob*.
 accustomed: become accustomed, *consuēscō*.
 across, *trāns*.
 additional: (there is the) additional (fact), *accēdit*.
 advance, *prōcēdō*; *prōgredior*.
 Aeduan, *Aeduus*.
 afraid: be afraid, *timeō*.
 after (conjunction), *postquam*.
 afterwards, *postea*.
 again, *iterum*.
 against, *in* (with accusative).
 aid, *auxilium*.
 all, *omnis*.
 allow, *patior*.
 ally, *socius*.
 almost, *paene*.
 alone, *solus*.
 Alps, *Alpēs*.
 already, *iam*.
 also, *etiam*; *quoque*.
 although, *etsi*; *cum*.
 am, *sum*.
 ambassador, *lēgātus*.
 among, *apud*.

amount, *cōpia*.
 and, *atque*; *et*; *-que*.
 and so, *itaque*.
 announce, *nūntiō*.
 another, *alius*.
 any, *aliquis*; *ullus*.
 approach (noun), *aditus*.
 approach (verb), *accēdō*; *appropinquo*.
 arise, *orior*.
 arms, *arma*.
 army, *exercitus*.
 arouse, *commoveō*.
 arrange, *cōstituō*.
 arrival, *adventus*.
 arrive, *pervenio*.
 ascend, *ascendō*.
 ask, *quaerō*; *rogō*.
 as soon as, *ubi*.
 attack (noun), *impetus*.
 attack (verb), *impetum facio*; *oppugno*.
 attempt, *temptō*.
 auxiliary, *auxilia*.
 away: be away, *absum*.

B

baggage, *impedimenta*.
 bank, *rīpa*.
 barbarian, *barbarus*.
 battle, *proelium*.
 battle line, *aciēs*.
 bear, *ferō*.

because, *quod*.
 because of, *propter*; *ob*.
 before (prep.), *ante*; (adv.), *antēā*.
 beg, *orō*.
 begin, *incipiō*; began, *coepi*.
 beginning, *initium*.
 Belgian, *Belga*.
 boat, *nāvis*.
 body, *corpus*.
 booty, *praeda*.
 both, *uterque*, sing.
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*.
 bound, *contineō*.
 brave, *fortis*.
 bravery, *virtūs*.
 break (camp), *moveō*.
 bridge, *pōns*.
 brief, *brevis*.
 bring, *dūcō*; *addūcō*; *comportō*.
 bring together, *condūcō*; *coniungō*.
 bring to pass, *efficiō*.
 brother, *frāter*.
 build, *faciō*.
 building, *aedificium*.
 but, *sed*.
 but that, *quān*.

C

call, *appellō*.
 call together, *convocō*.
 camp, *castra*.
 canton, *pāgus*.
 capture, *capiō*.
 cart, *carrus*.
 cause, *causa*.
 cavalry (noun), *equitātus*; (adjective), *equester*.
 cease, *dēsistō*.
 centurion, *centuriō*.
 certain (one), *quīdam*.
 chain, *catēna*.

character, *nātūra*.
 check, *impediō*.
 chief, *princeps*.
 chieftain, *princeps*.
 child, *puer*.
 children (free), *liberī*.
 choose, *dēligō*.
 citizens, *cīvitās*.
 client, *cliēns*.
 collect, *cōgō*.
 come, *veniō*.
 command, *imperō*; *iubeō*.
 command: (be in) command (of),
 praesum; (place in) command,
 praeficiō.
 commander, *imperātor*.
 compact, *cōnfertus*.
 complete, *cōnficiō*.
 concerning, *dē*.
 conference, *colloquium*.
 conquer, *vincō*.
 consent, *voluntās*.
 consider, *habēō*.
 conspiracy, *coniūrātiō*.
 conspire, *coniūrō*.
 construct, *perdūcō*.
 consul, *cōsul*.
 consult, *cōsulō*.
 control, *imperium*.
 council, *concilium*.
 courage, *virtūs*.
 cowardice, *timor*.
 cowardly, *timidus*.
 crisis: (at a) crisis, *in angustō*.
 critical, *necessārius*.
 cross, *trānsēō*.
 crush, *opprimō*.
 custom, *mōs*.

D

daily (adjective), *cōfidiānus*.
 danger, *periculum*.

dare, *audeō*.
 daughter, *filia*.
 day, *diēs*; (within two) days, *bīduō*.
 daybreak: (at) daybreak, *primā lūce*.
 death, *mors*.
 decide, *cōstituō*.
 deep, *altus*.
 defeat, *superō*; suffer defeat, *superor*.
 defend, *dēfendō*.
 delay, *moror*; (with *quīn*) cunctor.
 deliver (a speech), *habeō*.
 demand, *postulō*.
 depart, *discēdō*.
 departure, *profectiō*.
 deprive, *privō*.
 desert, *dēserō*.
 desire, *cupiō*; *studeō*.
 desirous, *cupidus*.
 differ, *differō*.
 direction, *pars*.
 discuss, *agō*.
 dismiss, *dīmittō*.
 display, *ostendō*.
 disposition, *animus*.
 disturb, *perturbō*.
 ditch, *fossa*.
 do, *faciō*.
 doubt, *dubitō*.
 draw up, *instruō*.
 drive, *pellō*.
 drive back, *repellō*.
 drive out, *expellō*.
 duty, *officium*.

E

each, *quisque*; (of two), *uterque*.
 eagerness, *studium*.
 early (adverb), *mātūrē*.
 easily, *facile*.

easy, *facilis*.
 embassy, *lēgatiō*.
 employ, *utor*.
 encourage, *cohortor*.
 engage (in), *committō*.
 enjoy, *utor*.
 enough, *satīs*.
 enroll, *cōscribō*.
 entire, *tōtus*.
 equal, *adaequō*.
 escape, *mē*, etc., *ēripīō*.
 especially, *maximē*.
 establish, *cōfirmō*.
 even, *etiam*.
 everything, *omnia*.
 except, *prae*.
 exhaust, *cōficiō*.
 extraordinary, *insignis*.

F

fact, *rēs*.
 fall, *cadō*.
 far, *longē*.
 farther, *ulterior*.
 farthestmost, *extrēmus*.
 father, *pater*.
 favor, *faveō*.
 fear (noun), *timor*.
 fear (verb), *timeō*; *vereor*.
 fertile, *frūmentārius*.
 few, *pauci*.
 field, *ager*.
 fierce, *ācer*.
 fiercely, *ācriter*.
 fifteen, *quīndecim*.
 fight, *pugnō*.
 fight a decisive battle, *dēcertō*.
 fight it out, *dēcertō*.
 fill, *compleō*.
 finally, *tandem*.
 find (come to meet), *occurrō*; find

W

wage (war), *gerō*.
 wait, *expectō*.
 wall, *mūrus*.
 want, *volō*.
 war, *bellum*.
 warn, *moneō*.
 watch, *vigilia*.
 weapon, *telum*.
 well-known, *nōbilis*.
 what, *quis, quae, quid*.
 when, *cum*.
 where, *ubi*.
 whether, *num*.
 whichever, *quicumque*.
 while, *dum*.
 who (interrogative), *quis*; (relative), *quī*.
 why, *cūr*.
 wide, *lātus*.
 width, *lātitudō*.
 willing: (am) willing, *volō*.
 willingness, *voluntās*.
 win, *conciliō*; *potior*.

wing, *cornū*.
 winter quarters, *hiberna*.
 wisdom, *cōnsilium*.
 wish, *volō*.
 with, *cum*.
 withdraw, *discēdō*; *mē*, etc., *recipiō*.
 without, *sine*.
 withstand, *sustineō*.
 woman, *mulier*.
 wonder, *admīror*.
 woods, *silva*.
 word, *verbum*.
 wound, *vulnus*.
 wrong, *iniūria*.
 wrongdoing, *iniūria*.
 wrongfully, *iniūriā*.

Y

year, *annus*.
 yield, *concēdō*.
 you, *tū*.
 young man, *adulēscēns*.
 your (of one person), *tuus*; (of several), *vester*.

nder (noun), *dēditō*.
 nder (verb), *trādō*; *dēdō*.
 und, *circumveniō*.
 und (with), *circumdō*.
 ve, *supersum*.
 :ct, *suspīcor*.
 cion, *suspiciō*.
 in (loss), *accipiō*.
 r, *iūrō*.
 d, *gladius*.

T

capīō.
 away, *removēō*.
loquor.
lacrima.
ticō.
lecem.
 , *decimus*.
 ory, *finēs*.
quam.
 is; (conjunction), *ut, quān*.
 selves: (of) themselves, *sui*.
deinde; tum.
 (in that place), *ibi*; (to that
 ce), *eō*.
 fore, *quam ob rem*.
 , *rēs*.
 , *arbitror*.
 , *tertius*.
hic.
 ;h, *cum*; *etsi*.
 and, *mille*.
 , *trēs*.
 gh, *per*.
 ghout, *per*.
 t, *iaciō*; *coniciō*.
ita.
tempus.
 ?
uoque.

top, *summus* (adjective).
 toward, *ad*.
 tower, *turris*.
 training, *exercitātiō*.
 treachery, *insidiae*.
 tree, *arbor*.
 trial, *iūdicium*.
 tribe, *gēns*.
 tribune, *tribūnus*.
 tribute, *stipendium*.
 troops, *cōpiae*.
 trust, *cōnfidō*.
 try, *cōnor*; *templō*.
 turn away, *iter āvertō*.
 twelve, *duodecim*.
 twenty, *viginti*.
 two, *duo*.
 two hundred, *ducenti*.

U

undergo, *subeō*.
 understand, *intelligō*.
 undertake, *suscipiō*.
 unencumbered, *expeditus*.
 unfavorable, *iniquus*.
 unfriendly, *inimicus*.
 unless, *nisi*.
 unlike, *dissimilis*.
 until, *dum*.
 unwilling: (am) unwilling, *nōlō*.
 urge, *cohortor*.
 use (noun), *ūsus*.
 use (verb), *ūtor*.

V

various, *varius*.
 very (adj.), *ipse*.
 victor, *victor*.
 victory, *victōria*.
 village, *vicus*.
 violence, *vīs*.

W

wage (war), *gerō*.
 wait, *expectō*.
 wall, *mūrus*.
 want, *volō*.
 war, *bellum*.
 warn, *moneō*.
 watch, *vigilia*.
 weapon, *tēlum*.
 well-known, *nōbilis*.
 what, *quis, quae, quid*.
 when, *cum*.
 where, *ubi*.
 whether, *num*.
 whichever, *quicumque*.
 while, *dum*.
 who (interrogative), *quis*; (relative), *quī*.
 why, *cūr*.
 wide, *lātus*.
 width, *lātitudō*.
 willing: (am) willing, *volō*.
 willingness, *voluntās*.
 win, *conciliō*; *potior*.

wing, *cornū*.
 winter quarters, *hiberna*.
 wisdom, *cōnsilium*.
 wish, *volō*.
 with, *cum*.
 withdraw, *discēdō*; *mē*, etc., *recipiō*.
 without, *sine*.
 withstand, *sustineō*.
 woman, *mulier*.
 wonder, *admiror*.
 woods, *silva*.
 word, *verbum*.
 wound, *vulnus*.
 wrong, *iniūria*.
 wrongdoing, *iniūria*.
 wrongfully, *iniuriā*.

Y

year, *annus*.
 yield, *concēdō*.
 you, *tū*.
 young man, *adulēscēns*.
 your (of one person), *tuus*; (of several), *vester*.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Principal parts of *regular* verbs are indicated by the number of the conjugation.

A

a., abbr. for *ante*.

A., abbr. for *Aulus*.

ā, *ab*, prep. with *abl.*, *from*, *away from*; *by*, *on*.

abdō, -ere, **abdidī**, **abditum** (**dō**, *give, put*), *put away*; *hide*; with **sē**, *withdraw*.

abdūcō, -ere, **-dūxī**, **-ductum** (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead away*, *carry off*.

absēns, **absentis** (pres. part. of **absum**, *be away*), *absent*

abstineō, -ēre, **-tinuī**, **-tentum** (**tenēō**, *hold*), *hold one's self from*, *refrain*, *abstain*.

absum, **abesse**, **āfui**, — (**sum**, *be*), *be away from*, *be lacking*; *be of no use to*.

ac, see **atque**.

accēdō, -ere, **-cessī**, **-cessum** (**cēdō**, *go*), *go or come to*; *be added*.

acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* (perf. part. of **accipiō**, *receive*), *pleasing to*, *popular with*.

accidō, -ere, **accidī**, — (**cadō**, *fall*), *fall to*, *happen to*, *be fall*, *happen*.

accipiō, -ere, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum** (**capiō**, *take*), *take to one's self*, *accept*, *receive*; *endure*.

acclivis, -e, *adj.*, *sloping upward*.

acclivitās, **acclivitātis**, *f.* (**acclivis**, *sloping upward*), *upward slope*.

accommodō, *i.*, *fit*, *put on*.

accurrō, -ere, **-cucurrī** or **-currī**, **-cursum**, *run to*, *hurry up to*.

accūsō, *i.*, *accuse*, *blame*, *upbraid*.

acervus, -ī, *m.*, *pile*, *heap*.

aciēs, -ēī, *f.* (cf. **ācer**, *keen*), *keenness*, *edge*; *line of battle*.

ācriter, **ācrius**, **ācerimē**, *adv.* (**ācer**, *keen*), *sharply*; *vigorously*.

ad, prep. with *acc.*, *to*, *towards*; *near*; *for*, *in order to*; *about*; *according to*.

adaequō, *i.* (**aequō**, *make equal*), *make equal to*, *equal*.

adamō, *i.* (**amō**, *love*), *love strongly*, *become much attached to*.

addūcō, -ere, **-dūxī**, **-ductum** (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead to*, *lead up*, *bring*, *influence*.

adeō, -īre, **adiī**, **aditum** (**eō**, *go*), *go to*, *reach*; *get at*.

adequitō, *i.*, *ride to*.

adhibeō, -ēre, **-hibuī**, **-hibitum** (**habeō**, *have*), *have present*; *bring in*, *summon*.

adigō, -ere, **-ēgī**, **-actum** (**agō**, *drive*), *drive at*, *hurl*, *cast*.

aditus, -ūs, *m.* (**adeō**, *go to*), *a going to*, *approach*; *right of approach*.

adiuvō, -āre, **-iuvī**, **-iūtum** (**iuvō**, *help*), *help*, *aid*.

Admagetobriga, -ae, *f.*, *a town in central Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls*.

arcessō, -ere, arcessivī, arcessitum,
summon, invite.

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *steep, difficult.*

ariēs, arietis, m., *battering ram.*

Ariovistus, -ī, m., a king among the Germans.

arma, -ōrum, n., *arms, weapons.*

armātūra, -ae, f. (armō, arm), *armor, equipment.*

armātus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of armō, arm), *armed.*

arroganter, adv., *haughtily.*

arrogantia, -ae, f., *haughtiness, insolence.*

Arvernī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul, rivals of the Aeduans.

arx, arcis, f., *fortress, citadel.*

ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum,
climb up, climb to.

ascēsus, -ūs, m. (ascendō, climb up),
ascent, way up; approach.

asciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scitum, *aprove, receive.*

at, conj., *but, at least.*

atque and ac, conjs., *and, and also;*
after words denoting identity or comparison, *as, than.*

Atrebātēs, -um, m., a tribe of northern Gaul.

attingō, -ere, attingī, attāctum (tangō, touch), *border on; approach, reach.*

auctōritās, auctōritātis, f. (augeō, increase), *influence, prestige.*

auctus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of augeō, increase), *increased, improved.*

audācia, -ae, f. (audāx, bold), *dar- ing, boldness.*

audācter, adv. (audāx, bold), *boldly.*

audeō, -ēre, ausus, sum, dare, ven- ture.

audiō, 4, hear, hear of; audiēns, audientis, pres. part., *hearing, obedient.*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, increase, add to.

Aulerci, -ōrum, m., a strong tribe of central Gaul, divided into four branches.

Aulus, -ī, m., a Roman given name.

Aurunculēius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

aut, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.

autem, conj., *but, on the other hand, besides, moreover.*

auxilium, -ī, n. (augeō, increase), *help; pl., auxiliary troops.*

avāritia, -ae, f., *greed.*

āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum (vertō, turn), *turn away from.*

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, -ae, m., a river of northern Gaul; the modern *Aisne*.

B

Baculus, -ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion.

Baleārēs, -ium, m., inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, off the eastern coast of Spain.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *strange; savage, uncivilized.*

Belgae, -ārum, m., *the Belgians*, a people of northeastern Gaul, occupying one of the three parts of Gaul.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. (bellum, war), *warlike.*

bellō, *i*, *wage war*.

Bellovacī, *-ōrum*, *m.*, a powerful tribe of Belgians.

bellum, *-ī*, *n.*, *war*.

bene, *melius*, *optimē*, *adv.* (*bonus*, *good*), *well*, *properly*.

beneficium, *-ī*, *n.* (*bene*, *well* + *faciō*, *do*), *kindness*, *favor*.

Bibracte, **Bibractis**, *n.*, a town in eastern Gaul, chief city of the Aeduians.

Bibrax, **Bibractis**, *f.*, a town of the Remi in northern Gaul.

bīduum, *-ī*, *n.* (*bis*, *twice* + *diēs*, *day*), *period of two days*.

biennium, *-ī*, *n.* (*bis*, *twice* + *annus*, *year*), *period of two years*.

bīpertitō, *adv.* (*bis*, *twice* + *partior*, *divide*), *in two divisions*.

Biturīgēs, *-um*, *m.*, a tribe of central Gaul.

Bođuōgnātus, *-ī*, *m.*, a leader of the Nervii.

Boiī, *-ōrum*, *m.*, a tribe in central Gaul; a nomadic people, who fought with the Helvetians against Caesar and were placed by him among the Aeduians.

bonitās, **bonitātis**, *f.* (*bonus*, *good*), *goodness*, *fertility*.

bonus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*; *comp.*, *melior*; *superl.*, *optimus*, *good*, *loyal*; *neut.* as a noun, *good*, *profit*; *pl.*, *property*.

bracchium, *-ī*, *n.*, *forearm*, *arm*.

Bratuspantium, *-ī*, *n.*, a town of the Bellovacī in northern Gaul.

brevis, *-e*, *adj.*, *short*.

brevitās, **brevitātis**, *f.* (*brevis*, *short*), *shortness*.

Britannia, *-ae*, *f.*, *Britain*.

C

C., *abbr.* for **Gaius** (*Caius*).

Cabūrus, *-ī*, *m.*, *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who had been presented with Roman citizenship.

cadāver, **cadāveris**, *n.*, *dead body*.

cadō, *-ere*, **cecidī**, **cāsum**, *fall*; *be slain*.

Caemānī, *-ōrum*, *m.*, a tribe of the Belgians.

Caerōsī, *-ōrum*, *m.*, a tribe of the Belgians.

Caesar, **Caesaris**, *m.*, a Roman family name of the Julian gens. *Gaius Julius Caesar*, general, writer, and statesman.

calamitās, **calamitātis**, *f.*, *loss*, *disaster*, *defeat*.

Caletī, *-ōrum* (**Caletēs**, *-um*), *m.*, a tribe of the Belgians.

cālō, **cālōnis**, *m.*, *officer's servant*, *camp follower*.

capiō, *-ere*, **cēpī**, **captum**, *take*, *capture*, *seize*; *deceive*.

captīvus, *-ī*, *m.* (**capiō**, *take*), *prisoner*.

caput, **capitis**, *n.*, *head*; *person*.

Carnutēs, *-um*, *m.*, a tribe of central Gaul.

carrus, *-ī*, *m.*, *cart*, *wagon*.

Cassiānus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, *of Cassius*.

Cassius, *-ī*, the name of a Roman gens. *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul, B.C. 107; killed in battle with the Tigurini.

castellum, *-ī*, *n.*, *fort*, *stronghold*.

Casticus, *-ī*, *m.*, a prominent Sequanian.

castra, *-ōrum*, *n.*, *fortified camp*, *camp*.

cāsus, -ūs, m. (*cadō, fall*), *chance, situation; disaster.*

Catamantaloedis, **Catamantaloedis**, m., a chieftain of the Sequanians.

catēna, -ae, f., *chain.*

Caturigēs, -um, m., a tribe in the western Alps.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason, motive; case; causā*, following a gen., *for the sake of.*

caveō, -ēre, **cāvī**, **cautum**, *be on one's guard.*

cēdō, -ere, **cessī**, **cessum**, *go, go away; give way.*

celeritās, **celeritātis**, f. (*celer, swift*), *speed, quickness.*

celeriter, adv. (*celer, swift*), *swiftly, speedily.*

cēlō, 1, *hide.*

Celtae, -ārum, m., the people in central Gaul, occupying the largest of the three divisions of Gaul.

cēseō, -ēre, **cēnsui**, **cēsum**, *estimate, decide, decree.*

cēnsus, -ūs, m. (*cēseō, estimate*), *enumeration, census.*

centum, indecl. num. adj., *one hundred.*

centuriō, **centuriōnis**, m., *centurion.*

certus, -a, -um, adj., *decided, sure, reliable; certiōrem facere, to inform; certior fierī, to be informed.*

cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., *the remaining; as noun, the rest.*

Ceutronēs, -um, m., a tribe in the western Alps.

cibāria, -ōrum, n. (*cibus, food*), *provisions; molita cibāria, meal, flour.*

Cimberius, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Suebi; brother of Nasua.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany; invaded southern Europe and were defeated by Marius.

cingō, -ere, **cinxi**, **cinctum**, *surround.*

circinus, -ī, m., *a pair of compasses.*

circiter, adv., *round about, nearly.*

circuitus, -ūs, m. (cf. *circumeō, go around*), *winding path, roundabout way, circumference.*

circum, prep. with acc., *around, about, near.*

circumdō, -dare, **dedī**, **datum** (*dō, put*), *place around, surround.*

circumdūcō, -ere, **dūxi**, **ductum** (*dūcō, lead*), *lead or draw around.*

circumiciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iectum** (*iaciō, throw*), *throw or place around.*

circummūniō, 4 (*mūniō, fortify*), *fortify on all sides.*

circumsistō, -ere, **circumstitī**, — (*sistō, stand*), *stand around, surround.*

circumveniō, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventum** (*veniō, come*), *come around, surround, outflank.*

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

citerior, -ius, comp. adj. (*cis, on this side of*), *nearer, hither.*

citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

citrō, adv. (*citrā, on this side of*), *to this side; ultrō citrōque, back and forth.*

cīvitās, **cīvitātis**, f., *citizenship; community, state; citizens.*

clāmōr, **clāmōris**, m., *shout, outcry; din.*

claudō, -ere, **clausī**, **clausum**, *shut, close; agmen claudere, bring up (the rear).*

clēmēntia, -ae, f., *gentleness, mercy.*

cliēns, clientis, m. and f., dependent, vassal, adherent.

coacervō, 1, pile up.

coāctus, -a, -um, perf. part. of cōgō.

coēmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum (emō, buy), purchase.

coepī, coepisse, defective, began.

coērcēō, 2, restrain.

cōgitō, 1, consider carefully, think, plan.

cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, learn, examine.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum (agō, drive), drive together, gather; compel.

cohors, cohortis, f., cohort, guard; praetōria cohors, bodyguard.

cohortātiō, cohortātiōnis, f. (cohortor, urge), urging, encouragement.

cohortor, 1, urge on, cheer.

colligō, 1, bind together.

collis, collis, m, hill.

collocō, 1 (cf. locus, place), station, set.

colloquium, -ī, n. (colloquor, talk with), conference.

colloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum (loquor, talk), converse, discuss.

combūrō, -ere, -bussī, -bustum, burn up.

commeātus, -ūs, m., provisions, supplies.

commemorō, 1, recall, mention, tell.

commēō, 1, go back and forth, visit.

comminus, adv. (manus, hand), hand to hand.

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (mittō, send), bring together, engage; intrust, commit, cause.

commodē, adv. (commodus, convenient), conveniently, easily, advantageously.

commodum, -ī, n. (commodus, convenient), advantage.

commodus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable.

commonefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum (moneō, remind + faciō, make), remind forcibly.

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (moveō, move), move greatly, influence, alarm.

commūniō, 4 (mūniō, fortify), fortify strongly.

commūnis, -e, adj., common, general.

commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, f. (commūtō, change completely), complete change, change.

commūtō, 1, change completely.

1. comparō, 1 (parō, prepare), prepare thoroughly; collect.

2. comparō, 1 (par, equal), compare.

compellō, -ere, compulī, compulsus (pellō, drive), drive together, collect; force.

comperiō, -ire, comperī, compertum, find out, learn.

complector, -ī, -plexus sum, embrace.

compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill completely, fill up; cover, crowd.

complūrēs, -a or -ia, adj. (plūs, more), a great many, several.

comportō, 1 (portō, carry), carry together, collect, bring.

cōnātum, -ī, n. (cōnor, try), attempt.

cōnātus, -ūs, m. (cōnor, try), attempt.

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēdō, go), go away; yield, allow.

concidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum (caedō, cut), cut down; kill, destroy.

conciliō, 1 (concilium, assembly), bring together; win, gain.

concilium, -ī, n., assembly.

conclāmō, *i*, cry out together, shout.
 concurrō, -ere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum (currō, run), run together, hurry, rally.
 concursus, -ūs, *m.* (concurrō, run together), a running together, rally, attack.
 condiciō, condiciōnis, *f.*, condition; agreement, terms.
 condōnō, *i* (dōnō, give), give up; pardon.
 Condūsī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of the Belgians.
 condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (dūcō, lead), lead together, collect; hire.
 cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (ferō, bring), bring together; compare; ascribe to; postpone; sē cōnferre, betake one's self.
 cōnfertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dense, compact.
 cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (faciō, do), complete, make; prepare; muster; wear out.
 cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, trust completely, believe.
 cōnfirmō, *i*, make strong, establish, encourage; state.
 cōnfigō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīctum, contend, fight.
 congregior, congregī, -gressus sum, meet, fight.
 conicio, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (iaciō, throw), throw together, hurl, drive.
 coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum (iungō, join), join together, unite.
 coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, *f.* (coniūrō, swear together), conspiracy.
 coniūrō, *i*, swear together, conspire.
 cōnor, *i*, try.
 conquīrō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitum

(quaerō, seek), seek for carefully, search out.
 cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the same blood; *masc.* as noun, kinsman.
 cōnsciscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scitum, approve, decide upon; sibi mortem cōnsciscere, commit suicide.
 cōnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* (sciō, know), conscious, aware.
 cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum (scribō, write), write together, enroll.
 cōnsensus, -ūs, *m.* (cōnsentiō, agree), agreement, consent.
 cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsū (sentiō, feel), feel with, sympathize; agree.
 cōnsequor, -ī, secūtus sum (sequor, follow), follow up; attain, gain.
 cōnservō, *i* (servō, keep), save, spare.
 Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, the name of a Roman gens. Publius Considius, an officer of Caesar.
 cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, sit down together, settle, encamp.
 cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, council, design, plan, advice; prudence.
 cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* (similis, like), quite similar.
 cōnsistō, -ere, constiti, — (sistō, stand), take a stand, halt, rally; depend upon.
 cōnsōlor, *i*, comfort.
 cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* (cōnspiciō, look at), sight.
 cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, look at, perceive.
 cōnspicor, *i*, observe. see.
 cōnstanter, *adv.*, uniformly.
 cōnstantia, -ae, *f.*, firmness.

cōstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum (*statuō, set up*), *construct, appoint, decide, draw up, halt.*

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *accustom one's self*; in perf. tenses, *be accustomed.*

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis, f. (*cōnsuēscō, accustom one's self*), *custom, habit.*

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., consul, one of two chief magistrates chosen annually by the Romans.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. (*cōnsul, consul*), *consulship.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -sului, -sultum, consul, *deliberate.*

cōnsultum, -ī, n. (*cōnsulō, consult*), *decree, decision.*

cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum (*sūmō, take*), *use up, consume.*

contemptus, -ūs, m., contempt, scorn.

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, *push forward, hasten*; *struggle, fight.*

contentiō, contentiōnis, f. (*contendō, struggle*), *struggle, fight.*

continenter, adv. (*continēns, continuous*), *constantly.*

contineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum (*teneō, hold*), *hold together, hem in*; *restrain, keep*; *occupy.*

cingō, -ere, cingī, -tāctum, *touch upon, border*; *happen to.*

continuus, -a, -um, adj. (*contineō, hold together*), *successive.*

contrā, adv., against, on the other hand; *prep. with acc., opposite, against.*

contrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -trāctum (*trahō, draw*), *gather together*; *assemble, collect.*

contrārius, -a, -um, adj. (*contrā, against*), *opposite, facing.*

contumēlia, -ae, f., indignity, insult.

conveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum (*veniō, come*), *come together, meet*; *impers., be agreed upon.*

conventus, -ūs, m. (*conveniō, come together*), *assembly, conference*; *court (of justice).*

convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum (*vertō, turn*), *turn about, turn*; *with signa, reverse, i.e. wheel about.*

convincō, -ere, -vici, -victum (*vincō, conquer*), *prove.*

convocō, ī (vocō, call), call together, summon.

cōpia, -ae, f., abundance, supply; in pl., *forces, wealth, resources.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj. (*cōpia, abundance*), *well-supplied, rich.*

cōram, adv., in person.

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

cornū, -ūs, n., horn; *wing (of an army).*

corpus, corporis, n., body, person, dead body.

cortex, corticis, m. and f., bark (of a tree).

cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. (*cotidiē, daily*), *daily*; *usual.*

cotidiē, adv. (*cf. diēs, day*), *daily.*

Cotta, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family; see *Aurunculēius.*

Crassus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, one of the first triumvirate; father of *Publius Licinius Crassus* (*adulēscēns*), a lieutenant of Caesar.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., numerous.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, believe, feel sure.

cremō, 1, burn.

creō, 1, create; choose, elect.

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, grow; grow powerful.

Crētēs, -um (acc. Crētas), m., inhabitants of the island of Crete.

cruciātus, -ūs, m., cruelty, torture.

crūdēlītās, crūdēlītātis, f., cruelty.

crūdēliter, adv., cruelly.

cultus, -ūs, m., cultivation, refinement.

cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, with (against), furnished with.

cum, conj.; of time, when, while, after; cum primum, as soon as; of cause, since, as; of concession, although; cum . . . tum, both . . . and; not only . . . but also.

cūnctus, -a, -um, adj., all together, all.

cupidē, adv. (cupidus, eager), eagerly.

cupiditās, cupiditātis, f. (cupidus, eager), eagerness, desire.

cupidus, -a, -um, adj. (cupiō, be eager), eager, desirous.

cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, be eager; wish well to.

cūr, adv., why.

cūra, -ae, f., care, concern.

cūrō, 1 (cūra, care), care for, arrange, cause.

cursus, -ūs, m. (currō, run), running, speed.

cūstōdia, -ae, f. (cūstōs, guard), guard; protection.

cūstōs, cūstōdis, m., guard, watchman.

D

d., abbr. for diem.

damnō, 1, condemn, convict.

dē, prep. with abl., from, down from; during; about; of; in regard to, for; with sūmere, upon; dē improvīsō, suddenly.

dēbeō, 2, owe; ought, must.

dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēdō, go), go from or away, withdraw.

decem, indecl. num. adj., ten; decem novem, nineteen.

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide, decree.

dēcērtō, 1, fight a decisive battle.

dēcīdō, -ere, dēcīdī, — (cadō, fall), fall from or off.

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (decem, ten), tenth.

dēcīpiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (capiō, take), catch; deceive.

dēclārō, 1, disclose, set forth, announce.

dēclīvis, -e, adj., sloping downward.

decumānus, -a, -um, adj.; with porta, rear.

decuriō, decuriōnis, m., decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of ten men.

dēcūrrō, -ere, -cūcurrī or -currī, -cursum (currō, run), run down, hurry down.

dēditicius, -a, -um, adj. (dēdō, surrender), surrendered; masc. as noun, subject, prisoner.

dēditio, dēditionis, f. (dēdō, surrender), surrender.

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum (dō, give), give up or away, surrender.

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (dūcō, lead), lead off, withdraw; bring.

dēfatigō, 1, *tire out completely, exhaust.*

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsūm, *keep off, repel; defend, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, dēfēnsiōnis, f. (dēfendō, *keep off*), *defense, protection.*

dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris, m. (dēfendō, *keep off*), *defender.*

dēferō, -ferre, dētulī, dēlātum (ferō, *bear*), *bring down or from; carry, announce, report, bestow.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., *wearied, worn out.*

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (faciō, *do*), *fail, give out; revolt from, forsake.*

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (iaciō, *throw*), *throw down; dislodge; dis-appoint.*

dēiectus, -ūs, m. (dēiciō, *throw down*), *slope, declivity.*

deinde, adv. (inde, *thence*), *from there; then, in the next place.*

dēleō, -ēre, -lēvī, -lētum, *wipe out, destroy.*

dēliberō, 1, *consider carefully, deliberate.*

dēligō, 1, *bind fast, fasten.*

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose, select.*

dēminuō, -ere, -minuī, -minūtum, *take away, lessen, diminish.*

dēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum (mittō, *send*), *send or let down; bow.*

dēmōnstrō, 1, *show, point out, mention.*

dēmum, adv., *at length, finally.*

dēnegō, 1 (negō, *deny*), *deny, refuse.*

dēnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (cf. decem, *ten*), *ten each.*

dēnique, adv., *at length, at least, finally.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *dense, close.*

dēnūntiō, 1 (nūntiō, *announce*), *announce; threaten.*

dēperdō, -ere, -perdidī, -perditum, *lose.*

dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (pōnō, *place*), *put away, lay aside; place in safety.*

dēpopulor, 1 (populor, *lay waste*), *lay waste, pillage.*

dēprecātor, dēprecātōris, m. (dēprecor, *plead for*), *mediator, intercessor.*

dēprecor, 1 (cf. prex, *prayer*), *beg off, petition against.*

dēserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, *abandon, desert.*

dēsīgnō, 1, *mark out, point out; mean.*

dēsistō, -ere, dēstitī, dēstitum, *abandon, cease, desist from.*

dēspērō, 1 (spērō, *hope*), *give up hope, despair; give up.*

dēspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, *look down upon, despise.*

dēspoliō, 1, *rob, deprive.*

dēstitūō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum (statuō, *set up*), *set aside, abandon, forsake.*

dēstringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum, *draw, unsheathe.*

dēsum, deesse, dēfui, — (sum, *be*), *be lacking, fail.*

dēsuper, adv., *from above.*

deterior, -ius, comp. adj., *worse; less.*

dēterreō, 2, *frighten off, deter, prevent.*

dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum (trahō, *draw*), *draw off, remove.*

dētrīmentum, -ī, n., *loss, harm*.
deus, -ī; nom. pl., **dīi**; dat. and abl. pl., **dīs**, m., *god*.
dēvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum (**vehō**, *carry*), *bring down*.
dēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (**veniō**, *come*), *come down; come to, reach*.
dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *on the right hand*; fem. as noun, *right hand*.
diciō, diciōnis, f., *sway, control*.
dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum, *say, speak, tell; appoint; plead*.
dictiō, dictiōnis, f. (**dicō**, *say*), *with causae, pleading*.
dictum, -ī, n. (**dicō**, *say*), *saying, word; command*.
diēs, -ēī, m. and f., *day; time; ad diem, punctually*.
differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum (**ferō**, *bear*), *bear apart; differ*.
difficilis, -e; superl., **difficillimus**, adj. (**facilis**, *easy*), *difficult*.
difficultās, difficultātis, f. (**difficilis**, *difficult*), *difficulty, trouble*.
dignitās, dignitātis, f., *worthiness, standing, dignity*.
diligenter, adv., *carefully, scrupulously*.
diligentia, -ae, f., *carefulness, painstaking, care*.
dīmētiōr, -īrī, -mēnsus sum (**mētiōr**, *measure*), *measure out or off*.
dīmīcō, ī, *fight, contend*.
dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (**mittō**, *send*), *send in different directions, dispatch; send away, dismiss, adjourn*.
dīrimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum (**emō**, *take*), *break off*.
dīripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tear in pieces; plunder*.

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (**cēdō**, *go*), *go apart or away, depart, withdraw*.
discessus, -ūs, m. (**discēdō**, *go away*), *departure; withdrawal*.
disciplīna, -ae, f. (cf. **discō**, *learn*), *training*.
discō, -ere, didicī, —, *learn, be taught*.
disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (**iaciō**, *throw*), *scatter; break*.
dispergō, -ere, -spersi, -spersum, *scatter, disperse*.
dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (**pōnō**, *place*), *place at intervals, distribute*.
dissipō, ī, *scatter, break up*.
distineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (**teneō**, *hold*), *keep apart, separate*.
diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv., *for a long time, long; quam diū, as long as; diūtius, longer, too long*.
diurnus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. **diēs**, *day*), *of the day, by day*.
diūturnitās, diūturnitātis, f. (**diūturnus**, *long*), *long duration, length*.
diūturnus, -a, -um, adj. (**diū**, *long*), *long, lasting*.
dīversus, -a, -um, adj., *turned away; separated; different*.
dīves, dīvitis, adj., *wealthy, rich; superl., dītissimus*.
Dīviciācus, -ī, m. 1. A chieftain of the Aeduans and friend of Caesar. 2. A chieftain of the SueSSIONES.
Dīvicō, Dīvicōnis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetians.
dīvidō, -ere, -visī, -visum, *divide, separate; dīvisus, -a, -um, perf. part. as adj., *divided*.*

dīvinus, -a, -um, adj., *of the gods, divine.*

dō, dare, **dedī**, datum, *give, deliver, offer, concede, grant; with inter sē, exchange.*

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum, *show, instruct, teach, explain.*

doleō, 2, *suffer, grieve; be annoyed.*

dolor, doloris, m. (**doleō**, *suffer*), *distress, grief; vexation.*

dolus, -ī, m., *deception, cunning, trickery.*

domesticus, -a, -um, adj. (**domus**, *home*), *of home, native.*

domicilium, -ī, n. (**domus**, *home*), *dwelling place, residence.*

dominor, 1, *lord it, be master.*

domus, -ūs, f., *house, home; domī, at home; domō, from home.*

dōnō, 1, *give, present.*

Dubis, Dubis, m., *a river in eastern Gaul, branch of the Arar.*

dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, f. (**dubitō**, *doubt*), *doubt; hesitation.*

dubitō, 1 (**dubius**, *doubtful*), *doubt, be uncertain; hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**duo**, *two* + **centum**, *hundred*), *two hundred.*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead, conduct, bring; draw, put off, prolong; think; with in mātrīmōnium, marry.*

dum, conj., *while, until.*

Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, m., *a chieftain of the Aeduans, brother of Diviciacus.*

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two.*

duodecim, indecl. num. adj. (**duo**, *two* + **decem**, *ten*), *twelve.*

duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**duo** + **decim**, *twelve*), *twelfth.*

duodēvigintī, indecl. num. adj. (**duo**, *two* + **dē**, *from* + **viginti**, *twenty*), *eighteen.*

duplex, duplicis, adj., *twofold, double.*

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., *hard, rough, difficult.*

dux, ducis, m. and f. (**dūcō**, *lead*), *leader, commander, guide.*

E

ē, ex, prep. with abl., *from, out of, after, on, as a result of, according to.*

Eburōnēs, -um, m., *a tribe of Belgic Gaul.*

ēditus, -a, -um, adj. (**ēdō**, *set forth*), *elevated, lofty.*

ēdō, -ere, ēdidī, ēditum (**dō**, *give*), *set forth, give out; inflict.*

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead out or forth.*

effēminō, 1, *make feeble, enervate.*

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum (**ferō**, *bear*), *carry out, take along; dis-close.*

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (**faciō**, *do*), *work out, bring about, make.*

ego, meī, pers. pron., *I; pl., nōs, nostrum or nostrī, we.*

ēgredior, **ēgredi**, **ēgressus sum**, *go out, depart, make a sally.*

ēgregiē, adv. (**ēgregius**, *extraordinary*), *remarkably.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., *extraordinary, unusual.*

ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *pick, choose.*

ēmigrō, 1, *go away, move away.*

ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (*mittō, send*), *send forth, throw away; cast, hurl.*

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy, purchase.*

ēnāscor, -ī, -nātus sum (*nāscor, be born*), *grow out, sprout forth.*

enim, conj., *for, in fact.*

ēnūntiō, ī (*nūntiō, tell*), *disclose, make known; give out information.*

eō, adv. (*is, this, that*), *there, to that place.*

eō, ire, ivī or ii, itum, *go, march, advance.*

eōdem, adv. (*īdem, the same*), *to the same place or point.*

eques, equitis, m. (*equus, horse*), *horseman, cavalryman; knight.*

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. (*eques, horseman*), *of cavalry, cavalry.*

equitātus, -ūs, m. (cf. *equus, horse*), *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse.*

ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *snatch away, take away; save.*

ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis, f., *a bursting forth, sally, sortie.*

Ēsuvii, -ōrum, m., *a tribe in north-western Gaul.*

et, conj., *and; et . . . et, both . . . and.*

etiam, conj., *and also, even, yet, furthermore; nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.*

etsi, conj. (*et, and + si, if*), *even if, although.*

ēvellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, *pull out.*

ēventus, -ūs, m. (cf. *veniō, come*), *outcome, result.*

ex, see **ē.**

exagitō, ī (*agitō, frequentative of*

agō, drive), *drive out; disturb, harass.*

exanimō, ī, *exhaust.*

exaudiō, 4 (*audiō, hear*), *hear from a distance; hear distinctly.*

excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (*cēdō, go*), *go out or away, withdraw.*

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (*capiō, take*), *take out; receive; sustain.*

excursiō, excursiōnis, f. (cf. *currō, run*), *a running out, sally, sortie.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *example, precedent.*

exeō, -ire, exiī, exitum (*eō, go*), *go out, withdraw.*

exerceō, 2, *train, exercise.*

exercitātiō, exercitātiōnis, f. (cf. *exerceō, train*), *training, practice; skill.*

exercitātus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. *exerceō, train*), *trained, skilled.*

exercitus, -ūs, m. (*exerceō, train*), *trained body of men, army.*

exiguitās, exiguitātis, f., *scantiness, shortness.*

eximius, -a, -um, adj., *choice, excellent.*

existimātiō, existimātiōnis, f. (*existimō, estimate*), *judgment, opinion.*

existimō, ī, *estimate, judge, deem, think, believe.*

expeditus, -a, -um, adj. (*expediō, set free*), *unencumbered, in light marching order; easy; disengaged.*

expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsū (*pellō, drive*), *drive out, banish.*

experior, -iri, -pertus sum, *try, test.*

explōrātōr, explōrātōris, m. (*explōrō, search*), *searcher, scout, spy.*

explōrō, ī, *search, investigate, reconnoiter.*

exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum (*premō, press*), *press out, extort.*
expugnō, ī (*pugnō, fight*), *take by storm, capture.*
exquirō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitum (*quaerō, search*), *search out; learn by inquiry.*
exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum (*sequor, follow*), *follow out; enforce.*
expectō, ī (*spectō, look at*), *look out for, expect, await.*
exstruō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctum, *pile up, build, rear.*
extrā, prep. with acc., *outside of, beyond.*
extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **exterus, exterior**; *outermost, farthest, last; end of.*
exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, *burn up.*

F

Fabius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, conqueror of the Gauls in B.C. 121.
facile, facilius, facillimē, adv. (*facilis, easy*), *easily.*
facilis, -e, faciliior, facillimus, adj. (*faciō, do*), *easy to do, easy.*
facinus, facinoris, n. (*faciō, do*), *deed; misdeed, crime.*
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; pass. fiō, fierī, factus sum, do, make, build, perform; cause, furnish; fight; certiōrem facere, inform; facere verba, speak; vim facere, offer violence.
factiō, factiōnis, f., *party, faction.*
factum, -ī, n. (*faciō, do*), *deed, act, action.*

facultās, facultātis, f., *power, chance; resources.*
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, *cheat, deceive, disappoint.*
famēs, famis, f., *hunger, famine.*
familia, -ae, f., *household; body of servants or retainers.*
familiāris, -e, adj. (*familia, household*), *personal, private*; as a noun, *close friend*; with *rēs*, *private property.*
fās, n., indecl., *right, divine right.*
fastigātus, -a, -um, adj., *sloping.*
fātum, -ī, n., *lot, fate.*
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, *favor.*
felicitās, felicitātis, f., *good fortune, success.*
ferāx, ferācis, adj. (*ferō, bear*), *fruitful, fertile.*
ferē, adv., *almost, about.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring, carry; endure; inflict; with molestē, be vexed; signa ferre, advance.*
ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, spear point.*
fertilitās, fertilitātis, f. (*fertilis, fruitful*), *fruitfulness, fertility.*
ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, fierce, savage.*
fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, confidence; fidelity; promise; protection.*
filia, -ae, dat. and abl. pl., filiābus, f., *daughter.*
filius, -ī, m., *son.*
figō, -ere, finxī, fictum, *form, shape, devise; control.*
finis, finis, m., *end, limit*; pl., *borders, territory.*
finitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring, adjoining*; masc. as noun, *neighbor.*

fiō, fieri, factus sum, see **faciō**, *be made, be done, be brought about; happen; become.*

firmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, sturdy, brave.*

Flaccus, -i, m., the name of a Roman family. *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, propraetor of the province of Gaul, B.C. 83.

flāgitō, i, *demand.*

fleō, -ēre, flēvi, flētum, *weep.*

flētus, -ūs, m. (**fleō**, *weep*), *weeping.*

flōrēns, flōrentis, adj., *blooming, flourishing.*

flūmen, flūminis, n. (**fluō**, *flow*), *river.*

fluō, -ere, fluxi, fluxum, *flow.*

fore = **futūrus esse**, see **sum**.

fors, fortis, f., *chance*; abl. as adv., *by chance.*

fortis, -e, adj., *brave, strong.*

fortiter, adv. (**fortis**, *brave*), *bravely.*

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. (**fortis**, *brave*), *bravery, courage.*

fortūna, -ae, f. (**fors**, *chance*), *fortune, luck, chance; lot, condition; property.*

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench, moat.*

frangō, -ere, frēgi, frāctum, *break; crush, discourage.*

frāter, frātris, m., *brother.*

frāternus, -a, -um, adj. (**frāter**, *brother*), *brotherly, of brother.*

fremitus, -ūs, m., *uproar, din.*

frīgus, frīgoris, n., *cold, frost.*

frōns, frontis, f., *forehead, front.*

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. **frūx**, *fruit*), *fruitful, productive.*

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. (**frūmentum**, *grain*), *of grain; productive; with rēs, grain supply.*

frūmentum, -i, n., *grain, corn; pl., standing grain.*

frūx, frūgis, f., *fruit; pl., crops.*

fuga, -ae, f., *flight, retreat.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgi, — (**fuga**, *flight*), *flee.*

fugitivus, -a, -um, adj. (**fugiō**, *flee*), *fleeing*; masc. as noun, *deserter.*

fūmus, -i, m., *smoke.*

funditor, funditōris, m., *slinger.*

furor, furōris, m., *rage, madness.*

futūrus, fut. part. of **sum**.

G

Gabīnius, -i, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Aulus Gabinius*, a consul.

Gaius, -i, m., a Roman given name.

Galba, -ae, m., a king of the Suesiones.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*, corresponding in general to France.

Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic.

Gallus, -i, m., *a Gaul.*

Garumna, -ae, m., a river of southwestern Gaul.

Genava, -ae, f., the city of Geneva.

generātim, adv. (**genus**, *tribe*), *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race, clan.*

genus, generis, n., *tribe, race; kind, nature.*

Germānus, -a, -um, *German*; generally masc. pl., *the Germans.*

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, *bear, carry; carry on, wage; manage; pass., be done, occur; rēs gestae, achievements.*

gladius, -i, m., *sword.*

glōria, -ae, f., *fame, reputation, glory.*

glōrior, *ī* (*glōria*, fame), *boast, glory.*
Graecus, -a, -um, *adj., Greek.*

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe in the western Alps.

grandis, -e, *adj., large.*

grātia, -ae, *f.* (*grātus*, pleasing), *favor, good will, popularity; grātiam referre, show gratitude; grātiās agere, thank.*

grātulātiō, *grātulātiōnis*, *f.* (*grātulor*, show joy), *a show of joy, rejoicing, thanksgiving.*

grātulor, *ī* (*grātus*, pleasing), *show joy; congratulate.*

grātus, -a, -um, *adj., pleasing, acceptable; neut. as noun, favor.*

gravis, -e, *adj., heavy, severe.*

graviter, *adv.* (*gravis*, heavy), *heavily, seriously, bitterly.*

gravor, *ī* (*gravis*, heavy), *be burdened; be unwilling.*

H

habeō, *2*, *have, hold, keep; consider; regard; with ōrātiōnem, deliver.*

Harūdēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe in southwestern Germany.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian; as a noun, Helvētius, -ī, m., generally masc. pl., the Helvetians, a tribe that occupied what is now Switzerland.*

hīberna, -ōrum, *n.*, *winter quarters.*

hīc, *haec*, *hoc*, *demonst. pron., this; he, she, it; abl., on this account.*

hiemō, *ī*, *pass the winter.*

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, *Spain.*

homō, *hominis*, *m. and f.*, *human being, man.*

honestus, -a, -um (*honōs*, honor), *honorable; respected, distinguished.*

honōrificus, -a, -um (*honōs*, honor + *faciō*, make), *conferring honor.*

honōs, *honōris*, *m.*, *honor, respect; honorable position.*

hōra, -ae, *f.*, *hour.*

horreō, -ēre, *horruī*, —, *tremble at, shudder at.*

hortor, *ī*, *encourage, urge.*

hospes, *hospitis*, *m. and f.*, *host; friend, guest-friend.*

hospitium, -ī, *n.* (*hospes*, host), *feeling of hospitality, friendship.*

hostis, *hostis*, *m. and f.*, *public enemy, foe.*

hūc, *adv.* (*cf. hīc*, this), *to this place.*

hūmānitās, *hūmānitātis*, *f.*, *humanity; refinement, culture.*

I

iaceō, -ēre, *iacuī*, —, *lie, lie dead.*

iaciō, -ere, *iēcī*, *iactum*, *throw, hurl; throw up, construct.*

iaciō, *ī* (*frequentative of iaciō*, throw), *toss about; talk about, discuss.*

iam, *adv.*, *already, now; at last; with negative, no longer.*

ibi, *adv.*, *in that place, there.*

Iccius, -ī, *m.*, a chieftain of the Remi.

ictus, -ūs, *m.*, *blow, stroke.*

Id., see *Idūs*.

idem, *eadem*, *idem*, *demonst. pron.* (*is, this, that*), *this same, the same.*

identidem, *adv.* (*idem*, the same), *repeatedly.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *fit, suitable, proper.*

Idūs, *Iduum*, *f. pl.*, *the Ides*, the 15th of March, May, July, and October; the 13th of the other months.

ignis, *ignis*, *m.*, *fire.*

ignōrō, *ī*, not know, be ignorant; overlook.

ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, forgive, pardon.

ille, *illa*, *illud*, demonstr. pron., *that*, *that one*; *he*, *she*, *it*.

illic, adv. (*ille*, *that*), *in that place*, *there*.

Illyricum, -ī, *n.*, a Roman province on the east shore of the Adriatic.

immortālis, -e, adj. (cf. *mors*, *death*), *immortal*.

impedimentum, -ī, *n.* (*impediō*, *hinder*), *hindrance*; pl., *baggage* (of an army), *baggage train*.

impediō, *4* (cf. *pēs*, *foot*), *hinder*, *obstruct*, *delay*.

impeditus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of *impediō*, *hinder*), *hindered*, *delayed*, *burdened*; *at a disadvantage*.

impellō, -ere, *impulī*, *impulsum* (*pellō*, *drive*), *drive on*, *incite*, *impel*, *influence*.

impendeō, -ēre, —, —, *overhang*.

imperātor, *imperātōris*, *m.* (*imperō*, *command*), *commander in chief*, *general*.

imperātum, -ī, *n.* (*imperō*, *command*), *command*, *order*.

imperitus, -a, -um (*peritus*, *experienced*), *inexperienced*, *ignorant*.

imperium, -ī, *n.* (*imperō*, *command*), *command*, *dictation*; *authority*, *supreme power*; *supremacy*, *dominion*.

imperō, *1*, *demand from*, *enjoin upon*; *command*, *order*, *instruct*.

impetrō, *1*, *obtain*, *obtain one's request*, *gain*.

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, *attack*, *charge*; *fury*, *force*.

implōrō, *1*, *beseech*, *beg*, *entreat*.

impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (*pōnō*, *place*), *place on*, *place*; *impose*.

importō, *1* (*portō*, *carry*), *bring in*, *import*.

imprimis, adv. (*prīmus*, *first*), *particularly*, *especially*.

improbū, -a, -um, adj., *wicked*, *malicious*.

imprōvisō, adv. (*imprōvisus*, *unexpected*), *suddenly*.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj. (*prōvideō*, *foresee*), *unforeseen*, *unexpected*; *dē imprōvisō*, *unexpectedly*.

impugnō, *1* (*pugnō*, *fight*), *fight against*, *attack*.

impūnē, adv. (cf. *poena*, *punishment*), *without punishment*.

impūnitās, *impūnitātis*, *f.* (cf. *poena*, *punishment*), *freedom from punishment*, *impunity*.

in, prep. with acc. and abl.; with acc., (a) with verbs of motion, *into*, *to*; *against*; *among*; *into the country of*, *towards*; (b) with expressions of time, *for*, *during*; (c) other uses, *toward*, *with regard to*, *over*; with abl., *in*, *within*, *on*, *among*, *over*, *in the case of*.

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum, *set on fire*.

incidō, -ere, *incidī*, — (*cadō*, *fall*), *fall upon*, *fall in with*, *meet*; *happen*.

incidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (*caedō*, *cut*), *cut into*, *notch*.

incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (*capiō*, *take*), *undertake*, *begin*, *commence*.

incitō, *1*, *arouse*, *urge on*.

incolō, -ere, -colui, —, inhabit, live in; live, dwell.

incolumis, -e, adj., unhurt, unharmed, safe.

incommodum, -ī, n., inconvenience; disaster, loss, defeat.

incrēdibilis, -e, adj. (cf. crēdō, believe), incredible, extraordinary.

increpitō, i, blame, upbraid, abuse.

incursus, -ūs, m, attack, onset.

incūsō, i (cf. causa, case, charge), bring a charge against; reproach, blame.

inde, adv., from that place, from there; then.

indiciū, -ī, n., information; per indicium, through spies.

indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum (dicō, say), proclaim, appoint.

indignitās, indignitātis, f. (dignitās, worth), unworthiness; insult, outrage.

indīligenter, adv. (diligenter, carefully), carelessly.

indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (dūcō, lead), lead on, influence; cover.

indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultum, favor.

induō, -ere, indui, indūtum, put on.

ineō, -īre, iniī, initum (eō, go), enter upon, begin, undertake.

inermis, -e, adj. (arma, arms), unarmed.

inferō, -ferre, intuli, illātum (ferō, bear), bring in or into; wage upon, inflict; offer; cause; signa inferre, advance, charge.

inferus, -a, -um, adj., low; comp., inferior, -ius, lower; superl., infimus or imus, -a, -um, lowest, lowest part of, bottom.

inflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum, bend down, bend.

īnfluō, -ere, -flūxī, -fluxum (fluō, flow), flow into, empty into.

ingēns, ingentis, adj., huge, enormous, large.

ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum, enter.

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (iaciō, throw), throw into or upon; inspire, infuse.

inimicus, -a, -um, adj. (amicus, friendly), unfriendly, hostile; masc. as noun, enemy.

iniquitās, iniquitātis, f. (iniquus, unequal), unevenness, inequality.

iniquus, -a, -um, adj. (aequus, equal, just), unjust, unequal; unfavorable.

initium, -ī, n. (ineō, go into), beginning.

iniūria, -ae, f. (iūs, right), wrong, injustice, injury, outrage; abl. as adv., wrongfully.

iniussū, abl. of iniussus, -ūs, m. (iubeō, order), without command or orders.

innāscor, -ī, -nātus sum (nāscor, be born), be born in, spring up, arise.

innitor, -ī, -nixus sum (nitor, rest on), lean upon.

innocentia, -ae, f., integrity, uprightness.

inopia, -ae, f., lack, need, scarcity.

inopināns, opinantis, adj., not expecting, off one's guard.

īnsciēns, inscientis, adj. (sciō, know), not knowing, unaware, ignorant.

īnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum (sequor, follow), follow up, follow, pursue.

- insidiae**, -ārum, f., *ambush, ambuscade; treachery; cunning.*
- insigne**, **insignis**, n. (**insignis**, *marked*), *mark, sign; ornament.*
- insignis**, **insignis**, adj. (cf. **signum**, *mark*), *marked; distinguished, remarkable.*
- insiliō**, -īre, -siluī, -sultum, *leap upon.*
- insistō**, -ere, **institi**, —, *step upon.*
- insolenter**, adv., *haughtily, arrogantly.*
- instar**, indecl. n., *image; with gen., like.*
- instituō**, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum (**statuō**, *set up*), *put in place, draw up; train, educate.*
- institutum**, -ī, n. (**instituō**, *put in place*), *habit, custom, practice.*
- instō**, -āre, **institi**, **instātum**, *stand near, come near, approach.*
- instruō**, -ere, -struxi, -strūctum, *build upon, erect; draw up, arrange.*
- intellegō**, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *know, understand, perceive; find out, learn.*
- inter**, prep. with acc., *between, among, in the midst of; during; inter sē dare, exchange; inter sē differre, differ from each other.*
- intercēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (**cēdō**, *go*), *go or come between, be between, intervene.*
- intercipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (**capiō**, *take*), *take between; intercept.*
- interclūdō**, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum (**claudō**, *close*), *shut off, cut off.*
- interdicō**, -ere, -dixi, -dictum (**dicō**, *speak*), *forbid, exclude, banish.*
- interdiū**, adv. (cf. **diēs**, *day*), *by day.*
- interdum**, adv. (**dum**, *while*), *at times, sometimes.*
- intereā**, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*
- interficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (**faciō**, *make*), *kill, slay.*
- intericiō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (**iaciō**, *throw*), *hurl between, place among; in pass., intervene.*
- interim**, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*
- interior**, -ius, comp. adj., *inner; superl., intimus, innermost.*
- intermittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum (**mittō**, *send*), *leave off, cease, stop.*
- interneciō**, **interneciōnis**, f. (**necō**, *kill*), *extermination, annihilation.*
- interpellō**, I, *interrupt, hinder, interfere with.*
- interpōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positum (**pōnō**, *place*), *place between, interpose; propose.*
- interpres**, **interpretis**, m. and f., *interpreter.*
- interscindō**, -ere, **interscidi**, **interscissum**, *cut in two, cut down; destroy.*
- intersum**, -esse, **interfui**, — (**sum**, *be*), *be between, intervene; concern.*
- intervallum**, -ī, n. (**vāllum**, *ram-part*), *interval; distance.*
- intexō**, -ere, -texui, -textum, *weave in, interweave.*
- intrā**, prep. with acc., *within, inside.*
- intrō**, I, *go into, enter.*
- intrōducō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead into, bring into.*
- intrōmittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum

(mittō, send), send in; let in, admit.

intrōsurs, adv., within.

intueor, 2 (tueor, look), look at, gaze upon.

inūsītātus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. ūtor, use), unusual, uncommon, strange.

inūtilis, -e, adj. (cf. ūtor, use), useless, worthless.

inveniō. -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (veniō, come), come upon, find; learn.

inveterāscō, -ere, -veterāvī, — (cf. vetus, old), grow old; become fixed.

invictus, -a, -um, adj. (vincō, conquer), unconquered; unconquerable.

invidēō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum (videō, see), look askance at; envy.

invītō, 1, invite, ask.

invītus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling; sē invītō, against his will.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius, intens. pron., self, myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, them; very; in genitive, own.

irācundus, -a, -um, adj., irritable, passionate.

irrideō, -ēre, -risī, -risum, laugh at, mock.

irridiculē, adv., without wit.

is, ea, id, demonstr. pron., this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; such; in genitive, his, her, hers, its, their.

ita, adv., so, in such a way, thus; just as.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy.

itaque, conj. (ita, so + que, and), and so, therefore, accordingly.

item, adv., in like manner, likewise, besides.

iter, itineris, n. (eō, go), march, journey, progress; route, road; line of march; iter facere, march; magnum iter, forced march.

iterum, adv., again, a second time.

iuba, -ae, f., mane (of a horse).

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, order, command.

iūdicium, -ī, n. (cf. iūdicō, judge), court, trial; opinion, judgment.

iūdicō, 1, judge, decide; think.

iugum, -ī, n. (iungō, join), yoke; ridge, height.

iumentum, -ī, n. (iungō, join), draft animal, beast of burden, pack animal.

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iunctum, join.

Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura mountains.

iūrō, 1 (iūs, right), take oath, swear.

iūs, iūris, n., right, law, justice.

iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, n. (iūs, right and iūrō, swear), oath.

iūstitia, -ae, f. (iūstus, just), justice, fairness; uprightness.

iūstus, -a, -um, adj. (iūs, right), just, proper.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, help, assist.

iūxtā, adv., next, near.

K

Kal., abbr. for Kalendae, -ārum, f., the Calends, the first day of each Roman month.

L

L., abbr. for Lucius, a Roman given name.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. Titus Labienus, a favorite officer of Caesar.

- labor, labōris, m.,** *toil, effort, hard-ship.*
labōrō, 1 (labor, toil), *toil, strive for; be hard pressed.*
laccessō, -ere, laccessīvi, laccessitum, *harass, provoke, annoy; attack.*
lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.*
lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*
lapis, lapidis, m., *stone.*
largior, 4 (cf. largiter, generously), *give generously; bribe.*
largiter, adv., *generously, much;*
**largiter posse, have great influence.
largitiō, largitiōnis, f. (largior, give generously), *liberality; bribery.*
lassitudō, lassitudinis, f., *weariness, exhaustion.*
lātē, adv. (lātus, broad), *broadly, widely.*
lateō, -ēre, latuī, —, lie hid.
lātitudō, lātitudinis, f. (lātus, broad), *breadth.*
Latobrigī, -ōrum, m., *a Gallic tribe in western Germany.*
lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide, extensive.*
latus, lateris, n., *side, flank (of an army).*
laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory.*
laxō, 1, widen, extend, open.
lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, f. (cf. lēgātus, ambassador), *embassy, commission.*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador, commissioner, envoy; lieutenant, staff-officer.*
legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion.*
legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. (legiō, legion), *belonging to a legion, legionary.*
Lemannus, -ī, m., *Lake Geneva.*
lēnitās, lēnitātis, f. (cf. lēniter, smoothly), *smoothness, gentleness.*
lēniter, adv., *smoothly, gently, gradually.*
Leucī, -ōrum, m., *a tribe of eastern Gaul.*
levis, -e, adj., *light (in weight).*
levitās, levitātis, f. (levis, light), *lightness; fickleness.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*
libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly.*
liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free; undisputed.*
liberalitās, liberalitātis, f. (cf. liber, free), *generosity.*
liberaliter, adv. (cf. liber, free), *generously, kindly.*
liberē, adv. (liber, free), *freely.*
liberī, -ōrum, m. (liber, free), *children (of free parents).*
libertās, libertātis, f. (liber, free), *freedom, liberty.*
liceor, 2, bid (at an auction).
licet, -ēre, licuit, impers., *it is lawful, permitted, allowed.*
Lingonēs, -um, m., *a tribe in east central Gaul.*
lingua, -ae, f., *tongue; language.*
linter, lintris, f., *small boat, skiff.*
Liscus, -ī, m., *a magistrate of the Aeduans.*
littera, -ae, f., *letter (of the alphabet); pl., letter, epistle.*
locus, -ī, m., pl. loca, -ōrum, n., *place, position, locality; room, chance, opportunity; condition, state.*
longē, adv. (longus, long), *far, at a distance; by far.*
longinquus, -a, -um, adj. (cf. longus, long), *long continued.***

longitūdō, longitūdinis, f. (*longus, long*), *length*.

longus, -a, -um, adj., *long; distant; extended*.

loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *speak, talk*.

lūna, -ae, f., *moon*.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light; primā lūce, at daybreak*.

lūxuria, -ae, f., *luxury*.

M

M., abbr. for **Mārcus**.

māchinātiō, māchinātiōnis, f., *contrivance, machine; engine*.

magis, comp. adv., see **magnopere**.

magistrātus, -ūs, m., *public office, magistracy, administration; public officer, magistrate*.

magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f. (*magnus, great*), *greatness, size, extent*.

magnopere, adv. (*magnus, great*), *greatly, much, earnestly; comp., magis, more, rather; superl., maximē, most, very, especially*.

magnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large, serious; comp., maior, -ius; superl., maximus, -a, -um*.

maior, maius, comp. of magnus, *greater; maior nātū, elder; masc. pl. as a noun, ancestors*.

male, adv., *badly, adversely; comp., peius, worse; superl., pessimē, worst*.

maleficiū, -ī, n. (*male, badly + faciō, do*), *evil deed, mischief, harm, outrage*.

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, evil; comp., peior; superl., pessimus*.

mandātum, -ī, n. (*mandō, intrust*), *instructions, order, command, message*.

mandō, ī (*manus, hand + dō, give*), *give over, intrust; command, direct, instruct*.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm, remain, stay; in eō manēre, abide by that.

manipulus, -ī, m., *company* (of soldiers); *maniple* (third of a cohort).

mānsuētūdō, mānsuētūdinis, f., *gentleness, kindness*.

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; force, band*.

Marcomannī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany.

Mārcus, -ī, m., a Roman given name.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj., *of the sea, maritime*.

Marius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Gaius Marius*, a famous Roman general; defeated the Cimbri and the Teutoni.

matara, -ae, f., *javelin*.

māter, mātris, f., *mother; mātres familiae, married women, matrons*.

mātrimōnium, -ī, n. (*māter, mother*), *marriage; in mātrimōnium dare, give in marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, to take in marriage, marry*.

Matrona, -ae, m., a river in northern Gaul; the modern *Marne*.

mātūrē, mātūrius, mātūrrimē, adv. (*mātūrus, ripe*), *early, quickly*.

mātūrō, ī (*mātūrus, ripe*), *ripen; hasten*.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, early; comp., mātūrior; superl., mātūrrimus*.

maximē, adv., see **magnopere**.

maximus, -a, -um, adj., see **agnus**.

Maximus, -i, m., see **Fabius**.

mediocriter, adv. (cf. **medius**, in the middle of), moderately, in an ordinary degree.

medius, -a, -um, adj., in the middle of, middle of, mid-.

memoria, -ae, f., memory, recollection, tradition.

Menapii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.

mēns, **mentis**, f., mind; thought.

mēnsis, **mēnsis**, m., month.

mercātor, **mercātōris**, m., trader, merchant.

mercēs, **mercēdis**, f., price, hire, pay.

mereor, 2, deserve, earn.

meridiēs, -ēi, m. (**medius**, mid- + **diēs**, day), midday, noon.

meritum, -i, n. (**mereor**, deserve), desert, merit.

Messāla, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. **Marcus Valerius Messala**, consul B.C. 61.

mētiōr, -irī, **mēnsus sum**, measure, deal out.

Metius, -i, m., **Marcus Metius**, a friend of **Arivistus**.

miles, **militis**, m., soldier.

milia, see **mille**.

militāris, -e, adj. (**miles**, soldier), of a soldier, military; **rēs militāris**, art of war.

mille, indecl. num. adj., a thousand; pl. as noun., **milia**, **mīlium**, n., thousands; **milia passuum**, thousands of paces, miles.

minimē, superl. adv., see **parum**.

minimum, adv. (**minimus**, least), very little; **minimum posse**, have very little power.

minimus, -a, -um, superl. adj., see **parvus**.

minor, **minus**, comp. adj., see **parvus**.

minuō, -ere, **minui**, **minūtum** (**minus**, less), lessen, diminish.

minus, comp. adv., see **parum**.

mīror, 1, wonder.

mīrus, -a, -um (**mīror**, wonder), wonderful, strange; **mīrum** in **modum**, astonishingly.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., **miserior**, **miserrimus**, unhappy, wretched, miserable.

misericordia, -ae, f., pity, mercy.

miseror, 1 (**miser**, unhappy), lament, bemoan, deplore.

mittō, -ere, **mīsi**, **missum**, send; hurl.

mōbilitās, **mōbilitātis**, f., changeableness, fickleness.

modo, adv. (abl. of **modus**, measure), only; **nōn modo** . . . **sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.

modus, -i, m., measure, manner, kind; **quem ad modum**, as, how.

moenia, **moenium**, n., city walls, walls.

molestē, adv., with annoyance; **molestē ferre**, be vexed.

molimentum, -i, n., exertion, trouble.

molō, -ere, **molui**, **molitum**, grind.

moneō, 2, warn, advise, instruct.

mōns, **montis**, m., mountain.

mora, -ae, f., delay.

Morini, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians. **moriōr**, **mori** or **moriōr**, **mortuus sum** (**mors**, death), die.

moror, 1 (**mora**, delay), delay, wait; hinder.

mors, **mortis**, f., death.

mōs, **mōris**, m., manner, custom.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move, stir, remove; with castra, break.*
mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f. (**multus**, *much*), *great number, multitude, crowd; the common people.*
multō, *adv.* (**multus**, *much*), *by far, much.*
multum, plūs, plūrimum, *adv.* (**multus**, *much*), *much, very greatly.*
multus, -a, -um, adj., *much; pl., many; masc. pl. as noun, many persons; neut. pl. as noun, many things; ad multam noctem, till late at night; multō diē, late in the day; comp., plūs, plūris, more; pl., several, many; superl., plūrimus, -a, -um, most; pl. as noun, very many; quam plūrimī, as many as possible.*
mūnimentum, -ī, n. (**mūniō**, *fortify*), *fortification, defense.*
mūniō, 4, *defend with a wall, fortify, protect.*
mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, f. (**mūniō**, *fortify*), *a fortifying; rampart, fortification; strength.*
mūnus, mūneris, n., *present, gift.*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*

N

nactus, -a, -um, *see nancīscor.*
nam, *conj., for.*
Nammēius, -ī, m., *a prominent Helvetian.*
namque, *conj. (nam, for), for.*
nancīscor, -ī, nactus sum, *get, meet with, find.*
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *be born; spring up, rise.*

Nasua, -ae, m., *a chieftain of the Suebi; brother of Cimbrius.*
nātiō, nātiōnis, f. (**nāscor**, *be born*), *race, tribe, people.*
nātūra, -ae, f. (**nāscor**, *be born*), *nature, character, disposition.*
nātus, -ūs, m. (**nāscor**, *be born*), *birth; maior nātū, elder.*
nāvicula, -ae, f. (*diminutive of nāvis, ship*), *small boat, skiff.*
nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship.*
nāvō, 1, *do well; with operam, do one's best.*
nē, 1. conj., *that not, in order that not, lest; not; 2. adv., nē . . . quidem, not even.*
-ne, *enclitic, merely the sign of a question; utrum . . . necne, whether . . . or not.*
nec, *see neque.*
necessāriō, adv. (**necessārius**, *necessary*), *necessarily, of necessity.*
necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, urgent; critical; masc. as noun, kinsman, friend.*
necessitās, necessitātis, f. (*cf. necessārius, necessary*), *necessity, urgency.*
necessitūdō, necessitūdinis, f. (*cf. necessārius, kinsman*), *close relations, intimacy.*
necne, *conj., or not.*
necō, 1 (**nex**, *death*), *put to death.*
neglēgō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *disregard, neglect.*
negō, 1, say . . . not.
negōtium, -ī, n., *business, concern, task, undertaking; trouble.*
Nemetēs, -um, m., *a tribe living on the border of Germany and Gaul.*

nēmō, dat. **nēmīnī**, acc. **nēmīnem**,
m. and f. (**nē**, *not* + **homō**, *man*),
no one, nobody.

neque, nec (**nē**, *not* + **que**, *and*),
and not, nor; neque . . . neque,
neither . . . nor.

nēquīquam, adv. (**nē**, *not* + **quis-**
quam, *any*), *in no way, to no pur-*
pose, in vain.

Nervī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.
nervus, -ī, m., *sinew*; pl., *force*,
strength.

neu, conj., see **nēve**.

neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. **neutrius**,
adj. (**nē**, *not* + **uter**, *which of two*),
neither.

nēve, **neu**, conj., *and not, and lest*,
nor.

nex, **necis**, f., *death.*

nihil, indecl. n., *nothing*; as adv.,
not at all.

nihilō, adv. (**nihil**, *nothing*), *by no*
means; nihilō minus, nevertheless.

nisi, conj. (**sī**, *if*), *if not, unless, ex-*
cept.

nītor, -ī, **nīxus sum**, *rest on, depend*
on.

nōbilis, -e, adj., *well-known, noted*;
noble.

nōbilitās, **nōbilitātis**, f. (**nōbilis**,
well-known), *fame; the nobility*;
noble birth, high rank.

noctū, adv. (**nox**, *night*), *by night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. (**nox**, *night*),
night, by night.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōlui**, — (**nē**, *not* + **volō**,
wish), *not wish, be unwilling.*

nōmen, **nōminis**, n., *name*; **suō**
nōmine, *on his own account.*

nōminātim, adv. (**nōminō**, *name*),
by name, one by one, expressly.

nōminō, i (**nōmen**, *name*), *call by*
name, name, mention.

nōn, adv., *not*; **nōn iam**, *no longer.*

nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *ninety.*

nōndum, adv., *not yet.*

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, gen. **nōnnūllius**,
adj. (**nūllus**, *no*), *some, several.*

nōnnumquam, adv. (**numquam**,
never), *sometimes.*

nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**novem**,
nine), *ninth.*

Nōrēia, -ae, f., chief town of the
Norici.

Nōricus, -a, -um, *Norican, of the*
Norici, a tribe in modern western
Austria.

nōs, **nostrum** or **nostrī**, pl. of **ego**,
we.

noster, -tra, -trum, possess. adj.
(**nōs**, *we*), *our, ours*; masc. pl.
as noun, *our men.*

novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the
Suessiones in Belgic Gaul.

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, novel, un-*
usual; novae rēs, revolution,
change of government; novissi-
imum agmen, *the rear*; masc. pl.
as noun, *the rear.*

nox, **noctis**, f., *night.*

nūbō, -ere, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, *marry*,
of women only.

nūdō, i (**nūdus**, *naked*), *make 'bare*,
strip; leave unprotected.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *naked, bare, un-*
protected.

nūllus, -a, -um, gen. **nūllius**, adj.
(**nē**, *not* + **ūllus**, *any*), *not any*,
no; as noun, *no one, none.*

num, interrog. particle, hinting a
negative answer.

numerus, -ī, m., *number, amount*;
in **numerō**, *among*.

Numidae, -ārum, m., a tribe of barbarians in northern Africa.

numquam, adv. (**nē**, *not* + **umquam**, *ever*), *never*.

nunc, adv., *now*.

nūntiō, ī (**nūntius**, *messenger*), *announce, report*.

nūntius, -ī, m. (**novus**, *new*), *messenger; message*.

nūper (**noviper**), superl. **nūperrimē**, adv., *recently*.

nūtus, -ūs, m., *nod; command*.

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for*.

obaerātus, -a, -um, adj., *in debt*;
masc. as noun, *debtor, serf*.

obdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (**dūcō**, *lead*), *lead towards; extend*.

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (**iaciō**, *throw*), *throw in the way, place in front, expose*.

obitus, -ūs, m., *destruction*.

obliviscor, -ī, **oblītus sum**, *forget*.

obsecrō, ī, *implore, entreat*.

observō, ī (**servō**, *keep safe*), *watch over, guard; regard*.

obses, **obsidis**, m. and f., *hostage*.

obsignō, ī, *seal*.

obstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *bind, pledge*.

obtimeō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (**teneō**, *hold*), *hold, keep, possess*.

obtulī, see **offerō**.

obveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum (**veniō**, *come*), *come to, come upon, meet*.

occāsus, -ūs, m. (**cadō**, *fall*), *a going down, setting*.

occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (**caedō**, *cut*), *cut down, slay, kill*; masc. of the perf. part. as noun, *the dead*.

occultō, ī, *hide, conceal*.

occultus, -a, -um, adj., *hidden, secret*;
in **occultō**, *in secret, in hiding*.

occupō, ī, *seize, occupy; employ*.

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run in the way of, meet, come against; attend to*.

Oceanus, -ī, m., *ocean, the Atlantic*.

Ocelum, -ī, n., a town in western Cisalpine Gaul.

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**octō**, *eight*), *eighth*.

octō, indecl. num. adj., *eight*.

octōgintā, indecl. num. adj., (cf. **octō**, *eight*), *eighty*.

oculus, -ī, m., *eye*.

ōdī, **ōdisse**, defective, perf. tenses used with meaning of pres., *hate*.

offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēsum, *hurt, harm*.

offēsiō, **offēnsiōnis**, f. (**offendō**, *hurt*), *offense*.

offerō, **offerre**, **obtulī**, **oblātum** (**ferō**, *bear*), *bring towards, offer; carry, take*.

officium, -ī, n., *service, duty, allegiance*.

omittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum (**mittō**, *send*), *let go, disregard*.

omnīnō, adv. (**omnis**, *all*), *in all, entirely; at all*.

omnis, -e, adj., *all, every, entire*;
masc. pl. as noun, *all*; neut. pl. as noun, *all things*.

onus, **oneris**, n., *load, burden, weight*.

opera, -ae, f. (**opus**, *work*), *work, exertion; dare operam, do one's best*.

opiniō, opiniōnis, f., *idea, impression, expectation, reputation.*

oportet, -ēre, oportuit, impers., *it is necessary, it is proper; translated personally, must, ought.*

oppidānus, -ī, m. (oppidum, town), *townsman.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *fortified town, town.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, lucky, convenient, advantageous.*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum (premō, press), *press down, crush, overwhelm.*

oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, f. (oppugnō, fight against), *assault, attack; method of assault.*

oppugnō, 1 (pugnō, fight), *fight against, assault, attack, storm.*

ops, opis, f., *help, aid; pl., wealth, resources, power.*

optimē, adv., *superl. of bene, see bene.*
optimus, -a, -um, adj., *superl. of bonus, see bonus.*

1. **opus, operis, n.,** *work, labor; fortification.*

2. **opus, indecl. n.,** *need, necessity; opus est, there is need.*

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f. (ōrō, speak), *a speaking, speech, address.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., *row, rank; order, arrangement; primī ōrdinēs, centurions of the first rank.*

Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, m., *a chieftain of the Helvetians.*

orior, -iri, ortus sum, rise, begin, start; be descended from; oriēns sōl, rising sun; east.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *decoration, adornment.*

ōrō, 1, speak; beg, entreat, plead.

Osismī, -ōrum, m., *a tribe in extreme western Gaul.*

ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum (tendō, stretch), *stretch out before; show, display; assert.*

P

P., *abbr. for Publius, a Roman given name.*

pābulātiō, pābulātiōnis, f. (pābulum, fodder), *foraging.*

pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder.*

pācō, 1 (pāx, peace), *make peaceful, subdue, pacify.*

paene, adv., *nearly, almost.*

pāgus, -ī, m., *district, canton.*

palūs, palūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*

pandō, -ere, pandī, passum, *spread out, stretch out, extend.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal, similar, like.*

parātus, -a, -um, adj. (parō, prepare), *prepared, ready.*

pāreō, 2, appear; obey, yield to.

parō, 1, prepare, get ready.

pars, partis, f., *part, portion; side, quarter; direction; quā ex parte, and for this reason; magnā ex parte, to a large extent.*

partim, adv. (pars, part), *partly; partim . . . partim, some . . . others.*

parum, minus, minimē, adv. (cf. parvus, small), *little or too little, less, least.*

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. (diminutive of parvus, small), *very small, slight.*

parvus, -a, -um, minor, minimus, adj., *small or little, less, least.*

1. **passus, -a, -um, perf. part. of pandō.**

2. **passus**, -ūs, m., *double step, pace*, five Roman feet; **mille passūs**, a mile.

patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum (pateō, *lie open + faciō, make*), *lay open, open up, open*.

patēns, patētis, adj. (pres. part. of pateō, *lie open*), *open*.

pateō, -ēre, patuī, —, *lie open; extend, reach*.

pater, patris, m., *father*.

pator, -ī, passus sum, *suffer, endure; allow, permit*.

patrius, -a, -um, adj. (**pater**, *father*), *of a father, ancestral*.

pauci, -ae, -a, adj., *few*; as noun, a *few persons or things*.

paulatim, adv. (cf. **paulum**, *a little*), *little by little, gradually*.

paulisper, adv. (cf. **paulum**, *a little*), *for a short time*.

paulō, adv. (cf. **paulum**, *a little*), *a little, somewhat*.

paululum, adv. (diminutive of **paulum**, *a little*), *a very little*.

paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat*.

pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.

peccō, ī, *do wrong, sin*.

pedes, peditis, m. (**pēs**, *foot*), *foot-soldier*; pl., *infantry*.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. (**pēs**, *foot*), *on foot*; referring to soldiers, *infantry*.

Pedius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Quintus Pedius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

peior, -ius, comp. of **malus**, see **malus**.

pellis, pellis, f., *skin, hide*.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive, drive out, rout; defeat*.

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsūm, *weigh, weigh out, pay*.

per, prep. with acc., *through, by way of; over; by, by means of, through the help of; on account of*.

percontātiō, percontātiōnis, f., *inquiring, questioning*.

perducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (ducō, *lead*), *lead through; build, construct*.

pereō, -īre, perīī, peritum (eō, *go*), *be destroyed, perish*.

perfacilis, -e, adj. (**facilis**, *easy*), *very easy*.

perferō, -erre, pertulī, perlātum (ferō, *bear*), *carry through; carry among, spread; bear, endure, suffer, undergo*.

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (faciō, *make*), *carry through, carry out, complete, bring about, accomplish, cause*.

perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum (frangō, *break*), *break through*.

perfuga, -ae, m. (**perfugiō**, *flee*), *deserter*.

perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum (fugiō, *flee*), *flee for refuge, seek refuge with; desert*.

periclitōr, ī (**periculum**, *trial, danger*), *try, test, make a test*.

periculōsus, -a, -um, adj. (**periculum**, *danger*), *dangerous*.

periculum, -ī, n., *trial, danger, risk*.

perītus, -a, -um, adj., *tried, skilled, experienced*.

perlātus, see **perferō**.

permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūm (maneō, *remain*), *stay through, remain; continue*.

permittō, -ere, -misi, -misum
(mittō, send), yield, allow, permit.

permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum
(moveō, move), move thoroughly; arouse, alarm, influence.

perniciēs, -ēi, f. (cf. nex, death),
destruction, ruin.

perpauci, -ae, -a, adj. (pauci, few),
very few.

perpetuō, adv. (perpetuus, continuous),
continuously.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous,
lasting; entire.

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,
break through, force a passage.

persequor, -i, -secūtus sum (sequor,
follow), follow up.

perseverō, i, persist, persevere.

persolvō, -ere, -solvi, -solutum, pay
in full, pay; suffer.

perspicio, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum,
look through, see through; understand, perceive.

persuadeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, per-
suade, induce, convince.

perterreō, 2, frighten thoroughly, ter-
rify, dismay.

pertinācia, -ae, f. (pertineō, hold
through), stubbornness, obstinacy.

pertineō, -ēre, -tinui, — (teneō,
hold), hold through, extend, reach; pertain, concern.

perturbō, i, disturb thoroughly, throw
into confusion.

perveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum
(veniō, come), come to, arrive at, reach.

pēs, pedis, m., foot; pedem referre,
retreat.

petō, -ere, petivī or petiī, petitum,

seek, hunt for, aim at, make for; beg, ask.

phalanx, phalangis, f., a compact
body (of soldiers), phalanx.

pilum, -i, n., heavy javelin.

Pisō, Pisonis, m., the name of a
Roman family. (1) *Marcus Pupius Piso*, consul B.C. 61, I. 26; 690. (2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul B.C. 58, father-in-law of Caesar, I. 110; 218. (3) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul B.C. 112, grandfather of (2), I. 218.

placeō, 2, please; impers., it pleases.

plānitēs, -ēi, f., plain.

plēbēs, -ei, or plēbs, plēbis, f., people,
common people.

plērumque, adv. (plērusque, the
larger part of), for the most part, generally.

plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj., the
larger part of, most of.

plūrimum, adv. (plūrimus, most),
superl. of **multum**, most, very much; **plūrimum posse**, be very powerful; **plūrimum valēre**, be the most influential.

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of
multus, see **multus**.

plūs, plūis, adj., comp. of multus,
see **multus**.

poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty.

polliceor, 2, promise, offer.

pondus, ponderis, n. (cf. pendō,
weigh), weight.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place,
put, establish; with **castra**, pitch.

pōns, pontis, m., bridge.

poposcī, see poscō.

populatiō, populatiōnis, f. (popu-

lor, *devastate*), *devastation, ravaging*.
populor, 1, *devastate, lay waste, ravage, pillage*.
populus, -ī, m., *people, a people, nation*.
porrēctus, -a, -um, adj., *extended*.
porta, -ae, f., *gate*.
portō, 1, *carry, take, transport*.
portōrium, -ī, n., *toll, tax, duty*.
poscō, -ere, **poposcī**, —, *ask, demand, request*.
positus, -a, -um, adj. (perf. part. of **pōnō**, *place*), *situated*.
possessiō, **possessiōnis**, f. (**possideō**, *occupy*), *occupation, possession; possessions*.
possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *occupy, possess, control*.
possum, **posse**, **potuī**, —, *be able, can, be powerful*; **plūrimum posse**, *be very powerful*; **minimum posse**, *have very little power*.
post, prep. with acc., *behind, after*; adv., *afterwards, later*.
posteā, adv. (**post**, *after*), *afterwards, later*.
posteāquam, conj. (**posteā**, *afterwards + quam, than*), *after*.
posterus, -a, -um, adj., *posterior, postrēmus* (**post**, *after*), *next, following*.
postquam, conj. (**post**, *after + quam, than*), *after, as soon as*.
postrēmō, adv. (**postrēmus**, *last*), *finally, at last*.
postridiē, adv. (**posterus**, *next + diēs, day*), *on the next day, the following day*.
postulātum, -ī, n. (**postulō**, *demand*), *demand, claim*.

postulō, 1, *demand, ask, require*.
potēns, **potentis**, adj. (pres. part. of **possum**, *be able*), *powerful, influential*.
potentātus, -ūs, m. (**potēns**, *powerful*), *chief power, control, supremacy*.
potentia, -ae, f. (**potēns**, *powerful*), *power, influence*.
potestās, **potestātis**, f. (**potēns**, *powerful*), *power, control; chance, opportunity*.
potior, -īrī, **potītus sum**, *become master of, gain control of, gain, obtain*.
potius, comp. adv., *rather*.
prae, prep. with abl., *before; in comparison with*.
praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., *sharpened at the end, sharpened, pointed*.
praebeō, 2, *hold out, offer, furnish*.
praecaveō, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautum (**caveō**, *be on one's guard*), *guard against in advance, take precautions*.
praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (**cēdō**, *go*), *go before; surpass*.
praeceps, **praecipitis**, adj. (cf. **caput**, *head*), *headlong*.
praecipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**capio**, *take*), *take beforehand; direct*.
praecipuē, adv., *especially, particularly*.
praedicō, 1, *proclaim, declare, report; boast*.
praedor, 1, *plunder, rob, raid*.
praefectus, -ī, m. (**praeficiō**, *put in command of*), *officer, commander*.
praefērō, -ferre, **praetulī**, **praelātum**

(*ferō, bear*), *place before, outdo, surpass.*
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (*faciō, make*), *put in command of, place, in charge of.*
praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (*mittō, send*), *send ahead.*
praemium, -ī, n., *prize, reward.*
praeoptō, ī, choose, prefer.
praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (*pōnō, place*), *place at the head of, put in command of.*
praescribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum (*scribō, write*), *order, dictate, prescribe.*
praescriptum, -ī, n. (*praescribō, order*), *order, dictation.*
praesēns, praesentis, adj. (*pres. part. of praesum, be before*), *present.*
praesentia, -ae, f. (*praesēns, present*), *presence; in praesentia, for the present.*
praesertim, adv., *especially, particularly.*
praesidium, -ī, n., *guard, garrison, defense; protection, support.*
praestō, -āre, praestitī, praestitum, *stand before; excel, surpass; show, exhibit; impers., it is better.*
praesum, praeesse, praefui, — (*sum, be*), *be before or over, be in charge of, command.*
praeter, prep. with *acc.*, *beyond, past; except; besides, in addition to.*
praetereā, adv. (*praeter, beyond*), *in addition, besides, furthermore.*
praeteritus, -a, -um, adj. (*praeter, past + eō, go*), *past; neut. pl. as noun, the past.*
praeterquam, adv., *except.*

praetor, praetōris, m., *commander, praetor.*
praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. (*praetor, commander*), *of a commander, praetorian; praetōria cohorts, body guard.*
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press, *push hard, assail.*
prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsūm, lay *hold of, seize, catch.*
pretium, -ī, n., *price.*
prex, precis, f., *prayer, entreaty.*
prīdiē, adv. (*prae, before + diēs, day*), *on the day before.*
prīmipīlus, -ī, m., *chief centurion.*
prīmō, adv. (*prīmus, first*), *at first, in the first place.*
prīmum, adv. (*prīmus, first*), *first, in the first place.*
prīmus, -a, -um, adj. (*superl. of prior*), *first; primā lūce, at day-break; primā nocte, in the first part of the night.*
prīnceps, prīncipis, adj. (*prīmus, first + capiō, take*), *chief, first; masc. as noun, chief, leader, prominent man.*
prīncipātus, -ūs, m. (*prīnceps, chief*), *chieftainship, leadership.*
prior, prius, comp. adj., *former; masc. pl. as noun, those in front; superl., prīmus.*
prīstinus, -a, -um, adj. (*cf. prior, former*), *former, old, ancient.*
prius, comp. adv. (*prior, former*), *before, sooner; with quam, a conj., sooner than, before.*
prīvātīm, adv. (*prīvātus, private*), *privately; as private citizens.*
prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., *private, personal, individual.*

prō, prep. with abl., *before, in front of; for, in behalf of; for, in place of, as; in return for, in consideration of; in view of; in accordance with.*

probō, 1, *approve; prove, show.*

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (cēdō, go), *go forward, advance, proceed.*

Procillus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of Gaius Valerius Caburus.

procul, adv., *at a distance, a long way off.*

prōcumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *lean forward; fall down.*

prōcurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum, *run forward, rush ahead.*

prōdeō, -īre, prōdī, prōditum (eō, go), *go forward, advance.*

prōdō, -ere, prōdidī, prōditum (dō, give), *give forth; hand down.*

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (dūcō, lead), *lead forth, lead out; draw up.*

proelior, 1 (proelium, battle), *engage in battle, fight.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle, fight.*

profectiō, profectiōnis, f. (proficiscor, start out), *a starting out, departure.*

proficiscor, -ī, -fectus sum, *start out, depart, go; come.*

prōfligō, 1, *strike down, overcome; rout.*

profugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum (fugiō, flee), *flee, run away, escape.*

prōgnātus, -a, -um, adj. (nāscō, be born), *descended, sprung.*

prōgredior, progredi, -gressus sum, *go forward, proceed, advance.*

prohibeō, 2 (habeō, have, keep), *keep*

from, keep out, hinder, prevent, prohibit; defend.

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (iaciō, throw), *throw forward, cast, hurl; give up, reject, abandon.*

prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (moveō, move), *move forward, push forward, advance.*

prope, prep. with acc., *near, close to; adv., prope, propius, proximē, near, almost.*

prōpellō, -ere, propulī, propulsum (pellō, drive), *drive forward, drive, put to flight, rout, repel.*

properō, 1, *hasten, hurry.*

propinquitās, propinquitātis, f. (propinquus, near), *nearness; kinship, relationship.*

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. (prope, near), *near, close by; as noun, relative, kinsman.*

propius, see **prope**.

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum (pōnō, place), *put forward, present, display; make known, disclose.*

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of, because of.*

propterea, adv. (propter, on account of), *on account of this, for this reason; propterea quod, conj., for the reason that, because.*

prōpugnō, 1 (pugnō, fight), *fight for, defend, make a sortie.*

prōpulsō, 1 (frequentative of propellō, drive forward), *drive forward, drive off, repel.*

prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum (sequor, follow), *follow, pursue; with oratione, address.*

prōspectus, -ūs, m. (prōspiciō, look forward), *view, outlook, prospect.*

prōspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, *look forward, look out for, see to, provide for.*
prōtinus, adv., *at once, immediately.*
prōturbō, 1, *drive in confusion, frighten away, repel.*
prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum (*videō*, *see*), *see ahead, foresee; attend to, care for, see to.*
prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*
prōvolō, 1, *fly forth, rush out.*
proximē, adv., superl. of **prope** (*proximus*, *nearest*), *nearest; last, most recently.*
proximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **propior**, *nearest, next, following; shortest; last; with the force of a prep. with acc., next to.*
prudentia, -ae, f. (cf. **prōvideō**, *see beforehand*), *foresight, wisdom, prudence.*
pūblicē, adv. (**pūblicus**, *public*), *in the name of the state, officially.*
pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *public, of the state; rēs pūblica, commonwealth, state, government.*
Publius, -ī, m., a Roman given name.
pudor, **pudōris**, m., *sense of shame, sense of honor.*
puer, **puerī**, m, *boy; pl., children.*
pugna, -ae, f. (**pugnō**, *fight*), *fighting, battle.*
pugnō, 1, *fight, contend, strive.*
pulsus, see **pellō**.
pūrgō, 1, *clean, clear, excuse, free from blame.*
putō, 1, *think, consider.*
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, *of the Pyrenees (mountains); between Gaul and Spain.*

Q

Q., abbr. for **Quīntus**.

quā, adv. (abl. of **quī**, *who*), *by which way, where.*
quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. **quattuor**, *four*), *forty.*
quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (cf. **quattuor**, *four* + *centum*, *hundred*), *four hundred.*
quaerō, -ere, **quaesivī**, **quaesītum**, *seek, look for; ask, inquire about.*
quaestor, **quaestōris**, m. (**quaerō**, *seek*), *quaestor*, Roman officer in charge of public money and military finances.
quālis, -e, interrog. adj., *of what sort.*
quam, 1. interrog. adv., *in what manner, how; 2. rel. adv., with a superl., as . . . as possible; quam primum, as soon as possible; quam diū, as long as; 3. conj., with a comp., than; priusquam, sooner than.*
quantopere, adv. (**quantus**, *how great* + **opus**, *work*), *how greatly, how much.*
quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj., *how great, how large, how many; neut. as noun, how much; tantus . . . quantus, as much as, as great as.*
quārē, adv. (**quī**, *which* + **rēs**, *thing*), *on account of which thing, why.*
quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**quattuor**, *four*), *fourth.*
quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four.*
quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj. (**quattuor**, *four* + **decem**, *ten*), *fourteen.*
-que, conj., enclitic, *and.*

queror, -ī, *questus sum*, *lament*, *be-moan*.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that; he who, those who; quem ad modum, as; quam ob rem, why, therefore*.

quī, quae, quod, interrog. adj., *which, what; quem ad modum, how; quam ob rem, why*.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever*.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam or **quoddam**, indef. pron., *a certain, a certain one, one; certain, some*.

quidem, adv., *indeed, at any rate; nē . . . quidem, not even*.

quīn, conj., *that not, but that, from; quīn etiam, nay, even; moreover*.

quīnam, quāenam, quodnam; quisnam, quidnam, interrog. pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever*.

quīndecim, indecl. num. adj. (**quīnque**, *five + decem, ten*), *fifteen*.

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**quīnque**, *five + centum, hundred*), *five hundred*.

quīnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**quīnque**, *five*), *five each, five*.

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. **quīnque**, *five*), *fifty*.

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five*.

quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**quīnque**, *five*), *fifth*.

Quīntus, -ī, m., a Roman given name.

quis, quid, interrog. pron., *who, which, what; quid, why, how*.

quis, quae, quid, indef. pron. used after *sī, nisi, nē*, num., *any one, anything; some one, something; any*.

quisnam, see **quīnam**.

quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron., *any, any one, anything*.

quisque, quaeque, quidque and (as adj.) **quodque**, indef. pron., *each, each one, every, every one*.

quisquis, quicquid, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever*.

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis and (as adj.) **quodvis**, indef. pron., *any one, anything whatever, any*.

quō, 1. adv., rel., *where; interrog., whither; indef., anywhere*; 2. conj., with a comp., *in order that, so that; eō . . . quō, the . . . the*.

quod, conj., *in that, as to the fact that, that, namely that; so far as; because; propterea quod, for the reason that, because; quod sī, but if*.

quōminus, conj., *so that not, that not, but that, to*.

quoniam, conj., *since now, since, because*.

quoque, conj., *also, too*.

quot, indecl. num. adj., *how many*.

quotannis, adv. (cf. **annus**, *year*), *yearly, annually*.

quotiēns, adv., *how many times, how often*.

R

rādix, rādis, f., *root*; pl. with **montis**, *foot, base*.

raeda, -ae, f., *wagon* (with four wheels).

rāmūs, -ī, m., *bough, branch*.

rapīna, -ae, f., *robbery, plunder; plundering*.

ratio, ratiōis, f., *reckoning, list, estimate; plan, method, design*;

saepēs, saepia, f., *hedge*.
 sagittārius, -ī, m., *archer, bowman*.
 salūs, salūtis, f., *welfare, preservation; security, safety*.
 sancio, -īre, sānxi, sānctum, *guarantee, arrange, agree*.
 sānitās, sānitātis, f., *soundness, good sense, sanity*.
 Santonī, -ōrum (Santonēs, -um), m., *a tribe of western Gaul*.
 sarcinae, -ārum, f., *packs, personal luggage*.
 satia, adv., *enough, sufficiently*; indecl. adj., *enough, sufficient, rather*; indecl. noun, *enough*; satis habēre, *be satisfied*.
 satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum (satis, *enough* + faciō, *do*), *do enough, make amends; apologize*.
 satisfactiō, satisfactiōnis, f. (satisfaciō, *do enough*), *satisfaction; apology*.
 saxum, -ī, n., *rock, large stone*.
 scelus, sceleris, n., *wickedness, wicked deed, crime*.
 scientia, -ae, f. (sciō, *know*), *knowledge, skill*.
 sciō, 4, *know, understand*.
 scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, *write*.
 scūtum, -ī, n., *shield, buckler*.
 sē, see suī.
 secrētō, adv., *separately, secretly, privately*.
 sectiō, sectiōnis, f., *booty*.
 sēcum, for cum sē.
 secundum, prep. with acc. (cf. sequor, *follow*), *after, besides, along*.
 secundus, -a, -um, adj. (sequor, *follow*), *second; favorable, successful, prosperous*.

sed, conj., *but, but yet, but in fact*.
 sēdecim, indecl. num. adj. (sex, *six* + decem, *ten*), *sixteen*.
 sēdēs, sēdis, f., *seat, residence, abode, settlement*.
 sēditiōsus, -a, -um, adj., *rebellious, mutinous*.
 Sedusiī, -ōrum, m., *a tribe of eastern Germany*.
 Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., *a tribe of east central Gaul*.
 semel, num. adv., *once*; semel atque iterum, *time and again*.
 sēmentis, sēmentis, f., *a sowing*.
 semper, adv., *always, constantly*.
 senātor, senātoris, m. (senex, *old*), *elder; senator*.
 senātus, -ūs, m. (senex, *old*), *body of elders, senate*.
 senex, senis, adj., *old*; masc. as noun, *old man*.
 sēnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (sex, *six*), *six each*.
 Senonēs, -um, m., *a tribe of north central Gaul*.
 sententia, -ae, f. (sentiō, *perceive*), *opinion, thought, view; purpose*.
 sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, *perceive, feel, realize, think*.
 sentis, sentis, m., *brier, thorn*.
 sēparātim, adv. (parō, *prepare*), *separately, individually*.
 septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven*.
 septentriō, septentriōnis, m. (cf. septem, *seven*), *the seven stars of the Great Bear; hence the north*.
 septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (septem, *seven*), *seventh*.
 sepultūra, -ae, f., *burial*.
 Sēquana, -ae, m., *a river in Gaul; the modern Seine*.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *Sequanian*; generally masc. pl., a tribe of eastern Gaul.

sequor, -ī, **secūtus sum**, *follow, pursue; accompany, attend.*

servilis, -e, adj. (**servus**, *slave*), of a slave, of slaves, *servile*.

servitūs, **servitūtis**, f. (**servus**, *slave*), *slavery, subjection.*

servō, ī, *keep, maintain.*

servus, -ī, m., *slave.*

sescenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**sex**, *six* + **centum**, *hundred*), *six hundred.*

sēsē, see **suī**.

sētius, adv., *less*; **nihilō sētius**, *nevertheless.*

seu, see **sive**.

sex, indecl. num. adj., *six.*

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. **sex**, *six*), *sixty.*

Sextius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Baculus**.

sī, conj., *if, whether, to see whether*; **quod sī**, *but if.*

sic, adv., *so, thus, in such a way*; *as follows.*

sicut or **sicutī**, adv. (**sic**, *so* + **ut**, *as*), *so as, just as.*

signifer, **signiferī**, m. (**signum**, *standard* + **ferō**, *bear*), *standard bearer.*

significātiō, **significātiōnis**, f. (**significō**, *make signs*), *announcement, indication, signal.*

significō, ī (**signum**, *sign* + **faciō**, *make*), *make signs, make plain, show, announce, indicate.*

signum, -ī, n., *sign, signal, standard, ensign*; **signa ferre**, *advance*; **signa inferre**, *charge*; **signa convertere**, *wheel about.*

silva, -ae, f., *wood, woods, forest.*

silvestris, -e, adj. (**silva**, *wood*), *wooded.*

simul, adv., *at the same time.*

simulātiō, **simulātiōnis**, f. (**simulō**, *pretend*), *pretense, feigning.*

simulō, ī, *pretend, feign.*

sīn, conj., *but if.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

singulāris, -e, adj. (**singulī**, *one by one*), *one by one*; *singular, remarkable, unusual.*

singulī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *one by one, single, separate.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left*; fem. as noun, *left hand.*

sive, **seu**, conj., *or if*; **sive . . . sive**, *either . . . or, whether . . . or.*

socer, **socerī**, m., *father-in-law.*

socius, -ī, m., *comrade, ally.*

sōl, **sōlis**, m., *sun.*

sollicitō, ī, *arouse, disturb, stir up*; *tempt*; *incite.*

solum, -ī, n., *soil.*

sōlum, adv. (**sōlus**, *alone*), *alone, only*; **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

sōlus, -a, -um, gen. **sōlius**, adj., *alone, only.*

soror, **sorōris**, f., *sister*; **soror ex mātē**, *half-sister.*

sors, **sortis**, f., *lot.*

spatium, -ī, n., *space, distance, period of time.*

speciēs, -ēī, f., *sight, appearance, show.*

spectō, ī, *look at, face, lie*; *consider.*

speculātor, **speculātoris**, m. (**speculor**, *spy*), *spy, scout.*

speculor, ī, *spy.*

spērō, ī (**spēs**, *hope*), *hope, expect.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope, expectation.*

spiritus, -ūs, m., *breath; pride, haughtiness, airs.*

spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.), f., *of one's own will; suā sponte, by their own influence, of his own free will.*

statim, adv., *immediately, at once, on the spot.*

statiō, statiōnis, f., *guard, outpost, picket.*

statuō, -ere, statui, statūtum, set up, put in place; decide, determine; pass sentence, judge.

statūra, -ae, f., *size (of body), stature.*

stipendiārius, -a, -um, adj. (stipendium, tribute), *paying tribute, tributary.*

stipendium, -ī, n., *tribute, tax.*

strepitus, -ūs, m., *uproar, din, noise.*

studeō, -ēre, studui, —, be eager for, strive for, desire; pay attention to; favor.

studium, -ī, n. (studeō, be eager), *eagerness, zeal; devotion.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl.; 1, with acc., under, up to, towards, near to; 2, with abl., under, at the foot of.

subducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum (ducō, lead), *lead off, withdraw.*

subeō, -īre, subii, subitum (eō, go), *go under, come up to, approach; undergo, endure.*

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (iaciō, throw), *throw from under, cast upward, hurl.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly.*

sublātus, see tollō.

sublevō, 1, raise up, lighten; aid, assist, help.

subministrō, 1, furnish, supply, provide.

submittō, -ere, -misi, -missum (mittō, send), *send up, send, dispatch.*

submoveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum (moveō, move), *move away, drive away, dislodge.*

subruō, -ere, subruī, subrutum, undermine, dig under.

subsequor, -ī, -secutus sum (sequor, follow), *follow closely, follow up, pursue.*

subsidiū, -ī, n., *relief, reserves; aid, help, assistance, reinforcement.*

subsistō, -ere, substiti, —, stand fast, halt, hold one's position, make a stand.

subsum, -esse, subfui, — (sum, be), *be near, be at hand, be close by.*

subtrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum (traho, drag), *take away, withdraw.*

subvehō, -ere, -vexi, -vectum, bring up, carry up, convey up.

succēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (cēdō, go), *come up to, approach near to; come up, advance.*

Suēbus, -a, -um, of the Suebi; generally masc. pl., a tribe of central Germany.

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., *a tribe of Belgians.*

sui (gen.), sibi, se (sēsē), se (sēsē), *third pers., reflex. pron., himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

Sūlla, -ae, m., *the name of a Roman family. Lucius Cornelius Sulla, consul B.C. 88, dictator 81-79.*

sum, esse, fui, —, be, exist, live; come to pass, happen; remain.

summa, -ae, f. (**summus**, *highest*), *sum, total; control, management; summa imperii, chief command.*
summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **superus**, see **superus**.
sūmō, -ere, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptum**, *take away, take up, gather; take, assume; with supplicium, inflict.*
sūmptus, -ūs, m., *expense.*
superbē, adv., *haughtily, proudly, arbitrarily.*
superior, -ius, adj., superl. of **superus**, see **superus**.
superō, I (**superus**, *above*), *conquer, defeat.*
supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *refrain from, postpone, omit.*
supersum, -esse, **superfui**, — (**sum**, *be*), *be over, survive, remain.*
superus, -a, -um, adj., *above, over; comp., superior, higher, upper; former, previous; superl., summus, highest, greatest, chief; remarkable, most important; summus mōns, the top of the mountain.*
suppetō, -ere, -petivī, -petitum (**petō**, *seek*), *be near, be on hand.*
supplex, **supplicis**, adj., *suppliant.*
supplicātiō, **supplicātiōnis**, f., *public prayer, thanksgiving.*
suppliciter, adv. (**supplex**, *suppliant*), *humbly.*
supplicium, -ī, n. (**supplex**, *suppliant*), *punishment, capital punishment, torture.*
supportō, I (**portō**, *carry*), *bring up, convey.*
suprā, adv., *above, before.*
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (**capiō**, *take*), *take up, undertake, assume.*

suspiciō, **suspiciōnis**, f. (**suspicio**, *suspect*), *suspicion.*
suspicio, I, *suspect, mistrust.*
sustentō, I (**frequentative of sustineō**, *hold up*), *hold up, sustain, withstand, hold out.*
sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum (**teneō**, *hold*), *hold up, withstand, sustain; stand up; hold out, endure.*
suus, -a, -um, possess. adj., *his own, her own, its own, their own; his, her, hers, its, their; masc. pl. as noun, his (their) men, friends, countrymen; neut. as noun, his (their) property, possessions.*

T

T., abbr. for **Titus**.
tabernāculum, -ī, n., *tent.*
tabula, -ae, f., *board; tablet, list.*
taceō, 2, *be silent, keep silent, leave unmentioned.*
tacitus, -a, -um, adj. (**perf. part. of taceō**, *be silent*), *silent.*
tam, adv., *so far, so, to such a degree.*
tamen, adv., *nevertheless, still, however.*
tametsī, conj., *although.*
tandem, adv., *at length, at last, finally; quid tandem, what, pray.*
tantopere, adv. (**tantus**, *so great + opus, work*), *so greatly, so eagerly; so bitterly.*
tantulus, -a, -um, adj. (**diminutive of tantus**, *so great*), *so small, so trifling.*
tantum, adv. (**tantus**, *so great*), *so much, so far, to such a degree.*

- tantus**, -a, -um, adj., *so large, so great, so much*; **tantī**, of such value; **tantus** . . . **quantus**, as much as, as great as.
- tardō**, *i* (**tardus**, *slow*), *make slow, delay*; *check*.
- tardus**, -a, -um, adj., *slow, weary*.
- tēctum**, -ī, n., *shelter, roof*.
- tegimentum**, -ī, n., *covering*.
- tēlum**, -ī, n., *missile, weapon*; *dart, spear*.
- temerārius**, -a, -um, adj. (**temerē**, *rashly*), *rash, reckless, headstrong*.
- temerē**, adv., *rashly, recklessly, blindly*.
- temperantia**, -ae, f. (**temperō**, *control one's self*), *self-control, prudence, moderation*.
- tempero**, *i*, *control one's self, refrain*; **sibi temperāre quī**, *restrain themselves from*.
- temptō**, *i*, *try to gain, attempt, try*; *tempt*.
- tempus**, **temporis**, n., *time*; *crisis, emergency*; **omnī tempore**, *always*; **in reliquum tempus**, *for the future*.
- tendō**, -ere, **tetendī**, **tentum** or **tēnsum**, *stretch*; *stretch out, extend*.
- teneō**, -ēre, **tenuī**, **tentum**, *hold, have, keep, occupy*; *keep back, restrain, bind*.
- tener**, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young*.
- ter**, num. adv. (cf. **trēs**, *three*), *three times*.
- tergum**, -ī, n., *back*; **terga vertere**, *flee*.
- terra**, -ae, f., *the earth, ground, soil, land*.
- terrēnus**, -a, -um, adj. (**terra**, *earth*), *of earth*.
- terror**, **terrōris**, m., *fright, panic, alarm*.
- tertius**, -a, -um, num. adj. (**ter**, *three times*), *third*.
- testāmentum**, -ī, n. (cf. **testis**, *witness*), *will*.
- testimōnium**, -ī, n. (cf. **testis**, *witness*), *evidence, proof*.
- testis**, **testis**, m. and f., *witness*.
- testūdō**, **testūdinis**, f., *tortoise*; *bulwark of shields, testudo*, formed by a body of soldiers holding their shields over their heads.
- Teutoni**, -ōrum (**Teutonēs**, -um), m., a tribe of northern Germany.
- Tigurīnus**, -a, -um, *of the Tigurini*; generally masc. pl., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
- timeō**, -ēre, **timui**, —, *fear, be afraid*.
- timidus**, -a, -um, adj. (**timeō**, *fear*), *fearful, afraid, cowardly, timid*.
- timor**, **timōris**, m. (**timeō**, *fear*), *fear, dread, cowardice, fright, panic*.
- Titūrius**, -ī, m., see **Sabinus**.
- Titus**, -ī, m., a Roman given name.
- tolerō**, *i* (cf. **tollō**, *lift*), *bear, endure, sustain*; with **famem**, *satisfy*.
- tollō**, -ere, **sustulī**, **sublātum**, *lift, take up, carry away, remove*; *give up*; perf. part., *elated*.
- Tolōsātēs**, -ium, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.
- tormentum**, -ī, n., *windlass*; *war engine*.
- totidem**, adv., *just as many, the same number*.
- tōtus**, -a, -um, gen. **tōtius**, adj., *the whole, entire, all*.
- trabs**, **trabis**, f., *beam, timber*.

trādō, -ere, **trādidī**, **trāditum** (dō, *give*), *give over, give up, surrender, yield*.

trādūcō, -ere, **-dūxī**, **-ductum** (dūcō, *lead*), *lead over or across, bring over*.

trāgula, -ae, f., *javelin, dart*.

trahō, -ere, **trāxī**, **tractum**, *drag, draw; hurry along*.

trānō, *swim over or across*.

trāns, prep. with acc., *across, over, beyond*.

trānseō, -īre, **trānsī**, **trānsitum** (eō, *go*), *go across, cross; pass through*.

trānsfigō, -ere, **-fixī**, **-fictum**, *pierce through, transfix*.

transgredior, **trānsgrēdī**, **trānsgressus sum**, *go across, cross*.

trānsportō, *transport* (portō, *carry*), *carry across, bring over*.

trānsversus, -a, -um, adj. (**vertō**, *turn*), *turned across; crosswise; transversa fossa, cross-ditch*.

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**trēs**, *three* + **centum**, *hundred*), *three hundred*.

trēs, **tria**, gen. **trium**, num. adj., *three*.

Trēverī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of north-eastern Gaul.

Tribocī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germans in Belgic Gaul.

tribūnus, -ī, m., *tribune*; **tribūnus militum**, *military tribune*, of whom there were six in each legion.

tribuō, -ere, **tribuī**, **tribūtum**, *distribute; assign, ascribe, attribute, give credit; magnopere tribuere, give especial credit*.

triduum, -ī, n. (**trēs**, *three* + **diēs**, *day*), *three days*.

trigintā, indecl. num. adj. (cf. **trēs**, *three*), *thirty*.

trīnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (cf. **trēs**, *three*), *three each, triple*.

triplex, **triplicis**, adj. (cf. **trēs**, *three*), *triple*.

tristis, -e, adj., *sad, gloomy, dejected*.

tristitia, -ae, f. (**tristia**, *sad*), *sadness, dejection*.

Troucillus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a Gaul, personal friend of Caesar.

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*.

Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.

tum, adv., *at that time, then; then too; cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; tum dē-mum, then finally or at length*.

tumultus, -ūs, m., *uproar, confusion, noise; uprising, insurrection*.

tumulus, -ī, m., *mound, hillock*.

Turonī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

turpis, -e, adj., *ugly; disgraceful, shameful*.

turpitūdō, **turpitūdinis**, f. (**turpis**, *ugly*), *disgrace, shame*.

turris, **turris**, f., *tower*.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *secure, safe, protected*.

U

ubi, rel. adv., *where; when, as soon as*.

ulciscor, -ī, **ultus sum**, *avenge; punish*.

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. **ūllius**, adj., *any; as noun, any one*.

ulterior, -ius, comp. adj., *farther, more remote; superl., ultimus, farthest, most remote*.

ultrā, prep. with acc., *beyond*.

ultrō, adv., *willingly, voluntarily*;

ultrō citrōque, *back and forth*.

ultus, see **ulciscor**.

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever*.

ūnā, adv. (**ūnus**, *one*), *in the same place*; with **cum**, *at the same time with, along with*.

unde, rel. adv., *from which place, whence*.

ūndecimus, -a, -um, num. adj. (**ūnus**, *one* + **decem**, *ten*), *tenth*.

undique, adv. (**unde**, *whence*), *from all sides, on all sides*.

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj. (**ūnus**, *one*, + **vertō**, *turn*), *all, whole, entire, in a lump*.

ūnus, -a, -um, gen. **ūnūs**, num. adj., *one, only one, alone*; **ūnō tempore**, *at the same time*; neut. as noun, *one fact*.

urbs, **urbis**, f., *city*; *the city* (of Rome).

urgeō, -ēre, **ursī**, —, *press, push hard*.

usque, adv., *all the way, up to, as far as*; *even*.

ūsus, -ūs, m. (**ūtor**, *use*), *use, experience, practice*; *profit, advantage*; **ex ūsū**, *to the advantage*.

ut, **utī**, adv., *how, as, as if*; conj. with indic., *as, when*; conj. with subjunc. of purpose, *that, in order that*; with subjunc. of result, *that, so that*.

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, gen. **utriūs**, adj., *which of two, which*.

uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, gen. **utriusque**, adj., *each of two, either, both*.

utī, see **ut**.

ūtī, see **ūtor**.

ūtor, -ī, **ūsus** sum, *use, employ*; *accept, adopt*; *enjoy, receive*; *practice, display*.

utrimque, adv. (**uterque**, *each of two*), *on each side*.

utrum, conj. (**uter**, *which of two*), *whether*; **utrum . . . necne**, *whether . . . or not*.

uxor, **uxōris**, f., *wife*.

V

vacō, I, *be empty, lie unoccupied*.

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. (**vacō**, *be empty*), *empty, unoccupied*; *clear, free*.

vadum, -ī, m., *shallow place, ford*.

vagor, I, *wander, roam, rove*.

valeō, 2, *be strong, have power or influence*.

Valerius, -ī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Procillus**, **Ca-būrus**, **Flaccus**, **Troucillus**.

vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart, entrenchment, earthworks*.

Vangionēs, -um, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.

varius, -a, -um, adj., *changing, varying*.

vāstō, I, *lay waste, plunder, ravage*.

vāticinātiō, **vāticinātiōnis**, f., *prediction, prophecy*.

vectigal, **vectigālis**, n., *tax, toll, tribute*; pl., *revenue*.

vehementer, adv., *vigorously, fiercely, severely, thoroughly, very much*.

vel, conj., *or*; **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or*.

Veliocassēs, -ium, m., a tribe of the Belgians.

vēlōx, **vēlōcis**, adj., *swift, rapid*.

velut, adv., *as, just as.*

vēndō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (dō, give),
offer for sale, sell.

Venellī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northern Gaul.

Venetī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme western Gaul.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come,
arrive; impers. in pass., ventum est, he (they) came.

Verbigenus, -ī, m., a district of Helvetia.

verbum, -ī, n., word; facere verba,
speak, plead.

vereor, 2, reverence; fear, dread.

vergō, -ere, —, —, incline, slope,
lie.

vergobretus, -ī, m., vergobret, the title of the Aeduan chief magistrate.

vērō, adv. (vērus, true), in fact; but,
however.

versō, 1 (frequentative of vortō,
turn), keep turning; pass., be engaged, be busy; be, remain.

vortō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn;
terga vertere, flee.

Verucloetius, -ī, m., an ambassador of the Helvetians.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true.

Vesontīō, Vesontīōnis, f., a town of the Sequanians.

vesper, vesperī or vesperis, m.,
evening; sub vesperum, towards nightfall.

veterānus, -a, -um, adj. (vetus, old),
old, veteran.

vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid.

vetus, veteris, adj., old, former, ancient, long-standing; comp., lacking; superl., veterrimus.

vēxillum, -ī, n., standard, ensign,
flag.

vexō, 1, harass, disturb; plunder,
overrun.

via, -ae, f., way, road; march.

victor, victōris, m. (vincō, conquer),
conqueror, victor; as adj., victorious, flushed with victory.

victōria, -ae, f. (victor, conqueror),
victory.

victus, see vincō.

vīctus, -ūs, m., mode of living,
living.

vīcus, -ī, m., village, hamlet.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see, notice,
perceive, know; pass., be seen, seem, appear; seem best.

vigilia, -ae, f., watching, period of
watching, watch, one of the four equal parts of the time from sunset to sunrise.

vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., twenty.

vīmen, vīminis, n., twig, osier.

vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīctum, bind,
fetter.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer,
defeat, overcome.

vinculum, -ī, n. (vinciō, bind), chain,
fetters; ex vinculis, in chains.

vīnea, -ae, f., shed (movable),
shelter.

vīnum, -ī, n., wine.

vir, virī, m., man.

Viromandui, -ōrum, m., a tribe of the Belgians.

virtūs, virtūtis, f. (vir, man), man-
liness; valor, courage; pl., good qualities, virtues.

vīs, vīs, f., force, strength, power;
large number; vim facere, offer violence.

vīta, -ae, f, *life*.

vītō, I, *avoid, shun*.

vix, adv., *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely*.

Vocciō, **Vocciōnis**, m., a king of the Noricans.

vocō, I (**vōx**, *voice*), *call, summon*.

Vocontii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme southeastern Gaul.

volō, **velle**, **voluī**, —, *wish, be willing, desire; mean, intend*.

voluntās, **voluntātis**, f. (**volō**, *wish*), *wish, desire, free will; good will; approval, consent*.

voluptās, **voluptātis**, f. (**volō**, *wish*), *satisfaction, pleasure, enjoyment*.

vōx, **vōcis**, f., *voice, utterance, tones of the voice; pl., words, cries*.

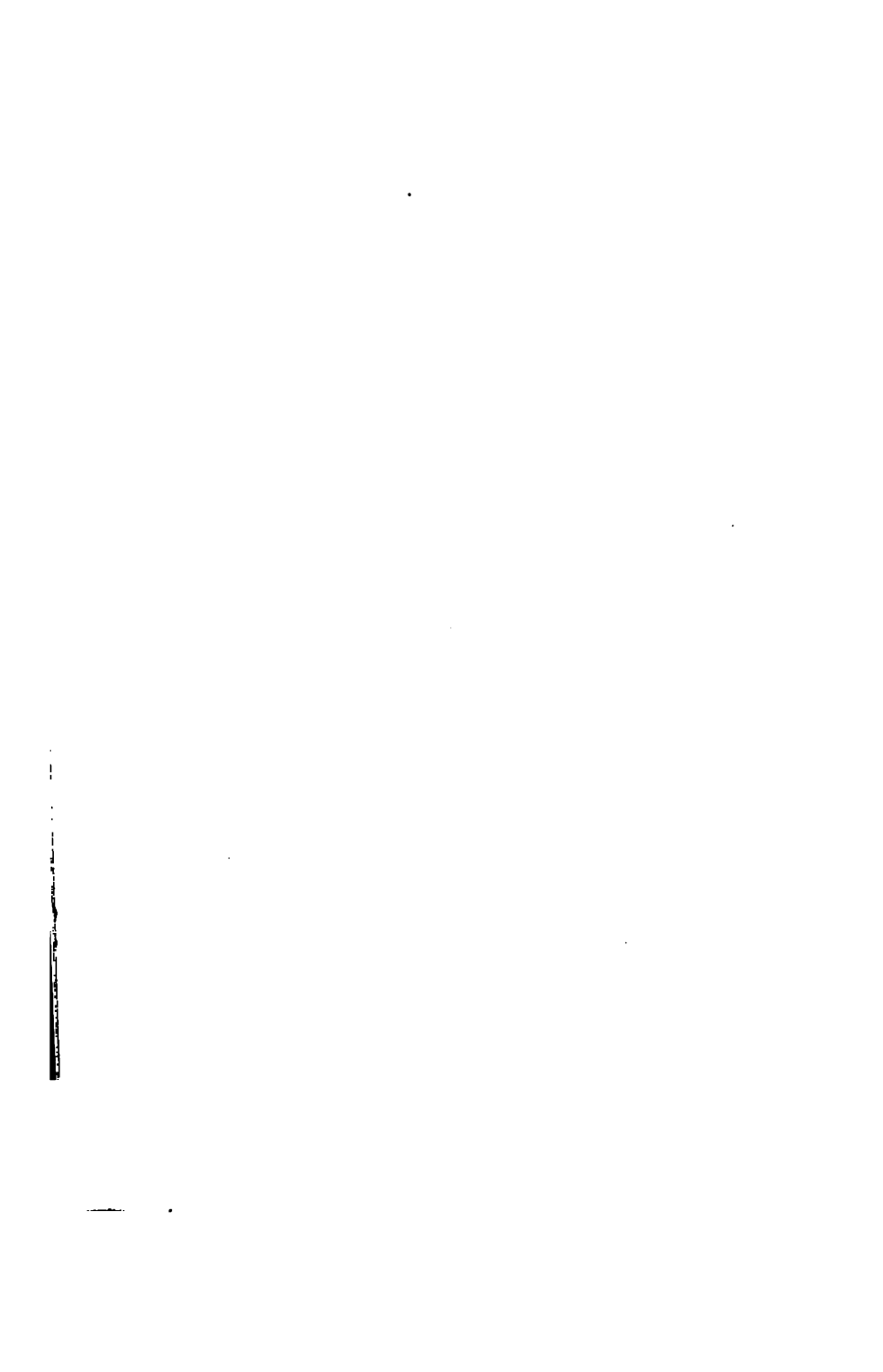
vulgō, adv. (**vulgus**, *common people*), *commonly, generally*.

vulgus, -ī, n., *the common people, crowd, the public, populace*.

vulnerō, I (**vulnus**, *wound*), *wound, hurt*.

vulnus, **vulneris**, n., *a wound*.

vultus, -ūs, m., *looks, expression, countenance*.





To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M-8.40

--	--	--

12

Tx
478.61
C128rg

Cae
Hessy

NAME

DATE

10M-9-40-38772

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD

597632

